This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

3 3433 07591611 8

RFR
Chambers

)

A

GRAMMAR

OF THE

FRENCH TONGUE.

WITH

A PREFACE,

CONTAINING

AN ESSAY

On the PROPER METHOD for

TEACHING and LEARNING that LANGUAGE.

ASTOR LIBRARY NEW-YORK

By LEWIS CHAMBAUD.

The ELEVENTH EDITION, Revised and Corrected, agreeably to the DICTIONARY of the FRENCH ACADEMY, By Mr. DES CARRIERES.

LONDON:

Printed for T. LONGMAN, B. LAW and SON, C. DILLY, J. JOHNSON, G. G. and J. ROBINSON, T. CADELL, R. BALDWIN, J. SEWELL, P. ELMSLY, W. GOLDSMITH, W. RICHARDSON, C. D. PIGUENIT, G & T. WILKIE, W. BENT, J. EVANS, and VERNOR & HOOD.

MDCCXCIV.

[Price bound 4s.]

ADVERTISEMENT

TO THE

ELEVENTH EDITION.

THE rapid Sale of the two last Editions of this Grammar is a sure pledge of the public esteem. In order to obtain the continuance of it, the Editor has revised this edition with the utmost care, and availed himself of the illustrations of Mr. *Holder*, published with very judicious notes by *G. Satis*.

Each page of the Syntax is divided into four parts, marked A, B, C, D; to render the References, in the Exercise-book, more precise.

The new Paragraphs, inserted in this edition, are pointed out with this mark ¶, and included in a bracket.

Publiſhed by LEWIS CHAMBAUD, and Printed for the Proprietors.

I. A DICTIONARY, French and Engliſh, and Engliſh and French; containing the Signification of Words, with their different Uſes; the Terms of Arts, Sciences, and Trades; the Conſtructions, Forms of Speech, Idioms, and Proverbs uſed in both Languages: The whole extracted from the beſt Writers. A New Edition, carefully corrected and enlarged, with a great Number of Words, Proverbs, Idioms, &c. containing many more Sheets than in any other French and Engliſh Dictionaries. 1 Vol. 4to. Price 1l. 10s.

II. EXERCISES to the Rules of Conſtruction of French Speech. Conſiſting of Paſſages extracted out of the beſt French Authors, with a Reference to the Grammar Rules, to be turned back into French. A New Edition. Price 2s. 6d.

III. THEMES François & Anglois, or French and English Exerciſes for the Uſe of Maſters. The Second Edition. Price [illegible]

IV. A TREATISE of the French & Engliſh Language. Containing, I. A Vocabulary French and Engliſh. II. Common Forms of Speech upon the moſt familiar and uſeful Subjects. III. A Collection of Proverbs, common Sayings, Maxims, [illegible] being equally neceſſary to the French, and other Foreigners underſtanding French, to learn Engliſh; and the beſt, if not the only Help extant for them to attain to the Knowledge of it. The Fourth Edition. Corrected and Enlarged. Price 2s. 6d.

V. The RUDIMENTS of the French Tongue; or, An easy and rational Introduction to French Grammar: Wherein the Principles of the Language are methodically digeſted. With uſeful Notes and Obſervations, explaining the Terms of Grammar, and further improving its Rules. The Second Edition. Price 1s. 6d.

THE

PREFACE.

THE Pronunciation of a Language consists of sounds and articulations; and the greatest difficulty met with in learning to read, arises from the words being written and spelt otherwise than they are pronounced. If then the sounds and articulations of a foreign language, and the combinations of those sounds and articulations, that is, the various ways of representing them in writing, were exhibited in proper tables to the learner, with the corresponding sounds and articulations of his own language, that difficulty would be in a great measure removed*. The nature of the thing itself points out the true method of obtaining the pronunciation.

Of the seventeen sounds of the French language, fifteen are in English, even our nasal vowels, and *e* both guttural and mute; *eux* and *un* only are not; and liquid *g* only, as expressed in *gueux*, is perhaps the only articulation that is not in English: for I dare maintain that our liquid *n* and *l* are in the English words *minion*, *billiards*, *million*. I maintain likewise, that these following English words are exactly pronounced like the French ones underneath;

fat	hall,	long,	parlour†,	fare,
fat,	*le hâle*,	*langue*,	*parlour*,	*faire* or *fer*.

* *I say in a great measure, because of the final consonants of words, some of which are always dropt, and some always pronounced; some are sometimes articulated, and sometimes not.*

† *There is a difference of accent, not of sound, in the pronunciation of these two words.*

bell,	pen,	ſwear,	ſum *or* ſome,	ſweat.
belle,	*peine,*	*ſoir,*	*ſomme,*	*ſouhaite,*
pull,	kit,	we, *&c.*		
poule,	*quitte,*	*oüi.*		

Thoſe who deny it, only proclaim their ignorance of the French pronunciation. The Engliſh ſounds, that are compared to the French ones in my tables, have been weighed, as it were, in a pair of ſcales. This comparative view has been the object of above twenty years meditation; and the ſounds have been found exactly correſponding to each other, by ſeveral Engliſh Gentlemen, who have been long enough converſant with people of faſhion and character abroad, to become maſters of their pronunciation, and who are therefore competent judges of the matter.

This work is divided into three parts; and I have printed in a ſmall character ſuch obſervations as are not fit for beginners: but muſt be omitted, in order for them to learn firſt what is eſſential to the language; that they may thereby be the ſooner enabled to enter into the conſtruing of the French books. Each part of Speech is treated of, both with reſpect to its accidence and conſtruction, in a manner that leaves nothing further to be ſaid upon the ſame ſubjects. There is not one conſtruction in French, but is taken notice of and reduced into rules. And I have reſerved for an Appendix ſome more particular obſervations, that could not be inſerted in the body of the work, without interrupting that order which I propoſed; but which are nevertheleſs neceſſary to the underſtanding and writing French.

Another advantage that youth, and illiterate people, will reap from it, is, that in learning French, they will at the ſame time learn the art of ſpeaking, the reaſon of the words they utter, the œconomy of all languages. Therefore after a ſuccinct, but clear and exact analyſis of the analogy and foundations of languages, prefixed by way of introduction, I give in the ſequel true and perfect notions of the parts of Speech, and other Grammatical terms uſed in the work: and both the diviſion of the work, and definitions uſed in it, will be found grounded

ature of things, and formed after the most exact
Logic. This (though the young learner need
irst trouble himself with it) seemed to me the
ecessary, as there is no treatise on Grammar fit
h and illiterate persons; all the English, as well
Latin and French Grammars used in schools,
uite defective in that respect, and the definitions
for the most part false, though generally used
mmarians.

ik, after the generality of Grammarians, that all
ds of which speech is composed, may be ranged
ht or nine classes: but I differ from them as to the
cies of words, which are the constituent parts of
Thus I keep from that number the Participle,
s no distinct species from the Verb, of which it is
node; and I admit the Adnoun, which they con-
with the Noun, though essentially different. I ac-
dge the Particles for one of the Parts of Speech;
x them to a particular species of words, which
her Adverbs nor Prepositions, nor Conjunctions.
ese came to be so confounded by Grammarians, as
ll promiscuously called by one name, to which
ve fixed no idea, and be at the same time distin-
l by particular ideas, which fix their species, is
not to be easily accounted for. Things specifically
uished must have distinct appellations. Again: I
f one Article only, and of no case at all in nouns,
y to all those who have written upon the French
ge before me. I give my reasons for that singula-
eason, and the right of the thing, not imitation,
uide, and the rule which I go by throughout this
nance.

now, having given an account of this work, I shall
nething of the method of teaching and learning
, whereon depends the whole success of those who
irous of attaining to the knowledge of that lan-
for I am satisfied that the little progress of Learners
owing to the mismanagement of Teachers, who
ar from *being qualified* for their art, that they do

not so much as suspect that it is one. Teaching French is become the profession of Foreigners of all sorts, who know not how to shift for a living, and often have no qualification at all. The generality of the French know not their mother-tongue: but the few who are masters of it, are not on that single account capable of teaching it. I have composed this performance, not only for the instruction of the English who learn French, but also for the use of such teachers as are not masters of that language. I hope it will be advantageous to them in all respects: for they must have the mastery of it, and make the rules familiar to them, that they may readily represent them upon occasion to their scholars, whenever they happen to write or speak wrong. I shall therefore subjoin my own method of teaching, which is grounded both upon reason and experience.

The lesson consists of four or five parts, which ought to keep an equal pace together: the materials of the language, I mean the Vocabulary and Forms of Speech; they way of using them, or the Grammar; the Exercise, which is the practice of the Grammar rules; and the pronunciation, or reading: to which, translating and construing must be added, when the scholar has learnt his Accidence. The lesson must always begin with the pronunciation, and each part always follow in its turn in the same order, for fear of forgetting something.

Before the Master shews his scholars the vowels of the first table, he himself must pronounce distinctly to them each vowel one after another, and make them pronounce the same after him; then make them pronounce the first four together, then four more, and so on: and when he is satisfied that his pupils have got the pronunciation of them all, he must shew them in the first table the letters by which those sounds are represented; pronouncing again first the vowel, as he points it out to his pupils, and making them pronounce it after him. He may then explain to them what a vowel is, in the very words of the definition set down in page 5; and tell them that the

 vowels

vowels marked with a circumflex over them, have a much broader and longer sound than the others; and that the nasal vowels are so called, on account of their being pronounced through the nose. Afterwards he must shew them the mute *e*; but must take care not to pronounce it.

When the scholars know their vowels, as represented in the first table, the Master must shew them the second, which contains the several ways of representing the vowels; and inform them, that all those combinations of letters, such as *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, *et*, &c. represent each of them only the sound of the vowel beginning the line, and that *ai*, *ei*, *oi*, *et*, &c. must be pronounced *è*. They are to pronounce each combination after him, and then repeat or pronounce them by themselves, as he points at each of those combinations. The Master must then observe to them, that *e* mute is represented these three ways, *e*, *es*, *ent*.

The table of the consonants is to be used after the same manner, the Master pronouncing them first with the guttural sound of *e* (or *eu*) but very weak, just to shew the articulation. They are ranged according to their several efficient causes; those which are produced by the same disposition and motion of the lips, or tongue, being placed against each other.

The tables of the syllables must be learnt next; the Master still pronouncing first the syllable, and making his pupil pronounce it after him, without spelling, that is, without causing him to name first the consonant, and then the vowel of which the syllable is formed. But the learner must read the syllables, not only in their natural order, from the left to the right, but also from the right to the left, from top to bottom, and again from bottom to top, till he is perfect in the pronunciation of them. Next comes the table of Monosyllables: then two other tables to acquaint the learner when the consonants ought not to be pronounced at the end of words and syllables, and when they ought; lastly, the table of the combinations of sounds. The learner must get this last table by heart, and have six or eight syllables, with the words annexed to

them

them, set him every time, as part of his task: and when he has learnt all those combinations, go through them over again after the same manner; adding a rule of the final consonants, with its exception; and thus repeat these tables a third and fourth time, nay, till the Master is convinced, by his pupil's reading, that he has them thoroughly, and they have made a lasting impression on his mind. Afterwards he must make him read the Vocabulary and Forms of Speech (but still without spelling), reading each word first, and making the pupil repeat it after him: and give him a certain number of words and sentences to get by heart, more or less according to his capacity.

Spelling will not do at all; and is, on the contrary, the greatest hinderance to the learning of the pronunciation. Children must be accustomed to read the words without naming each letter separately, one after another: they will soon learn to read, if they are taught their letters and syllables after the manner contained in the tables. The usual method of teaching children to read, in making them name the vowels and consonants by themselves, is quite absurd. To evidence this beyond contradiction, let us suppose the pronunciation of this word *champs* is to be learnt. If you make the pupil spell, he will say, *cey*, *ash*, *a*, *em*, *pey*, *ess*,, and he will stop of course, because the separate sounds of *c*, *h*, *a*, *m*, *p*, *s*, cannot give him any idea of the combined sound, which is to be pronounced. How should they? These letters, named singly one after another, make six different sounds and articulations, none of which separately has, or altogether have, any manner of affinity or resemblance to the single articulated sound expressed by *champs*. The Master seeing his pupil stop after spelling this word, pronounces himself *champs* to him; and the pupil, echo-like, repeats *champs*. Spelling therefore can only serve to confound the learner, and lead him into error, in intimating to him that there are six sounds in *champs*, though the teacher is obliged, after all, to convince him by his own pronunciation that there is *but one*. Let the word be pronounced at first to the

learner

learner, and the difficulty is removed; that ſound will make a right impreſſion upon his mind: and whenever he ſees the ſame combination of letters, he will remember the ſound repreſented by them, and will pronounce the word right.

Moreover, the names of the letters moſt commonly offer falſe notions, nay ſounds and articulations directly oppoſite to thoſe which are to be pronounced. The letter *c* is pronounced ſometimes *k* and ſometimes *s*. Its name *cey* leads the learner to pronounce *ſa* for *ka*, and to read *lâce* for *lac*. *G* is ſometimes pronounced *gue*, as is *Gog*, *Agag*, and ſometimes *jey*. The name of *gey*, which the learner gives it in ſpelling, leads him naturally to read *Jogé* for *Gog*, and *Ajagé* for *Agag*. Some Maſters, hearing a child make ſuch miſtakes in reading, are apt to fret, to fall into a paſſion, and perhaps to abuſe him. But how can the child help it, if he pronounces falſe ſounds, into which he is naturally led by thoſe names of the letters, which his Maſter has been at great pains to teach him? He muſt not blame the child, but his own method only, and reform it.

The method here recommended to the Teacher has experience for its voucher: it has never failed me. But, upon the whole, thoſe that are fond of ſpelling, may as well make their pupils ſpell the words of the Vocabulary and Forms of ſpeech, as a ſet of unmeaning words of two, three, or four ſyllables; ſince thoſe materials of the language cannot be learnt too early. I make my ſcholars begin with the Adverbs, inſtead of the common nouns, that they may have the indeclinable parts of ſpeech, the Adverbs, Prepoſitions, and Conjunctions, treaſured up in their memory, againſt the time they will be capable of conſtruing French. This is the moſt difficult and neceſſary part of the Vocabulary: and, when once learnt, the ſcholar will meet with nothing to ſtop him in conſtruing, but the ſignification of the Nouns, Adnouns, and Verbs, which he will learn of courſe by dint of tranſlating and conſtruing, beſides his uſual talk out of the Vocabulary.

After

After minding the pronunciation and materials of the language, the Grammar must be thought of. Therefore the Master shall set his scholar a lesson out of the Accidence; explain to him what a noun is, that it is of a gender, has two numbers, and is commonly preceded by the article; and what is meant by each of these terms; make him read the four rules for the formation of the plural number (p. 101.) with the two last paragraphs of page 111 about the article, apply the rules to the nouns set down for his pattern (p. 112.) and take notice to him of the conformity of the examples to these rules; then exercise him immediately upon the same, in making him write down the first noun of the *Introduction to the writing of French*, in French and English, through its three states in both numbers, according to his examples, to shew him how to do it by himself; and set him, for his exercise, three or four nouns to be done after the same manner; and gave him, besides, those rules about the plural number and agreement of the article with the noun, to get by heart as part of his task. A grown person will easily learn this in one lesson. Young scholars of an indifferent capacity may be made two, or three, or four lessons of the same, and they will have it perfect, before they have done half a dozen exercises upon the accidence of nouns. Afterwards they must learn the rules for the formation of the verbs (p. 137.) omitting the exceptions at first, which are to be learned only the second time of going through these rules: for as soon as they have been got by heart, they must be repeated with the exceptions; and the scholar be put to the practice of them, in turning into French the Exercises upon the accidence of verbs: and he must prove every tense and person of his exercise by his rules.

The six rules about the Gender of nouns (p. 195 and 6.) are to be learnt next with the exceptions; afterwards the rules for the formation of the feminine gender of the Adnouns (p. 114 & 15.); lastly those of the construction of the Article (p. 209). When the pupil has learnt so far,

he

he must put the first chapter of the second part of the Exercises into French, and, after his Master has corrected his exercise, prove the same by his Grammar-Rules: but the Teacher must first prepare the Exercise to his young scholar, after the manner set down in the preface to that book. Whilst he is exercising upon the article, he must learn the rules for the construction of the Pronouns personal; and, as soon as he can say them, be put into that chapter of the Exercises: then return to the accidence of the adnouns, and learn also their construction (p. 221 and following); and whilst he is exercising upon the same, learn a new set of rules, in order to be put into the next chapter of the Exercises, and so on, till he has gone through all the Parts of Speech and their principles.

When the scholar has learnt his Accidence, he must construe a French book, and enter into the understanding of the language. He must also repeat his verbs, especially the irregular; conjugate a new verb every time, after saying first where the irregularity of the verb lies; and then learn the observations belonging to each verb. He must likewise go through his syntax over again, and learn the notes. But the Masters must insist upon their scholars learning well their rules, and never suffer them to learn any thing new, before they thoroughly understand, and can readily repeat what is before; which is also a light and help to what follows. The contrary would be prejudicial to children, and rather retard than forward them. They learn fast enough, when they learn well. *Sat citò, si sat benè.*

But the great difficulty is to procure books fit for beginners. *Télémaque* and *Molière* are excellent books, but never were composed nor designed for learning French. They suppose a thorough knowledge of the language, and are the last books that ought to be read, in order to relish the beauties and delicacies of it, and learn its figurative, idiomatical, and proverbial ways of speaking. and a Teacher cannot more plainly shew his want of judgment, than in causing beginners to construe such books. Who would advis

advise a Foreigner, who wants to learn English, to read *Milton's Paradise Lost*, which a great part of the English themselves do not rightly understand, or some witty play? I say the same of French books of literature. They must certainly be read, but in their turn. The rule in all kinds of learning is, or ought to be, to proceed by insensible steps from what is easy to what is difficult. Beginners must read only books easy to be understood, written in the most plain and natural style, without any thing puzzling, either in the expression, or in the turn of the sentences, and the subject ought to be known and agreeable to their capacity: for the whole business at first is to make them learn the true import and proper signification of words and their general construction.

I recommended about twelve or fourteen years ago, a book which has gained an immortal honour to its author; I mean *Commenius's Janua linguarum reserata*: a performance contrived with incredible art and pains to promote more effectually the learning of languages; and which has been translated not only into all the languages of Europe, besides the Latin and Greek, but also into the Arabic, Turkish, Persian, and even the Mogul's language: and has gone through a great many Polyglot editions. The ingenious author, in methodising all the works of nature and art, all that is the object of our senses and understanding, has not only brought under proper heads all the words and common constructions of a language, but also explained things and their differences: so that his performance is a compendious system of learning, altogether proper to form the minds of youth and enrich them with knowledge, at the same time that they are learning languages. How it comes to pass that so valuable a book is now quite disused in schools, and known only to some Men of Letters, is indeed a matter of wonder. Would it not be worth a Bookseller's while to get that work reprinted in French and English?

As to the first construing book, the scholar must first translate his lesson, then construe it; and the construction

must

must be literal, taking one French word only, then one English word, except the article and noun, the pronoun and verb, which must not be parted. By and by, after he shall have gone through a dozen of pages, he must take three or four words together, so as to make a sense, as the noun and adnoun, the subject and the verb, with its regimen. But this is only one half of the business. The young scholar must now digest his lesson (if I may use the expression) in studying it over again another way; and, after he has construed it, must be called upon for every word, first in French, then in English, according to the order of the parts of speech: noun, adnoun, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and particle. By that means, and the set of words which he is to get by heart every time out of his Vocabulary, a child will treasure up in his memory the words of the language, of which he will understand the divers significations, and of which he will soon find the advantage for speaking French. The Master must keep to this method all the first construing book throughout, taking notice besides all along to his pupil of the constructions of which he has learnt the rules: and when he has gone through his Grammar, make him parse, that is, account for the construction of every word of his lesson, and shew how each governs, or is governed by another in the sentence.

Of the books which are to be read next, some are to be construed only to the Master, the scholar having first studied his lesson, and others to be translated and rendered according to the beauties of the English Tongue: but in both he must pass over nothing unexplained, and that he does not entirely understand. The Master must make him render faithfully the true spirit of the author: I say faithfully, and not literally, which is necessary only in the beginning, and when the scholar is at a loss how to find out the sense himself. He must take notice to him of the divers forms of speech, turns and idioms of the two languages: of the propriety of the French words, that is, their significations both proper and figurative; of the choice of

the

not learn so fast as grown persons, they generally learn better. They will speak French of course, after they have learnt how to speak; for we are all apt to shew our accomplishments. If both they and their Master act their part, you may rest satisfied that they come on well, tho' they cannot speak. Do not be impatient at the operations of Nature; she works but slowly. Children, in a good state of health, and under a wholesome diet, grow constantly, though their growing is not constantly observable. It is even so with the mind: it improves constantly, so it is properly cultivated; though it is in process of time only that we can perceive the improvement. It is impossible for one not to be able to speak the language, when thus made capable of it: and it is as impossible to be made capable of it, otherwise than by studying its genius, and learning methodically.

It is a great abuse introduced in most schools to force beginners to speak nothing but French among themselves. They of necessity must either speak wrong (even supposing that they have a competent stock of words and expressions, for it is the utmost absurdity to pretend that they will learn them by guessing), or condemn themselves to silence. The first cannot but be very detrimental to them; since they thereby accustom themselves to a barbarous broken French, which is no language at all, and cannot be worn out without infinite pains. The second is still worse, for it hinders them from disclosing freely their thoughts, and straitens in some measure their understanding; but, above all, gives them the utmost aversion to the language, their books, and master: to prevent which too much care cannot be employed.

It is amazing to see how apt people are to deceive themselves, and how easy to be imposed upon by designing crafty men, who improve the general simplicity to their own private gain. To this is owing the abuse which I am complaining of. The generality of people, being incapable to reflect duly upon the nature of a language, and the faculties of the human mind, have hardly put their children to

the

guages. Although it is evident that this must require a vast compass of time, yet it is the more speedily brought about, when one proceeds with method. Afterwards comes the practice of both, to acquire a due readiness of the mind for writing and speaking.

If nothing more was necessary than to learn to jabber, or to show in company that they can speak some French words and phrases, that indeed would not require so much art and method. But as for those who are either designed to be Scholars, or to be concerned in some trade, that requires a correspondence with foreign Merchants; who either intend to travel like rational creatures, with a design to adorn their mind by the conversation of the learned and polite part of Europe; or who, by reason of their birth and qualities, are entitled to those honourable stations wherein they shall be intrusted, either at home or abroad, with the interests of their King and Country; for these, I say, who must of course attain to a mastery in the language, there is much art and method required; though, at the same time, there is seldom any used.

One may daily see in schools young lads who have been learning French for five or six years, and who pass with some for good scholars, on account of that readiness with which they express themselves. But they observe no concord at all; cannot so much as make the adnoun agree with the noun; are utterly incapable of writing four lines, or even to make sense of half a page of a common French Book; in short, they know no more than the words and phrases of their own book. Can this be called knowledge of a language, without perverting our ideas of things, and renouncing our own sense and understanding? Whereas, studying half of that time, in the manner I propose, would have made them perfect masters of the language, and enabled them to converse and correspond with foreigners upon all subjects.

As to the time, therefore, that children must be put to the speaking of French, these rules, in my humble opinion, ought to be strictly observed. First, that they should have

a sufficient stock of words, and even of ways of speaking, to express themselves; and, besides, that they should be capable of using them according to the Genius of the language. In the next place, that they should not be suffered to speak French too soon among themselves, without somebody with them to correct them. Therefore, when a Master finds a boy capable of speaking French under these two limitations, I would have him discourse himself with him in a way suitable to his capacity, doing it at first in the same sentences, and expressions, that he has learnt in his forms of speech, changing only the order of the construction, but keeping to the same words. Moreover, in schools, a teacher should, twice or thrice a week, spend some time in exercising his scholars in the speaking of French, conversing in an easy and friendly manner with them; asking the youngest, questions within their reach; helping them to make their answers; requiring, from those that are more forward, descriptions and recitals of what they have heard, seen, or read; and speaking nothing but French to the forwardest and most perfect in the language, nor suffer them to speak English, except to those who cannot discourse with them in French. It is after this manner boys will be effectually brought to the speaking of French, and not at all by using themselves to the aforesaid gibberish that prevails in schools.

It will not be amiss to set before the Reader a specimen of that barbarous language wherein Schools-boys are trained up, under the specious pretence of speaking French.

Bad French, as it is generally spoken in England.	*English.*	*Good French,* as it is spoken in France.
Demain c'est un jour de fête pour un nouveau garçon.	To-morrow is a half holiday for a new boy.	*C'est demain congé, or Nous aurons demain congé pour un nouveau pensionnaire.*
Il est douze ans, quoique il ne semble pas si vieux; mais il est court de son âge.	He is twelve years old, though he does not look so old, but he is short of his age.	*Il a douze ans, quoique il ne paroisse pas si âgé, mais il est petit pour son âge.*
Il a été à l'école ces quatre années.	He has been at school these four years.	*Il y a quatre ans qu'il va à l'école.*
Smith, qui n'est que dix, est plus grand que moi par la demi tête.	Smith, who is but ten, is taller than he by half a head.	*Smith, qui n'a que dix ans, est plus grand que moi de la moitié de sa tête.*

Bad French.	*English.*	*Good French.*
Un nouveau garçon de jour est aussi pour venir la prochaine semaine, mais nous ne sommes pas pour avoir fête pour lui.	A new day-boy is also to come the next week, but we are to have no holiday for him.	*Il doit aussi venir un nouvel externe, or Il y aussi un externe qui doit venir la semaine prochaine, mais nous n'aurons pas congé pour lui.*
N us rompons l'école dans une semaine.	We shall break up in a week.	*Nous aurons vacances dans huit jours.*
Je pais dire déjà ce que je suis pour gagner pendant les fêtes.—Il est un assez leçon, mais l'exercice est fort dur.	I can say already what I am to get during the holidays—It is an easy lesson, but the exercise is very hard.	*Je sai déjà ce qui j'aurai à apprendre pour le vacances: C'est une leçon bien facile, mais le thème est fort difficile.*
Vous faut aller, ma maîtresse manque vous—Elle a appelé pour vous trois fois déjà.	You must go: my mistress wants you She has called for you three times already.	*Madame (ma maîtresse) a besoin de vous, on vous demande: il faut que vous allions voir ce qu'elle veut vous.—Elle vous a déjà appellé trois fois.*
Quelqu'un demande pour mon maître.	Somebody asks for my master.	*Quelqu'un demande, or Il y a quelqu'un qui demande monsieur (mon maître).*
Nous irons prendre une promenade, si le sous-maître veut venir avec nous: autrement nous n'irons pas dehors, car mon maître ne veut pas avoir nous aller par nous mêmes.	We shall go and take a walk, if the usher will go with us, otherwise we shall not go out; for my master will not have us go by ourselves.	*Nous irons à la promenade, or Nous irons faire un tour, si monsieur (mon maître), or si le précepteur veut venir avec nous: sinon nous ne sortirons pas; car monsieur (mon maître) ne veut pas que nous sortions seuls.*
Je desire vous pour donner moi un de mon nouveau chemise (said once a boy to a maid).	I desire you to give me one of my new shirts.	*Je vous prie de me donner une de mes chemises neuves.*
Il manque quinze minutes de douze	It wants fifteen minutes of twelve.	*Il est midi moins un quart.*
Il est trente minutes après trois.	It is thirty minutes after three	*Il est trois heures, et demie.*
Il vous faut venir.	You must come.	*Il faut que vous veniez.*
Vous regardez bien.	You look well.	*Vous avez bon air, or bon visage.*
Vous êtes à jouer.—Vous êtes pour jouer.	You are to play.	*C'est à vous à jouer.*
Appellez pour du pain.	Call for bread.	*Demandez du pain.*
Demandez pour une pièce de pain.	Ask for a piece of bread.	*Demandez un morceau de pain.*
Aucune personne vous dira.	Any body will tell you.	*Tout le monde vous dira.*

It now remains to answer the Objections that may be made against this method of learning and teaching French.

Some people urge, that the best way of learning a language, is to learn by practice: that it is impossible to make sure rules upon a living language, which is entirely grounded upon use: that these rules are destroyed by the exceptions, which prove that they are groundless: and, *in fine*, that it is too tedious and painful for children to

get ſuch rules by heart: that it is overloading their memory, and loſing a great deal of time, which may be better employed in making them ſpeak French: and that the rules ſerve only to puzzle their underſtanding.

1ſt, I am ſo much convinced of the excellency of practice in all things, and eſpecially that a living language is a practical ſcience, that it is for no other purpoſe I have taken ſo much pains in compoſing this Grammar, and the Exerciſes upon the different rules which it contains, than to put the learner, the ſooner and more effectually into the practice of the language; and thereby remedy the general complaint, that the generality of thoſe who learn French get no other benefit from their pains and application, than that of underſtanding common French books, without ever being able to ſpeak or write that language. But I alſo eaſily perſuade myſelf, that thoſe who make this objection, miſtake *rote* for *practice*; than which nothing is more abſurd.

Practice, rightly underſtood, conſiſts in exerciſing one's ſelf upon what one has learnt, and in the frequent uſing of the terms and idiomatical phraſes of a language. It therefore ſuppoſes the previous learning, not only of words to ſpeak, but alſo of the rules for uſing them, conformably to the Genius of that language. Practice, then, has not learning for its object, but it is itſelf the object of learning, and is no more than the exerciſe of the mind upon the thing learnt. It is undeniably true, that any one, who has once learnt how to write and ſpeak a language, ought afterwards to ſpeak it, as often as he can find an opportunity, as well in order to retain it, as to uſe it with greater fluency and eaſe; and this only is called Practice. But as to the means of attaining a due exactneſs and propriety in the writing and ſpeaking of a language for beginners, who moſt certainly cannot practiſe what they have never learnt before, unleſs they come at the knowledge of the words of a language, and the way of uſing them, by Conjuration, there is no other, I dare

maintain, that that of studying methodically the principles and rules of it after the manner I propose.

Neither let it be urged, in support of that wrong notion some people entertain of practice, that infants learn their mother-tongue without being taught, and only by hearing others speak. For without enquiring here into the faculty of the soul in this respect, which would not prove favourable to those who plead this instance, it may suffice to answer, that it is obvious to any body, who reflects ever so little upon the case, that that knowledge which young children have of their mother-tongue, is confined within a very narrow compass; nor does it extend further than merely to express the most common concerns and wants of Nature in that tender age; till, after having learnt to read, they gradually improve in the learning of the words and expressions of their mother-tongue, in proportion as by reading and instruction they improve their intellectual faculties.

As to putting young persons into French families where not one word of English is spoken, or even sending them over to France, both reason and experience convince us, that unless they are previously grounded in the principles, they can receive no other benefit than that of practising common compliments, or exercising themselves in the trifling topics of familiar discourse. For unless they study with some qualified person, who makes them read much, and translate French into English, as well as English into French, pointing out, as they go on, the Genius and Idiom of that language, they will be so far from becoming Masters of its Scope and Beauty, that, even after staying ten, nay twenty or more years in France, they will find themselves almost as far from understanding the true spirit of a French Author, or conversing in an intelligible manner upon any material subject, as at their first going thither.

The French Refugees are a striking proof of this. An English Gentleman hearing once an old French Refugee say, that he had been fifty years in England, and express-

ing his surprise that he could not speak English at all; Lack-a-day, Sir, said the Frenchman, what English can one learn in fifty years! *Hélas, Monsieur, qu' est-ce qu'on peut apprendre d'Anglois en cinquante ans!* Neither is it an uncommon thing to see English people, who can hardly make themselves understood in French, though they have lived twenty or thirty years in that country.

Should a parent, who is desirous that his son should learn Music, say to an excellent Master of that Art, *I will have my son learn Music, but pray do not make him lose a deal of time in learning what you call the principles of your art, without singing a pretty tune. Put him at once in the practice: there's nothing like it. Let your rules alone, your gamuts and keys, which are only the out of Music. I will have him learn by practice* *, *I say. Sing airs to him, and make him sing. Never speak to him but in singing: he cannot fail of learning to sing when he hears nothing else.* His child could never learn Music after this manner. He might perhaps learn how to sing some airs, which he had often heard repeated to him; but he could never sing at the opening of a book, for want of having first learnt the nature, use, and power of the several notes that compose Music, which are the rules of Harmony, and guides to the voice. It is the same with a language. Those who are desirous to learn it, must begin with the principles, proceed by the application, and finish by the practice of them. To act contrarily, is to pervert the natural order of things, and attempt impossibilities. To obtain an end in any thing, one must use the necessary means to it; and that the principles are the necessary means of learning a language, is agreed upon by all judicious men, both ancient and modern.

2dly, I grant, that use alone has, without reason, and oftentimes contrary to it, established several ways of speaking in a language; but they must know those ways of speaking thus established, for the understanding of the authors that have written, and daily do write, in that

* Practice is here taken in the sense of those who make the objection.

language,

language, and conform themselves to them, if they are desirous to write or speak it. These particularities, therefore, which use has thus established, and to which the learner must necessarily conform, must either be in some manner distinguished to him, or he must fix upon them by his own observation: for no other method can be thought of to know them, and yet they must be known.

Now, who will pretend to learn by himself, and without help, those caprices of use, which make the essence of a language; by studying deeply the books written therein; meditating upon the nature and use of every different expression; taking notice that many hundred nouns are of one gender, many hundred others of another, and many besides used in both genders, but with divers significations according to their gender; that among verbs some require one relation in the noun, and some another; that they are affected by such and such conjunctions as to their moods; and remembering all those nouns, verbs, and conjunctions severally; and making many more such observations, without which one cannot attain to the knowledge of a language, and which also suppose the knowledge of grammar? But though a man might dive in this manner into the bottom of a language, will it not be shorter and easier for him to read only one performance, where he shall find all those observations ready digested in a clear method, so that he needs only reflect upon them, to have a key to the entire knowledge of that language?—All ways of speaking were originally established independent upon any rule; but they are become by use the very rules of speaking, which make the Grammar of a language; and if they are not studied and entirely known, it is impossible ever to speak or write conformably to use.—As to the exceptions, far from destroying the general rules, they are more particular rules, which oftentimes strengthen and illustrate them.

3dly, It is well known that children do not want memory, that memory is active in them only, and it is of

great

great moment to cultivate it, in that tender age, in those that have but little. To overload the memory of a child, would be to make him learn too much at once, and things which he does not understand; but not to give him a moderate lesson to get by heart, after having well explained it to him. To learn the examples that attend the rules, and promote the understanding of them, is a very great help to the memory. There is no doubt but some children have more memory and capacity than others, and therefore can be sooner forwarded; but they must all learn the Grammar, since it is the only means to attain to the knowledge of a language, as I have, I think, sufficiently proved. Moreover, must not, they learn sooner or later, the words of the language, which are the mere object of memory? If so, one of the great benefits which they will reap from this performance is, that in learning the rules of their Grammar, they will at the same time, insensibly, and as if by artificial memory, learn almost all the words of the French tongue; so much is it calculated for their improvement. Should they learn the words and examples only, without any observation upon them, they could get no knowledge of the language at all, the words being only the materials of it, and its Genius and Idiom consisting in the use of them. And should they learn but few rules, they could know but part of that Genius and Idiom, as this Grammar would be defective, if it did not contain all the observations that can be made upon the language. Besides, there is always in a language matter enough left to be learnt by practice only, which no art can reduce into rules, as may be seen in the Idioms all over my Dictionary. It would be therefore to no purpose to urge, that the learning of these rules is too hard for children, and that they can only serve to puzzle their understanding: for if there be any children that cannot learn them, I declare them altogether incapable, not only of learning French, but of any sort of learning at all. "The art of Grammar "is necessary for *children*, says Quintilian; it forms the

"minds

" minds of those who begin." And as the understanding of languages serves for an introduction to all sciences, so by studying the rules of Grammar, children begin to reflect, to have their understandings opened, and exert their tender and hopeful parts; and thereby render themselves capable of studying in time more difficult sciences.

If notwithstanding these proofs of the most effectual means of mastering a language, which carry all the conviction in the world along with them, there are people that still continue to be prejudiced against a regular and methodical way of learning, they must be left to their irrational conceptions; my design being to be serviceable to those only who are desirous to make themselves, or their children, perfect in the French tongue, who seek earnestly for the best means to effect it, and are sensible of the benefit of a good guide in the pursuit thereof. And if the method which I have here proposed will not bring them to the happy accomplishment of their wishes, I dare insist on it, no other ever will.

A TABLE of the CONTENTS.

The INTRODUCTION.

THE Grounds and Principles of the Art of Speaking, Page 1
Definitions of the words Art, Speaking, Language, Ibid.
Two sorts of signs by means of which we convey our thoughts to one another, Ibid.
Words are images of our thoughts, 2
The thinking faculty consists in conceiving and judging, Ibid.
Four things to be considered in speech, Ibid.
The Parts of speech reduced to nine, 4
The true definition of a Grammar, Ibid.
The division of this Work, Ibid.

PART I. Of PRONUNCIATION and ORTHOGRAPHY.

Pronunciation,—Orthography,—Vowels,—Consonants, their definitions, 5
The French Alphabet, with the true appellations of the letters, erroneous, 6
A table of the simple Sounds of the French Language, 7
A table of the Vowels, with the several ways of representing them, 8
A table of the Consonants, with the several ways of representing them, 9
First table of Syllables, 10 and 11
Second table of Syllables, 12 and 13
A table of all the Monosyllables in the French Language, 14 and 15
First table of the Consonants which are pronounced at the end of Syllables, 16
First table of the words wherein the same consonants are dropt at the end of Syllables, 17
Second table of the Consonants that are usually dropt at the end of Syllables, 18
Second table of the words wherein these consonants are pronounced at the end of Syllables, 19

A table

A table of the Combinations of the letters which compose the syllables, with their corresponding sounds in English. Page 20
Combinations of à, â, an, 20 *and* 21
Combinations of e, eux, eur, œil, é, 21
Combinations of è, oi, ê, oie, er, 22
Combinations of oir, être, i, in, ien, 23
Combinations of oin, o, ô, or, ou, 24
Combinations of our, on, u, ur, un, 25
Words difficult to pronounce, 26
Of the sounds expressed by the vowels, Ibid.
Of Proper Diphthongs, 41
Of Improper Diphthongs, 42
ae, æ, ai, *and* ay, Ibid.
ao, 43
au *and* eau, 44
ea, eai, ei, *and* ey, eo, 45
eu, oe, *and* œ, 46
oi *and* oy, 47
ois, 48
ou, ui, uei *and* eui, 49
Of Nasal Vowels, Ibid.
a, e, i, o, u, *followed by* n or m, *take the nasal sound,* 50
Of Consonants, 53
General observations upon pronunciation, 78
General observations upon orthography, 79
Terminations whose penultima is short, 80
Terminations whose penultima is long, 82
Of the several Marks used in writing French, 84
The vowels which suffer Elision, and in what cases, 85
Hyphen, 86
Cedilla,—Dialysis,—Accent, 87
The French Language most harmonious; a late writer confuted, 91
Capitals, or great Letters, their use, 92
Stops, their names, shapes and practice, 93
Parenthesis,——Index,——Obelisk,——Asterisk,——Quotation,——Section,——Paragraph,——Caret, 94
Abbreviations used mostly in foreign Gazettes, 95
List of the words wherein h *is aspirated, and wherein it is not aspirated,* 96

PART II. *Of the* PARTS *of* SPEECH. 100

Accidence of the Nouns, the formation of the Plural, 101
Of the Gender of Nouns, 104

Of

Of the Article, 110
Rule for making the article agree with the noun, 111
Examples of all the ways of considering the noun, 112
Accidence of Adnouns, the formation of their feminine, 114 *and* 115
Of the Comparison of Adnouns, 117
Accidence of Pronouns, Pronouns Personal, 119
Pronouns Possessive, or rather Pronominal Adnouns, 120
Pronouns Relative and Interrogative, 121
Pronouns Demonstrative, 122
Pronouns Indeterminate, 123
Of Numbers.—— Cardinal, 124
——————Ordinal,——Collective, 127
——————Distributive,—— Multiplicative, 128
Accidence of Verbs, Substantive,——Active,——Neuter,——Reflected, 129
The Mood, Tense, Number and Person, are to be distinguished in verbs, and what each is, Page 130
Conjugating a verb, what it is, 131
The Auxiliary Avoir, 132
The verb Substantive Etre, 134
Rules for the formation of the Tenses, 137
Rules for the formation of the Persons, 139
First conjugation, of verbs in er, 144
Second conjugation, of verbs in ir (*gerund in* issant), 146
Third conjugation, of verbs in ir (*gerund in* ant), 147
Fourth conjugation, of verbs in enir, 149
Fifth conjugation, of verbs in evoir, 151
Sixth conjugation, of verbs in aire, 153
Seventh conjugation, of verbs in aindre *and* oindre, 154
Eighth conjugation, of verbs in oître, 157
Ninth conjugation, of verbs in uire, 159
Tenth conjugation, of verbs in endre *and* ondre, 161
The reflected verb, Se lever, 165
Verbs neuter which form their compound tenses from être, 167
Verbs irregular, s'en aller, puer, envoyer, 168
Observations upon aller *and* s'en aller, 171
Acquérir, Bouillir, Courir, } *with the requisite observations upon these verbs*, 172
Cueillir, Fuir *and* S'enfuir, 173
Haïr, Mourir, Ouvrir, 174
Saillir, Assaillir, Tressaillir, Revêtir, 175
S'asseoir, 176
Pouvoir, Savoir, 177

Voir, Vouloir, Valoir, — Page 178
Mouvoir, Plaire, — 179
Faire, Boire, Croire, — 180
Naître, Dire, Lire, — with the requisite ob- 181
Rire, Ecrire, Vivre, — servations upon those 182
Suivre, Prendre, Rompre, — verbs, 183
Battre, Mettre, Conclure, — 184
Convaincre, Coudre, Moudre, — 185
Résoudre, Clorre, &c. — 186
Verbs Impersonal, 187
Of Adverbs, their definition, 188
Adverbs of Time, 189
Adverbs of Place, 191
Adverbs of Order, 192
Adverbs of Quantity and Number, 193
Adverbs of Quality and Manner, 194
Adverbs of Affirmation, Negation, Doubt, &c. 196
Accidence of Prepositions,—their definition, 197
Accidence of Conjunctions,—their definition, 200
Conjunctions Copulative and Comparative, Ibid.
Conjunctions Disjunctive, Adversative, Conditional, &c. 201
Conjunctions Concessive, Concluding, Transitive, &c. 202
Of Particles,—their definition, 203
Discursive and Interjective Particles, 204

PART III. *Of* SYNTAX *or* CONSTRUCTION.

Its definition, 205
Syntax of Nouns, 206
An odd Construction of partie, 207
Four manners of expression in Nouns, 207 *and* 208
Syntax of the article, 209
One and twenty prepositions always will have the article before the noun: nine others sometimes require it, sometimes not, 212
The limited sense is expressed by the preposition de, 213
Proper names take the article, when they are used in a determinate sense, or qualified by an adnoun, 214
The preposition de *only, without the article, is used in five cases, especially after words of* quantity, 216
Bien *used for* beaucoup, 217
Nouns are used without either article or preposition in five cases, 218

Syntax

Syntax of Adnouns, Page 220
Adnouns that come after the nouns, 221
Sixteen adnouns only necessarily come before the noun, 222
Adnouns always attended by the preposition de, 223
Adnouns always attended by the preposition à, 224
The construction of adnouns of Dimension, 225
The construction of Nouns and Verbs attending the adnouns in the comparative and superlative degrees, 229
Syntax of Pronouns, 229
The pronouns governed of the verb come before the verb, except in two cases, 233
And the pronoun in the 3d state comes before that in the 4th, except also in two cases, 234
Construction of ne *and* pas *or* point, 235
The several ways of asking questions, 236
The pronouns, whether governing or governed of the verb, are sometimes repeated, and sometimes not, 239
The use and construction of the pronoun indeterminate on, 240
The passive voice, both in French and English, 241
The use and construction of the pronouns relative le, en, y, 244
Particular observations upon the construction of the pronouns personal of the 3d person il, lui, elle, 247
The use and construction of the Pronominal adnouns, 249
The construction of the pronouns relative, qui, lequel, *&c.* 252
The use and construction of dont, 253
The use and construction of où, 254
The use and construction of quoi, 257
A very remarkable Pleonasm used in asking questions, 258
The use and construction of the pronouns demonstrative ce, celui, ceci, cela, celui-ci, *&c.* 259
The use and construction of the pronouns indeterminate, 261
Quelqu'un *and* Chacun,—Quiconque, Personne, 262
Nul, pas un, aucun,—Ni l'un ni l'autre, 263
L'un l'autre, Plusieurs—Tout, 264
The use and construction of Quelque, 265 *and* 266
Observations upon nouns of Number, 267
Syntax of Verbs, 273
Of the Concord of Verbs with collective Nouns, 274
The use and construction of the tenses, 275
The use and construction of the Moods,—Verbs governing the subjunctive, 280
Correspondence of the Subjunctive to the Indicative mood, 280
Verbs governing the indicative, 281

Verbs Impersonal governing the subjunctive, Page
Verbs Impersonal governing the indicative,
The use of the present and preterite of the subjunctive,
Of the government of Verbs,
Verbs active requiring the preposition de *before the next infinitive,*
Verbs neuter requiring the preposition de *before the next noun an finitive,*
Verbs active requiring the preposition à *before the next infinitive,*
Verbs neuter requiring the preposition à *before the next noun and nitive,*
Verbs taking indifferently de *or* à *before the next infinitive,*
Verbs taking no preposition at all before the next infinitive,
Adnouns, construed with être, *requiring* à *before the next noun infinitive,*
Adnouns, construed with être, *requiring* de *before the next noun infinitive,*
Nouns chiefly construed with avoir, *requiring* de *before the nex finitive,*
A list of nouns requiring de *before the infinitive,*
Terms of comparison requiring que de *before the infinitive,*
De, à, pour, *answer the English preposition* to,
Particular observations upon the construction of the English G with the particles of, from, with, in, by, for,
Construction of the Gerund,
Construction of the Participles,
Of Verbs Impersonal,
Of the Impersonal—Il est, &c.
Of the Demonstrative—C'est, &c.
Il y a,
Il fait,
Il faut,
Of the French Negatives,
Words requiring ne, *but without* pas *or* point, *before their*

Particular cases where ne *is used without* pas *or* point,
Formation of Adverbs,
Adnouns used adverbially with some verbs,
Syntax of adverbs,
rien *and* tout *are construed like adverbs,*
Syntax of Prepositions,—à, au, aux,
de, du, des,
avant,
après,

devant, Page 329
derrière—chez—contre, 330
dans *and* en, 331
depuis, 333
jusque, 334
hors—hormis—excepté—à la réserve, 335
loin—malgré—en dépit—par, 336
pour, 337
près, 339
auprès—proche, 340
vis-à-vis—à l'opposite—sans—selon—suivant—sur, 341
au-dessus—au-dessous, 342
vers—envers—à l'égard—au lieu, 343
à rebours—au rebours—à travers—au travers, 344
Prepositions which must always be repeated, 345
Observations upon some English prepositions, 346
Syntax of Conjunctions. Conjunctions governing the indicative, 347
Conjunctions governing the subjunctive, 348
Conjunctions governing the infinitive, 348
The conjunction que *used instead of repeating the conjunctions* si, quand, lorsque, pourquoi, *&c.* 349
Difference between lorsque *and* quand, ibid.
Si *is never construed with the conditional,* 350
Particular observations upon some conjunctions, 351

APPENDIX.

THE Analogy of Speech, or the Grounds and Principles of the Art of Speaking continued, 353
Reason has not been regarded in the invention of Languages, 355
The several species of words, invented for representing our thoughts, are grounded in the nature of things, 359
Definitions of such Grammatical terms as most occur, 361
Observations upon certain words, wherein chiefly consists the Idiom of French,—Amitié, Amours, An, Année, 362
Accoutumer, s'accoutumer, Avoir coutume, *&c.* Agir, 363
Aider,—Aimer,—*Present and Imperfect* of Aller *and* Venir, 364
Apparoître *and* Paroître,—Avoir, 365
Avoir beau,—N'avoir garde,—Ne faire que, *&c.* Au reste, *&c.* 366
Aïeux,—Savoir,—Connoître,—Devoir, 367
Ecouter,—Entendre,—Emplir, Enfermer,—Enfer, 368

Espérer,—Eveiller *and* Réveiller,—Faire, Page 369
Faire grâce *and* Faire une grâce,—Fleurir, 370
Se fier,—Fournir,—Gens, 371
Bonne grâce,—Jouer, 372
Jour *and* Journée,—Laisser, 373
Livres and Francs, 374
Un coup de main, *&c.*—Marcher *and* se promener, 375
Marier *and* Epouser,—Mener *and* Porter,—Amener *and* Apporter, 376
Mourir—Neuf *and* Nouveau—Parens, 377
Personne, 378
Pâque—Se passer de—Plus, Davantage, Encore, 379 *and* 380
Plaire—Peinture, Portrait, Tableau, 381
Prendre garde—Rompre, Briser, Casser, 382
Seulement—Suppléer—Traiter mal *and* Maltraiter—Valoir—Voilà, 383
Ne faire que de Venir de—Il y a, 384
The names of some parts of some animals are not the same in French as in English, 384
The Sounds of beasts, 385
Verbs which, together with a noun without the article, form but one particular idea, 386
Observations upon Verbs, considered with respect to the idiom of the English Tongue, 395
Of the construction of certain English particles, with respect to French, 399
The various Significations and Constructions of que, 400
Of inseparable Prepositions, 405
Observations upon Proper Names, 406
Observations upon the Titles annexed by custom to the divers ranks and stations of civil life, 408
Observations upon the writing of Letters, 412
Of some adnouns, whose signification is different according to the different placing of them, 413
Nouns masculine in one signification, and feminine in another, 415
Nouns that are applied to both sexes, and have therefore their feminine gender, 418
Adnouns used substantively, or like nouns, 420
List of nouns Masculine ending in e *mute,* 423

THE

The ART of

SPEAKING FRENCH.

INTRODUCTION.

AN ART is a rational method, a collection of obſervations digeſted into convenient order for the teaching and learning of ſomething: and the methodical collection of obſervations made upon the particular cuſtom of a nation, in the inſtitution, order, and uſe of the words by which they are uſed to expreſs the thoughts, is what is meant by a Grammar.

SPEAKING is exhibiting our thoughts; and a LANGUAGE is nothing elſe than the means towards that end: that is, a language is the manner, or ſigns, which a ſet of men have agreed, and are uſed, to expreſs their thoughts by.

And becauſe men want to make their thoughts known, not only to thoſe with whom they live, but alſo to others they are very diſtant from, or who are to be born many ages after them, they have, for that purpoſe, invented two ſorts of means, or ſigns; the one inſtantaneous and tranſient, and ſerving only to repreſent thought actually, SOUNDS; the other permanent, and deſigned to repreſent it in all times and places, CHARACTERS.

Theſe ſounds and characters, *i. e.* all that is ſpoken and written, form SPEECH, which is compoſed of ſentences, ſentences of words, and words of ſyllables.

SYLLABLES, in ſpeaking, are ſounds of which words are compoſed and formed; and, in writing, they are parts of the ſame words, compoſed of characters which repreſent thoſe ſounds: as *ad-mi-ni-ſtra-ti-on*, that has ſix parts, ſix ſounds, ſix ſyllables. Syllables are either ſimple or compound. They are all compound in the word juſt mentioned: but in the words *about*, *elect*, and many others, the firſt ſyllable is ſimple. Sometimes one ſound only, one ſyllable, makes a word, called MONOSYLLABLE, as *but*, *man*, *it is not*; which three laſt ſounds make three words: otherwiſe a ſyllable has no ſignification of itſelf.

WORDS are images of thoughts. They differ from the ſounds and characters, in that men have applied to theſe laſt only the general power of making words, without repreſenting other ideas but thoſe of ſounds and characters: whereas they have, beſides, applied to the words the diſtinct and particular power of repreſenting their thoughts. Juſt as, in painting, colours make of themſelves no diſtinct object that exhibits to the mind other ideas but thoſe of green, red, blue, &c. but being applied with proportion, and according to the rules of art, they make a whole which repreſents all the figures that one has a mind to draw.

The THINKING FACULTY, which ſhines ſo wonderfully in the invention of ſpeech, conſiſts in conceiving and judging. To *conceive*, or to apprehend, is to have the image of a thing in our mind. To *judge*, is to unite our conceptions or ideas together in declaring that a thing is or is not ſuch. But, as we can conceive either things, or the manner of being of things; as, likewiſe, we can judge of them either ſimply and abſolutely, or with reſtriction and reſpectively to ſome circumſtance or other; ſo four things are to be conſidered in ſpeech:

1*ſt*, That which is ſpoken of, which philoſophers call the SUBJECT.

2*dly*, That which is declared of it, which they call the ATTRIBUTE.

3*dly*, The DECLARATIVE TERM, which joins the attribute to the ſubject.

4*thly*, The CIRCUMSTANCES which may attend the ſubject, the attribute, and the declarative term.

As, for inſtance, when conceiving what learning is, and what uſefulneſs is, I form this judgment, "Learning is uſeful;" *learning* is the *ſubject* I ſpeak of; *uſeful* is what I declare of it (*the attribute*); and *is*—the declarative term, which connects the two other terms together.

Again. When I ſay, "A guilty conſcience is at all times a "very tormenting pain," *a conſcience* is the ſubject I ſpeak of; *a pain*, what I declare of it; and *is*—the declarative term, which connects the attribute and ſubject together. But, beſides that, theſe words, *guilty*, *tormenting*, and *at all times*, are ſo many circumſtances which ſpecify the ſubject which I ſpeak of, what I declare of it, and the declarative term: for I do not ſpeak of conſcience in general, but of a *guilty conſcience*; I do not barely declare that it is a pain, but *a tormenting pain*; nor do I affirm that it is only a tormenting pain, but that it is *at all times* a very tormenting pain; the word *very* being only a circumſtance, which

ſpecifies the word *tormenting*, as this laſt does what ſort of pain I judge a guilty conſcience is.

Whoever reflects ever ſo little, will eaſily be ſenſible that the whole of ſpeech amounts to the expreſſing of thoſe four things only, which conſtitute it, and make all its eſſence. Therefore ſeveral ſorts of expreſſions, or words, muſt needs have been inſtituted to repreſent, not only all the things that can be conceived, and their manners of being, but alſo the judgments which can be made of them, with the modifications of which they are ſuſceptible. It does not follow, nevertheleſs, that one can expreſs no judgment, without making uſe of three or four ſorts of words. For men have naturally a deſire to expreſs their meaning as quick as they can, and a ſpeech the leſs encumbered with words being leſs difficult to be delivered, and even the more perfect, as it draws nearer to the ſimplicity of thinking; ſo they have inſtituted words, in the ſignification whereof is included, at the ſame time, the attribute and the declarative term. In others they have, beſides, included the ſignification of the ſubject. And even they have inſtituted ſome, which expreſs at once the ſubject which they ſpeak of, the attribute which they declare of it, the declarative term, and the circumſtances that modify one or all the three other terms.

Thus in this propoſition, "Man thinks," the word *thinks* includes both the attribute which is declared of the ſubject *man*, and the declarative term; and is as much as to ſay *is thinking*, or *is a thinking being*. Theſe words, *yes*, *no*, *never*, *always*, *certainly*, and a great many others of the ſame kind, which we anſwer to the queſtions that are aſked us, comprenend thoſe very queſtions: ſo that the *yes* or *no* which I anſwer to this queſtion, "Does he "ſtudy?" is as much as if I anſwered, "He ſtudies," or "He "does not ſtudy;" the firſt of which the Latins expreſſed by the ſingle word *ſtudet*, which is equal to "He is ſtudying."

Again. If to this queſtion, "Is a guilty conſcience at all times "a very tormenting pain?" I anſwer *yes*, *yes ſure*, or *certainly*; it is evident that either of theſe expreſſions is as much as if I repeated the whole propoſition without interrogation, "A guilty conſcience "is at all times a very tormenting pain;" and includes therefore a ſubject which I ſpeak of, the attribute I declare of it, the declarative term, and the modifying terms, or the circumſtances which thoſe three terms are attended by.

Neither does it follow that four ſorts of words might have been ſufficient for expreſſing all that can be thought of. For as the

natural desire which men have to convey their ideas quickly, has induced them to invent terms of abbreviation, which, though ever so short, comprehend, nevertheless, whole and long propositions: so the necessity of making themselves understood clearly, and without the least ambiguity, especially in considering and speaking of the several relations which things bear to one another; and the disagreeableness of repeating the same terms too often, has made them invent many others, both for the more fully expressing all that passes in their mind, with the manner of their conceptions, and how they stand affected by them, and for adorning their language.

All the words that men have instituted for representing their thoughts, may be reduced to nine sorts. Grammarians call them in general PARTS *of* SPEECH, because speech, or all that is spoken or written, is composed of those nine sorts of words, to each of which they have given particular names, which shall be explained in the Second Part of this Work.

The several words made use of for expressing what one thinks about a subject, are, all together, called by philosophers, a PROPOSITION, and by grammarians a SENTENCE. And several sentences joined together, in such a manner as the one has a coherency with and dependance upon the other, for the making one entire and complete sense, are called a PERIOD by the latter, and ARGUMENT or REASONING by the others.

Hence may appear the injudicious and false definition of Grammar given by most writers. Logic is the art of thinking, conceiving, or forming ideas. Dialect is the art of speaking, exhibiting our thoughts, or expressing ourselves. Oratory, eloquence, rhetoric (for these terms are synonymous), is the art of persuading. But a Grammar is nothing but the collection of the rules of a language; or (if you like it better) the art of reducing into rules the manner of speaking of a nation.

These things being premised concerning the essence and foundation of languages, we shall consider the sounds and characters of the *French* tongue, the nature of the words of which it is composed, and the use which is to be made of them in speech: three parts into which this Grammar is divided. The First shall treat of Pronunciation and Orthography, or Spelling; the Second of Etymology, or the nature of the Parts of Speech, as likewise of their power and different forms; the Third of the Construction of the same, or their grammatical order, otherwise called Syntax.

PART I.

OF

PRONUNCIATION

AND

ORTHOGRAPHY.

PRONUNCIATION is the expreſſing the ſounds and articulation of a language; as ORTHOGRAPHY is the drawing of them, or repreſenting them with characters.

The ſounds are nothing elſe but the voice, that is, the air emitted out of the lungs, or the breath made ſonorous; from which they are called VOWELS, as *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*.

The vowels, in their way through the mouth, receive modifications, or articulations, from the ſeveral motions of the lips or the tongue; and as theſe articulations cannot be expreſſed, or heard, but jointly with the ſounds, they are called CONSONANTS.

For example, *a* is a vowel, or a ſimple ſound; but *ba* and *ga* are articulated, or compound ſounds; becauſe the motions of the lips in *ba*, and of the tongue in *ga*, affect the vowel *a* with thoſe modifications, or articulations, heard in the ſounds *ba* and *ga*: and thoſe differences of ſounds which are between *ba* or *ga* and the vowel *a*, are what is called conſonants.

The *French* grammarians usually reckon five vowels and nineteen consonants, constituting the alphabet, or table of the letters of the language, in this order, with their true appellations underneath:

a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, o, p,
aw, *bey*, *cey*, *dey*, *ey*, *eff*, *gey*, *ash*, *e*, *kaw*, *ell*, *emm*, *nn*, *oa*, *pey*,
q, r, s, t, u, x, y, z, *and* &, (an abbreviation for *et*),
qu, *err*, *ess*, *tey*, *u*, *ix*, *ee grec*, *zed*.

How erroneous this alphabet is, must needs appear from what has just been said of the sounds and articulations of which speech is formed. Parting from those principles, the *French* language will be found to have seventeen distinct sounds or vowels, though the present alphabet contains these five only, *a*, *é*, *i*, *o*, *u*; and the twelve others, namely, *e*, *è*, *ou*, *â*, *eû*, *ê*, *ô*, *an*, *en*, *in*, *on*, *un*, sounds as simple as the first five, are not so much as taken notice of to the learner. There are one-and-twenty consonants in the language; but the alphabet contains only eighteen, and acquaints you only with fifteen different articulations, as the letters, *c*, *k*, *x*, represent no other articulations than those represented by other consonants: and there remain four others, of which the alphabet gives no manner of knowledge, namely, *ch*, *gn*, *ill*, and *ï* represented by two consonants, each of which serve to represent other articulations.

Most vowels and consonants are represented several ways. For instance, the vowel *è* is represented by *ei* in *peine*, by *ai* in *vaine*, by *oi* in *foible*, &c. the consonant *f* by *ph* in *philosophe*, &c. Some vowels and consonants cannot be represented, for want of proper simple characters, but by several letters. Such are the vowels *ou*, *eu*, (or *eux*), and the five nasal, *an*, *en*, *in*, *on*, *un*, which are also represented several ways, and such the consonants *ch*, *gn*, *ill*, and *ï*. Now each of the letters, which make up these divers combinations, has not the sound or articulation which it has when pronounced by itself: and these letters blended together represent a sound, which has no manner of affinity with those which each of them represent singly. Thus in *au*, *ou*, *eû*, neither the sound of *a*, or of *o*, *e*, nor the sound of *u*, are heard, but only another simple sound very different, represented by these combinations of letters, *au*, *ou*, *eû*. If therefore the master makes his pupils name each of the letters which make up those combinations, he will make them pronounce false sounds, which, as they have no connection or affinity with the true sounds, that

that are to be pronounced, will ſerve only to give them a wrong impreſſion thereof; and by that means to puzzle, confound, and quite diſhearten them.

Since, then, the preſent alphabet does not contain all the ſounds and articulations of the language, nor all the ways of repreſenting them, and yet it is neceſſary for thoſe who learn reading to be acquainted with every one of them, a more rational and eaſy method muſt be thought of to facilitate that knowledge. The following Tables will remedy all the aforeſaid inconveniencies, and thoroughly acquaint a learner of the loweſt capacity with the pronunciation of the *French*.

A TABLE *of the ſimple Sounds of the* French *Language.*

Eight Acute Sounds.

a, e, é, è, i, o, ou, u.

Four Grave.

â, eû, ê, ô.

Five Naſal.

an, en, in, on, un,

e *mute.*

A TABLE *of the* Vowels, *with the several ways of representing or writing them.*

A.	a, à, at, ac, ap, ach, act, &c.
Â.	â, as, ats, ape, acts, acs, achs, &c.
AN.	an, am, en, em, aen, ean, aon, aons, &c.
E.	e, eu, eut, euf, œu, œud, &c.
EÛ.	Eû, eus, eut, eux, œufs, &c.
É.	é, ez, &, ed, er, és, ai, eai, æ, œ, &c.
È.	è, ai, ei, oi, eg, ep, et, oit, &c.
Ê.	ê, es, ès, eſt, ets, aie, aient, ais, oie, ois, eois, eoient, &c.
EN.	en, ain, aim, em, ein, in, im, &c.
I.	i, is, y*, &c.
IN.	in, im, &c.
O.	o, au, eau, &c.
Ô.	ô, aû, aux, &c.
OU.	ou, où, oup, ous, out, &c.
ON.	on, om, um, ons, ont, oon, &c.
U.	u, eu, &c.
UN.	un, eun, um, &c.
E.	(e *mute*) es, ent.

* y *in the middle of words ſtands for two* ii's, *the former whereof belongs to the foregoing Syllable; but the latter denotes a particular articulation, which ſhall be obſerved in the diſſertation upon that letter.*

A TABLE

A TABLE *of the* Consonants, *with the several ways of representing or writing them.*

Five Labial Consonants.

Weak Consonants.	*Strong Consonants.*
M, m, *ma*, *mon*.	mm, ho*mm*e.
B, b, *Bombe*.	P, p. *Pompe*,
V, v. *Vin*, *vivant*.	F, f, ff, PH, ph. *Fin*, a*ff*able, *Ph*are.

Four Hissing.

J, j, G, g (*before* e *and* i). *Jeu*, dis-*je*, *jaugé*.	Ch, ch, sch. *Char*, *chiche*, *schisme*.
Z, z, s (*between two Vowels*). Zizanie, asile.	S, s, ss, ç, C, c (*before* e *and* i). *Sa*, *si*, *son*, la*sse*, re*ç*u, *ceci*.

Five Palatal or Lingual.

N, n, *Nâri*ne.	nn, bo*nn*e.
D, d. *Dindon*.	T, t, tt. *Tinte*, ne*tt*e.
L, l, ll. *La*, *lèvre*, *elle*.	R, r, rr. *Redire*, a*rr*acher.

Two Guttural.

G, g, GU, gu, *Gogue*nard, *gar*re.	Q, q, qu, K, k, C, c. ch. Co*qu*emar, *cap*, *qu*and, *cr*uche, é*ch*o.

Five Liquid.

GU, gu. *Gueux*.	Qu, qu. *Queue*.
	Gn, gn. Ré*gn*a.
ILL, ill, IL, il. Va*ill*ant,	ï. Aïeul, païen.

X, x, *stands for two articulations together, to wit,* gz, *as in* exil, *and* cs, *as in* vexa.

H, h, *is only a note of aspiration in some words, for in most words it is quite mute.*

First

First TABLE *of*

a	â	e	——	é	è	——	i	o	oh!
ha	hâ	—	——	hé	hè	——	hi	ho	——
ma	mâ	me	meux	mé	mè	mê	mi	mo	mô
ba	bâ	be	bœufs	bé	bè	bê	bi	bo	beau
pa	pâ	pe	peux	pé	pè	pê	pi	po	pô
va	vas	ve	vœux	vé	vè	vê	vi	vo	vô
ſa	ſâ	ſe	ſeux	ſé	ſè	ſê	ſi	ſo	ſau
pha	phas	phe	——	phé	phè	phois	phi	pho	——
ja	jâ	je	jeux	jé	jè	jets	ji	jo	jau
gea	geas	ge	geux	gé	gè	gê	gi	—	geo
cha	châ	che	cheux	ché	chè	chê	chi	cho	chau
za	zà	ze	——	zé	zè	——	zi	zo	zô
ſa	ſas	ſe	——	ſé	ſè	——	ſi	ſo	——
ça	ças	ce	ceux	cé	cè	ces	ci	—	ceau
ſa	ſſas	ſſe	ſſeux	ſſé	ſſè	ſes	ſi	ſo	ſots
na	nas	ne	neuſs	né	nè	nê	ni	no	nô
da	dats	de	deux	dé	dè	des	di	do	dos
ta	tâ	te	teux	té	tè	tes	ti	to	tô
la	là	le	leux	lé	lè	les	li	lo	lots
ra	ras	re	reux	ré	rè	rê	ri	ro	rô
ga	gâ	—	——	—	—	——	—	go	gau
gua	guas	gueu	gueux	gué	guè	guê	gui	guo	——
ca	cas	—	——	—	—	——	—	co	cô
qua	quas	que	queue	qué	què	quê	qui	quo	cau
gna	gnas	gne	gneux	gné	gnè	gnê	gni	gno	gneaux
illa	illas	illeu	illeux	illé	illè	illois	illi	illo	illots

SYLLABLES.

ou	u	an	in	on	un
hou	hu	han	hin	hon	hum
mou	mu	mem	min	mon	mun
bou	bu	ban	bain	bon	bun
pou	pu	pam	pin	pon	——
vou	vu	ven	vin	von	——
ſou	ſu	ſan	ſin	ſon	ſun
——	——	phan	phin	phon	——
jou	ju	jean	j'in	jon	jeun
——	——	gen	gin	geon	——
chou	chu	cham	chain	chon	——
zou	——	——	zin	zon	zun
ſou	ſu	ſan	ſin	ſon	ſun
——	çu	cen	cein	çon	——
ſou	ſu	ſem	ſim	ſon	——
nou	nu	nan	nym	non	——
dou	du	dan	din	don	dun
tou	tu	tan	tin	ton	tun
lou	lu	lan	lin	lon	lun
rou	ru	ran	rin	ron	——
gou	gu	gan	gain	gon	——
——	——	guan	guim	guon	——
cou	cu	can	cain	con	cun
qu'ou	qu'u	quan	quin	qu'on	qu'un
——	——	gnan	gnin	gnon	——
——	——	illan	——	illon	——

Second

Second TABLE *of*

Consonants which are coupled together.

bl pl fl gl cl br pr vr fr phr dr tr gr cr
chr ct ctr sp squ pf sc scr st str

bla	blâ	ble	bleus	blé	blet	blê	bli	blo	blô
pla	plâ	ple	——	plé	plai	plets	pli	plo	plots
fla	flâ	fle	——	flé	floit	flois	fli	flo	flots
gla	glas	gle	——	glé	glet	glets	gli	glo	glots
cla	clats	cle	——	clé	clai	claie	cli	clo	clau
bra	bras	bre	breux	bré	broit	broient	bri	bro	brocs
pra	prâ	pre	preux	pré	pret	près	pri	pro	prô
vra	vras	vre	——	vré	vrai	vraie	vri	vro	vreau
phra	frâ	fre	freux	fré	frè	frê	fri	fro	au
dra	dras	dre	dreux	dré	dret	drois	dri	dro	drô
tra	tras	tre	——	tré	trai	trê	tri	tro	——
gra	gras	gre	——	gré	grè	grê	gri	gro	gros
cra	crâ	cre	creux	cré	cret	crê	cri	cro	crocs
cta	ctas	cte	——	cté	ctoit	ctois	cti	cto	——
spa	—	—	——	spé	spoit	spois	spi	spo	——
sca	scâ	sque	——	squé	squoit	squoient	squi	sco	——
sta	stas	ste	——	sté	stoit	stoient	sti	sto	——
stra	—	—	——	stré	stroit	stroient	stri	stro	——
ctri	—	spla	——	splen	——	——	scru	psa	——

SYLLABLES.

x, *pronounced with the double articulation of* cs. xa, xe, xé, xè, xi, xo, xan, xin, xon.

x, *pronounced with the double articulation of* gz. xa, xè, xi, xo, xen.

blou	blu	blan	blin	blon	——
plou	plu	plan	plein	plom	——
flou	flu	flan	flin	flon	——
glou	glu	glan	glin	glon	——
clou	clu	clan	clin.	clon	——
brou	bru	bran	brin	bron	brun
prou	pru	pren	prin	prom	prun
——	——	vran	vrin	vron	——
frou	fru	fran	frin	fron	——
drou	dru	dran	drin	dron	——
trou	tru	tran	trin	tron	——
grou	gru	gran	grin	gron	——
crou	cru	cran	crin	cron	——
——	ctu	ctan	ctin	cton	——
ſpou	——	ſpan	ſpin	ſpon	——
ſcou	ſcu	ſcan	ſquin	ſquon	——
——	ſtu	ſtan	ſtin	ſton	——
——	ſtru	ſtran	ſtrin	ſtron	——
pſeau	pſa	pſi	pſo	——	——

A TABLE

A TABLE *of all the* Monosyllables *in the* French *Language.*

a,	brun,	clef,	cours,	Dieux,	fut,	gril,	Juin,
ai,	broc,	clerc,	coups,	doigts,	fin,	glu,	joint,
ais,	brin,	chair,	coing,	deux,	font,	gré,	Juif,
ait,	bois,	craie,	coud,	doux,	faim,	Grec,	joug,
as,	boit,	croc,	court,	dur,	fond,	gant,	jeu,
au,	bal,	crois,	cœur,	dut,	feins,	gens,	jeux.
an,	bu,	croix,	cran,	Dreux,	fonds,	gond,	
ail,	bref,	croit,	chœur,	Dol,	fri,	geai,	la,
arc,	bus,	coi,	creux.	deuil.	froc,	gît,	le,
aux,	buis,	coin,			frit,	gain,	les,
art,	but,	choc,			fat,	grain,	lac,
air,	blanc,	ceint,	de,	en,	foin,	groin,	lacs,
Août.	bled,	cru,	des,	eu,	fit,	gué,	lard,
	brut.	cri,	dé,	es,	franc,	goût,	las,
bac,		crin,	dans,	eut,	frein,	gai,	leur,
bar,	car,	crut,	dors,	est,	frais,	guet,	lois,
bas,	cal,	cris,	dont,	eau,	foi,	gueux,	lier,
bat,	ça,	craint,	dort,	eux,	fief,		lieu,
bain,	ce,	Christ,	dos,	eaux,	fois,	hais,	lien,
bats,	cet,	cieux,	don,	et, &,	froid,	haut,	liant,
bail,	ces,	coq,	dot,	EST.	Foix,	hier,	Luc,
baux,	ceux,	cerf,	du,		fort,	hart,	lent,
banc,	ciel,	clin,	donc,		fuis,	hem,	lin,
bec,	cep,	cerfs,	dais,	fi,	flot,	hors,	lis,
beau,	cor,	cuir,	dam,	fard,	fleur,	huis,	long,
bel,	camp,	chez,	dard,	fil,	flots,	huit.	lit,
bien,	Cam,	cuis,	dent,	fils,	fou,		Linx,
bis,	corps,	choir,	dix,	fer,	fleurs,	je,	legs,
bon,	chat,	chou,	dis,	fiel,	feu,	jet,	lu,
bouc,	champ,	cuit,	drap,	faon,	feux,	j'ai,	lot,
bous,	chats,	choux,	dit,	se fier,	front,	Jean,	loin,
bord,	chant,	clos,	daim,	fier,	four,	j'eus,	lots,
bout,	char,	cent,	draps,	faut,	flux.	il,	laid,
bourg,	cher,	cinq,	dru,	flanc,		jour,	lus,
bœuf,	chaux,	clou,	dois,	fais,	gai,	ils,	lait,
bras,	chef,	cous,	dû,	faix,	grand,	jours,	lut,
bœufs,	chaud,	clous,	doit,	faux,	gras,	jeun,	loi,
bleu,	chien,	cou,	Dieu,	fait,	gris,	jus,	lui,
blond,	choix,	cour,	doigt,	fus,	gros,	joins,	louer,
bleus,	clair,	coup,	droit,	fis,	gland,	jonc,	loup,

lourd,	ne,	œufs,	prend,	rats,	s'en,	tout,	val,
loups,	nez,	œil.	pond,	ris,	fus,	tort,	veaux,
ma,	nais,		pris,	roc,	fein,	tous,	vos,
mal,	né,		prit,	rit,	fur,	tords,	viens,
me,	niais,	pal,	près,	rôt,	feing,	Turc,	ver,
mes,	nain,	pas,	prix,	rang,	fors,	tonds,	vers,
mais,	neuf,	pin,	plut,	rend,	fuc,	temps,	vœu,
moi,	nos,	pain,	plaît,	Rhin,	fort,	tint,	vert,
mon,	neufs,	paix,	pleut,	rond,	fix,	tend,	veux,
mien,	nous,	pais,	par,	rapt,	Sud,	tein,	voir,
miel,	ni,	pis,	pieu,	reins,	fis,	tien,	veut,
mieux,	nef,	pait,	perd,	romb,	fait,	tends,	vois,
m'ont,	nid,	peau,	prêt,	rien,	Seth,	tronc,	voit,
mois,	nu,	plat,	perds,	romps,	fauf,	troc,	voix,
m'en,	nids,	pot,	plis,	rieur,	Saul,	trop,	vais,
moins,	nerf,	plus,	pied,	roi,	feau,	très,	vas,
marc,	non,	pu,	pair,	rois,	fien,	trot,	vin,
mil,	net,	pots,	pieds,	Ruth.	fied,	tu,	vif,
Mars,	nom,	pus,	poix,		fieur,	t'en,	vins,
mot,	Nil,	peaux,	peur,		fois,	traits,	vit,
Mons,	Nord,	peu,	puits,	fa,	foif,	tard,	vingt,
Metz,	naît,	Paul,	pleurs,	fe,	foit,	trait,	vis,
mont,	nuit,	poil,	poux,	fon,	foin,	Tyr,	vint,
met,	nul,	peut,	pour,	fac,	foir,	toît,	vil,
mut,	nuis,	puis,	pur.	fain,	fou,	trois,	vol,
mets,	noir,	point,		facs,	fuif,	toîts,	vent,
meurs,	noix,	pieu,	quand,	fel,	fous,	tas,	veuf,
meut,	nœud,	pend,	que,	fes,	feoir,	tais,	vends,
mer,	nœuds.	plan,	quel,	faint,	fourd,	train,	vain,
mort,		part,	qui,	fi,	feul,	teint,	vu,
maux,		peins,	qu'il,	faut,	ftuc,	taux,	vaut,
mords,	on,	port,	qu'en,	fot,	fœur,	thym,	vient,
mur,	or,	plains,	qu'a,	fots,	feuil.	toux,	vain,
muids,	ou,	peint,	queue,	fec,		tiers,	vaux,
mœurs,	ont,	porc,	quoi,	fers,	ta,	tour,	vieux,
Mai,	où,	parts,	qu'un,	fans,	ton,	trou,	vont,
main,	os,	plaint,	qu'on,	fon,	te,	tut,	vous,
mus,	oie,	plais,	queux.	fert,	thé,	Turcs.	vrai.
mains,	oing,	plein,		fang,	tes,		
mot,	oui,	pan,	ras,	font,	thon,	va,	yeux.
mou,	ours,	plomb,	rat,	fent,	tel,	van,	
maint.	œuf,	pont,	rets,	faints,	toi,	veau,	Zeft.

First

First TABLE *of the Consonants which are pronounced at the end of Syllables.*

b.	A*b*sent, su*b*venir, radoub, Acha*b*, Jo*b*, &c. *rumb* de Vent, (pron. rom*b*.)
c.	Ave*c*, éche*c*, aspe*c*t, Mar*c*, Ar*c*, *(but not in* arc-boutant) sa*c*, *(though not in* un sa*c* de blè) fro*c*, Tro*c*, &c.
f. and *ph*.	Che*f*, vi*f*, soi*f*, réti*f*, Asa*ph*, Jose*ph*, &c.
l.	Calcu*l*, fi*l*, poi*l*, se*l*, seu*l*, &c. *This consonant has a liquid articulation at the end of* Avri*l*, babi*l*, Brési*l*, grési*l*, mi*l*, péri*l*: *as likewise in these syllables*, ai*l*, ei*l*, uei*l*, eui*l*, oui*l*, *as in* mai*l*, sole*il*, écue*il*, deu*il*, trava*il*, and trava*ill*er, fenou*il*, *and in* gent*il*homme.
r.	Ca*r*, avoi*r*, ai*r*, auteu*r*, fe*r*, hive*r*, cuille*r*, enfe*r*, s'asseoi*r*, &c. Jupite*r*, Luthe*r*, Cranme*r*, &c.
y.	*This letter stands for two* ii's, *in the middle of words, as* voyons, mo*y*en, essa*y*er, nous emplo*y*ons, fu*y*ard, ennu*y*eux, &c.

First

First TABLE *of the Words wherein the same Consonants are dropt at the End of Syllables.*

b. Plom*b*.

c. Almana*ch*, cotigna*c*, cle*rc*, éche*cs*, estoma*c*, ba*nc*, bla*nc*, bro*c*, fla*nc*, fra*nc*, (*except in* franc arbitre, *and* franc alleu) instin*ct*, jo*nc*, un ma*rc*, respe*cts*, taba*c*, cro*c*, (*except in* croc-en jambe) *and* du po*rc*, (*except in* porc-épic, *wherein the first* c *is pronounced.*)

f. Apprenti*f*, Cle*f*, che*f*-d'œuvre, Baillí*f*, bœu*fs*, œu*fs*, neu*fs*, ce*rf*.

l. Bari*l*, cheni*l*, couti*l*, cu*l*, un fi*ls*, fusi*l*, genti*l*, gri*l*, nombri*l*, outi*l*, persi*l*, le pou*ls*, saou*l* *and* sourci*l*.

r. Monsieu*r* *and* messieu*rs*, (*though* r *is pronounced in* le sieur, les sieurs,) volontie*rs*, danger, berger, Barbier, (*with all nouns in* er, *without excepting the French proper Names, as* Didier, Roger, &c.) : *as also* er *at the end of infinitives, as* chanter, &c.

ï. *This letter has in the following words the very same articulation as in the English words* yacht, yell, yon.

Aïeul, baïonette, caïeu, camaïeu, faïence, glaïeul, païen, tavaïolle, Baïard, Baïeux, Baïonne, Caïenne, *and* Caïette.

Second TABLE *of the Consonants that are usually dropt at the End of Syllables.*

m. *This consonant usually makes the foregoing vowel a nasal one, as in* cha*m*bre, me*m*bre, ti*m*bre, o*m*bre, no*m*, reno*m*, parfu*m*, &c.

p. dra*p*, se*p*t, beaucou*p*, tro*p*, cou*p*, cam*p*, lou*p*, com*p*te, exem*p*t, prom*p*t, prom*p*tement, tem*p*s, &c.

s. *This consonant usually makes the foregoing vowel broad, as in* app*as*, pal*ais*, effets, rep*os*, &c.

d. lai*d*, froi*d*, chau*d*, mui*d*, ni*d*, pie*d*, four*d*, fon*d*, &c.

t. bâ*t*, mâ*t*, effe*t*, li*t*, veu*t*, mo*t*, bu*t*, goû*t*, tan*t*, ouver*t*, e*t*, e*st*, &c.

n. *This consonant usually makes the foregoing vowel a nasal one, as in* bie*n*, *ente*ndre, pla*n*, fi*n*, bru*n*, &c.

g. doi*g*t, leg*s*, vin*g*t, lon*g*, ran*g*, faubour*g*, &c.

x. pai*x*, pri*x*, chevau*x*, la tou*x*, des chou*x*, &c.

z. *This consonant gives the sound of* é *to the preceding* e, *as in* aff*ez*, all*ez*, vous lis*ez*, &c.

Second

Second TABLE *of the Words wherein these Consonants are pronounced at the End of Syllables.*

m. hem, item, Amsterdam, Abraham, Cham, Matusalem, Sélim, Stockholm, *with all proper names, except* Adam *and* Absalom.

p. cap, julep, Gap, *with* beaucoup *and* trop, *before a word beginning with a vowel, as* trop obligeant.

s. as, anus, agnus, bis, bibus, blocus, calus, gratis, iris, orémus, ours, phébus, rébus, finus, virus, vis, Amos, Cérès. Pallas, Vénus, *and all proper names.*

d. addition, reddition, Sud, Ephod, David, &c. *It takes the articulation of* t *in* quand, *and adnouns before nouns beginning with a vowel; as likewise in the third persons singular of Verbs, before* il, elle, on; *as also in* de fond en comble.

t. brut, de but en blanc, correct, direct, dot, exact, échec & mat, Est, *and* Ouest, fat, un fait, pact, rapt, sot, zénith, Brest, &c.

n. ennemi, innè, innover, abdomen, amen, examen, hymen, *and in all proper names.*

g. Bourg-mestre, Agag, Sarug, *and all proper names: and* g *takes the articulation of* k *or* qu *in* suer sang & eaû, le sang & le carnage, long espâce; un Bourg; *but it is silent in* faubourg *and other compounds.*

x. *This consonant has the articulation of* cs *in* Ajax, Alix, Anthrax, Béatrix, du borax, Félix, Linx, le larinx, onix, le pharinx, phénix, préfix, perplex, Pollux, Siphax, Sphinx, Styx, Storax. *It takes the hissing sound of* s *in* Cadix; *and that of* z *at the end of adnouns before nouns beginning with a vowel, or* h *mute, as in* doux amusement, heureux homme.

z. *This consonant takes the hissing articulation of* s *in these proper names,* Booz, Rodez, Sénez, Usez; *but it is dropt in* Rez, Sèez, *and* Vivarez *(when so spelt).*

A TABLE *of the combinations of the letters which compose the Syllables, or of the divers forms and various shapes which one and the same sound can receive.*

OBserve, 1*st*, that though one and the same sound can receive divers forms, and be represented in writing many various ways, yet one cannot indifferently spell a word or syllable in such or such a manner. Thus *an* (year) cannot be spelt like *en* (in); nor *dans* (in) like *dent* or *dents* (teeth); though *an* and *en*, *dans*, *dent* and *dents*, have one and the same sound; this table shewing only the circumstances, or rather words, wherein a certain number of letters, coupled together, express only the sound that is at the head of that class.

2*dly*, That those various ways of spelling one and the same sound, seldom take place, except in the final syllables of words, and that too, saving the observations that shall be made, in their proper places, about final consonants.

Sounds.	*Words wherein the sounds are found.*	
	a	
	sounded like a *in* at *and* ally.	
a.	il *a*,	*he has.*
à.	*à* Paris,	*at Paris.*
ac.	tab*ac*,	*tobacco.*
ach.	Alman*ach*,	*Almanack.*
al.	arsen*al*,	*storehouse of arms.*
ap.	dr*ap*,	*cloth.*
as.	un br*as**,	*an arm.*
at.	ch*at*,	*cat.*
	â	
	sounded like a *in* all, *or* aw *in* law.	
â.	de la p*â*te,	*dough.*
acs.	des l*acs*†,	*nets.*
achs.	alman*achs*,	*almanacks.*
aps.	des dr*aps*,	*sheets.*
as.	des br*as*,	*arms.*
ât.	un *mât*,	*a mast.*
âts.	des *mâts*,	*masts.*
	an	
	sounded like an *in* want.	
an.	un *an*,	*a year.*
anc.	bl*anc*,	*white.*
ancs.	des b*ancs*,	*benches.*
and.	un tisser*and*,	*a weaver.*
ands.	des gl*ands*,	*acorns.*
ang.	du s*ang*,	*blood.*
angs.	les *étangs*,	*the ponds.*
ans.	d*ans*,	*in.*
ant.	dev*ant*,	*before.*
ants.	sav*ants*,	*learned.*

* It is only in this word that *as* has the slender acute sound of *a*, every where else *as* has the broad grave sound of *â*.

† *a* is sounded in *lacs* (and *a* is slender, acute, and short) when it signifies *lakes*.

am.

Sounds.	*Words wherein the sounds are found.*	
am.	Ad*am*,	*Adam.*
amp.	un c*amp*,	*a camp.*
amps.	les c*hamps*,	*the fields.*
en.	*en*tre,	*between.*
eng.	un har*eng*,	*a herring.*
engs.	des har*engs*,	*herrings.*
end.	il pr*end*,	*he takes.*
ends.	tu r*ends*,	*thou rendereſt.*
ens.	g*ens*,	*people.*
ent.	c*ent*,	*an hundred.*
ents.	les d*ents*,	*the teeth.*
em.	*em*ploi,	*employment.*
empt.	ex*empt*,	*exempt* (or)
empts.	ex*empts*,	*free.*
emps.	le t*emps*,	*the time.*
aen.	Caen, (*the name of a city.*)	
ean.	J*ean*,	*John.*
aon.	un fa*on*,	*a fawn.*
aons.	des p*aons*,	*peacocks.*

e

ſounded like e *in* her.

e.	le,	*the, him, it.*
	je,	*I.*
eu.	jeu,	*play.*
	jeune,	*young.*
euf.	v*euf*,	*a widower.*
eut.	il p*eut*,	*he can.*
œ.	œillet,	*pink.*
	œil,	*eye.*
œu.	un v*œu*,	*a vow.*
œud.	un n*œud*,	*a knot.*
œuf.	un b*œuf*,	*an ox.*
œuf.	un *œuf*,	*an egg.*
ue.	un éc*ueil*,	*ſands.*

eux.

eû.	jeûne,	*a feaſt.*
eux.	les f*eux*,	*the fires.*
eufs.	habits n*eufs*,	*new coats.*

Sounds.	*Words wherein the ſounds are found.*	
œux.	v*œux*,	*vows.*
œufs.	des *œufs*.	*eggs.*
	des b*œufs*,	*oxen.*
eut*.	il v*eut*,	*he is willing.*

eur.

ſounded like er *in* ſummer, &c.

eur.	une fl*eur*,	*a flower.*
eurs.	des pl*eurs*,	*tears.*
heur.	bon*heur*,	*happineſs.*
heurs.	mal*heurs*,	*misfortunes.*
œur.	le c*œur*,	*the heart.*
hœurs.	des ch*œurs*,	*choirs.*
eurre.	du b*eurre*,	*butter.*
heure.	une h*eure*,	*an hour.*
eures.	dem*eures*,	*abodes.*
eurent.	ils m*eurent*,	*they die.*

œil.

œil.	un *œil*,	*an eye.*
euil.	le d*euil*,	*the mourning.*
ueil.	éc*ueil*,	*ſands.*
euils.	faut*euils*,	*great chairs.*
euilles.	des f*euilles*,	*leaves.*
ueilles.	tu c*ueilles*,	*thou pickeſt.*
ueillent.	ils rec*ueillent*,	*they gather.*

é

ſounded like a *in* fate.

é.	vérité	*truth.*
ed.	un pi*ed*,	*a foot.*
eds.	les pi*eds*,	*the feet.*
ef.	une cl*ef*,	*a key.*
efs.	des cl*efs*,	*keys.*
er.	don*ner*,	*to give.*
ers.	dang*ers*,	*dangers.*
és.	les fant*és*	*the toaſts.*
ez.	vous lis*ez*,	*you read.*
et *or* &,		*and.*

* In any other word *eut* ſounds like eu in jeu.

Sounds.	Words wherein the sounds are found.	
ai.	j'*ai*,	*I have.*
eai.	je mang*eai*,	*I ate.*
æ.	Ægypte,	*Egypt.*
œ.	œconomie,	*œconomy.*

è

sounded like e *in* bell, fed, pen, &c.

e.	*e*lle	*she.*
ai.	vr*ai*,	*true.*
ay.	M*ay*,	*May.*
ei.	p*ei*ne,	*a pain.*
aid.	l*aid*,	*ugly.*
ait.	f*ait*,	*made.*
et.	eff*et*,	*effect.*

oi

a double sound like wea *in* sweat.

oi.	m*oi*, t*oi*,	*I, thou.*
oit.	il d*oit*,	*he owes.*
oigt.	un d*oigt*,	*a finger.*
ouet.	un f*ouet*,	*a whip.*
ouhait.	un *souhait*,	*a wish.*
ouoit.	il l*ouoit*,	*he did praise.*

è, ê

sounded like e *in* were, there, &c.

es.	tu *es*,	*thou art.*
ès.	trè*s*, *most.*	thè*se*, *thesis.*
ê.	fê*te*,	*a feast.*
ai.	m*aî*tre,	*master.*
ais.	fr*ais*,	*fresh.*
aie.	futa*ie*,	*lofty trees.*
aies.	pl*aies*,	*wounds.*
aît.	il pl*aît*,	*it pleases.*
aits.	des tr*aits*,	*features.*
êt.	pr*êt*,	*ready.*
ets.	val*ets*,	*servants.*
aids.	l*aids*,	*ugly.*
aix.	p*aix*,	*peace.*
ecs.	éch*ecs*,	*chess.*

Sounds.	Words wherein the sounds are found.	
egs.	des l*egs*,	*legacies.*
est.	il *est*,	*he is.*
êts.	des for*êts*,	*forests.*
oî.	conn*oî*tre,	*to know.*
oie.	mon*noie*,	*coin.*
oient.	ils di*soient*,	*they said.*
ois.	je li*sois*,	*I did read.*
eois.	je chang*eois*,	*I did change.*
eoient.	ils mang*eoient*,	*they did eat.*

oi

a double sound pretty near like why.

oie.	la v*oie*,	*the way.*
oye.	une *oie*,	*a goose.*
ois.	du b*ois*,	*wood.*
oix.	une n*oix*.	*a walnut.*
oids.	le p*oids*,	*the weight.*
oigts.	les d*oigts*,	*the fingers.*
ouets.	f*ouets*,	*whips.*
ouhaits.	des *souhaits*,	*wishes.*
ouoient.	ils l*ouoient*,	*they praised.*

er

sounded like ere.

er.	du f*er*,	*iron.*
ers.	les m*ers*,	*the seas.*
air.	l'*air*,	*the air.*
airs.	des *airs*,	*tunes.*
aire.	f*aire*,	*to do.*
erc.	un cl*erc*,	*a clerk.*
ercs.	des cl*ercs*,	*clerks.*
erds.	tu p*erds*,	*thou loseſt.*
erf.	un c*erf*,	*a stag.*
erfs.	les c*erfs*,	*the stags.*
ert.	un dé*sert*,	*a desart.*
erts.	des*serts*,	*desserts.*

ère.

Sounds.	Words wherein the sounds are found.	
ère.	un p*ère*,	*a father.*
ères.	des fr*ères*,	*brothers.*
èrent.	ils esp*èrent*,	*they hope.*
erre.	la *terre*,	*the earth.*
uères.	gu*ères*,	*seldom.*
aires.	aff*aires*,	*affairs.*
airent.	ils fl*airent*,	*they smell.*
errent.	ils f*errent*,	*they shoe.*

oir

a double sound almost like war *in* warm.

oir.	n*oir*,	*black.*
oire.	gl*oire*,	*glory.*
oires.	des f*oires*,	*fairs.*
eoires.	nag*eoires*,	*fins.*
oirent.	ils f*oirent*,	*they squitter.*

être.

être.	champ*être*,	*rural.*
êtres.	fen*êtres*,	*windows.*
aître.	n*aître*,	*to be born.*
aîtres.	m*aîtres*,	*masters.*

i

sounded like i *in* bit, fit, filial, &c.

i.	*ici*,	*here.*
y.	il *y* a,	*there is.*
ie.	la l*ie*,	*the dreg.*
ies.	des poul*ies*,	*pullies.*
ient.	ils l*ient*,	*they tie.*
id.	un n*id*,	*a nest.*
ids.	des m*uids*,	*hogsheads.*
il.	chen*il*,	*a dog-kennel.*
ils.	le f*ils*,	*the son.*
is.	des am*is*,	*friends.*
it.	il d*it*,	*he says.*

Sounds.	Words wherein the sounds are found.	
its.	des hab*its*,	*clothes.*
ix.	le pr*ix*,	*the price.*

in

sounded like en *in* length, *or* ain *in* saint.

in.	du v*in*,	*wine.*
ins.	tu v*ins*,	*thou cameſt.*
aim.	la f*aim*,	*hunger.*
aims.	des d*aims*,	*deers.*
ain.	du p*ain*,	*bread.*
ains.	tu cr*ains*,	*thou feareſt.*
aint.	*saint*,	*holy.*
aints.	les S*aints*,	*the Saints.*
eim.	Rh*eims*,	*(a French city.)*
ein.	f*ein*dre,	*to feign.*
eint.	c*eint*,	*girt.*
eints.	t*eints*,	*dyed.*
int.	il t*int*,	*he held.*
inct.	l'inst*inct*,	*the instinct.*
ingt.	v*ingt*.	*twenty.*
im.	le t*im*bre,	*the stamp.*

ien, *or*

en *after* i, *making a double sound.*

ien.	b*ien*,	*well.*
iens.	tu v*iens*,	*thou comeſt.*
ient.	il t*ient*,	*he holds.*

oin

or in *after* o, *making a double sound pretty near like* wen *in* went.

oin.	du f*oin*,	*hay.*
oins.	m*oins*,	*leſs.*
oint.	p*oint*,	*not.*
oints.	des p*oints*,	*ſtitches.*
oing.	le p*oing*,	*the fiſt.*

Words difficult to pronounce.

car, gâre, qualité, caſſe, gai, geai, quai, gué, marqué, guet, loquet, guêtres, laquais, qu'eſt-ce, caiſſe, gain, Vulcain, publiquain, guindé, le quint, quintal, gueux, queue, belliqueux, vigueur, vainqueur, aigu, cu, qu'un, reçu, gui, qui, quoi, aigues, figue, vogue, guidant, figuier, viguier, Echiquier, Perruquier, moyen, Roi, royal, voyons, voyions, payons, payions, pays, paye, Abbaye, ayant, aïeul, faïence, Naïade, Pleïades, louions, ſuppléions, de l'ail, mail, éventail, attirail, éventails, travail, travailler, travaillons, de la paille, des mailles, Verſailles, qu'ils aillent, taille, Tailleur, elle, une aile, ſoleil, pareil, abeille, bouteilles, veiller, veillant, ils veillent, qu'ils veuillent, oſeille, treille, ſeul, ſeuil, deuil, feuille, cerfeuil, fauteuils, écuelle, écueil, linceul, recueil, l'œil, ouille, ouaille, veille, vielle, vieille, quille, anguille, aiguïlle, du fil, le fils, une fille, coine, cogner, je cogne, baigner, régnant, ils règnent, hargneux, une oie, monnoie, grenouille, ils fouillent.

After exhibiting, in the preceding tables, all the ſounds and articulations of the *French* language, we ſhall, in the following ſection, treat of each ſound and articulation ſeparately, and conſider, in the minuteſt manner, 1*ſt*, the *Vowels*, 2*dly*, the *Diphthongs*, 3*dly*, the *Naſal Vowels*, 4*thly*, the *Conſonants*; and 5*thly*, conclude with the ſeveral *Marks* uſed in writing *French Abbreviations*, &c.

SECTION I.

Of the ſounds expreſſed by the ſix vowels, a, e, i, o, u, y, *when not attended in the ſame ſyllable by another vowel, which makes them* Diphthongs, *nor followed by* n *or* m, *which makes them* Naſal.

a.

THIS letter receives two alterations or two ſounds: the one acute, ſlender, and commonly ſhort; the other grave, broad, and always long; as they are expreſſed in theſe two words, *matin*, and *mâtin*, and theſe *Engliſh* words, *at*, *fat*, *rat*, *mad*, *alley*, and *all*, *awe*, *law*. *a* grave and broad is uſually marked over with a circumflex, thus *(â)*: or followed by a ſingle *s*, thus *pas*; and its derivatives *paſſer*, *ſurpaſſer*, &c. though there are two *s*'s. Whenever *a* is named or ſpelt by itſelf, it is always by the grave and broad ſound *(un â*, an a.)

In

In the ſyllables *ail* and *aille*, *a* keeps its ſound, as we ſhall ſee in its place; and it is always ſhort when 'tis followed by *il* only (*ail*), and grave and long when followed by *ille* (*aille*). Therefore, it takes its acute and ſhort ſound in *mail*, a mall, and the grave and long one in *maille*, a ſtitch; except in *médaille*, *ailleurs*, *d'ailleurs*, wherein *a* is acute and ſhort.

This obſervation is not ſo ſtrictly applicable to *ail* and *aille* when they meet in the middle of words. One may however ſay in general, that if the word is a *Derivative*, whether noun or verb, one muſt conſider the final ſyllable of the *Primitive*, for *ail* and *aille* keep in the Derivative the ſame ſound which they have at the end of the Primitive. Thus *a* is acute and ſhort in *il travaille*, and *ils travaillent* (he works, they work), though at the end of words, becauſe that verb is derived from *travail*, wherein *a* is acute and ſhort: and for the ſame reaſon it is acute and ſhort too in the middle of the words of the ſame verb *travailler* to work, *nous travaillons* we work, &c. Thus again *a* is grave and long in *tailler* to cut, *tailleur* a taylor, *paillaſſe* a ſtraw-bed, &c. becauſe it is ſo too in the Primitive *taille* cut, *paille* ſtraw.

As for theſe perſons of *aller* to go, *qu'il aille* let him go, *qu'ils aillent* let them go, *a* muſt be grave and long there by its nature, becauſe theſe perſons are irregularly formed, without being derived from any Primitive of that termination.

a followed by *y* don't make altogether a vowel or a ſyllable, becauſe *y* ſtands for two *i*'s, the firſt whereof is joined to *a*, and makes the improper diphthong *ai*, as in *pays* country, which is pronounced as if it was writ *pai is*: the ſpelling of that word and ſome others like with a ſingle *ï* with two dots over it, as is but too commonly met with in books, is contrary to the analogy of the language.

e.

This vowel expreſſes ſix different ſounds, at leaſt, in *French*, which, for clearneſs ſake, I'll call the firſt *e guttural*, on account of its receiving its ſound ſo immediately through the throat; the ſecond *mute*, becauſe it is not ſounded; the third *acute*; the fourth *grave*; the fifth *circumflex*; and the ſixth *intermediate*, that is, open and ſhort; as in *belle*, *dentelle*, *bleſſer*, *peine*, *haleine*, *effet*, &c. Whenever this letter is named by itſelf, 'tis always by the acute ſound (*un é*, an e.)

e guttural.

e guttural is never accented. It is found in the monoſyllables *je*, *me*, *ne*, *te*, *le*, *que*, *de*, &c. in the two firſt ſyllables of *recevoir* ſpelt by themſelves, and in a great many other words, wherein it

cannot

cannot be ſounded like one of the *e*'s accented; I mean, neither acute nor grave, but has a ſound peculiar to itſelf. That *e* is uſually dropt in common converſation; as *je dis*, I ſay, pronounce as if it was ſpelt *j'dis*. But when two or three of theſe monoſyllables meet together, one of them at leaſt muſt be ſounded, either the firſt or the laſt, as *je ne le veux pas*, I won't, pronounce *je n'l'veux pas*, or better *je n'le veux pas*. In this laſt ſentence, as well as in repeating verſes, and eſpecially in the particle *de* in theſe words, *ordre* de *demeurer* de*hors*, order to ſtay without doors, that *e* expreſſes a ſound exactly the ſame as that of the improper diphthong *eu* as expreſſed in the word *jeu*, play, theſe two monoſyllables *je* and *jeu* being pronounced alike. And the ſound *e* or *eu* is almoſt the ſame ſound expreſſed in the *Engliſh* monoſyllable *her* (which is pronounced almoſt like the *French* word *heure*), and the laſt vowel of theſe words, *dinner*, *ſummer*, *maker*, *porter*, *parlour*, &c. theſe *Engliſh* ſyllables anſwering moſt preciſely to the *French* ones *neur*, *meur*, *heur*, *teur*, *leur*. The only difference is, that the *Engliſh* make it an obtuſe, deafened, and exceedingly rapid ſound, the laſt conſonant of which is articulated very ſtrong: whereas the *French* do not articulate the conſonant ſo much, and expreſs the ſound quite full, and dwell upon it longer. But whether the accent is upon a ſyllable or no; whether the conſonants, which enter into the compoſition of the ſyllable, are articulated or not; the ſound is, and muſt needs be, the ſame.

There is ſuch a vaſt variety in the contractions of that *e*, and wherein it is not pronounced, as can be learnt only by hearing one read and ſpeak who has the true *French* accent. But beſides the dropping of *e* guttural in the aforeſaid ſyllable, there are more particular caſes, as in the middle and end of words, wherein it muſt not be ſounded at all; and 'tis in that quality only it has been hitherto conſidered by our Grammarians, under the appellation of *e mute*, or not ſounded.

e mute.

e mute is more particularly met with in the middle and the end of words, either alone, as in nouns and adnouns of the feminine gender and ſingular number, as *âme* ſoul; *belle* fine; or followed by *s*, or even *nt*, as in all the plural numbers and in verbs, as *âmes* ſouls, *tu parles* thou ſpeakeſt, *ils aiment* they love; or, in fine, preceded by another vowel, as in *vie* life, *armée* an army. In all which caſes *e* diſcharges no other part than does the final *e* of theſe *Engliſh* words, *love*, *life*, *done*, *ſame*, *prince*, &c. wherein it

it is not founded at all: only in the latter case it causes the preceding vowel to be drawn out somewhat longer.

e is suppressed both in pronunciation and writing.

1*st*, In all monosyllables before a word beginning with a vowel or *h* not aspirated, and it is supply'd by an *apostrophe* thus:

l'enfant,	the child,	instead of	*le enfant*,
l' homme,	the man,		*le homme*,
j'*aime*,	I love,		*je aime*,
il n'aime pas,	he don't love,		*il ne aime pas*,
l'amour qu'elle a,	the love she has,		*le amour que elle a*, &c.

The *apostrophe* is also put after *parce-que*, and *jusque*, when a vowel follows: as *parce qu'il est*, because he is; *jusqu'à demain*, till-morrow: and likewise after *lorsque*, *puisque*, *quoique*.

2*dly*, In the adnoun *grande* before the following nouns, tho' beginning with a consonant,

grand'mère,	grandmother,	*grand'pitié*,	great pity,
grand'chambre,	large chamber,	*grand'part*,	great share,
grand'salle,	large hall,	*grand'messe*,	high mass,
grand'chère,	great cheer,	*à grand'peine*,	with much difficulty, hardly,
grand'faim,	great hunger,	*ce n'est pas grand'chose*,	'tis no great matter.
grand'soif,	great thirst,		
grand'peur,	great fear or fright,		

It is better, in writing, to make no elision at the end of *grande* before these words, especially when this adnoun is preceded by one of these particles, *une*, *la*, *plus*, *très*, *fort*: nay, excepting *grand'mère*, and *grand'messe*, when *une* comes before, 'tis better to pronounce *grande* than *grand*. Therefore, write and pronounce *une grande chambre*, *le plus grande chère*, *très-grande peur*, &c.

Those cases excepted, never suppress *e* in writing, nor spell *un' indign' action*, *ent'reux*, *entr'elles*, for *une indigne action*, an unworthy action, *entre eux*, *entre elles*, amongst them; *fair' un' éloquent' & merveilleus' histoire*, for *faire une éloquente & merveilleuse histoire*, to write an eloquent and marvellous history: tho' *e* is not founded in all those cases, and you must pronounce as if it was written (in French*) *fai ru nélokan*, *té mèrvèilleu zistoire*.

* *N. B.* Whenever, to represent the true pronunciation of one or many words together, I express them by other letters than those in use, that must always be understood with respect to the *French* language; it being, strictly speaking, absolutely impossible to represent such words or sentences as if they should be pronounced so with respect to the *English*. It is sufficient to have shewn, as exactly as can possibly be, in the Tables prefixed to this Treatise, all the *French* sounds with their combinations, and the *English* sounds that answer to them. To pretend to more, that is, dressing *French* words and sentences in *English* sounds and letters, would be willingly running headlong into those gross, shocking absurdities, that are seen in a monstrous and shocking book extant, most impertinently usurping the title of a *French Grammar*.

3*dly*,

3*dly*, *e* is quite dropt in future and conditional tenses of verbs: as,

Je serai, I shall or will be, *tu porteras*, thou wilt carry, *il aimeroit*, he will love, *nous trouverons*, we shall find,	pronounce	*Je srai*, *tu portras*, *il aimroit*, *nous trouvrons*.

Except when it is followed by two consonants, the first of which is *r*, as in *je verrai*, I shall see, *il perdroit*, he would lose, wherein *e* has the sonorous pronunciation that shall be described in the sequel.

And in verbs ending in *ier*, as *prier* to pray, *étudier* to study, and even in *yer* preceded by a vowel, as *payer* to pay, and *employer* to employ, it is better to cut off the *e* not sounded in those tenses, and to write these words as they are pronounced, *Je prirai* I shall pray, *vous étudîriez* you would study, *il emploiroit* he would employ, instead of *prierai*, *étudieriez*, *employeroit*.—It is the same with the nouns derived from those verbs, as *remercîment* for *remerciement*, from *remercier*, to thank, &c.

4*thly*, *e* after *g*, and followed by *o*, as in *pigeon* a pigeon, serves only to give *g* the articulation of *j*, which otherwise would take the hard articulation of *g*. For the same reason *e* is added in spelling before *a* and *o* in gerunds, and preterite tenses of verbs ending in *ger*, as *changer* to change, *manger* to eat, *juger* to judge: in all which cases *e* is no more sounded than in these words, *pigeon*, *changeable*. Therefore, don't write *changant*, *il juga*, *nous mangons*, as, according to the analogy of the language, you must write *commençant*, and *commença*, from *commencer* to begin; but *changeant jugea*, *mangeons*, and pronounce *chanjant*, *juja*, *manjons*, *pijon*, &c.

5*thly*, *e* is not sounded in the *penultima* (the last syllable but one) of nouns ending in *té* and derived from adnouns; as *dûreté* hardness, *honnêteté* kindness, derived from *dur* hard, and *honnête* kind. Except in such nouns in *té* as have *e* preceded by *i*, as *impiété* ungodliness, *sobriété* sobriety, &c. which are derived from *impie* and *sobre*. &c. *e* in these words takes both the acute sound and accent.

6*thly*, In the *penultima* of nouns in *ment* derived from verbs: as *jugement* judgment, *mouvement* motion, *contentement* contentment, derived from *juger*, *mouvoir*, *contenter*. Except *agrément* liking, *supplément* supplement, and these three words *clément* clement, *élément* element, and *véhément* vehement.

7*thly*,

7*thly*, In the *penultima* of adverbs in *ment*; as *franchement* frankly, *sottement* sillily, &c. Except, 1*st*, these eight *aveuglément* blindly, *commodément* conveniently, *communément* commonly, *confusément* confusedly, *expressément* expresly, *impunément* with impunity, *profondément* deeply, *uniformément* uniformly, 2*dly*, adverbs derived from adnouns ending in *é (acute)*; as *aisément* easily, *effrontément* in a bold manner, &c. derived from *aisé* and *éffronté*, &c.

8*thly*, In the *penultima* of the infinitive of verbs ending in *eler* or *eller*, *emer*, *ener*, *eser*, *eter*, *etter*, *ever*, *enir*: as *celer* to conceal, *jeter* to throw, *semer* to sow, *peser* to weigh, *venir* to come, &c. except in these verbs:

aliéner, to alienate,
arrêter, to stop,
bêler, to bleat,
blasphémer, to blaspheme,
gangréner, to gangrene,
décréter, to decree,
égréner, to take out of the grain,
empiéter, to incroach upon,
étrenner, to hansel,
s'endetter, to run in debt,
s'enquêter (now adays very seldom used for *to inquire*),
entêter, to cause the head-ache, meaning smells,
s'entêter, to be obstinately resolved,
exceller, to excel,
fêter, to celebrate,
fouetter, to whip,
guetter, to spy,
bebêter, to besot,
inquiéter, to disquiet,
intérpréter, to expound,
mêler, to mingle,
prêter, to lend,
quereller, to quarrel,
quêter, to go a begging
regretter, to grudge,
se rebeller, to rebel,
répéter, to repeat,
réfréner, to refrain,
révéler, to reveal,
sceller, to seal,
seller, to saddle,
tempêter, to storm.

'Tis to be observed, that tho' *e* is not founded in the *penultima* of those verbs mentioned in the last observations, yet it takes the intermediate sound of *è* in the *penultima* of such tenses of the same verbs, wherein the final *er* of the infinitive becomes *e* not founded, or when it becomes the *antepenultima*; as *je sème* I sow, *je pèserai* I shall weigh, *j'appellerois* I would call.

9*thly*, In the *penultima* of nouns in *eur*, derived from the verbs of the same terminations as those of the last observation; as *receleur* one that receives stolen goods, *semeur* a sower, from *semer* and *receler*; as likewise in the *penultima* of nouns ending in *tier*, as *pelletier* a skinner, *cabaretier* one who keeps an alehouse, &c.

10*thly*, In the syllable *re*, in the beginning of words, wherein it denotes reïteration or reduplication of the action expressed by

the word: as *redire* to say again, *refaire* to make again, *ressortir* to go out again, &c.

Except, *first*, when the reduplicative particle comes before words beginning with *e* sounded, or any vowel, or *h* not sounded; in which case *e* is sounded, and marked over with the accent acute, and the particle *re* loses its final *e*: as *récrire* to write again, from *écrire*; *ressuyer* to wipe again, from *essuyer*; *réunir* to reunite, from *unir*; *réhabituer* to use one's self again to a thing, from *habituer*, &c.

2*dly*, When the word implies reiteration or reduplication, tho' the particle *re* cannot be said to be added to it, because, without it, it would not be a *French* word: such as these words and their derivatives,

réduplicatif,	reduplicative,	*réhabiliter*,	to reinstate,
récapituler,	to resume,	*réparer*,	to repair,
récidiver,	to relapse,	*réclamer*,	to reclaim,
réciter,	to recite, to say by heart,	*récolte*,	the crop,
répéter,	to repeat,	*récollection*,	recollection,
réitérer,	to repeat,	*réconcilier*,	to reconcile,
récollement,	a re-examination,	*répercussion*,	repercussion,
récrimination,	recrimination,	*résipiscence*,	amendment of life,
rédimer,	to free, to exempt,	*résumer*,	to resume, to sum up,
réfléchir,	to reflect,	*réverbération*,	and *réverbère*, reverberation.
régénérer,	to regenerate,		
réintégrer,	to restore,		

In *réconfronter* and *réformer* *e* is also sounded, tho' we say *confronter* and *former*.

11*thly*, In the syllable *re* followed by a double *s*, as *ressembler* to resemble, *se ressouvenir* to remember, &c. Except *réssusciter* to rise again, and *résurrection*, wherein the first *e* is acute.

12*thly*, Sometimes, but in conversation only, *e* is not sounded in the pronouns demonstrative, *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, *ceci*, *cela*, this, or that; nor in the pronoun personal *le*, after a verb at the imperative, when the verb is a polysyllable; as *ce livre* this book, *cet enfant* that child, *cette femme* that woman, *cherchez-le*, look for it; pronounce, *sla*, *slivre*, *slenfant*, *slefemme*, *cherchez-l'*; and never *cherchez-lé* or *lè*. But when the verb is a monosyllable, or ends with a mute *e*, *le* is sounded; as *dis-le*, *fais-le*; *dites-le*, *faites-le*.

13*thly*, *e* is not sounded in the *penultima* and *antepenultima* of these words and their derivatives:

Arlequin,

Arlequin, Harlequin,
arsenal, an arsenal,
arsenic, arsenick,
benêt, a booby,
besogne, work,
besoin, want,
caqueter, to prattle,
chaperon, a hood,
chenil, a dog kennel,
chenille, a caterpillar,
chenet, an hand-iron,
chemin, a way,
cheminée, a chimney,
chemise, a shirt,
cheville, a peg,
fenêtre a window,
fenouil, fennel,
forgeron, a smith,
genou, the knee,
grenouille, a frog
guenille, a rag,
guenon, a monkey,
hallebarde, an halberd
hameçon, a fish-hook,
hanneton, a May-bug,
hoqueton, a sort of serjeant,
levain, leaven,
menin, a minion,
meneuse, a nurse's deputy,
menotte, handcuff,
menoux, hog's feet,
neveu, nephew,
passe temps, pastime,
pelisse, a furred cloak,
pelote, pincushion,
petit, little,
retour, return,
secourir, to succour,
taffetas, taffety.

Lastly, *e* is not sounded in any of the derived words that have it from their primitives. Thus all adnouns feminine ending in *e* are not sounded, as likewise the first person in most verbs: that final *e* is not sounded neither in the words derived from them; as in *fortement* strongly, *forteresse* a fortress, from *forte* strong; *proprement* neatly, and *propreté* neatness, from *propre* neat; *arrangement* ordering, *judgement* judgment, *logement* lodging, &c. from *j'arrange*, *je juge*, *je loge*, &c. Except the adverbs mentioned above, *aveuglément*, *communément*, &c. In *agrément* an agreement, and *j'agrérai*, *j'agrérois*, I shall, or should like, and *supplément* supplement, *e* is acute, because they are derived from *agréer* and *suppléer*, whose first persons are *j'agrée*, *je supplée*, and the first *e* only is kept in the derivatives.

é acute.

This *e*, that has the sound of *a* in *hate*, *face*, *fate*, *made*, should always be marked over with an acute accent, as it is really at the end of nouns of both numbers, and of the second person plural of verbs, when it is spelt with an *s*; for it is now-a-days generally spelt with *z*, leaving out the accent: as *bonté* kindness, *aimé* loved, *bontés* kindnesses, *ils sont aimés* they are loved, *vous aimez* you love.—In words wherein that *é* is before another vowel, as in *géant*, a giant, *réunir* to reunite, &c. it denotes for certain, that the two vowels keep each of them their proper sound.

er, at the end of infinitives, is sounded like *é* acute; as likewise at the end of nouns in *ger*. *ier*, and *ied*: as

parler,	to ſpeak,	Pronounce	*parlé*,
danger,	danger,		*dangé*,
barbier,	a barber,		*barbié*,
pied,	a foot,		*pié*.

Except 1*ſt*, In all monoſyllables in *er*, as *mer* ſea, *cher* dear, *fer* iron, &c. wherein *e* is grave and *r* ſtrongly articulated.

2*dly*, In theſe following words:

amer,	bitter,	*cuiller*,	ſpoon,	*hiver*,	winter,
belvéder,	a belveder,	*enfer*,	hell,	*hier*,	yeſterday.
cancer,	a canker,	*fier*,	proud,		

3*dly*, At the end of all *Latin*, and foreign proper names, as *Jupiter*, *Luther*, *Grutter*: but not in *French* proper names, as *Didier*, *Roger*, &c. pronounce *Lutér*, *Rogé*, &c.

At the end of a ſentence, *es* in the pronoun *les* takes both the grave ſound and accent; as alſo in *dès* prepoſition; as *renvoyez les*, ſend them back again, and not *renvoyez-lé*; *dès qu'il eut fait*, as ſoon as he had done, and not *dé qu'il*, &c. though the accent is not always uſed in thoſe caſes.

As *e* is often met with in the beginning and middle of words, but, through the careleſſneſs of printers and authors, not marked over with that accent which ſhould denote its pronunciation, in order to ſupply that defect, we make the following obſervations:

1ſt, All *e*'s that have the ſound of *e* acute at the end of a word, keep it alſo in any ſyllable whatever, in the derivations and inflexions of the ſame word. Thus *e* being ſounded acute in the end of *aisé* eaſy, muſt be ſo too in *aisément* eaſily. Thus again *e* having the reſonant ſound of *e* grave in *amer* bitter, muſt have it too in the ſecond ſyllables of *amérement* bitterly, and *amertume* bitterneſs. Except only in verbs in *er*, wherein *e* is never pronounced in future and conditional tenſes, as we have ſaid.

2dly, *e* is acute in *é*, *dé*, *pré*, and *tré*, firſt ſyllables of a word: as *éclat* a crack, noiſe, *été* been, *écrit* writing, *dépit* ſpite, *détourner* to deter, *prélude* a prelude, *préparer* to prepare, *trépas* death, *tréſor* a treaſure, &c. Except,

1°. *pre* in *premier* firſt, and its derivatives, and theſe perſons of the verb *prendre* to take, *prenons*, *prenez*, *prenois*, &c. wherein *pre* is pronounced with the guttural ſound of *e*, but ſhort.

2°. *de* in the following words and their compounds, wherein *e* is not ſounded in a rapid converſation:

demain,

demain, to-morrow,
demeurer, to live,
demander, to ask,
demi, half,
demeurant, dwelling,
demoiselle, a miss,
depuis, since,
Denis, Dionysius,
dedans, within,
dessus, upon,
dessous, under,
devant, before,
devancer, to outrun,
devise, motto,
deviner, to guess,
devoir, duty,
il devient, he becomes,

tho' *de* in *devenir* has the guttural sound of *e*, and the second *e* is almost dropped. *e* in *de*, first syllable of *dégouter*, to make to loath, is acute, and in *dégouter*, to drop.

N. B. *Words beginning with* des, *fall under the last observation:* as, *désabuser* to undeceive, *désavouer* to disavow, *desespérer* to despair, *désigner* to denote, *désister* to desist, *désoler* to vex.

3dly, *e* is sounded acute but short before *rer* in infinitives in *érer:* as *espérer* to hope, *digérer* to digest, *modérer* to moderate, &c.

4thly, *e* is sounded acute in the syllable *re* in the beginning of words, wherein it denotes neither reiteration nor reduplication of action: as *récent* recent, *réfugier* to fly for refuge, altho' it is mute in *refuge*. Except the following words and their derivatives, wherein *e* is mute in *re:*

rebut, cast out,
rebelle, rebellious,
rebellion, rebellion,
rebours, the wrong side of a thing,
rebrousser, to go back,
rebusade, rebuff,
rebuter, to dishearten,
receler, to receive stolen goods,
recoin, a by-place,
recueil, a collection,
recueillir, to collect,
recommander, to recommend,
reconnoissance, gratitude,
recourir, to have recourse,
recevoir, to receive (but not *récipient*, nor *réception*),
reculer, to draw back,
redevable, indebted to,
redoute, a redoubt,
redoutable, dreadful,
refrein, burden of a song,
refrogner, to knit one's brows,
refus, denial,
regarder, to look,
regimber, to kick,
regret, regret,
relais, post-stages,
reland, musty,
reléguer, to banish,
relégation, banishing,
relief, relievo,
relier, to bind,
relique, relick,
reliquat, remnants,
religion, religion (but *e* is acute in *irréligion*, irreligion),
reluire, to glitter,
remarquer, to remark,
remède, to remedy,
remercier, to thank,

remettre, to remit (but not *rémission*, remitting),
remuer, to ſtir,
renard, a fox,
renier, to diſown,
renégat, a renegado,
reniſler, to ſnuff up one's ſnot,
renoncer, to renounce,
renom, renown, fame,
repaire, a lurking hole,
repartir, to ſet out again,
ſe repentir, to repent,
repas, a meal,
repic, repique,
replique, reply (but not *répliquer*),
repas, reſt,
reprendre, to correct,
repréſailles, repriſals,
ſe retirer, to retire,
reproche, reproach,
retrancher, to cut off,
requête, a petition,
requêrir, to requeſt (but not in *réquiſition*, requeſt),
retenir, to keep (but not in *rétention*, retention),
retenue, moderation,
retentir, to reſound,
revanche, revenge,
revêche, froward,
revers, the reverſe.

Some words have different ſignifications, according as the *e* of their firſt ſyllable *re* is pronounced and marked over with the accent acute, or not pronounced at all; as,

répondre, to anſwer, *repondre*, to lay eggs again,
répartir, to divide, *repartir*, to reply, or to go back again.

Obſerve beſides, that *ez* denotes only the ſound of *é* acute; as *aſſez* enough: as doth likewiſe the conjunction *et* or &, and.

è grave.

This *è*, whoſe ſound is ſonorous, or reſonant, is found,

1°. In the prepoſitions *dès* from, *près* near, the adverb *très* moſt, and in all nouns ending in *ès*, as *abcès* abſceſs, *profès* a profeſſed monk.

2°. In all theſe monoſyllables, *des*, *les*, *mes*, *tes*, *ſes*; as likewiſe the ſyllables of words wherein it was followed by *r* pronounced, as in *mer* the ſea, *fer* iron, *enfer* hell, *amer* bitter, *ouvert* open.

But it has the ſound of the following *ê* in the laſt ſyllable of the plural number of the words wherein it is indifferently reſonant in the ſingular; as ſing. *effet* effect, plur. *effets*; *projet* project, *projets*.

ê circumflex.

e circumflex is always marked over with the accent which characteriſes it; and it is exceeding broad and long, eſpecially when it makes the penultima of a word, the laſt ſyllable whereof is *e* mute,

mute, as may be obſerved in *bête* beaſt, *ébêté* ſtupid; *grêle* hail, *grêler* to hail; *pêche* a peach, *pêcher* a peach-tree; *tête* head, *entêté* ſtrong-headed; *même* even, *champêtre* rural, &c. And both the grave *è* and circumflex *ê* expreſs the ſame ſound as *e* in *there* and *were*; or in theſe other *Engliſh* words, *fare*, *tare*, which exactly correſpond, as to ſound, to theſe *French* ones, *faire*, *taire*.

The intermediate ſound of è.

It is found, 1°. in monoſyllables, and all ſyllables of words where it is followed by any other conſonant than *r* pronounced, or *t* not pronounced. Thus *e* has the intermediate ſound in *bee* beak, *ſel* ſalt, *effet* effect, *projet* project. I ſaid in the laſt paragraph but one, that the final ſyllable of theſe words is very broad and long in their plural: I ſhall obſerve further here, that *et* is more open in *il met* he puts, than in *mettre* to put, but not ſo broad as *je mets* I put, *tu mets* thou putteſt, which is the ſound of the conjunction *mais* but.

2°. Before two conſonants, or *x* in the beginning and middle of words, as *infecter* to poiſon, *examen* examination, and *examiner* to examine, tho' in theſe two laſt *e* takes a little of the acute ſound. Except when *n* or *m* is one of the two conſonants with which it is followed: for they then denote either the naſal ſound, as in *entrer* to enter, *emplir* to fill; or the third perſon plural of verbs, where the final *ent* is mute.

This intermediate ſound of *e* is expreſſed in the *Engliſh* words *bell*, *fed*, *leſs*, *progreſs*, *effect*, *protect*, *amen*, *examen*, &c.

The *e* of the penultima of the words, the laſt ſyllable whereof is *e* mute, is either moſt ſonorous, as in *grêle* hail, *problême* a problem, *tempête* a tempeſt; or but a little ſonorous, as in *chandelle* a candle, *mèche* match, *trompette* a trumpet: except in theſe five words, *collége* college, *liége* cork, *piége* ſnare, *privilége* privilege, and *ſiége* ſeat, wherein the *e* of the penultima is acute and a little long.

All the words juſt mentioned prove how neceſſary the accents are to our *e*'s, in order to ſhew their pronunciation; and that the perpendicular accent propoſed of late years by ſome Grammarians would have been as neceſſary as the acute, the grave, and the circumflex. But as it has not been adopted by the *French* Academy, and it is not to be found in any book, we have omitted it throughout in this preſent edition. See p. 89.

From theſe obſervations it follows, that the improper diph-

thong *ai*, which is naturally ſounded like *é* acute, receives the ſame alterations of ſounds as *e*; and is more or leſs reſonant in a word, according to the conſonants that follow it: as *faire* to do, *maître* maſter, *naîtrois*, from *naître* to be born.

i.

The vowel has almoſt the ſame ſound in *French* as in the *Engliſh* words, *bit*, *fin*, *pin*, *filial*, &c.

i followed by *n* or *m* in monoſyllables, or in the beginning of words of two ſyllables, gives a ſound like to that of *an* in *thank*, *en* in *length*, or *ain* in *ſaint*; as *vin* wine, *Indes* Indies, pronounce *vain*, *ainde*; and likewiſe *imbu*, imbued, *impur* impure, *ingrat* ungrateful; *infini* infinite, *imprudent* imprudent.

i in the particle conditional *ſi* is contracted, both in writng and ſpeech, before and with the pronouns *il* and *ils* only, and never before any other vowel, not even before *i* in any other word: as *s'il vient* if he comes, inſtead of *ſi il*, &c. *s'ils diſent* if they ſay: but write and pronounce *ſi elle vient* if ſhe comes, *ſi illuſtre* ſo illuſtrious, *ſi après cela* if after that; and not *s'elle vient*, &c.

i is not ſounded after *encoignure* corner, pronounce *encognure*.

i is not ſounded, and makes no diphthong with the preceding vowel, when it is followed by *l* or *ll*; *i* then ſerving only to give *l* or *ll* a particular articulation, called the liquid articulation of *l*: as in *ſoleil* the ſun, *travail* work, *veiller* to ſit up, *travailler* to work. That liquid articulation of *l* is the ſame that is heard in *Engliſh* in the articulation of the double *ll* of the words *million*, *billiards*: all the difference is, that that *i* which cauſes the liquid articulation is in *French* before *l*, whereas it is after it in *Engliſh*.

o.

This vowel receives two ſounds as well as *a*; the one acute, ſlender, and commonly ſhort; and the other grave, broad, and always long, as they are expreſſed in theſe words, *cotte*, or *cotillon*, a petticoat, and *côte* a coaſt. *o* acute and ſhort has the ſame ſound as in the *Engliſh* words *come*, *ſome*, *done*, *cover*, &c. or as *u* in *but*, *cut*, *rub*, &c. and *ô* grave and long, as in *globe*, *robe*, *old*, &c. or *oa* in *coaſt*, *roaſt*, &c. *ô* long is uſually marked over with a circumflex thus (*ô*), or followed by a ſingle *s*, thus *choſe*: *gros*, and its derivative *groſſe*, *groſſir*, &c. tho' there be two *s*'s. Whenever

ever *o* is named or spelt by itself, it is always by the long and broad sound of *ô* (*un o*, an o).

1. *o* is almost dropt in the second syllable of *accommoder* to fit up, and *raccommoder* to mend; and in the first of *commander* to command; pronounced, as it were, *cmandé*, *acmodé*; but in conversation only.

2. In *coopérer* to cooperate, *coobligé* &c. each *o* makes a syllable.

3. The pronunciation of *notre* and *votre* is worth observing. These words are pronounced with the broad and long sound of *ô* in the pronouns relative, *le vôtre*, *la vôtre*, yours, *le nôtre*, *la nôtre*, ours, and *o* is marked over with a circumflex. When they are only pronouns adjective, they are sounded with the short and slender sound of *o*, without being marked over with a circumflex: and if the substantive begins with a consonant, *r* is not pronounced in *votre* and *notre*; as *votre livre* your book, *notre maison* our house; pronounce *votte livre*, *notte maison*: but when the noun begins with a vowel, pronounce as it is spelt, *votre ami* your friend, *notre affaire* our affair: as also in *Notre-Dame* Our Lady, and in the Lord's prayer, *Notre Père qui es*, &c. Our Father who art, &c.

u.

This vowel, which is expressed in *bu*, *tu*, *lu*, *statut*, *volume*, is the very same sound that the *English* express in *prostitute*, *imposthume*, *volume*; only the *English u* of these words is shorter and more obtuse.

ui makes a proper diphthong in *buisson* a bush.

u in foreign or *Latin* words that are become *French*, followed by *m*, takes the nasal sound of *on*; as *un factum* a plea, pronounce *faction*.

un has likewise the sound of a nasal *o* in *junte* a junto, but not in *défunt* dead, wherein it is pronounced as in the monosyllable *un* one.

y.

y, generally speaking, has no other sound but that of the French *i*, and is used in *French* in the following circumstances only.

1*st*, As adverb of place or pronoun, and then *y* makes a word by itself; as *il y a*, there is; *y pensez-vous?* do you think of it?

2*dly*, In the beginning of these four words only, *yacht*, pron. *Iaque* yacht, *yeux* eyes, and *yeuse* a holm-oak; *ypreau* Dutch elm.

Some add indeed *yvre* got drunk, *yvoire* ivory, and *yvraye* tare; but they are now generally spelt with *i* by the best writers, *ivre*, *ivoire*, *ivraie*.

3*dly*, In the middle of some words wherein *y* stands for two i's, as in *pays* country, and its derivatives, *paysage* a landscape, and *paysant* a peasant, wherein *ay* is sounded as *ai*, with another *i* before *s*, *sage*, and *sant*. *Abbaye* abbey, *essayer* to try, *voyons* let us see, *Royal*, *ayant*, &c. which words are pronounced as if they were written *pai-is*, *pai-isant*, *essai ier*, *voi-ions*, *Roi-ial*, *ai-iant*, &c.

The following words, wherein *a* keeps its natural sound, making a vowel by itself, and *i* takes a liquid articulation as in *you*, are written now with an *ï trema*, that is, marked over with two dots.

aïeul, grand-father,	*faïence*, Delft-ware,		*Baïonne*,
bayonette, a bayonet,	*glaïeul*, corn-flag,		*Blaïe*,
camaïeu, a camaieu,	*païen*, a pagan,		*Caïenne*,
caïeu, a sucker,	*travaïole*, a mantle,		*Maïenne*,
caïon, a trifling fellow,	*Aïen*,	proper names.	*Maïence*,
caïonner, to trifle,	*Baïard*,		*Caïette*,
caïonnerie, trifling,	*Baïeux*,		*La Faïette*.

(proper names.)

The two dots over *ï* shew that the vowel makes a syllable by itself, as, *haïr* to hate, *naïf* no way counterfeit, *héro que* heroical, *Laïs*, &c. whereas otherwise it makes, with the foregoing vowel, an improper diphthong, as in *je hais* I hate.

y denotes the sound of two *i*'s, the former whereof makes with the foregoing vowel an improper diphthong; as in *pays* country, *royaume* kingdom, *essayer* to try.

Most writers preserve still *y* in words derived from Greek, to shew the etymology; as in these words *étymologie*, *analyse*, *mystère*, *syllabe*, &c.

SECTION II.

Of Diphthongs.

THE meeting of many vowels in one and the ſame ſyllable, is called Diphthong. When many vowels together keep each of them in the ſyllable their particular and proper ſound, they are called *Proper* or *Syllabic Diphthongs*; as *lui* he, *lier* to tie. When they all together make but one ſingle ſound, they are called *Improper* or *Orthographical Diphthongs*; as *air* air, *eau* water.

Proper Diphthongs.

ia, iai, ian, ié, iè, ien, ieu, io, ioi, ion, iau, oa, oè, oé, oi, oois oin, oua, ouan, oué, ouè, ua, uè, ui, uin, oui, ouen, ouin.

All that can be ſaid of theſe Proper Diphthongs amounts to this: that though theſe vowels, united together, make really two diſtinct ſyllables, each of which keeps its natural and peculiar ſound, yet they are ſounded and pronounced as quickly, and in as ſmall a compaſs of time, as a ſingle ordinary ſyllable. Therefore never pronounce in two ſyllables *Di-eu* God, *di-able* devil, *li-er* to tie, *vi-olon* a fiddle, *jou-er* to play, *rou-et* a ſpinning wheel, *fu-ir* to avoid, *ro-i* king, *ou-i* yes, *Rou-en:* but ſound the two vowels in one ſyllable quickly: *Dieu, diable, jouer, rouet,* &c. N. B. *ouen* in *St. Ouen* is not pronounced as in *Rouen* (a city in *Normandy*), but like *oin* in *foin* hay.

There is an exception to this, *viz.* when thoſe diphthongs come after two conſonants, the laſt of which is *r* or *l*; as *nous prions* we deſire, *vous voudriez* you would, *il pliait* he bent, and the word *hier* yeſterday, which are pronounced like two ſyllables. Nevertheleſs the adverb *hier* is ſounded in one ſyllable only, when it comes with the other adverb *avant* (*avant hier*, the day before yeſterday).

In *coadjuteur* a coadjutor, *coactif* coercive, *coaguler* to coagulate, *cloaque* a common ſewer, *croaſſer* to croak, *Croatie* Croatia, *Croate*, *retroactif* retroactive, and in *Goa*, *Moab*, *Soarès*, and other foreign words, which are the only words wherein *oa* is found, each vowel makes a particular ſyllable; but in *aio* and *Aiol*, *a* makes a ſyllable by itſelf, and *io* a proper diphthong.

Improper

Improper Diphthongs.

ae, ai, ay, ao, au, ea, eai, eau, ei, eo, eu, oe, oeu, oi, ou, ui, uei.

Obſerve firſt, that when theſe vowels together do not make the ſame ſyllable, but two diſtinct ones, two dots are put over that which begins the laſt ſyllable; as in *haïr*, *Pirithoüs*; or an accent over the firſt vowel when it is an *e*: as in *géant* a giant, *déiſme* deiſm, *météore* a meteor, *Géorgie* Georgia, *Léonidas*, &c.

2*dly*, That, excepting *eu* and *ou*, the natural and peculiar ſound of the other improper dipththongs is quite the ſame as, and not at all different from, that of ſome of the five vowels treated of before.

ae.

ae is found only in *Caen*, the name of a city, wherein *a* naſal only is ſounded *(Can)*.

In *aérien*, *aérér*, *Danaé*, *Ticho-Braé*, and ſuch other words, the accent that is over *é* ſhews its pronunciation, and that it makes a vowel by itſelf.

æ.

æ or *Æ* is now out of uſe in *French* words derived from the *Greek* and *Latin*, written formerly with *æ*, being now a-days written with an *e* ſounded like *é* acute; as *Egypte* for *Ægypte*, Ægypt, *Equinoxe* for *Æquinoxe*.

ai and *ay*.

ai or *ay* denotes the ſound of *e*, ſounded ſometimes acute, ſometimes grave, and ſometimes intermediate. Nay, it is not ſounded at all in the gerund, preſent, and imperfect tenſes of the verb *faire* to do; *ai* being now-a-days converted into *e* mute. *Faiſant* doing, *je faiſois* I did, *nous faiſons* we do; pronounce *fezant*, *fezois*, *fezons*.

1*ſt*, *ai* or *ay*, being the two laſt letters of a word, is ſounded like *é* acute; as *je parlai* I ſpoke, *je dirai* I'll ſay; pronounce *parlé*, *diré*. Except in theſe four words, *vrai* true, *eſſai* an eſſay, *délai* delay, *Mai* May, wherein *ai* has the intermediate ſound, being pronounced as in *Engliſh* in the word *May*. But obſerve that the adnoun *vrai* true, takes the grave and broad ſound of *è* long, when it comes before its noun, as in *le vrai ſens d'une loi*, the true ſenſe of a law; pronounce *vrès*, or *vrais*: whereas when it is not followed by a noun, or when it terminates a ſentence,

it only has the short sound of *è*, as in *c'est vrai*, it is true; *il est vrai que*, it is true that, &c.

2*dly*, *ai* being followed by *s*, *ts*, *x*, (*ais*, *aits*, *aix*), or *e* not sounded (*aie*) at the end of a word, takes the most resonant sound of *è* grave; as *jamais* never, *des faits* facts, *paix* peace, *plaie* a wound.

3*dly*, *ai* in the middle of a word, and followed by a consonant, is more or less resonant according to the consonant that follows. (See the observation at the end of the paragraph of *è* grave.)—*ai* has the most resonant sound of *è* in *haîne* hatred, *traître* a traitor; and in the words wherein *ai* comes before *r*, as in *faire*, *braire* to bray, &c. pronounce *fèr*, &c.

4*thly*, In *ai* followed by a double or single *l*, *a* keeps entirely its proper sound, *i* serving only to give *l* or *ll* a liquid articulation; as in *bail* a lease, *vaillant* courageous.

ai is likewise sounded as a single *a* in *St. Aignan* (the proper name of a duke).

In the interjection *ai* (for pain) *i* takes the liquid articulation of *y*, so that *ai* is pronounced like *aï* in *aïeul*, or *Blaïe*.

ait has the same pronunciation in *il fait*, *plait*, *paît*, *naît*, and *bruît* (third persons of *faire* to do, *plaire* to please, *paître* to graze, *naître* to be born, and *braire* to bray): but *fait* (a participle or noun) has the pronunciation of the intermediate *è*: as *Il fait beau*, It is fine weather; *J'ai fait*, I have done; *C'est fait*, It is over; *C'est un fait*, It is fact. On the contrary, *ais* in the two first persons of *savoir* to know, and *ait* in the third, have only the pronunciation of *é* acute. *Je sais*, *tu sais*, *il sait*, pronounce *je sé*, *tu sé*, *il sé*.

ao.

ao is found in the following words: 1*st*, In *aorte* (an artery), *aovara* (a fruit), *Aonie*, *Aonides*, *Aorne*, *Baao*, *Laocoon*, *Laodamie*, *Laodicée*, *Laomédon*, *Laonice* (proper names), and *extraordinaire* extraordinary, wherein *a* and *o* make each a syllable, and keep their proper sound.

2*dly*, In *paon* a peacock, *faon* a fawn, *Laon* (the name of a city), which are pronounced with the nasal sound of *a*, as if they were spelt *pan*, *fan*, *Lan*.

3*dly*, In *aorasie*, *aoristie*, *aoste*, *Saone*, wherein *a* is quite lost, these words being pronounced *orasie*, *oristie*, *osté*, *Sône*.

4*thly*, In *taon* ox-fly, which is sounded with the nasal sound of *o*, like the pronoun *ton*.

5*thly*,

5*thly*, In *Août* August (a month), which is pronounced *ou*, or in English *oo*; but *a* is sounded in its derivative *août*er; not in the other derivative *aouteron*, wherein *a* is silent: pronounce then *Oût*, *août*er, *outeron*. *Raoul* (a proper name) is pronounced *Ra-oul*.

au and *eau*.

au and *eau* at the end of words are sounded more open than the short and slender sound of *o*, as *chapeau* a hat, *marteau* a hammer, &c. but not quite so broad as the word *eau* water, and the particle *au* to the, which have the long and broad sound of *ô*, or *au* followed by *d*, *t*, *x*, in the last syllable; as *chaud* hot, *défaut* defect, *chapeaux* hats.

au, in the middle of dissyllables, always has the broad and long sound of *o*, as in *beauté* beauty, *baudrier* a belt, *faucher* to mow: but in the beginning of words it is pronounced sometimes like *ô* long, and sometimes like *o* short. *au* has the slender and short sound of *o* in the beginning of the following words:

auberge,	*an eating house.*	austère,	*austere.*
audace,	*audaciousness.*	austral,	*austral.*
audience,	*audience.*	authentique,	*authentical.*
auditoire,	*congregation.*	automate,	*automaton.*
auditeur,	*auditor.*	automne (*m* is silent)	*autumn.*
augmenter,	*to augment.*	autorité,	*authority.*
augure,	*omen.*	autorifer,	*to authorize.*
augurer,	*to augurate.*	auxiliaire,	*auxiliary.*
Aurore,	*Aurora.*	mauvais,	*bad.*

But *au* has the broad sound of *ô* in the beginning of the following words:

aubade,	*a piece of music.*	autruche,	*ostrich.*
aubaine,	*escheat.*	auteur,	*author.*
aube,	*dawn of the day.*	autour,	*about.*
aucune,	*none.*	autre, *other*, with its derivatives.	
auguste,	*august.*	auvent,	*a pent-house.*
aujourd'hui,	*to-day.*	aumône,	*alms.*
aulique,	*aulick.*	auprès,	*near, by.*
aumuce,	*an amess.*	auspice,	*auspice.*
aune,	*an ell.*	aussi,	*also.*
auparavant,	*before.*	autant,	*as much.*
Autriche,	*Austria.*	autel,	*altar.*

Beau has the broad sound of *ô*: as *Cela est beau*, That's fine; *Voilà un beau coup*, That's a fine stroke: pronounce *sla ê bô*, *voilà un bô cou*.

fléau

fléau a scourge, is pronounced like a proper diphthong, *flé-au*; as likewise *préau* a little meadow, and *éaux* in *Despréaux* (a proper name), wherein *s* is mute; and in *féaux*, plural of *feal* trusty, (used only in royal patents, proclamations, &c.)

ea.

ea is found only in the words *Jean* and *Jeanne*, John, Jane; *e* is left out in the diminutives *Janot*, *Janette*, *Janneton*. *Jean* is pronounced with the nasal sound of *a*, as *Jan*; *Jeanne* with the long and broad sound of *â*, as *Jâne*; and *Janot*, *Janette*, and *Janneton*, with the shorter and slender one.

ea is also found in some verbs after *g*, as in *mangea*, wherein (as we have seen before) *e* loses its sound, and serves only to make *g* take the articulation of *j*, as if it were spelt *manja*.

eai.

eai is found only in the word *geai* a jack-daw, and in the same verbs just mentioned after *g*, wherein *eai*, or rather *ai*, takes the sound of *e* intermediate, *e* serving to the same purpose as in the words of the last paragraph; *eai* takes the sound of *é* acute in *je mangeai* I did eat: pronounce *manjé*, *unjé*.

ei and *ey*.

ei, or *ey*, denotes the same sound as in English *e* before a consonant, as in the word *pen*, which answers exactly to the sound of this *French* word *peine*, pains.—Except in *Reine* a queen, *seize* sixteen, and *seizième* sixteenth, wherein *ei* has the most resonant sound of *è* long.

In *ei* followed by *l* or *ll*, *e* keeps its sound (the resonant sound of the intermediate *è*), and *i* serves only to give *l* or *ll* the liquid articulation; as in *soleil* sun, *veiller* to sit up. (See the paragraph of *i*)—*eil* in *orgueil* pride, *recueil* a collection, and *cueillir* to gather, is not pronounced as in *soleil*, but as *eu* in *deuil*, mourning: but it keeps its proper sound in its derivatives *orgueilleux* proud, &c.

eo.

eo is found in the verb *asseoir* to sit down, in the syllable *geon* or *geons* of some verbs, and in the words *geolier* a jailer, and *George*; in which cases *e* loses quite its sound, and the preceding *g* is sounded like *j*. Pronounce *assoir*, *Jorge*, &c. (See the 4th paragraph of *e* not sounded.)

Observe, that when there are two dots over *e*, or an accent acute over *e*, as in *géographie* and *météore*, both vowels keep their proper sounds.

eu.

eu receives two sounds; the first of which is the guttural sound of *e*, and is found in *feu* fire, *il peut* he can, *&c.* which is (I say) the very same sound as *e* in the English monosyllable *her*. (See page 28.)—*x* joined to *eu (eux)* gives it another peculiar sound not to be found in English, but not hard to express.—*eu* in *jeune* young, is sounded as in *feu*; but in *jeûne* and *jeûner* fasting, it is sounded as *eux*, tho' not in *dejeuner* to breakfast. *eu* in *Hébreu* is pronounced like *eux*; and it takes the slender and short sound of *e* in *filleul*, and *filleule* (a god-child).

The second sound of *eu* is that of the vowel *u*, and is found only only in these two or three words, *eunuque* an eunuch, *Eustache* (a proper name), *gageure* a wager, and *eu* had, and the other tenses of *avoir* to have. Pronounce, *u*, *vous utes*, *unuc*, *ustache*, *gajure*.—We now write *vu* seen, *vue* sight, *sûr* sure, *mûr* ripe, *reliûre* binding, *tu pusses* thou could'st, and all participles without *e*, instead of the old way of writing *veu*, *veue*, *seur*, *relieure*, *tu peusses*, &c.—*eut* in *il veut*, he is desirous, is not sounded as in *il peut* he can, but like *eux* in *je veux*, but it is in that word only: and *eus* or *eux* in *je peux*, I can, is not pronounced as in *je veux*, but like *eut* in *il peut*, he can.

œ and *oe.*

œ is found in *cœur* heart, and *chœur* choir or chorus, *mœurs* manners, *œuf* egg, *œuvres* works, *sœur* sister, and *vœu* a vow, in which words *o* quite loses it sound: and in *œil* eye, its derivatives *œillade* an ogle, and *œillère (les dents œillères*, the eye-teeth;) as also in *œillet* a pink, *œ* takes the first sound of *eu*. Some authors think it better to write all these words without *o*, but the contrary custom is prevailing. Therefore pronounce *keur*, *meur*, *euil*, *euillè*, &c.

œ denotes only the sound of *é* acute in *œconomie*, *œcuménique*, and *Œdipe*, which even now-a-days are spelt as pronounced with *é*, *économie* œconomy.

o and *e* in *poëte* a poet, *moëlle* marrow, and other such like words, wherein *e* is marked over with two dots, make a proper diphthong, wherein *e* takes the intermediate sound of *è*; as likewise in *coercible*, *coercitif*, and *coercition*. In *coégal* coequal, *coéternel* coeternal, &c. the acute accent over the *é* shews its pronunciation, and is a proof at the same time that the *e* of the preceding words should be marked over with the straight accent.

oi

oi and *oy*.

oi and *oy* are sometimes improper diphthongs that take only the resonant sound of *e* grave; but more commonly they are proper diphthongs expressing the two distinct sounds of *o* and *è* or *ê*.

oi is an improper diphthong; *1st*, in the imperfect and conditional tenses of verbs: as *j'aimois* I loved, *tu dirois* thou would'st say, *il parleroit* he would speak, &c. pronounce *aimais*, *dirais*, *parleret*.

2dly, In verbs which have more than two syllables in the infinitive, as *paroître* to appear, *connoître* to know, and their derivatives: pronounce *paroître*, *connaître*.

3dly, In these words *foible* weak, *foiblesse* weakness, *foiblement* weakly, *affoiblir* to weaken, *roide* stiff, *roideur* stiffness, *roidir* to stiffen, *harnois* harness, and *monnoie* coin, pronounce *fèble*, *fèblesse*, *rède*, *monnaie*; but pronounce *oy* like a proper diphthong, in *monnoyé* coined, thus: *monnoi ié*.

These persons of *être*, *sis*, *soit*, *soyons*, *soyez*, *soient*, and even the verb *croire* throughout, *je crois*, *il croit*, *nous croirions*, &c. *froid* cold, *froideur* coldness, *froidement* coldly, *adroit* skilful, *adroitement* skilfully; the adnoun *droit* right; the adverb *tout-droit* straight along, *endroit* place, *étroit* narrow, *nettoyer* to clean, *croître* to grow, throughout, with its derivatives, and all monosyllables, are pronounced with the sound of the proper diphthong *o-è*. Some people, I know, thinking themselves fine speakers, adopt the affected utterance of the *petites-maitresses*, and pronounce in an effeminate way *craire*, *craître*, *fraia*, *sayons*, *que je sais*, *qu'ils sayent*: which is very bad, as in repeating verses, in the pulpit, and at the bar, those words are pronounced with the double sound of *o-è*. In the conjunction of *soit* either, or let it be so, *soit que* whether, in the phrase *ainsi soit-il* so be it, *tant soit peu* never so little, and in the beginning of the Lord's prayer, *soit* is pronounced with the two sounds of the proper diphthong even by those who pronounce *oi* like *ai* in the aforesaid words.

But *oi* and *oy* are always proper diphthongs sounded like *o è* in the noun *droit* right, in *effroi* fright, *effroyable* frightful, *un noyer* a walnut-tree, and *se noyer* to drown one's self; and before *g* and *n*, as *témoinger* to shew, *joindre* to join. Therefore pronounce, like a proper diphthong with the two sounds, the following monosyllables and other words:

moi,

moi,	I,	*foire*,	a fair,	*poiſon*,	poiſon,
toi,	thou,	*fois*,	time,	*une oie*,	a gooſe,
ſoi,	one's ſelf,	*voir*,	to ſee,	*miroir*,	looking-glaſs,
quoi,	what,	*ſoin*,	care,	*moucboir*,	handkerchief,
roi,	king,	*ſoir*,	evening,	*mademoiſelle*,	miſs,
loi,	law,	*joie*,	joy,	*écritoire*,	an ink-horn,
foi,	faith,	*pois*,	peas,	*devoir*,	duty,
bois,	wood,	*poids*,	weight,	*recevoir*,	to receive,
choix,	choice,	*poix**,	pitch,	*Je reçois*,	I receive,
voix,	voice,	*moitié*,	half,	*concevoir*,	to conceive,
croix,	croſs,	*poitrine*,	breaſt,	*appercevoir*,	to perceive,
foie,	liver,	*poiſſon*,	fiſh,	*&c.*	

* *poix* is not pronounced like *pois* or *poids*, but as if it was ſpelt *poué*.

oi takes only the ſound of *o* ſhort in *poignet* wriſt, *poignée* handful, *poignard* a dagger, and *poignarder* to ſtab, *coignée* a hatchet, and *coigner* to knock (when theſe two laſt are ſpelt with *i*).

ois takes the moſt reſonant ſound of *è* grave in the following names of nations and countries:

Anglois, Engliſh, *Milanois*, Milaneſe, *Nivernois*,
François, French, *Lionnois*, of Lyons, *Soiſſonnois*,
Ecoſſois, Scotch, *Béarnois*, of Bearn, *Ferrarois*, (inhabitants
Irlandois, Iriſh, *Bourbonnois*, of provinces.)
Hollandois, Dutch, *Charolois*,
Polonois Pole, *Orleannois*,

But it is ſounded like the proper diphthong *oè* in

Bavarois, of Bavaria, *Chinois*, Chineſe, *Gènevois*, of Geneva,
Danois, Dane, Daniſh, *Suédois*, Swede, Swediſh, *Gaulois*, a Gaul,
Hongrois, Hungarian, *Carthaginois*, a Carthaginian,
Liégeois, of Liege, *Héſſois*, Heſſian,
Siamois of Siam, *Genois*, of Genoa,

Crétois,	*Navarrois*,	*Angoumois*,	*Beaujodois*,
Japonois,	*Arragonois*,	*Champenois*,	*Condomois*,
Iroquois,	*Narbonnois*,	*Piémontois*,	*Vermandois*,
Maroquois,	le *Modénois*,	le *Bléſois*,	*Rhételois*,
Hibernois,	le *Barrois*,	l'*Auxerrois*,	*Valois*,
Vaudois,	*Crémonois*,	*Agénois*,	*Bazadois*,
Malthois,	*Albigeois*,	*Artois*,	*Bruxellois*,
Comtois,	*Rochelois*,	*Valentinois*,	
Franc-Comtois,	*Rémois*,	*Nantois*,	
Dunois,	*Gatinois*,	*Gantois*,	

Sénonois,

Senonois and *Châlonois*, if ever used, as likewise all names of cities and towns in *France* ending in *oi*, *oie*, or *ois*, are pronounced like the proper diphthong *o-è*: as *Blois*, *Croie*, *Foix*, *Mirepoix*, *Roie*, *Rosoi*, *Rocroi*, &c. But we say, *un Malouin*, and not *Malois* (of *St. Malo*), *un Lorrain* (of *Lorrain*), *un Prusse*, and *un Prussien* a Prussian, *un Russe*, *un Russien*, and *un Muscovite*, a Russian, *un Suisse* a Swiss, *un Croate* a Croatian, &c.

Observe that *ois* in the proper name *François*, *Françoise*, Francis, is sounded *o-è*, like a proper diphthong, and not with one sound only as the noun or adnoun of the nation, *un François*, a Frenchman, *une Françoise*, a French woman.

oit takes the most resonant sound of broad and long *è* in *il paroît*, it appears, and *il connoît*, he knows, which are pronounced like the first persons *saurois*, *parois*, *connois*: every where else *oit* has the sound of *e* intermediate.

ou.

ou is sounded as *u* in *pull*; the French word *poule* a hen, being pronounced exactly like the English word *pull*. Nay the English have the same improper diphthong in *could*, *would*, *should*, *you*.

ui.

ui (improper diphthong) is found only in the words *vuide* and *vuider* to empty, wherein *u* is quite lost. These words are now written and pronounced *vide* and *vider*.

uei and *eui*.

uei and *eui* is found only before liquid *l*, and then it takes the first sound of *eu*; as in *recueil* a collection, *cueillir* to pick, *deüil* mourning, *feuillet* a leaf, &c.

SECTION III.

Of Nasal Vowels.

BESIDES the vowels that have been considered in the first section, the *French* have five others derived from them; each of the vowels having its nasal one that answers it, and makes really a quite different vowel. (See the forms of those nasal vowels in the Tables.)

That difference of sounds which the English are at a loss how to express (tho' they are in their language except nasal *u* or *un*), consists only in being formed through the nose, from whence they

are called *nasal*; that is, in causing to pass through the nose, in expressing them, a part of the air driven by the lungs, instead of causing the whole to pass through the mouth.

The nasal vowels with their corresponding sounds.

Nasal Vowels.	*English words where the same sounds are expressed.*
an,	want.
en *(after* i) or	*length*, *strength*.
in *and* ain,	*thank*, *saint*.
in *and* ein,	*loving*, *doing*, *reading*, &c.
on,	won't.
un,	* * *

a, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, followed by *n* or *m*, take the nasal sound; or in other terms, *n* or *m* usually gives the nasal sound to the vowels which come before them: as, *an* year, *ambre* amber, *rien* nothing, *instruire* to instruct, *bon* good, *un* one. Except,

1*st*, In some proper names, as in *Amsterdam*, *Cham*, *Abraham*, though not in *Adam*.

2*dly*, When *n* and *m* are between two vowels; as in *animal*, *émeraude* an emerald, wherein each of these three letters *a*, *n*, *i*, and *e*, *m*, *e*, keeps its proper sound and articulation: whereas in *enfant* a child, *emploi* an employment, *rien* nothing, *en*, *am*, *em*, and *ien*, are nasal.

3*dly*, When *n* or *m* are followed by another *n* or *m*; for then the foregoing vowels *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, are not sounded nasal, but keep their peculiar proper sounds; as *année* a year, *homme* a man, *bonne* good, *ennemi* an enemy: pronounce *a-née*, *o-me*, *bo-ne*, *en-mi*: except that in *ennui* weariness, *emmener* to carry away, and in the beginning of like words that have more than two syllables, *en* and *em* are sounded like the nasal *an*. Thus pronounce *an-nui*, *am-mener*; but *condamner* to condemn, *enflammer* to inflame, *femme* a woman, *innocent* innocent, *innocence* innocence, *solemnel* solemn, *solemnité*, *indemniser* to indemnify, with *indemnité*, *hennir* to neigh, *hennissement* neighing, are pronounced *condâné*, *anflamé*, *fame*, *inocent*, *solanel*, *indamniser*, *indamnité*, *hanir*, *hanissement*.

In *Grammaire* a Grammar, and *Grammairien* a Grammarian, the first *a* is nasal; but it is not nasal (and therefore the double *m* is articulated) in *Grammatical* and *Grammaticalement*, Grammatical, &c. In *lemme* a lemma, and *dilemme* a dilemma, the first *e* is pronounced with the most resonant sound of *è grave (dilème)*.

In

In some few words the two *mm*'s or *nn*'s are articulated, as in *inflammation* inflammation, and *annotation* annotation.

Observe here, that the doubling of *m* in all adverbs derived from adnouns in *ent*, causes the foregoing *e* to be sounded as *a* short: as in *innocemment* innocently, from *innocent*; *ardemment* eagerly, from *ardent* eager; *prudemment* prudently, from *prudent* prudent, &c. pronounce *arda-ment*, *pruda-ment*, &c.

en and *em* before any other consonant but *n*, take the nasal sound of *an*: as *enfant* a child, *emploi* business: pronounce *anfan*, *anploi*; but to this rule there are three exceptions.

1st, In the syllable *ien* not ending with *t* in its original or root: as *rien* nothing, *tu viens* thou comest, *il tient* he holds. I say *not ending with* t *in its original*, or *root*: for *viens*, *tient*, and their compounds *il convient*, *il soutient*, &c. being derived from their first persons *je viens* I come, *je soutiens* I maintain, the final *t* serves only to characterise the third person of the singular that keeps the same sound as the first, which I call here its *original* or *root*. Whereas *ent* is sounded *ant* in *Orient* East, *patient*, patient, &c. because of *t* ending the last syllable of these words which are not derived from any other.

Observe all along what has been said several times before, that *ent* in the plural of verbs, far from taking any nasal sound, is quite dropt like *t* not sounded; as *ils disent* they say, pronounce *il dize*: and you may know that a word, the last syllable whereof ends in *ent*, is the third person plural of a verb, and therefore that *ent* is not sounded, when the *e* of the *penultima*, or the syllable coming before (when 'tis *e*) has or should have either the grave accent or the intermediate one, as in *ils différent* they differ, *ils précèdent* they go before: whereas in the adnouns *different* different, and *précédent* foregoing, the accent acute of the *penultima* shews that the last syllable is sounded with the nasal sound of *an*. Again, the third persons plural of verbs have always the pronouns *ils*, *elles*, or a noun plural before them, which the other words ending with *ent* have not.

2dly, *en* is pronounced *ein* or *ain*, in *Benjamin*, *Agen*, *benjoin*, *placenta*, *agenda*, and *commensurable*, as likewise when it is preceded by *é* (or at the end of words in *éen*), as in *Europé-en*, *Galilé-en*, &c.

3dly, *en* and *em* keep the peculiar sound and articulation of *e* and *n* and *m* in foreign words, and such as have passed entire from the *Latin* and *Greek* languages into *French*, both in the middle and end of words; as *abdomen*, *amen*, *examen* examination, *hem*,

item, *Hymen*, *Jérusalem*, *Matusalem*, *Empédocle*, *Agamemnon*, &c. but in *Encyclopédie*, *enclitique*, and *nomenclature*, &c. *en* keeps the nasal sound of *a*. *Mentor* is pronounced *Maintor*.

Observe, moreover, that the proper sound of *e* nasal *(en)* is not (as one might happen to mistake it) the same as that of *a* nasal *(an)*, but that which is in *rien*; *e* having two nasal sounds, which must be carefully distinguished from one another, according to the aforesaid observations.—The true sound of *e* nasal is never found in the beginning of words, but only in the middle and end, and after *i*; as *bien* well, *il vient* he comes, *je viendrai* I'll come: whereas in *enfant*, and *entendre*, *en* takes the sound of *a* nasal. The true sound of *e* nasal is in the words of the second observation just mentioned, *Benjamin*, *Agen*, *benjoin*, &c.

The nasal *in* and *im*, which (as has been said in the paragraph of *i*) express a sound like that in the English termination *ing*, take also the sound of *ain* and *en* in *rien*; but *in* and *im*, beginning a word, are pronounced with their proper nasal sounds *in* and *im*, which one must take care not to mistake for the other nasal sound of *ain* or *ein*. Thus pronounce *imbu* imbued, *inhumain* inhuman, with the proper sound of *i* nasal, and not as if it was spelt *aimbu*: but pronounce *Indes*, as if it was spelt *ainde*. The true and proper sound of nasal *in* and *im* are found only in the beginning of words, never in the middle nor end. *Inde* and *Indien* are the only words excepted. (See further what has been said concerning the letter *i*.)

In final *im* and *in*, *m* and *n* are articulated in *intérim*, and all foreign names, as *Ibrahim*, *Sélim*, *Aïn*, the desart of *Sin*, &c.

There is hardly any thing to observe about the nasal *un* but its sound, the only nasal French sound that is not in English: it is in the French words *parfum* perfume, *chacun* every one.

But *um* and *un* are pronounced like the nasal *on* in *factum*, as also in some proper names, as *Humbert*, *Dunkerke*; and like *omme* in these two Latin words frenchified, *opium* and *Te Deum*.

But concerning the spelling of those nasal vowels observe, that as to the choice between the several combinations serving to the same sound, *m* is always used before *b*, *p*, *m*, and *n* before the other consonants; as *ambassade* an embassy, *emploi* an employment, *immolé* sacrificed, *symbolique* symbolical, *tomber* to fall, *humble* humble; *antimoine* antimony, *endormi* sleepy, *intérieur* inward, *songe* dream, &c.

Again, *ant* is consecrated to the gerunds, and *ent* to the nouns and adverbs.

SECTION

SECTION IV.

Of Consonants.

b.

B always keeps the same articulation as in English, except that before *s* and *t* it sounds pretty near *p*; as *observer* to observe, *obtenir* to obtain. Pronounce *opserver*, *optenir*.

b is found at the end of these three words only, *plomb* lead, *romb de vent* (a sea-term), and *radoub* the refitting of a ship. It is not sounded in *plomb*; but it is in *romb* and *radoub*, as also in foreign names; as *Achab*, *Job*, *Caleb*, &c.

b is hardly doubled but in these two words, besides foreign names; *abbé* an abbot, and *Sabbat*, wherein *bb* is pronounced only like *b*; but the two *b*'s are strongly articulated in *abbatial*, *Sabbatique*, *Barabbas*, and other foreign names.

c.

c before *a*, *o*, *u*, and the improper diphthong *ai*, and the consonants *l*, *r*, *t*, denotes the articulation marked in the table, which is properly that of *k*: but before *e* and *i*, it takes the hissing articulation of *s*; *camard* a flat-nosed man, *cochon* a hog, *cure* a cure, *caisse* a chest; *céder* to yield, *civil* civil; *clou* nail, &c. pronounce *kamar*, *koshon*, *kaisse*, *cure*; *sédé*, *civil*; *klou*, &c. It takes also the hissing sound of *s* before *a*, *o*, *u*, when there is a dash under it thus (*ç*); as in *força* the forced, *garçon* a boy, *reçu* received; pronounce *garson*, *ressu*, *forsa*, &c.

c is kept in the word *contracter* to contract, tho' left out in the root *contrat* contract. It is likewise dropt, as well as *t*, at the end of *instinct* instinct, and *succinct*, and in *succinctement* succinctly, when spelt with *c* before *t*. It is quite turned out of *bienfaiteur* benefactor, and *bienfaitrice* benefactress. It is preserved still in *amict* (a sort of vestment), but without being articulated.

c takes the articulation of *g*, especially in conversation, in *Claude* Claudius, and *Claudine*, *Czar* and *Czarine*, *second* second, *secondement* secondly, *seconder* to second, to assist, *secret* secret, *secrettement* secretly; *secrétaire* a secretary, *secrétariat* a secretary's office or place; and in the second syllable of *cicogne* stork.

Therefore pronounce *Glaude*, *Gzar*, *ſegon*, *ſegondé*, *ſegret*, *ſigogné*.

c is pronounced in *reſpect*, only at the end of a ſentence, or before a word beginning with a conſonant; and the ſecond *e* has the intermediate ſound of *e*; as *ſans reſpect* without any reſpect, *le reſpect que je lui dois* the reſpect which I owe him; pronounce *ſans reſpèc*, *le reſpèc que je lui dois*. When the next word begins with a vowel, *c* likewiſe is articulated, but not the final *t*; as *portez reſpect à qu'il eſt du*, reſpect or reverence your betters: pronounce *reſpè ka qui*, &c. and in the plural *(reſpects)* *ts* are altogether mute, the final *s* being not articulated even before a vowel: but *e* has the moſt reſonant ſound of *e* grave; as *préſentez mes reſpects à madame*, preſent my reſpects to my lady; pronounce *mes rèſpê à madame*.

In *lacs* nets, *c* is mute; but it is articulated when that word ſignifies *lakes*, and *a* is not broad.

c is articulated at the end of words, as *roc* a rock, *ſac* a ſack, *avec* with, &c. Except, 1*ſt*, in *un ſac de blé*, a ſack of wheat, though it is articulated in *un ſac de farine*, &c.

2*dly*, At the end of the following words, *accroc* a rent, *almanach* an almanack, *arſenic* arſenic, *broc* a large jug, *cotignac* marmalade of quinces, *clerc* a clerk, *croc* a hook, *eſtomac* ſtomach, *tabac* tobacco, *marc* (weight of eight ounces, or the groſs ſubſtance that remains of any thing ſtrained), and *porc* pork. But in *porc-épic* porcupine, *c* is articulated at the end of *porc*, and not at the end of *épic*; as alſo in *Marc* (a proper name), and in *croc-en-jambe*, the tripping up one's heels.

3*dly*, At the end of ſuch words as have a naſal vowel before *c*: as *banc* bench; *donc* then, in the middle of a ſentence; *il convainc* he convinces. Except *blanc* white, and *franc* free, when before a conjunctive beginning with a vowel; as *du blanc au noir*, going upon extremes, *franc abitre* free-will, *franc alleu* free-hold, allodial lands: pronounce *fran-kalleu*, *du blanc kau noir*, &c. but pronounce *ban*, *don*, *convain*, and other like words ending in *o*, without articulating final *c*: unleſs in reading verſes, when the next word begins with a vowel. Except alſo *donc* beginning a ſentence, which is a conſequence drawn from two or more premiſes; as *donc vous vous imaginez*, therefore you think, &c.

e doubles in the beginning of words between the vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, when one of them begins the word, and *l* or *r* comes between the conſonant and the latter vowel; as alſo when this laſt makes a diphthong jointly with another; as may be ſeen in *accabler* to overcharge,

overchange, *accommoder* to fit, *accumuler* to heap up, *accurrence* emergency, *acclamation* acclamation, *accrédité* in authority, *accroissement* increase, *accoucher* to lay in, *accueillir* to make welcome, &c.

Except in *acabit* good or bad taste in fruit, *acante* bears-foot, *acariâtre* peevish, *âcre* acrid, *acrimonie* acrimony, *ocre* oker, *acrostiche* acrostick, *académie* academy, with their derivatives.

After *e* and *i*, *c* is always single; as in *écarter* to scatter, *écouter* to hearken, *écolier* a scholar, *écume* the scum, *écrevisse* a crawfish, *iconoclaste*.

Double *c* is pronounced only before *e* and *i*; the first with the articulation of *k*, and the other with the hissing articulation of *s*; as in *accident* accident, *accélérer* to accelerate, *succéder* to succeed: pronounce *ak-sidan*, *akséléré*, *suksède*. But the two *c*'s are always articulated in proper names, as in *Accaron*.

d.

d is not articulated, nor even written now-a-days in *amiral* admiral, *amirauté* admiralty, *blé* wheat, and *Piémont* Piedmont.

d final is articulated only, first, at the end of *sud* south, and foreign words, as *Ephod*, *David*, &c.

2*dly*, At the end of the word *fond*, in this expression only, *de fond en comble*, utterly to the ground; of *quand* when, before pronouns of the third person; and of adnouns before nouns beginning with a vowel or *h* mute: as *grand esprit*, great wit, *grand homme*, a great or tall man, *quand il* or *elle parle*, when he *or* she speaks, *quand on dit*, when they say: in which cases final *d* has the articulation of *t*; *quan ton di*, *gran tespri*, *de son tan comble*, *gran tome*, *quan tel parle*.

3*dly*, At the end of the third person singular of verbs, but only when they are immediately followed by their pronouns subjective *il*, *elle*, *on*; as *prend-il* or *elle*, does he *or* she take? *répond-on*, do people answer? pronounce, articulating *d* like *t*, *répon-ton*, *pren-ti*: but do not pronounce *il répon ten Norman* for *il répond en Normand*, he answers like a Norman. Do not articulate *d* at all.

d before *re* in the infinitive of verbs *(dre)*, is cut off in the two persons singular of the present of the indicative in polysyllables, but is kept in monosyllables, except in the same persons of *plaindre* to pity, *craindre* to fear, and *joindre* to join. Thus write *je vends*, *tu vends*, from *vendre* to sell; *je défens*, *tu défens*, from *défendre* to defend; *je répons*, from *répondre* to answer, &c. but

write *je plains, tu plains*; *je crains, tu crains*; *je joins, tu joins*; instead of *je plainds, je crainds, je joinds.*

d is double in some words derived from the *Latin* only; as *addition* addition, *reddition* reddition, wherein the two *d*'s are articulated.

f.

f is articulated at the end of words; as *chef* chief, *vif* alive, *soif* thirst, *suif* tallow, *bœuf* an ox, *nerf* sinew, &c. Except, 1*st*, in *chef-d'œuvre* a master-piece of work, *clef* a key, *cerf* a stag, and at the end of *apprentif* an apprentice, and *baillif* bailiff, which are now-a-days spelt *apprenti*, *bailli*. 2*dly*, At the end of these words in the plural number, *bœuf* an ox, *neuf* new, and *œuf* egg: as *des bœufs* oxen, *des habits neufs* new coats, *des œufs à la coque* eggs in the shell; *un nerf de bœuf* a bull's pizzle; but pronounce with the articulation of *f de la corne de cerf*, hart's horn.

f is articulated at the end of *neuf* nine, when that word of number is alone, or at the end of a sentence; as *j'en ai neuf*, I have got nine But when in a sentence *neuf* is followed by a word beginning with a consonant, as *neuf guinées*, or *neuf livres sterling*, nine guineas or pounds sterling, *f* final is not articulated at all: and when it is followed by a vowel, as *neuf écus* nine crowns, *neuf ans* nine years, *f* takes the soft articulation of *v*. Therefore pronounce, *neu guinées*, *neu vécus*, *neuv an*.

f doubles after the vowels *a*, *e*, *o*, and the syllables *di* and *su* in the beginning of words; but double *f* is only articulated like single *f*, as in *affaire* an affair, *affront* affront, *effroi* fright, *effet* effect, *offense* an offence, *office* an office, *diffamant* defaming, *différent* different, *difficile* difficult, *diffus* prolix, *suffisant* sufficient, *suffrage* vote, &c.

Except in *afin* to the end that, *bafouer* to abuse, *café* coffee, *défense* defence, *réforme* reform, *refaire* to do again.

g.

This consonant has three different articulations, all included in the word *gagnages* (a hunting term which signifies the ploughed grounds where cattle and deer are used to feed).

g immediately before *a*, *o*, *u*, and the improper diphthong *ai*, and consonants except *n*, takes an articulation very near like *k*, except that it is not quite so hard. Nay, in *gangrene* gangrene, the first *g* is articulated quite like *k*; and very likely this word will be spelt in time with *c*, as it is pronounced; as has been the

case with others. There are two different articulations of *g* expressed in the word *Gregory*: the others are in *garni* garnished, *gorge* throat, *aigu* acute, *cargaison* a cargo, &c.

g before *e*, and *i*, *ea*, *eo*, and *eu*, denotes the articulation of *j* consonant; as *manger* to eat, *régir* to rule, *mangeons* let us eat, *il jugea* he judged, *gageure* a wager; pronounce *manjé*, *juja*, *gajure*, &c. *e*, in the improper diphthongs, serving only to give *g* the articulation of *j* which falls upon *a* or *o*, it being quite dropt before these two vowels, as has been already said, except it is marked over with an accent, as in *géant*.

When after *g* there follows *u*, followed too by another vowel, *g* keeps its hard articulation (in English *ghee*), which falls not upon *u*, that is then quite dropt, and serves only (as Dr. *Wallis* says) to make *g* a palate letter, but upon the following vowel; as in *guérir* to cure, *guide* a guide, *anguille* an eel: pronounce *ghéri*, *gid*, *anghille*. Except in *aiguille* needle, *aiguiser* to whet, and their derivatives; *ciguë* hemlock, *contiguë* contiguous, *ambiguë* ambiguous, and *ambiguïté* ambiguity, *arguer* to argue, *Guise* and *Guide* (proper names). In which case two dots are put over the vowel that follows *u*, to shew that the articulation of *g* falls upon *u*, which is drawn out upon the account of the final *e* not being sounded: whereas, when that *e* is not marked over with two dots, as in *figue*, *vogue*, &c. *g* has no other articulation than that of the final *g* in the English word *fig*: the *English* have the same syllable and articulation in *fatigue*, *vogue*, *plague*, &c.

g is not articulated in *doigt* finger, *legs* legacy, *vingt* twenty.

gh is articulated like *gu* in these proper names *Berghen*, and *le Ghilan*.

gn expresses a certain liquid articulation like that of *n* between two *i*'s in English (*minion*), as in *mignon* delicate, *digne* worthy, *compagnon* companion, *régner* to reign. Except in *agnat* and *agnation*, *cognat* and *cognation*, *bagnauder* and *bagnaudier*, *Gnidien*, *Gnome*, *Gnomonique*, *Gnostique*, *magnésie*, *magnésisme*, *régnicole*, *Progné*, and other proper names, wherein *g* and *n* keep each their proper articulation.

g at the end of words is not articulated; except, 1*st*, in *zig-zag*, and at the end of proper and foreign names: as *Agag*, *Sarug*.

2*dly*, In these expressions, *suer sang & eau*, to labour with might and main, *le sang & le carnage*, the blood and slaughter, *long espace*, a long space; and at the end of the words *sang* blood,

rang rank, *joug* yoke, only in repeating verses when the next word begins with a vowel; in which cases *g* is quite articulated like *k*. Therefore pronounce *san ké eau*, *un lon kespace*, *le san ké*, *le karnage*.

Double *g* is always pronounced, as in *suggérer* to suggest; except however in *aggrave*, *aggraver*, and *réaggrave*: but it is not an easy matter to determine when *g* is double, and when it is single.

h.

h in the beginning and middle of words is either *aspirated*, or *not aspirated*; that is, either it is pronounced with a hard aspiration, as in *hast*, *hunting*, or not pronounced at all, as in *hour*, *honeur*: for, strictly speaking, *h* is no letter, but only a mark of aspiration, though not always so in our modern languages.

In order to know in what cases *h* must be aspirated, and when it must not be heard at all, French Grammarians have laid for a constant principle, that the words beginning with *h*, that are derived from Latin, in the beginning of which Latin words there is also *h*, have that *h* not aspirated; and that, on the contrary, *h* is aspirated in words merely French, and by no means derived from Latin. Thus *honneur* honour, being derived from the Latin word *honor*, beginning with *h*, you must pronounce without *h*, and write with the elision *l'honneur*, and not *le honneur*: *haut* is indeed derived from *altus*; but as there is no *h* in the Latin word, you must pronounce it hard in French, and read with aspiration *en haut* up, and not *en nhaut*; *la hauteur* the height, and not *l'hauteur*: *honte* shame, is not derived from Latin; therefore you must pronounce with aspiration, and write without elision *la honte*, and not *l'onte*, nor *l'honte*.

From French words derived from Latin, beginning with *h*, wherein however *h* is aspirated, seven are excepted; *héros* (though *h* is not aspirated in its derivatives *héroïne*, *héroïque*,) &c. *hennir* to neigh, *hennissement* neighing, *harpie* a harpy, *hargneux* morose, *haleter* to breathe short, *hareng* herring. And from words merely French, or derived from Latin words not beginning with *h*, wherein however *h* is not aspirated, eight also are excepted: *hermine* an ermin, *hermite* an hermit, *huit* eight (with its derivatives), *huitre* oyster, *huile* oil, *huis* a door, *huissier* usher, and *hièble* wallwort.

This observation, though ever so infallible, being of no use to youth, and especially to young ladies, who oftentimes prove the best French scholars, I will, for their sake, make, at the end of this

this treatise, an exact list of all the words of the language wherein *h* is to be aspirated, and wherein it is not. You must only observe here,

1*st*, That *h* is not aspirated in the middle of words, or in compound words, when it is not aspirated in the beginning of the simple; as *honneur*, *honorer*, *déshonneur*, *déshonorer*, to dishonour; pronounce *onorer* and *défonoré*. On the contrary, as it is aspirated in the beginning of *hardi* bold, it must be so too in *hardiment* boldly, and *enhardir* to embolden; except in the word *exhausser* to raise higher, which is pronounced as *exaucer* to grant, though being derived from *haut*.——*h* in *trahir* to betray, *trahison* betraying, *envahir* to invade, and other like words not compound, is left out also in the pronunciation, and serves only to cause both the vowels to be sounded as two distinct syllables (*tra-ïr*).

2*dly*, That *h* is aspirated in the plural of the word *Henri* (*les Henris*), as likewise in its derivative *la Henriade*, in *Hesse*, and in *Hollande*, *Hongrie*, when these words have not the particle *de* before them; for when they follow that particle, *h* is not aspirated. Thus, though we say *la Hollande* & *la Hongrie*, and not *l'Hollande* & *l'Hongrie*, yet we say *de la toile d'Hollande* Holland cloth, *du fromage d'Hollande* Dutch cheese, *la Rein d'Hongrie* the Queen of Hungary, *du vin d'Hongrie* wine of Hungary, and not *le Reine* de *Hongrie*, *du fromage* de *Hollande*.

3*dly*, Though *h* is not aspirated in *huit* eight, not in its derivatives, *huitième* eighth, *huitain* (a stanza of eight verses), and *huitaine* (a space of eight days), yet we don't say or write with the elision *l'huit*, *l'huitième*, as we do *l'huile*, *l'huitre*; but *le huit*, *le huitième*, *la huitaine*, &c. as if *h* was aspirated.

h following *c* (*ch*) answers the English *sh*, and expresses the same articulation: as *chats* cats, *chérir* to cherish, *chiffre* cypher, &c. pronounce as in English *shaw*, *shiffr*, &c. We now-a-days write as we pronounce *colère* anger, *colique* colick, *caractère* character, without *h*; but we write still *chaos* chaos, to distinguish it from *cahot* jolt.

But the difference is however to be observed in regard to the pronunciation of the following words derived from *Greek* and *Hebrew*, as some being pronounced according to the proper articulation of *ch*:

Achéen,

Achéen,	Achean,	*Chimie*,	Chymistry,
Achéron,	Acheron,	*Chimiste*,	Chymist,
Achille,	Achilles,	*Chirurgie*,	Surgery,
Alchimie,	Alchymistry,	*Chirurgien*,	Surgeon,
Alchimiste,	Alchymist,	*Eustochie*,	Eustochium,
Antioche,	Antioch,	*Eutyche*,	Eutyche,
Archidame,	Archidamus,	*Eutychéen*,	
Archipel,	Archipelago,	*Eschyle*,	Eschyle,
Achitophel,	Achitophel,	*Eschines*,	Eschines,
Anarchie,	Anarchy,	*Ezéchias*,	Ezechiah,
Anchise,	Anchises,	*Ezéchiel*,	Ezechiel,
Archevêque,	Archbishop,	*Hiérarchie*,	Hierarchy,
Archidiacre,	Archdeacon,	*Joachim*,	Joachim,
Archiprêtre,	Archprieſt,	*Malachie*,	Malachi,
Archiduc,	Archduke,	*Machiavel*,	Machiavel,
Archiduché, with		*Manichéen*,	Manichean,
Archiduchesse,	Archducheſs,	*Melchisédec*,	Melchiſedeck,
Archimède,	Archimedes,	*Michée*,	Micah,
Architecte,	Architect,	*Michel*,	Michael,
Archives,	Records,	*Monarchie*,	Monarchy,
Bachique, belonging to *Bacchus*,		*Patriarche*,	Patriarch,
Barachie,	Barachius,	*Psychée*,	Pſyche,
Chérubin,	Cherubim,	*Rachel*,	Rachel,
Chéronée,	Cheronea,	*Schisme*,	Schiſm,
Cacochyme,	ill-complexioned,	*Sichée*,	Sicheus,
Chyle,	Chyle,	*Tétrarchie*,	Tetrarchy,
Chiron,	Chiron,	*Trochisque*,	
Cholchide,	Cholchis,	*Tychique*,	Tychicus,
Chimère,	Chimæra,	*Zachée*,	Zaccheus.

But *ch* is articulated like *k* in the following words, and all other foreign names, which therefore ſhould be better ſpelt with *k*, eſpecially if we conſider what an idle letter *k* is in the French.

Achaie,	Achaia,	*Archéarnasse*,	Archearnaſſus,
Achéloüs,	Achelous,	*Archestratus*,	Archeſtratus,
Antiochus,	Antiochus,	*Archiépiscopal*,	Archiepiſcopal,
Archélaüs,	Archelaus,	*Archiépiscopat*,	Archbiſhoprick,
Achiloüs,	Achilous,	*Archigenès*,	Archigenes,
Archétype,	Archetype,	les *Archontes*,	Archontes,
Archange,	Archangel,	*Bacchus*,	
Archangel,	Archangel,	les *Bacchantes*,	Bacchantes,

les *Bacchanales*, Bacchanals,
Charybde, Charybdis,
les *Charités*, Charities,
Charon, (the ferryman of hell); for *ch* is founded like *sh* in *un charon*, a cartwright.
Chélidoine, Celandine,
Cham, Cham,
Chanaan, Canaan,
Chus, Chus,
Calchas, Calchas,
Chérès, Ceres,
Chélydre, a water-snake,
Charès, Chares,
Charchédon, Charchedon,
Chosroès, Chosroes,
Chabrias, Chabrias,
Chersonèse, Chersonesus,
Chio, Chio,
Chiliarque, Chyliarchus,
Chiromancie, Chyromancy,
Chorèbe, Choreb,
Chœur, Chorus, a Choir,
Chorifte, Chorist,
Chorographie, Chorography,
Dyrrhachium, Dyrrhachium,
Echinades, Echinades,
Epicharme, Epicharmus,
Exarchat, Exarchat,
Echo, Echo,
Eucharifte, Eucharifte, and
Eucharistie,
Leschès, Lesches,
Michol, Michol,
Nabuchodonosor, Nebuchadnezzar,
Orchestre, Orchestra,
Pulchérie,
Réch bite,
Scholastique, Scholastic,
Scholiaste, Scholiast,
Scholie, Scholium,
Synecdoche, Synecdoche,
Tycho Brahé,
Zacharie, Zachariah,
and the syllables in *chal* of foreign words become French; as *Monachal*, &c.

ch is pronounced in *catéchèse*, and *catéchisme* a catechism, and it is articulated like *k* in *catéchumène*. We pronounce *machine* and *stomachique* French like, and *méchanique* and *stomachal*, Greek like, when these words are spelt with *h*.

We now-a-days write *pascal*, instead of *paschal*.

Chypre Cyprus, is sometimes spelt and pronounced with *ch*, and sometimes with *c* only, according to the circumstances of the time spoken of; for if one speaks of something relating to ancient geography, one must spell and pronounce *l'île de Cypre*, the island of Cyprus; and *l'île de Chypre*, if what one says relates to modern geography. Therefore we always say *de la poudre de Chypre*, powder of Cyprus: as likewise

Caton fut envoyé par le peuple Romain dans l'île de Chypre, Cato was sent by the Roman people into the island of Cyprus.
Les Turcs se rendirent maîtres de l'île de Chypre sous Sélim II. The Turks made themselves of Cyprus under Selim II.

ch,

ch, in common converſation, is articulated like *j* in *j'achète*, with the two other perſons ſing. of *acheter* to buy, and *revenche* revenge. Pronounce *revenje*, *jajète*.

ch before *r* is articulated like *k* in *chrême* chriſm, *Chriſt*, and other words beginning with *chr*, wherein it is pronounced as in Engliſh, *Chriſt*.

lh takes the liquid articulation of *l* in theſe two proper names, *Milhaut* and *Pardalhac*.

h after *p* (*ph*) is articulated like *f*, as in *philoſophe* philoſopher. But *ph* is no longer found, except in proper names, and ſome ſcientific words, as in *Phaéton*, *Philippe*, *Phyſicien*, *Pharmacie*, *Phénomène*, *Phtisie*, *Phyſionomie*: as to the others uſed in common diſcourſe, they are ſpelt French like, in ſpite of their Greek derivation. Thus we write *fantaisie* fancy, *fantôme* a phantom, *faisan* a pheaſant, *frénésie* phrenſy, &c.

h after *r* or *t* is not pronounced at all: as *rhétorique* rhetorick, *thèſe* theſis; pronounce *tèſe*, *rétorique*.

h in *hiérarchie* is aſpirated: it is not in *hiéroglyphe* and *hiéroglyphique*. We now write *Jéruſalem*, *Jérôme*, *jacinthe*, inſtead of *Hiéruſalem*, *Hiérôme*, *hyacinthe*.

Final *h* is found only at the end of *Auch* (a city in *France*), and ſome foreign and chiefly Hebraic words, wherein it is not pronounced; as in *Abimélech*, *Enoch*, &c. At the end of *Joſeph*, it forms with *p* the ſound of *f*. Pronounce *Joſef*, *Enoc*, &c. *ch* is dropt at the end of *almanach*: but *Auch* is pronounced *Aûche*.

In the interjections *ah*, *eh*, *oh*! *h* is ſometimes pronounced with aſpiration, as if it was the firſt letter.

j.

j conſonant is of the ſame uſe in French as in Engliſh, but is articulated like *s* in the words *pleaſure*, *leiſure*, &c. It differs from the Engliſh *j*, in that one muſt expreſs no articulation of *d* before, no more than before *g*, for theſe two conſonants are pronounced in Engliſh with a double articulation.

k.

k is uſed in French only in the word *kyrielle*, which ſignifies, in familiar diſcourſe, a *long and grievous ſeries of things* in a ſtory, and abuſively formed from the litany *Kyrie eleiſon*. As to the foreign words wherein *k* is found, as in *Stockholm*, *k* is articulated as in Engliſh.

l is

l.

l is not articulated in *fils* son; it is silent also in *quelque* some, *quelquefois* sometimes, *quelqu'un* somebody, but only in conversation; though it is always pronounced in *quelconque*, any body whatever. Neither is it pronounced in *Chaulnes* (a proper name).

Double *l* is no otherwise articulated but as a single *l*, as in *mollir* to soften, *salle* a hall. Except in the following words, and when *i* comes before double *l* in the beginning of words, as *illustre* illustrious, *illégitime* illegal, &c.

Allégorie,	allegory,	*ébullition*,	ebullition,
allusion,	allusion,	*ellébore*,	ellebore,
allusion,	allusion,	*flagellation*,	scourging,
appellatif,	appellative,	*flageller*,	to scourge,
Apollon,	Apollo,	*Gallicane*,	Gallic,
Bellone,	Bellona,	*imbécillité*,	imbecility,
belligérant,	at war,	*intelligence*,	understanding,
belliqueux,	warlike,	*intelligent*,	intelligent,
bellissime,	extraordinary fine,	*intelligible*,	intelligible,
circonvallation,	circumvallation,	*intellectuel*,	intellectual,
collatéral,	collateral,	*millénaire*,	millenary,
collateur,	one that has a living in his gift,	*millésime*,	the year or date of a medal,
collation,	collation,	*Magellanique*,	Magellanic,
collationner,	but not in *collation*, a meal, &c.	*nullité*,	nullity,
colloquer,	to rank,	*Palladium*,	Palladium,
colliger,	to collect,	*Pallas*,	
récolliger,	to recollect, but not in *récollection*,	*pallier*,	to palliate,
collusion,	collusion,	*polluer*,	to pollute,
collusoire,	collusory,	*Pollux*,	(and all proper names spelt with double *l*.)
constellation,	constellation,	*pusillanime*,	pusillanimous,
		pusillanimité,	pusillanimity.

Therefore pronounce *il-lustre*, *il-légitime*, *Pal-las*, *bel-liqueux*, *intel-ligent*, *pel-licule*, &c. but pronounce *molir*, *sale*, &c.

You may pronounce *syllogisme* a syllogism, as you please.

It is not therefore an easy matter to determine when *l* doubles in words. It may be said only in general for the adnouns, when the masculine ends in *l*, it is doubled in the feminine; but remains single, if the final *l* of the masculine is followed by *e* not sounded: as

M. *bel**, F. *belle*, handsome; M. *cruel*, F. *cruelle*, cruel. M. *mol**, F. *molle*, soft. M. *fol**, F. *folle*, fool. M. and F. *fidelle* faithful, *tranquille* quiet, *utile* useful, *frivole*, frivolous, &c.

There is another exception from nouns in *il*, as *vil* vile, *subtil* subtile, &c. in whose feminine *vile*, *subtile*, *l* is not doubled.

i before double *l* in the middle of words, denotes only the liquid articulation of *l*; as in *fille* a daughter, *sillon* a furrow, except in these words,

Achille, Achilles, *Gilles*, St. *Giles*, *Séville*, Seville, *argille*, clay, *imbécille*, feeble, an *syllabe*, a syllable, *armillaire*, armillary, idiot, *vacillant*, *vaciller*, &c. *camomille*, camomile, *mille*, a thousand (with reeling, *il distille*, he distils, its derivatives), *ville*, city, town. *idylle*, idyl, *pupille*, an orphan,

l takes the liquid articulation at the end of *Avril* April, *babil* prattling, *béril*, *Brésil*, Brasil, *grésil* (a sort of rime or hoar-frost), *mil* millet, and *péril* peril; as likewise at the end of the improper diphthongs *ail*, *eil*, *ueil*, *euil*, and *ouil*: as *de l'ail* garlick, *mail* mall, *soleil* sun, *deuil* mourning, *fenouil* fennel; and in *gentilhomme* nobly descended: but *l* is quite dropt in the pronunciation of the plural of that noun *gentils-hommes*, which is pronounced *jantizom*.

Double *l* takes likewise the liquid articulation in these two proper names *Nuili* and *Sulli*; as also *lh* in these two others, *Milhaut* and *Pardalhac*.

l is pronounced at the end of words; as *sel* salt, *fil* thread, *royal* royal; except 1*st*, in

baril,	barrel,	*gentil*,	genteel,	*persil*,	parsley,
chenil,	dog-kennel,	*gril*,	gridiron,	*pouls*,	pulse,
fils,	son,	*nombril*,	navel,	*soul*,	suddled,
filleul,	god-son,	*outil*,	a tool,	*sourcil*,	eye-brow.
fusil,	a gun,				

2*dly*, In the pronoun *il* before a consonant in common conversation (nay *il* coming after its verb, don't articulate its *l* even before a vowel); and in the plural *ils*, even before a vowel, and final *s* before a vowel, is articulated like *z*: as *il dit* he says, *ils ont fait* they have done, *parle-t-il-encore?* is he speaking still? Pronounce *i di*, *i zon fai*, *parl ti encor*; but to avoid double meanings, the best is to sound *l*: besides, in reading, it cannot be silent. In the phrase *ainsi soit-il*, *l* must be articulated.

* Old Masculines still used before nouns beginning with a vowel.

We

We now a-days spell and pronounce *fou* for *fol* a fool, *sou* for *sol* a penny, *cou* for *col* a neck, and *mou* for *mol* soft. But we always spell and pronounce *sol* soil, *le col d'une chemise*, the neck of a shirt, as likewise when *col* signifies a *défilé*, or narrow passage between two hills; as *le col de Tende*, the straights of *Tend*; as also *le col de la vessie & de la matrice*, the neck of the bladder or *matrix*, and *un b mol*, a *b* flat in music.

We say, in terms of hawking, that *un oiseau a fait un beau vou* for *vol*, the bird has made a fine flight.

m.

m after a vowel, and followed by a consonant, serves, like *n*, to give the nasal sound to the vowel; as *prompt* quick, *sembler* to seem; pronounce *pron*, *sambler*. Except,

1*st*, *amnistie* amnesty, *hymne* hymn, *Amsterdam*, and some other foreign words, wherein *m* keeps its peculiar articulation, though followed by a consonant.

2*dly*, *immédiat* immediate, *immoler* to sacrifice, and all words beginning with *im* followed by another *m*, wherein both *m*'s must be articulated; pronounce *am-nistie*, *im-médiat*, *im-moler*.

3*dly*, *om* followed by *m* is not nasal, but *o* keeps its slender and short sound, and the two *m*'s are pronounced only like a single one; as in *commun* common, *commander* to command, *commode* convenient, *sommer* to summon, &c. pronounce *comandé*, *comode*, &c. but articulate the double *m* in these four words, *commuer*, *commutation*, *commutatif*, and *incommuniquable*.

Neither is *am* nasal in *damner* to damn, nor in its derivatives *condamner* to condemn, &c. pronounce *dâner*.——*m* is articulated in *indemniser* to indemnify, and *indemnité* indemnity; but it causes the foregoing *e* to take the sound of slender *a* (*indam-nité*).——It is not articulated in *solemnel* solemn, though the foregoing *e* is sounded like *a* (*solanel*).

m at the end of words serves, like *n*, to give the nasal sound to the vowel: as *nom* name, *parfum* perfume; pronounce *non*, *parfun*. Except in the interjection *hem*, wherein *h* and *m* are articulated hard; in *item*, and in foreign words; as *Matusalem*, *Amsterdam*, *Stockholm*, wherein *m* keeps its peculiar articulation; though at the end of *Adam*, and *Absalom*, final *m* gives the preceding vowel the nasal sound; as also doth *n* at the end of *Salomon*.

m is commonly doubled after *im*, *com*, *gom*, *pom*, *hom*, *som*, beginning a word; as *immense* immense, *comme* as, *commerce* trade,

gamme gum, *pomme* an apple, *sommet* the top, *homme* a man, *sommer* to summon, *&c.*

Except in these words, *comète* a comet, *comite* (an officer on board a galley), *comité* a committee, *comédie* a comedy, *comique* comical, *concomitance* concomitancy, *homogène* homogeneous.

m is also doubled in these six words, *dommage* damage, *femme* a woman, *lemme* a lemma, *dilemme* a dilemma, *nommer* to name, *nommément* namely.

Double *m* is articulated in foreign words, as *Ammoniac*, *Ammonite*, after the same manner as in French words beginning with *imm*, as *im-médiat* immediate, *im-moler* to sacrifice, *im-mense*.

n.

n keeps its peculiar and proper articulation (such as it is expressed in the English monosyllables *not* and *in*) *1st*, when it begins a syllable, or is between two vowels, as in *nonagénaire* one fourscore and ten years old, *inimitié* enmity.

2dly, When *in*, beginning a word, is followed by another *n*; as in *innover* to make innovations: pronounce *in-nover*, *in-i-mité*; &c. except *innocent* innocent (with its derivatives), which is pronounced as if it was spelt with a single *n*, *i-nocent*.

In all other cases *n* serves only to give the nasal sound to the foregoing vowel, as has been said in the third section about nasals: where we have seen, that *in* beginning a word, and followed by a vowel, is not nasal; *i* and *n* keeping each of them its peculiar sound and articulation, as in *inattention* want of attention, *inouï* unheard of, pronounce *i-nattention*, *i-noui*.

n at the end of words is not pronounced before consonants; but as for those words beginning with a vowel, make these following observations:

bien well, and *rien* nothing, articulate in a particular manner their final *n* before a vowel, even in common and familiar discourse. Therefore pronounce

bien néloquent,	for	*bien éloquent*, very eloquent,
bien nétudier,		*bien étudier*, to study well,
ne rien napprendre,		*ne rien apprendre*, to learn nothing,
rien nau monde,		*rein au monde*, nothing in the world.

But custom is against pronouncing final *n* in the noun *bien*, in the pronouns *mien*, *tien*, *sien*; in *vin* wine, *dessein* design, and *rien* before *oui* heard. Therefore don't pronounce

je

Je n'ai rien noui dire,	but	*rien ouï dire,* I've heard nothing,
un dessein nadmirable,		*dessein admirable,* a marvellous design,
du vin nexcellent,		*du vin excellent,* mighty good wine,
le mien nest meilleur,		*le mien est meilleur,* mine is better,
un bien nà désirer,		*bien à désirer,* a thing to be wished for.

en, either preposition or pronoun relative, always articulates its *n* before a vowel; as

en un clin d'œil, in a trice,	pronounce	*en nun clin d'œil,*
en entrant, as he went in,		*en nentrant,*
en êtes-vous sûr, are you sure of it?		*en nêtes-vous sûr,*
j'en ai dit assez, I've said enough on't.		*j'en nai dit assez.*

Except after the imperative; as *donnez-en à tous*, give some to every body, and not *donnez en nà tous*. *Parlez-en encore*, not *en nencore*, speak of it again.

on always articulates its final *n* before a vowel, except in sentences of interrogation: as,

on observe,	pronounce	*on nobserve,* it is observed,
on en peut être assuré,		*on nen peut,* &c. one may be sure of it.

But when a question is asked, pronounce

en peut on être sûr,	and not	*enpeut-onnêtre sûr,* can one be sure of it?
apprend on avec joie,		*apprend on navè joie,* can one hear with gladness?

un articulates its *n* before its noun beginning with a vowel; but never when it is a noun of number. Therefore pronounce *un narbre*, for *un arbre* a tree, *un nami*, for *un ami* a friend. But *Il y en eut un assez hardi*, and not *un nassez hardi*, there was one so bold as to, *&c. n*, however, is articulated in this instance: *il n'y a qu'un homme*, there is but one man; pronounce *un nome*.

As to the other final nasals, they articulate *n* before a vowel in all words, especially adnouns immediately followed by their nouns; as *d'un commun accord* unanimously, *mon âme* my soul, *certain auteur* a certain author, *ancien établissement* ancient establishment; pronounce *mon nâme*, *commun naccord*, *certain nauteur*, &c.

Nay *bon* and *divin* seem to lose entirely their nasal sounds before their nouns beginning with a vowel; as *bon orateur* a good orator, *divin amour* divine love; pronounce *bonorateur*, *divi namour*,

as alſo *bien aiſe* very glad; pronounce *biè-naiſe.*——*Benin* benign, and *malin* malign, are ſeldom met with before nouns beginning with a vowel, except that *malin eſprit* (an evil ſpirit) are conſtrued together.

n is pronounced at the end of foreign words, or thoſe derived from Latin; *e* (as has been ſaid) being not naſal in theſe words, *hymen*, *examen*, &c.

n is quite dropt in all the third perſons of the plural number of verbs after *e*; as *ils aiment* they love, *ils aimoient* they loved; pronounce *izaime*, *izaimaî*; *nt* ſerving to make that ſyllable a little longer than it is in the third perſon ſingular; *il aime* he loves, *il aimoit* he loved. That final *t* is articulated in repeating verſes before the next word beginning with a vowel; as *elles aiment à parler* they love ſpeaking; pronounce *el zaime tà parler.*

We write now-a-days *couvent* a convent, and *Marmoutier*, inſtead of the old manner of *convent*, *Marmontier* (a proper name).

n is, of all conſonants, that which is moſt frequently doubled in words, though it is ſingle in a great many caſes. Generally ſpeaking, it don't double between two *o*'s. Thus we write with a ſingle *n* *ſonore* ſonorous, *honorable* honourable, and *honorer* to honour, though we write with a double *n* *ſonner* to ring, or reſound, *honneur* honour, *honnête* honeſt, &c.

We moſt commonly double it in derivatives when the primitives end in *n* coming from *a*, *e*, *o*; as *an*, *année* year, *le mien*, *la mienne* mine, *pardon* pardon, *pardonnable* what is to be forgiven, *occaſion* occaſion, *occaſionner* to occaſion, *marron* a horſe-cheſnut, *marronnier* a horſe cheſnut-tree, *ſavon* ſoap, *ſavonnette* a waſh-ball, &c. But when that final conſonant comes after *i* or *u*, or any diphthong, it remains ſingle in the derivative; as *badin* wanton, *badine*; *fin* fine, *fine*; *brun* brown, *brune*; *ſoin* care, *ſoigner* to take care, &c.

Double *n* is pronounced in theſe words only, *annal* annal, *annexe* annexed thing, *annotation* annotation, *annuel* annual, *annuité* annuity, *annulaire* annular, *annuller* to annul, *inné* innate, *innover* to innovate, *connexité* connexion, *conniver* to connive, and their derivatives.

p.

p is not pronounced in *baptême* baptiſm, *baptiſer* to chriſten, *baptiſtère*, and *baptiſte*: but it is in *baptiſmal* and *baptiſmaux.*——It is not articulated in *ſept* ſeven, but it is in its derivatives *ſeptante* ſeventy, *ſeptuagénaire* one ſeventy years old, and *ſeptuagéſime* ſeptuageſima.——Neither is it pronounced by ſome people

in *pseaume* psalm, *pseautier* psalter, nor in *psalmiste* psalmist, tho' it is in *psalmodie* psalmody, and *psalmodier* to sing.

p is likewise dropt in

corps, body, *compte*, account, *compter*, to reckon, *exempt*, free, *exempter*, to exempt, *manuscript*, manuscript, *prompt*, quick, *promptitude*, quickness, *promptement*, quickly, *sculpture*, statuary, with its derivatives, *sculpter* and *sculpteur*, *symptome*, symptom, *temps*, time.

But *p* is pronounced in *dompter* to tame, *exemption*, *impromptu*, *accepter*, *rédempteur*, *contemptible*.

p at the end of words is not articulated; as *drap* cloth, *loup* wolf, *champ* field, &c. Except these three, *cap* a cap, *Gap* (the name of a city), *julep* a julep; and the adverbs *beaucoup* much, and *trop* too much, before a word beginning with a vowel; as *beaucoup aimé* much loved, *trop obligeant* too obliging; pronounce *dra*, *lou*, *tro poligeant*, *julep*, *Gap*, *cap*.

Good writers double *p* now-a-days in most words, only to preserve etymology: in proper names, as *Appius*, &c. it is sounded.

q.

q is always followed in words by *u (qu)* even before another *u*, and articulated like *k* or *c* in *call*; as *quatre* four, *quelque* some, *qui* who, *quintal*, *piquure* pricking, &c. pronounce *katr*, *key*, &c. but in *questeur* questor, *équestre* equestrian, *équiangle* equiangular, the first syllables of *Quinquagésime* Quinquagesima, *Quirinal*, *Quintilien*, *Quinte-Curce* Quintus Curtius, and the third of *ubiquiste*, with their derivatives, pronounce *ku-esteur*, *écu-estre*, *cuincouagésime*, *ubicu-iste*: and in *aquatique* marshy, *quadragénaire* one forty years old, *quadragésime* quadragesima, *quadrature* quadrature, *quadruple* four-fold, *quadrupède* a quadruped, *équateur* æquator, *équation*, and the second syllable of *quinquagénaire* one fifty years old, and *quinquagésime*, *qua* is pronounced like *quoua*, or *kwa*. Therefore pronounce *akwatic*, *ékwateur*, *kwadratur*, &c. It is not amiss to observe here, that *ua* is likewise pronounced like *oua*, in *linguale*, *la Guadeloupe*, and *la Guadiane*.

qu followed by nasal *i (quin)*, is pronounced in *Charles-quint*, Charles the fifth, and *Sixte-quint* Sixtus the fifth, like *Kent* without sounding the final *t*.

q takes the articulation of *g* hard in *souquenille* a frock, as also in *Don Quixotte*, which is pronounced *Don Ghishut*.

e and *i*, or when *c* has a dash under it (*ç*), they take the hissing articulation of *s*, as *science* science, *sceau* seal, *sçavoir* to know, (*old manner of writing that verb*).

s is not pronounced in the beginning of *schisme* schism, nor in its derivatives; pronounce *chisme* and *schismatique* a schismatic. But it is articulated in *scholastique* scholastic, *scholiaste* scholiast, and *scholie*, when these words are so spelt.

s at the end of words is not pronounced, even before a vowel; as *un bras estropié*, a maimed arm; pronounce *bra estropié*. Except,

1*st*, In *un as* an ace, *l'as de pique* the ace of spades, *un ours* a bear, *une vis* a screw, and *le cens* (census); but not in *deux*, *trois*, &c. *cens* two or three hundred.

2*dly*, At the end of foreign words and proper names, as *Aloës*, *Fabius*, *Vénus*, *Daphnis*, *Cérès*, *Pallas*, *Esdras*, *Josias*, &c. except *Barnabas*, *Judas*, *Lucas*, *Mathias*, and *Thomas*. It is likewise pronounced in these Latin words become French, *ânus*, *agnus*, *bis*, *bibus*, *bolus*, *blocus*, *calus*, *fœtus*, *iris*, *gratis*, *orémus*, *phébus*, *rébus*, *sinus*, *virus*, (but not *chaos*), at the end of which *s* is pronounced with its hissing articulation.——*s* is articulated in *Mars*, the name of the God of war. It is pronounced in *Themis des Jacobus*, (but not in *des Carolus*). It is articulated at the end of *Rheims*, *Sens*, and *Senlis* (cities of *France*); but not of *Charles*, *Jules*, and *Pâques*, when spelt with *s*.

3*dly*, At the end of pronouns, articles, and prepositions before a vowel, or *h* not aspirated, and the imperative before the pronouns *en* and *y* only, in the other persons of verbs, it is omitted in common discourse; as *les enfans* the children, *nous aimons* we love, *viens-y* come thither, *faites-en* make some, *dès à présent* from this time foreward, *j'avois été* I had been, *vouz avez eu mes habits* you have had my coats, *nous irons à Paris*, &c. we shall go to Paris; give it the sound of z, and pronounce *dè za présen*, *vien zi*, *nou zèmon*, *j'avoi zété*, *vou zavé u mè zabits*, *non ziron à Paris*, &c. But when *nous* and *vous* are used interrogatively, we don't pronounce their final *s* before the next vowel. Therefore do not pronounce, without sounding *s*, *a vons nous à manger*, have we something to eat? *vien avec moi*, come along with me, *li encore*, read again.——Neither is *s* pronounced at the end of the pronoun *les* before a vowel, but only gives *e* the most resonant sound of *è* grave; as *donnez-les à votre sœur*, give them to your sister: pronounce *donnez-lè à votre sœur*, tho' we pronounce *il le za donné* for *il les a donnés*, he has given them.

4*thly*,

4*thly*, In the first syllable of *vis-à-vis* over-against, and *de temps en temps* from time to time, as also most commonly in that of *pas-à-pas* step by step, *de pis en pis*, worse and worse, and *de plus en plus* more and more.

5*thly*, *s* is not pronounced in *puis* then, nor *depuis* since, even before a vowel. It is articulated in *puisque* since, as well as in *lorsque* when.

6*thly*, *s* is always pronounced at the end of adnouns plural, before their nouns beginning with a vowel; but when the nouns come first, their final *s* is seldom articulated before their adnouns, except in repeating verses; as *les belles âmes* noble souls, *les grands hommes* great men; pronounce *bel zâmes*, *gran zomes*.

Observe besides, 1*st*, that excepting *âs*, *ours*, *vis*, *le cens*, and foreign words wherein final *s* is pronounced with the hissing articulation; in all other cases wherein it is pronounced at the end of words, it is always with the soft articulation of *z*.

2*dly*, There were formerly a great many French words spelt with *s*, though not pronounced at all. They particularly used to write with *s* all the preterite tenses of the subjunctive; *fust* for *fût* were, *vist* for *vît*, *aimast* for *aimât* loved, and *abysme* for *abyme* abyss; *chrestien* for *chrétien* christian, *mesme* for *même* ever, *maistre* for *maître* master, *naistre* for *naître* to be born, &c. But the new orthography having suppressed *s*, which was useless in all those words, and substituted in its place the syncope (^) over the foregoing vowel, and there being no modern book or dictionary but what is conformable to this new way of spelling, so *s* is not now found in the middle of words, but when it is necessarily pronounced; except in *est* is, (3d pers. pres. of *être* to be), and *Basle* (the name of a city, when spelt with *s*).

3*dly*, *s*, which is pronounced in *Christ* (as well as *t*), when that word is alone, is dropt with the final *t* when they come after *Jésus*, the final *s* whereof is never articulated neither. Therefore pronounce *Jésu*, and *Jésu Chri*.

4*thly*, *s* in the middle of words has the soft articulation of *z* before *b*, *d*, *v*, *g*, called weak consonants; and the hissing articulation before *c* and *k*, *f*, *m*, *p*, *q*, *t*. Thus *Asdrubal*, *presbytère* parsonage, &c. are pronounced *Azdrubal*, *prezbiter*: but do not pronounce *Jazpe*, *jazmin*, *auztère*, *prezque*, for *Jaspe* Jasper, *jasmin* jessamin, *austère* austere, *presque* almost, &c.

You may pronounce it or not in *enregistrer* to register; but it is never pronounced in *registre*, when this noun is spelt with *s*.

s is not sounded in this word *tous* all, when it is followed by some other words; as *tous vos livres* all your books, pronounce

ton vô livr: but when *tous* is at the end of a ſentence, *s* is ſounded as *ſa je les ai vus tous* I have ſeen them all, pronounce *je lè zé vu touſs.*

t.

t followed by *i (ti)* before *a, e, o,* in the middle of words, has the hiſſing articulation of *s*; as in *action* action, *martial* warlike, *patience* patience, *&c.* pronounce *paſſiance, acſion,* &c. but *ti* keeps its proper articulation,

1*ſt*, After *x* and *s*; which extends only to theſe twelve words:

baſtion,	a baſtion,	*hoſtie,*	a victim,
beſtial,	beſtial,	*indigeſtion,*	ſurfeit,
beſtiole,	a little beaſt,	*mixtion,*	mixture,
beſtion,	the head of a ſhip,	*queſtion,*	a queſtion,
combuſtion,	combuſtion,	*ſuggeſtion,* which is pronounced *ſuggeſtion.*	ſuggeſtion,
digeſtion,	digeſtion,		
geſtion,	management,		

and theſe two proper names, *Epheſtion* and *Sébaſtien.*

2*dly*, Before *en*, being the proper ſound of naſal *e*, and not that of naſal *a*; as *je tiens* I hold, *ſoutien* ſupport.

3*dly*, After *en* pronounced like *a* naſal, or *an*, as in *entier* entire, *entièrement* entirely. Therefore the ſpelling *eſſenciel* and *eſſenciellement, pénitencier* and *pénitenciel*, with *t* inſtead of *c*, is contrary to all analogy.

4*thly*, In verbs; as *châtier* to chaſtiſe, *nous étions* we were, *vous battiez* ye did beat, *&c.*

5*thly*, In words ending in *tie, tié,* and *tier*; as *partie* a part, *amitié* friendſhip, *métier* a trade. Except *minutie, impéritie, ineptie, inertie,* and ſome names of countries; as *Dalmatie, Galatie, Nigritie*; and other words derived from the Greek, as *primatie* primacy, *prophétie* prophecy, *Ariſtocratie*; pronounce *Ariſtocraſſy, propheſſy, Dalmaſſi,* &c. Except *Corinthie* and *Gothie*, wherein *thie* is articulated as in *partie*; and theſe three proper names, *Fortia, Nantia,* and *Santia.*

t as well as *h* is ſuppreſſed in *aſthme* aſthma, and *aſthmatique*; pronounce *aſme, aſmatic.*

In the plural of monoſyllables ending in *nt* in the ſingular; as ſing. *un enfant* a child; plu. *des enfants* children; *un bâtiment* a building, *des bâtiments* buildings: ſometimes *t* is left out, and you may ſay likewiſe *enfans, bâtimens:* but monoſyllables retain it; as *un pont* a bridge, *des ponts* bridges, *une dent* a tooth, *des dents* teeth. Except *cent* and *tout*, which makes in the plural *cens* and *tous.*

t is put between two hyphens (-*t*-) between a verb and the pronouns *il, elle, on,* when queſtions are aſked, and the verb ends in a vowel;

a vowel; *y a-t-il*, is there? *parle-t-elle*, does she speak? *va-t-on*, do they go?

t is pronounced at the end of these following words only:

brut,	rough,	*correct*,	correct,	*rit*,	a rite,
dot,	portion,	*direct*,	direct,	*sot*,	a fool,
exact,	exact,	*un fait*,	a fact,	*tact*,	touching,
échec & mat,	check-mate,	*indult*,	indult,	*zénit*,	zenith,
		gambit,	gambit,	*zest*,	zest,
fat,	a dunce, fop,	*lest*,	ballast,	*Apt*,	(the name of a town).
est and *ouest*,	east and west,	*pact*,	pact,		
		rapt,	a rape,		

t is also pronounced at the end of the impersonals, *il faut*, *il plaît*; and of *vingt* twenty, *prêt* ready, and some other adnouns; but it is only when the next word begins with a vowel: as *il faut y aller*, one must go thither, *s'il plaît à Dieu*, if God pleases, *vingt écus* twenty crowns, *savant esprit* a learned mind.—And yet we do not only pronounce *t* in *vingt & un* one and twenty, but also in *vingt-deux*, *vingt-trois*, &c. and what is still more remarkable, we do not pronounce it in *quatre vingt-un*, *quatre vingt-deux*, &c. pronounce *vin-té-un*, *vint-deux*, *quatre vin-un*, *quatre vin-deu*, &c. *t* is also pronounced in *est* is, before a vowel; as likewise at the end of a verb, when a question is asked; as *c'est un grand fou* he is a great fool, *que fait-on* what are they doing? *doit-il* does he owe? pronounce *doi ti*, *fai ton*, *c'ê tun grand fou*.

t at the end of *cent* is pronounced only before a noun beginning with a vowel: as *cent écus* a hundred crowns, *cent hommes* a hundred men; but never in *cent un* one hundred and one, *cent onze* one hundred and eleven, *un cent ou deux* one hundred or two.

t is articulated in the first syllable of *mot à mot* word for word; pronounce *mo ta mo*.—*t* is not pronounced at the end of *contrat*; *c* and *t* are articulated in *contracter* to contract.

In *avant-hier* the day before yesterday, some pronounce *t*, some drop it.

t is not pronounced in *Dantzique* (the name of a city), in *Metz*, (another name of a city), nor in *Rhetz* (that of a cardinal), wherein *e* has the most resonant sound of *e* grave, and *tz* that of the hissing articulation of *s* (*mêss*). Neither is it pronounced in the plural of nouns that end their singular in *t*; as *un chat* a cat, *des chats* cats; *un habit* a suit of clothes, *des habits* suits of clothes: pronounce *un sha*, *des shaw*, *dè zabi*; *s* serving only to make the syllable long in the plural, which was short in the singular.

This word *fort* is sometimes an adnoun, signifying *strong*; sometimes an adverb, signifying *very*. When it is an adnoun, as *fort &*

grand

z.

z is now-a-days used only in the four following cases: 1°, In the end of the second person plural of verbs, as *vous aimez* you love, *vous faisiez* you did, *&c.* 2°, In these three words only, *le nez* the nose, *assez* enough, *chez* at: for we no longer write with z *un dé* a die, *un pré* a meadow. 3°, In the beginning of some words derived from the Greek; as *zèle* zeal, *zéphire* zephyrus, *&c.* and in the numbers *onze, douze, treize, quatorze, quinze,* and *seize,* with their derivatives. 4°, In the end of these proper names, wherein it takes the hissing articulation of *s*; *Booz, Rhodez, Senez, Usez*; except *Sèez, Rèz, Milanèz,* and *Vivarèz* (when so spelt, for they are better spelt with *ois*), wherein z is not pronounced at all: but the foregoing *e* has the most resonant sound of *è* grave.——In *l'Abruzze,* the double *z* takes the hissing articulation of *s*, as if it was spelt *l'Abrusse.*

z is not pronounced (except in solemn speech and reading verses) at the end of the few words wherein it is used, before a vowel: *assez aimable* agreeable enough, *vous avez eu* you have had: pronounce *asse aimable avé u*; but it is never pronounced after *nez* nose.

All that has been said throughout this last section concerning final consonants, is to be understood only of the pronunciation practised in common conversation; for in declamation, that is, in the pulpit, or at the bar, as also in reading verses, we always pronounce before vowels final consonants that are quite dropt in common conversation. And as we make it our chief task in this treatise to instruct the learner in that true, familiar, and ordinary way of speaking which *Tully* calls *Sermo quotidianus,* and make him perfect master of it, he must, in order to speak properly and politely, observe the following rules as constantly true.

1*st*, That when the final consonant of a noun is not pronounced in the singular number, it is also mute in the plural, as well as the final *s*, which only serve to make that syllable long, or longer, in the plural, which was short, or already long, in the singular; as sing. *un chat*, a cat; plur. *des chats*, cats; sing. *un bourg*, a borough; plur. *des bourgs*, boroughs: pronounce *shaw* and *boorc.*

2*dly*, That final consonants are always pronounced in words immediately before their conjunctives, beginning with a vowel; as,

First, The article and adnoun before its noun (*les amis* the friends, *sot ouvrage* silly work, *franc animal* mere brute or block-head).

Secondly, The preposition or adverb before its regimen (*chez eux* at their house, *bien habile* very learned, *fort adroit* very skilful, *trop irrité* too much incensed).

Thirdly, The pronoun personal before its verb (*il aime* he loves, *vous offrez* you offer, *on apprend* we learn): pronounce *on naprend*, *i laime*, *tro pirité*, *ché zeux*, *so touvage*, *lè zamis*, &c.

3dly, That final consonants are pronounced in proper and foreign names; as *Jâcob*, *Périclès*, *Stanislas*, *Norris*, &c. Except, *1st*, when it is *s* after *e* hot sounded, as in *Athènes*; or after *i* in common French names, as *Paris*, *Louis* (tho' *s* is pronounced in *Pâris*, *Priamus*'s son). *2dly*, When there is a nasal vowel before the final consonant; as in *St. Cloud*, *St. François*, *Pharamond*, &c. pronounce *St. Clou*, *la ville de Pari*, *le perfide Pâris*, *Athène*, *Périclès*, *Stanislas*, &c.

As to orthography, or spelling, we now-a-days generally leave out all those useless consonants which are not pronounced, when the suppression of them causes no ambiguity. Thus we write *avis* advice, *ajouter* to add, *lait* milk, *sujet* subject, *répondre* to answer, *tête* head, &c. instead of the old way of spelling *advis*, *adjouter*, *laict*, *subject*, *respondre*, *teste*, &c. Some authors write a circumflex over most of those syllables, to shew that a letter has been suppreſt: but first, to act consistently with themselves, they should put the circumflex over all those syllables, in *âvis* as well as *ajoûter*, and *lâit*. In the next place, it is using an useless mark to shew, to no purpose, that an useless letter is suppreſt: the scholars don't want that mark to know the etymology of the word, and the illiterate are not a bit the wiser for it: and finally, that mark may occasion a false pronunciation; for, as it is also used to denote long syllables, people are apt to think that *au* in *ajoûter* is long, as *e* in *tête*, which is the *Normand* accent and pronunciation.

If we keep still some useless consonants in some words, it is both to denote their derivation (*Etymology*), and distinguish them from other words that are pronounced alike. Thus we spell *poids* weight, with *d*, to distinguish it from *pois* peas, *poix* pitch, which have the same sound; *compte* account, with *p*, to distinguish it from *comte* earl, and *conte* a story.

And as to the double consonants (which are pronounced in some cases only) observe, moreover, that these seven consonants

never

never double, *h*, *j*, *k*, *q*, *v*, *x*, *z*; neither do the others double after a long vowel, or marked over with a circumflex, or after a vowel nasal, or an improper diphthong (except however these three, *l*, *r*, and *s*); and it is therefore after short vowels only double consonants may come. Thus we write with single consonants *côte* coast, *bâtiment* building, *tête* head, *encourager* to encourage, *enfanter* to be delivered, *entendre* to hear, *traiter* to treat, *goûter* to taste, *&c.*

But we spell these following with double consonants, *bouffon* a buffoon, *botte* a boot, *battre* to beat, *nette* clean, *affecter* to affect, *syllabe* syllable, *&c.*

The characteristic consonant of verbs must be kept in the tenses, such as it is in the infinitive: that is, if it is single in the infinitive, it must be so too all along the verb, and double if it is double in that root. Therefore *j'abhorre* I abhor, *vous luttez* you wrestle, *nous promettons* we promise, *il donne* he gives, *ils se rebellent* they rebel, *&c.* are spelt with double consonants, because the consonants are double in their infinitives *abhorrer*, *lutter*, *promettre*, &c. and *je colore* I colour, *vous rebutez* you repulse, *nous dotons* we endow, *il épèle* he spells, *ils volent* they fly, *&c.* are spelt with a single consonant, because there is but one in the infinitive.

I shall conclude this treatise with two tables of the Terminations wherein the *Penultima* is pronounced short, and wherein it is pronounced long; which will be a great help to attain to the harmony of the pronunciation.

TERMINATIONS *whose* PENULTIMA *is short.*

Terminations.	*Words of the same terminations, with their exceptions.*
abl and *able.*	syllabe, table, érable, aimable, agréable, *&c.* *Except* diable, sable, fable, cable, rable, *and* accable.
acre.	diacre, fiacre, massacre, *&c.* *Except* âcre.
ade and *adre.*	fade, malade, pommade, salade, ladre, *&c.* *Except* Câdre.
age and *ache.*	page, courage, image, nage, vache, tache, panache, nager, *&c.* *Except* âge, fâche, tâche, *and others, whose* a *is circumflexed.*——a is *likewise long in* âgé, fâcher, tâcher, *&c.* *aspi-*

Terminations.	*Words of the same terminations, with their exceptions.*
afe and *aphe.*	agrafe, épitaphe, géographe, paragraphe, *&c.*
agne.	campagne, montagne, Ascagne, *&c.* *Except* gagne, *with* gâgner, *and other derivatives.*
ale, alle, and *acle.*	balle, halle, scandale, ovale; spectacle, receptacle, *&c.* *Except* tâle, pâle, le hâle, mâle, râcle, *and* râcler, *&c.*
ane, anne.	cane, chicane, canne, *&c.* *Except* âne, crâne, mânes, mânne, *and* dâmne, *&c.*
ape and *aque.*	cloaque, attrape, frappe, *&c.* *Except* Jâques *and* Pâques,
arbe, arbre, arde.	barbe, marbre, bâtarde, moutarde, *&c.*
arme, arte, asme, astre.	carte, charme, désastre, asthme, cataplasme, *&c.*
ame.	dame, polygame, nous aimames *(and all persons plural of the perfect tense of the 1st conjugation).* Except l'âme, flamme, infâme, blâme, pâme, pâmer, blâmer.
ate, atte, and *attez.*	pirate, patte, agate, gratte, *and* gratter; battez, battons, *&c. and the termination of the 2d pers. plur. perf. of the 1st conjugation,* pirates, animates, *&c.* *Except* pâte *(aough),* gâte, hâte, hâter, gâter, *&c.*
attre and *atre.*	battre, quatre, *&c.* *Except* l'âtre, théâtre, blanchâtre, noirâtre, *&c.* châtre, *and in* châtrer, *and* châtier.
ave.	brave, cave, rave, lave, laver, *&c.* *Except* esclâve: *but both* a's *are short in* esclavage.
aite, ette, ede, and *aide.*	défaite, retraite, *&c.* sonnette, remède, laîde, *&c.* *Except* faîte *and* aide.
eil, eille, oil, oile.	soleil, veille, *and* veiller; poil, toile, voile, *and* voiler, *&c.*
oible and *oide.*	foible, roide, *&c. with their derivatives,* foiblesse, roidir, *&c.*
oine and *oite.*	avoine, pivoine, il boite, boiter, *with deriv.*
ome and *one.*	homme, astronome, personne, colonne, *&c.* *Except* Dôme, Jérôme, Vendôme, prône, trône, *and others wherein* ô *is circumflexed.*
ole, otte, and *oxe.*	monopole, polyglotte, botte, cotte, paradoxe, *&c.* *Except* pôle, côte, *and others wherein* ô *is circumflexed.*

Words of the same terminations, with their exceptions.

ouille. double, couple, souple; rouille, la Trimouille, &c.

usse. bourse, je tousse, &c. *Except* pouce, *and* je pousse, &c.

e, and pourpre, couve, couvre, Louvre, *as likewise in* couver, couvrir, *and their derivatives.*

gue, uge. fougue, figue, fugue, déluge, refuge, &c.

use. domestique, perruque, tartuffe, &c.

MINATIONS *whose* PENULTIMA *is long.*

câbre, sâbre, délâbre, &c. (a *is long likewise in* délâbrer, and *deriv.*) *Except* cinabre.

e. barbâre, barre, gârre, &c. *Except* égare, commare, fanfare, pare, prépare, répare, compare, *and derivatives* égarer, &c. *These words are not excepted because the a of the* Penultima *is short; but because it is founded with the slender sound of a, though long.* N. B.

and espace, grâce, tasse, base, gaze, &c. *Except* besace, glace, coriace, bécasse, liasse, chasse, *and* chasser, agace, *and* agacer.

e. chaîne, entraîne, gêne, &c. *Except* vaine, *and* veine.

bataille, taille, vaille, &c. *Except* médaille, *and* travaille, &c. *from* travailler.

e. rape, *as also* raper, &c. capre, &c. *Except* attrape, *with its deriv. from* attraper, *and* Satrâpe.

e, inde, contraindre, feinte, feindre, coq d'Inde, &c.

te. lindre, &c.

ire. chaire, faire, terre, &c.

ce, èse, bien-aise, thèse, baise, baisse (*from* baiser, baisser, *qu'est-*

isse. baisser, *wherein* ai *is long too*, qu'est-ce.

l'Oise, croisse, &c.

re. maître, connoître, cloître, &c.

usse. daube, sauce, exauce, *and* exaucer, *with derivatives.*

ause. gauche, claude, cause, &c.

plural, by the addition of *s* or *x*; as sing. *chef*, *fagot*, *lieu*, *trait*, *sac*, &c. plur. *chefs*, *fagots*, *lieux*, *traits*, *sacs*, &c.

3*dly*, *a* being a monosyllable, or the last syllable of a word, either absolutely, or with one or more consonants, is short and slender, so *s* be not the final consonant; as *il a*, *sac*, *chat*, *animal*, *dard*, *magistrat*, &c. but in the plural number, or with a final *s*, it is long and broad; as *sacs*, *chats*, *magistrats*, *tu vas*, *tu feras*, *un bas*. Except *les arts*, *darts*, *regards*, *renards*, and the monosyllable *bras* in the singular, with *je bats*, which are short.

So much concerning the terminations of words, considered with respect to prosody. As to the quantity that syllables bear in the middle of words, it may be said in general, that they are all short; as *abus*, *abréger*, *babil*, *babiller*, *cacher*, *deviner*, *flatter*, *hostie*, *plaider*, *juste*, *loger*, *peler*, *docile*, *frapper*, *couper*, *fanfaron*, *cousin*, *douter*, *peste*, *quitter*, *triste*, *voisiner*, &c. Except those which consist of nasal vowels; as *entrer*, *chambranle*, *branler*, *montrer*, *instruire*, *tremblant*, *trompons*, *tomber*, &c.

a is also long and broad in the middle of words before a double *r*, or a single *r* followed by *e* not sounded: as *barreau*, *bigarreau*, *barron*, &c. as likewise before the termination *tion* or *ssion*, as in *nation*, *creation*, *passion*, &c.

a is short and slender in *Paris* (the name of the capital of *France*), and long and broad in *Pâris* (a man's name).——It is short and slender in *Madrid*, and long and broad in *Câdix* and *Câbris*.

Most of the aforesaid observations would be needless, if the long vowels were always marked with the circumflex; which is the true, and ought to be the only, use of that accent, as will be proved in the following section.

SECTION V.

Of the several Marks used in writing French.

THESE marks are of six sorts: the Elision, Hyphen, Cedilla, Dialysis *or* Diæresis, Accents, Capital Letters, and Stops.

ELISION is the cutting off of a final vowel before a word beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute; and the vowel thus cut off, is supplied by a comma, called *Apostrophe*, and set above the empty place, thus (').

These three vowels, *a*, *e*, *i*, suffer elision in *French*.

a and

a and *e* are cut off in *la* and *le*, whether articles or pronouns; in all monosyllables, as *je*, *me*, *se*, *te*, *de*, *ce*, *ne*, *que*; and the conjunctions composed of *que*, as *jusque*, *parceque*, *puisque*, &c. and *i* in the conjunction *si* if, before *il* and *ils* only.

Thus we write

l'âme,	instead of	*la âme*,	the soul.
l'héroïne,		*la héroïne*,	the heroine.
l'homme,		*le homme*,	the man.
l'esprit,		*le esprit*,	the mind.
j'aime,		*je aime*,	I love.
je l'estime,		*je le* or *la estime*,	I esteem her *or* him.
m'entendez-vous,		*me entendez vous*,	do you understand me?
s'en aller,		*se en aller*,	to go away.
c'est fait,		*ce est fait*,	it is done *or* over.
l'âge d'or,		*le âge de or*,	the golden age.
n'allez pas,		*ne allez pas*,	do not go.
qu'a-t-il dit,		*que a-t-il dit*,	what did he say?
jusqu'au soir,		*jusque au soir*,	till night.
quoiqu'il dise,		*quoique il dise*,	altho' he says.
puisqu'il sait,		*puisque il sait*,	since he knows.
lorsqu'il vit,		*lorsque il vit*.	when he saw.
s'il vient,		*si il vient*,	if he comes.
s'ils veulent,		*si ils veulent*,	if they please.

But when *si* coming after & (& *si*) signifies *yet*, *i* is not contracted with the next vowel; as *il le sait* & si il *n'en dit rien*, he knows it, yet he says nothing of it.——We also write and say *m'amie* and *m'amour* (love), for *ma*, or rather *mon amie*, *mon amour*, and *quelqu'un* for *quelque un*.

There are two cases wherein *le* and *la* and *ce* don't suffer elision: 1*st*, The articles *le* and *la* and the pronoun demonstrative *ce* before *onze* and *onzième*, and *oui* yes. Thus we spell and pronounce *le onze du mois* the eleventh of the month, *il est le onzième*, *elle est la onzième*, he *or* she is the eleventh, *le oui qu'il prononça* the yes which he spoke, *ce oui-là lui a couté cher* that yes has cost him dear: but it is only *le* and *la* and *ce* which suffer no elision before these two words; for all the other monosyllables do. Thus we spell and pronounce *je n'en ai qu'onze*, and not *que onze*, I have got but eleven, *je dis qu'oui*, and not *que oui*, I say yes.

Observe moreover, concerning *onze* and *oui*, that the final consonant of the particles coming before these two words, is not articulated as it is before any other word beginning with a vowel.

Therefore pronounce, without joining *s*, *les onze mille vierges*; *un ouï*, *des ouï*, not *le zonze*, &c. *un nouï*, *de zouï*.

2*dly*, *le* and *la* being pronouns governed of an imperative, do not suffer elision, unless they are followed by either of these two other pronouns, *en* and *y*; as *Portez-le au logis*, carry him *or* it home (tho' we pronounce *portél-en logis*); *Mariez-la au plutôt*, marry her as soon as possible. But write and pronounce *Tirez l'en au plutôt*, get him, her, *or* it, from thence as fast as you can; *Laissez l'y aller*, let him *or* her go thither.

e suffers elision also at the end of the adnoun feminine *grande*, before these words beginning with a consonant; *grand' chambre* great chamber, *grand' messe* high mass, *grand' peur* great fright, *grand' chose* a great matter, *grand' chère* a great cheer, *grand' faim & grand' soif* a great hunger and great thirst, *grand' pitié* ten thousand pities, *grand' peine* great trouble, *la grand' chambre* the high court of parliament at *Paris*, *ma* or *sa grand' mère* my *or* his grand-mother, *grand' salle* a large room or hall, *grand' part* a great share.

HYPHEN is a short line across, marked thus -, and used, 1*st*, to join pronouns expressing the subject with their verbs, especially in interrogations; as likewise the particles *en* and *y*, and other conjunctive pronouns, with an imperative: as *que dit-elle*, what does she say? *irons-nous* shall we go? *vient-il* does he come? *vas-y* go thither, *prens-en* take some, *sauvons-nous* let us take to our heels, *allons-nous-en* let us go away, *donnez-les lui* give them to him.

Note, that when the verb ends in *a* or *e*, *t* ought to be inserted between two *Hyphens*, between the verb and pronoun subjective or the particle *en*, in order to soften the pronunciation; as *parla-t-elle* did she speak? *va-t-en* do they go? *mange-t-il* does he eat?

2*dly*, To join the particles *ci*, *là*, *çà*, to the words which are attended by them, and from which they cannot be properly parted in speech; as likewise *ce* after *être*: as *celui-ci* this, *celui-là* that, *cet homme-ci* this man, *cette femme-là* that woman, *demeurez-là* stay there, *là-haut* above, *là-bas*, below, *venez-çà* come hither, *est-ce là le livre* is that the book? *sont-ce-là vos gens* are these your servants?

3*dly*, To join together the parts of a compound word: as *porte-manteau* portemanteau, *arc en-ciel* rainbow, *c'est-à-dire* that is to say.

4*thly*, At the end of a line, to denote that a word is parted which could not be writ entirely in the line, and that the remain-

der of it is at the beginning of the next line; as in this word *présentement* presently. But note, that whenever a word is thus parted, the part which begins the next line must always begin with a consonant.

CEDILLA is a short curve line, or a comma, put under *c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, to divest it of the articulation of *k*, and give it the hissing articulation of *s*, which it always has before *e* and *i*: as in *menaça* he threatened, *leçon* lesson, *conçu* conceived.

DIALYSIS } is two dots put over the last of the two vowels
DIÆRESIS } that meet together in a word, to part them into two several syllables: as *haï* hated, makes two syllables: whereas *je hais*, I hate, makes but one. In *Saül*, the king of *Israel*, *a* and *ü* make two syllables, and so distinguish it from *Saul* (*Paul*) wherein *au* makes but an improper diphthong.

e, *i*, *u*, are the only vowels on which the two dots are marked, custom having not as yet prevailed to put them over *o* in *géomètre*, and other such words wherein *e* and *o* make two distinct vowels, very differently pronounced from the same in *geolier*. It is therefore sufficient to mark the preceding *e* with an accent, to make it keep its proper sound, and at the same time part it from *o*.

It is moreover usual to put the two dots over *e* final, not sounded, in *aiguë*, *ambiguë*, *ciguë*, &c. to denote that the hard articulation of *g* falls upon *u*, as it does in *aiguille* a needle, and so distinguish it from that which *gu* has in *figue*, *guide*, *guérir*, *guenon*, &c. (See the letter *g* in the treatise on the pronunciation.) These cases excepted, never put the two dots over any vowel that makes but one and the same syllable with the foregoing vowel, as in *jouer* to play, *avouer* to own, &c. which some writers very viciously spell *joüer*, *avoüer*, as if these words were to be pronounced *avo-u-er*, *jo-u-er*, and not *avoü-er*, *joü-er*: whilst on the contrary, others, in omitting the two dots over the second syllable of *aiguille*, induce the reader to pronounce it as in *anguille* an eel.

ACCENT is a note put chiefly over our *e*'s, to denote their several pronunciations; as likewise over some words, to distinguish their nature and signification.

There are three sorts of accents; Acute ´, Grave `, and Circumflex ^.

The accent *acute* is put over all *e*'s, which our Grammarians have been pleased to call *é* masculine; as in *prémédité* premeditated.

The accent *grave* over those called *é* open; as in *très* most, *près* near, *dès* from; and the last syllables of words ending in *ès*, as *excès* excess, *après* after, &c.

With what ground our Grammarians have distinguished our *e's* by these several appellations of *é masculine*, *é feminine*, *é open*, *é shut*, *é French*, and *é Latin*, I am not able to apprehend, and therefore have chosen to call them by that accent which distinguishes them. When two syllables made of *e* follow one another, without having any accent over them, the first is always to be pronounced grave, and the last is not sounded.

The nature of these following particles is distinguished by the accent grave, being both articles and adverbs, verbs, or prepositions, or conjunctions.

a,	has,	*à*,	at, *or* to,
la,	the,	*là*,	there,
de la,	of, *or* from the,	*de là*,	from thence,
des,	of, *or* from the,	*dès*,	from,
ça,	come on,	*çà*,	hither,
ou,	or,	*où*,	where.

It is also usual to mark over with the accent grave the pronoun *les*, after an imperative terminating a sentence: as *donnez-lès* give them; and these two particles, *holà* hold, and *ouidà* ay, ay.

The accent circumflex is used in words over a syllable, which has now-a-days lost a vowel or an *s* of its own spelling, and the circumflex makes that syllable long; as *âge* age, *bête* beast, *être* to be, *le nôtre* ours, *vû* seen, &c. which were formerly spelt *age*, *beste*, *estre*, *le nostre*, *véu*, &c.

The last syllable of the 3d pers. sing. of the preterite subj. is also marked over with a circumflex, to distinguish it from the same person of the pret. ind. *qu'il aimât*, *parlât*, *fût*, *crût*, *extendît*, *vît*, &c. of which *s* is cut off; but these syllables are not pronounced long.

Some other words take also the circumflex, to prevent one's mistaking their signification; as *dû*, from *devoir* to owe, to distinguish it from *du* of the; *crû*, from *croître* to grow, to distinguish it from *cru* believed; *sûr* sure, to distinguish it from *sur* upon: but this practice is not generally received.

The tone of words is not then the proper object of accents in our language. Their office is not to mark the raising or sinking of the voice on syllables: they were at first introduced only to ascertain the pronunciation of our *e's*. Our forefathers, surprised to see different sounds represented by the same sign, bethought them-

ſelves of remedying that diſorder, by adopting the accents which the Greeks and the Latins had inſtituted, though for a different purpoſe. This practice, had it been carefully obſerved, would have effectually ſupplied the want of other ſigns: but it was no ſooner eſtbaliſhed, than it was again almoſt entirely laid aſide, through the negligence of Printers and Authors. It has however been inſenſibly re-eſtabliſhed, and even perfected. A perpendicular accent * has moreover been introduced for ſome years, to mark the intermediate *e*, that *e* which has a middle ſound between the ſonorous *e* and that which is moſt ſonorous: ſo that as theſe accents characteriſe our *e*'s, ſo they are more eſſential to them than the dots over our *i*'s, of which I know not the uſe.

And indeed our *e* is either guttural, or mute, or acute, or grave, or circumflex, or intermediate, or naſal. There can be no poſſibility of miſtaking the *e* guttural or mute in reading, if the others are accented; and a few obſervations will ſufficiently enable us to diſtinguiſh the mute *e* from the guttural. The whole difficulty lies in being acquainted with the others, ſo as to pronounce them according to their powers: now the accents entirely remove this difficulty. The *e* which is called *fermé* is marked with an acute accent. The *e* called *ouvert*, is (according to the authors of theſe denominations) either ſimply open, or moſt open, or keeps a medium between theſe two ſounds. If it is ſimply open it is marked with the grave accent, as in *très*, *après*, *père*, *mère*. If moſt open, with the circumflex, as in *bête*, *grêle*, *même*, *pêche*. And the intermediate *e* is marked with the perpendicular accent, as in *règle*, *fidèle*, *flèche*, *amène*. As this ſame accent ſerves likewiſe to diſtinguiſh, without confuſion, the true naſal *e*, from that which has only the ſound of naſal *a*, one can no longer miſtake the pronunciation of the following words, *bien*, *rien*, *ſoutien*, *je viens*, *il tient*, *prudent*, *entièrement*, *orient*, *patient*, &c. *ger* is not pronounced in *léger* as in *berger*. As the termination *eve* is pronounced quite differently in theſe three words, *ſeve*, *Geneviève* *Genève*, ſo the accent determines their true pronunciation. The acute accent on the penultima of *différent* ſhews it to be an adnoun, and the grave in *différent* to be a verb. The ſame rule holds good with reſpect to *précédent* adnoun, and *précédent* verb, and many other words, which cannot be diſtinguiſhed in writing otherwiſe than by the accent. The grave and perpendicular accents ſhow moreover, that the *e* following or preceding them is

* As cuſtom has not authoriſed that perpendicular accent, we have laid it aſide in this new edition; particularly as it is not to be found in any book printed ſince the French Academy have publiſhed a new edition of their Dictionary.

mute,

mute, as in *amèrement*, *tellement*. They indicate also, that in the words, *fiel*, *manière*, *tiers*, *muet*, &c. the vowel that precedes the *e* forms with it a proper diphthong, and not an improper one, as happens very frequently in the English.

Custom has not yet authorised our affixing the acute accent to the last syllable of the infinitive and nouns ending in *er*, as *parler*, *danger*. It would certainly be more uniform to mark all the *e*'s with the accent that determines their pronunciation: but after all, the omission of the accent on these occasions, where the eyes are not accustomed to see it, can produce no great inconvenience, if it is not omitted on the others. The true use and destination of the circumflex is to mark a long syllable: therefore it ought to be set over not only the long *e*'s, but also over all the other long vowels; as in the words *âme*, *île*, *abîme*, *côte*, *côté*, *les aûtres*, *nôs*, *hûre*, *ils pûrent*; as likewise over these improper diphthongs, *chaîne*, *reîne*, *haîne*, *seîze*, *je faîs*, whose pronunciation is thereby distinguished from the same syllables, when this improper diphthong is short, as in the following words, *laine*, *peine*, *une plaine*, *elle est pleine*, *fontaine*, *tréize**, *il a fait*, *c'est un fait*.

To conclude, it is evident from the aforesaid observations, that the accents shew the pronunciation of our vowels, and ought to be the most essential part of orthography. Their omission bewilders the reader: nay, I have strong reasons to believe that it is often owing to the ignorance of the writer. I myself have been sometimes at a loss how to read some words, which I never heard read or spoken, and have therefore applied to the French Academy, to be informed of their pronunciation. An accent over an *e* would have cleared the point.

Such is the use of our accents; from whence it appears, that accent in French is of a very different use than in English, wherein it denotes that *the tone*, or *stress of the voice in pronouncing*, *is upon the syllable over which it is placed*, and therefore serves only to shew the quantity of syllables. The French language has indeed its quantity: the length and shortness of syllables must be so carefully observed in pronouncing, that the mistaking a long vowel for a short one is enough, in some words, to change their signification; as *aveuglement*, which is a noun signifying *blindness* when the penultima is short, or (as the English phrase it) when the accent is over the last syllable but one; and an adverb signifying *blindly*, when *e* is long with an accent acute over it, or (according to the English) when the accent is over the last syllable

* *ei* in *treize* is long, as in *seize*, but it has the acute sound.

but

but one. Mr. *Rollin* observes, that the vowel *e* in these words, *sevère* severe, *évêque* bishop, *repêché* got out of the water, and *revêtir* to put on, has three different sounds, and three *quantities*, of which perhaps no instance can be found in the Greek and Latin tongues; and it is by their accent, so different from the true French accent, that the people of the divers provinces in France are known. But notwithstanding what I have said of that quantity which syllables have in words, and the great help which I have laboured to give the learner to attain the harmony of the pronunciation, it is altogether impossible to become master of it, otherwise than by hearing such speak and read who have the true French accent, and are perfect masters of their language.

A late writer, who, some years ago, read Lectures on the English Language in the City, the design of which was, as far as I could apprehend, to convince his hearers and readers of this great and important point, namely, that the English, as well as other nations, spell otherwise than they pronounce; and who has been since, labouring very hard, to make the two Universities learn reading English; advances, in his Lectures on Elocution, that the French have no quantity, or, which is the same, that they make all their syllables long *. The contrary is so evident to any body who has the least tincture of French, that it is difficult to say which is most amazing, the ignorance or assurance of the author, who treats of matters to which he is quite a stranger: for in those very lectures, all notions of Grammar and Oratory are confounded and mistaken. The French language abounds in Dactyles, Iambes, Troches, Anapests, and Choriambes. The Spondees are few in comparison of the other metres, the variety of which makes it a most harmonious language. And notwithstanding its nasal sounds, and guttural *e*, which, though a little grating to the ear, an able Poet and Musician can nevertheless use to advantage, it may claim the preference of all modern languages, without excepting even the Ita-

* The best way of seeing clearly the difference between the genius of the French tongue and ours in this respect, will be to sound a number of words immediately borrowed from them, and see in what the diversity of pronunciation consists. Such as *ābāndōn* ăban'dŏn, *cōmbāt* com'băt, *cōllēge* collĕge, *cōmmūn* com'mŏn, *cōmpāgnōn* compan'ŏn, *Eūrōpe* Eūrŏpe, *obstācle* ob'stăcle, *sólid* sólid, *Dōcteūr* Doctor, *fāvoūr* fāvoūr, *hōnneūr* hon'oūr, &c. in most of which words the syllables are all long in the French, and short in the English, as the accents are placed on the vowels in the French, and on the consonants in the English. This it is which makes most of their words appear to an English ear to have as many accents as syllables, by obliging them to give an equal stress to them. *A Course of Lectures on Elocution, Lect 3d, on Accent.*

lian.

lian. But this same writer has, by an extraordinary effort of reason, found out that England could never have been, or continue to be, a flourishing nation, without a revelation *. *Risum teneatis.* A true Comedian indeed!

CAPITALS or Great Letters are used,

1*st*, In the beginning of a sentence in prose, and every line or verse in poetry.

2*dly*, All Christian and proper names of persons, places, ships, rivers, arts, sciences, dignities, titles of honour and professions; as also adnouns derived from thence, begin with a great letter; as *George Roi* George Rex, *un Mathématicien Anglois* an English Mathematician, *un Tailleur François* a French Taylor.

3*dly*, Such nouns in a sentence that bear some considerable stress of the author's sense upon it, to make it the more remarkable and conspicuous. The introduction to this work contains several examples of such words. Sometimes the Italic letters are used for that purpose: tho' these are particularly appropriated to distinguishing the words and sentences cited as examples of what is advanced. Those cases excepted, do not begin with a capital any common noun, as was most generally, and abusively too, done in English some years ago. At present the other extreme is prevailing, and every noun is printed in a small letter, even to the very names of countries and professions: yet is it not as absurd to write *king* and *god* with a small *k* or *g*, as *Bread* and *Beer* with a capital *B*? The writing the initials of the nouns mentioned in the second paragraph with a small letter, or those of appellatives with a capital, is nothing less than entirely disfiguring our writings, whether in manuscript or from the press, and totally abolishing that distinction which different characters should preserve.

* If ever a divine revelation was necessary to man, it was more particularly so to the British nation, than to any o her upon earth: it was impossible, without such a revelation, we should ever be, or continue to be, a great and flourishing people: and the system now nominally established amongst us as the revealed will of God, were it really believed to be such universally, and accordingly practised, would raise us above all other nations that either do, or ever did, exist upon earth, and preserve us unalterably such to the end of time, provided that system continued to retain its due influence. *British Education, Book I. Chap. XIV.*

This system was not only calculated in the most exact manner for all the purposes of society in general, but peculiarly adapted to the particular circumstances of this country above all others. *Ibidem.*

STOPS

STOPS are of six sorts, whose names and shapes are thus:

une virgule	,	a comma	,
un point-virgule	;	a semicolon	;
deux points	:	a colon	:
un point	.	a period, *or* full stop	.
un point d' interrogation	?	a note of interrogation	?
un point d' admiration	!	a note of admiration	!

The use of these stops, which the French call *Punctuation*, seems pretty arbitrary, and to differ not only according to the genius of languages, but also according to the style of authors; yet as they are necessary to avoid obscurity, and prevent misconstructions, and therefore for the better understanding of what we write and read, here follows the use which the generality of the learned make of them; which use is itself grounded upon reason.

A *comma* is used to distinguish the several parts of a sentence, and give the reader a proper time for breathing; as likewise to distinguish, in enumerations, the things that are enumerated, whether they be of the same or of a different kind: as,

Si tant de gens se plaisent à lire de bagatelles, c'est peut-être que leur esprit ayant peu de force, ils aiment les choses aisées a comprendre.

If so many people take a pleasure in reading trifles, it is perhaps because, being of a little genius, they like things easy to understand.

Les neuf parties du discours sont le nom, l' adnom, le pronom, le nombre, le verb, l'adverbe, la préposition, la conjonction, & la particule.

The nine parts of speech are these; noun, adnoun, pronoun, number, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and particle.

On ne devient point savant, que l'on n'étudie constamment, méthodiquement, & avec application.

One cannot get learning without studying steadily, methodically, and with application.

A *semicolon* is used likewise to distinguish a part of a sentence of a pretty good length, but in such a manner, that the remaining part of the sentence is not necessary to make a complete sense, which is perfect at the semicolon: as,

Le siècle d'Auguste a tellement été celui des excellens Poëtes, qu'ils ont servi de modèles à tous les autres; cependant il n'a point produit de Poëtes tragiques.

The Augustan Age has in such a manner been that of excellent Poets, that they have served as models to all others; yet it has produced no tragic writers.

A colon

A *colon* marks a ſenſe that ſeems to be complete, but ſo that ſomething may ſtill be added to it. The colon and ſemicolon may ſometimes indeed be uſed promiſcuouſly; but when the ſentence is tolerably long, or the period compoſed of four or five ſentences, one muſt obſerve to make the pauſes in the order of the aforeſaid ſtops; finiſhing by the full ſtop, when the ſenſe of the ſentence is quite out. More examples would be needleſs.

A note of *interrogation* is uſed when a queſtion is aſked; as, *Quelle heure eſt-il?* What o'clock is it?

A note of *admiration* is uſed when we expreſs our wonder or admiration at ſomething; as, *O temps! O mœurs!* O times! O manners!

There are beſides ſome other figures in writing: as

PARENTHESIS, which is a diſtinct ſentence interpoſed in the main ſentence within theſe two figures ( ), which being left out, the ſenſe of the ſentence is entire. If the occaſional ſentence is a ſhort one, it is not neceſſary to uſe the two aforeſaid figures, but only to incloſe it in two commas. But the parentheſis is now-a-days of no uſe in French, becauſe no long occaſional ſentence is ſuffered in the ſtyle.

INDEX ☞, the fore finger pointing, ſignifies that paſſage to be very remarkable againſt which it is placed.

OBELISK † and ASTERISK * are uſed to refer the reader to ſome remark in the margin, or at the foot of the page. And ſeveral ſtars ſet together * * * ſignify that there is ſomething wanting, defective, or immodeſt in that paſſage of the author. In dictionaries, *Obeliſk* commonly denotes a word to be obſolete, or little uſed.

QUOTATION (") or a double comma turned, is put at the beginning and end of ſuch lines as are quoted out of another author in his own words.

SECTION or Diviſion § is uſed in ſubdividing of a chapter or book into leſſer parts.

PARAGRAPH ¶ is the part of a ſection or chapter, comprehending ſeveral ſentences under one head or ſubject.

CARET (ʌ) is placed underneath a line between two words, to denote that ſome letter or ſyllable, or word, has, by inadvertence, been left out in writing or printing. Several points . . . . ., or a daſh ——, denotes a reticence, or a ſenſe that is imperfect.

ABBRE-

ABBREVIATIONS *sometimes used in writing and printing, especially in foreign Gazettes.*

S. M.	Sa Majesté, *his* or *her Majesty.*
L. M.	Leurs Majestés, *their Majesties.*
S. M. Imp.	Sa Majesté Impériale, *his* or *her Imperial Majesty.*
L. M. Imp.	Leur Majestés Impériales, *their Imperial Majesties.*
S. M. T. C.	Sa Majesté très Chrétienne, *his most Christian Majesty.*
S. M. Cath.	Sa Majesté Catholique, *his Catholic Majesty.*
S. M. Brit.	Sa Majesté Britannique, *his* or *her Britannic Majesty.*
S. M. Pruss.	Sa Majesté Prussienne, *his Prussian Majesty.*
S. M. Polon.	Sa Majesté Polonoise, *his Polish Majesty.*
S. A. R.	Son Altesse Royale, *his* or *her Royal Highness.*
S. A. E.	Son Altesse Electorale, *his Electoral Highness.*
S. A. S.	Son Altesse Sérénissime, *his most Serene Highness.*
L. N. & H. P.	Leurs Nobles & Hautes Puissances, *their High Mightinesses.*
S. E.	Son Excellence, *his* or *her Excellence.*
S. S.	Sa Sainteté, *his Holiness.*
S. Emin.	Son Eminence, *his Eminence.*
V. S.	Vieux Stile, *Old Stile.*
N. S.	Nouveau Stile, *New Stile.*
J. C.	Jésus-Christ, *Jesus Christ.*
N. D.	Notre-Dame, *Our Lady.*
C. P.	Constantinople.
M^{r}.	Monsieur, *Sir* or *Master.*
M^{de} M^{e}.	Madame, *Madam* or *Mistress.*
Mlle.	Mademoiselle, *Miss* or *Madam.*
Mess. *or* MM.	Messieurs, *Gentlemen, Masters.*
MS.	Manuscript, *Manuscript.*
Sept. *or* 7bre.	Septembre, *September.*
Oct. 8bre.	Octobre, *October.*
Nov. 9bre.	Novembre, *November.*
Déc. x^{bre}.	Décembre, *December.*

A LIST

A LIST *of the words wherein* h *is*

aspirated.

ha! *oh! ah!*
habler, *to romance, tell stories.*
hablerie, *romancing.*
hableur, *a romancer, a liar.*
hache, *axe.*
hacher, *to mince.*
hachette, *hatchet.*
hachis, *chopped meat.*
hachure, *hatching.*
hachoir, *a chopping board.*
hagard, *haggard, fierce.*
haïr, *to hate.*
haîne, *hatred.*
haïssable, *hateful.*
haie, *hedge.*
haillon, *rag, tatter.*
Hainaut, *(a country).*
haire, *hair shirt.*
halage, *towage,* or *towing.*
halbran, *a young wild duck.*
hâle, *dripping wind,* or *weather.*
hâlé, *sun-burnt.*
halener, *to smell one's breath.*
hâler, *to tow,* or *hale.*
halle, *market-place.*
halebarde, *halberd.*
halebardier, *halberdier.*
haleter, *to pant.*
halier, *thicket.*
halte, *halt.*
hamac, *hammock.*
hameau, *hamlet.*
hampe, *the staff or shaft of a halberd.*
hanche, *hip.*
hanap, *a sort of bowl.*
hanneton, *a May-bug.*
hangar, *a cart-house.*
hanter, *to keep company with.*
hapelourde, *a false stone.*

not aspirated.

habile, *fit, able.*
habiller, *to clothe.*
s'habiller, *to dress one's self.*
habit, *a suit of clothes.*
habiter, *to inhabit.*
habitable, *inhabitable.*
habitant, *inhabitant.*
habitude, *habit, custom.*
habitué, *used.*
habituel, *habitual.*
haleine, *breath.*
hameçon, *a fishing-hook.*
harmonie, *harmony.*
hast, *haste.*
hebdomadaire, *weekly.*
héberger, *to harbour, lodge.*
hébêter, *to besot, make dull.*
Hébreu, *Hebrew.*
Hébraïque,
hécatombe, *an hecatomb.*
hégire, *hegira.*
Helicon,
héliotrope, *turn-sol.*
helléhore, *hellebore.*
hémisphère, *hemisphere.*
hémistiche, *hemistich.*
hémorragie, *bloody flux.*
hémorrhoïdes, *piles.*
hépatique, *hepatical.*
heptagone, *an heptagon.*
herbage, *grass, pasture.*
herbe, *herb, grass.*
herboriste, *an herbalist.*
héréditaire, *hereditary.*
hériter, *to inherit.*
héritage, *inheritance.*
héritier, *an heir.*
hérésie, *heresy.*
hérétique, *heretic.*
hermaphrodite, *hermaphrodite.*

hermé-

aspirated.		*not aspirated.*	
happer,	*to snap.*	hermétique,	*hermetical.*
haquenée,	*ambling nag.*	hermine,	*ermine.*
haquet,	*a dray.*	hermite,	*an hermit.*
hareng,	*a herring.*	hermitage,	*hermitage.*
harangère,	*a fish woman.*	héroïne,	*an heroine.*
harangue,	*speech, oration.*	héroïque,	*heroical.*
haranguer,	*to make a speech.*	hésiter,	*to hesitate.*
harangueur,	*a speech maker.*	hésitation,	*hesitation.*
haras,	*stud,* or *breed of horses.*	hétéroclite,	*heteroclite.*
harasser,	*to harass, tire.*	hétérodoxe,	*heterodox.*
harceler,	*to tire, teaze.*	hétérogène,	*heterogeneous.*
hardes,	*cloaths.*	heure,	*hour.*
hardi,	*bold, daring.*	heureux,	*happy.*
hardiesse,	*boldness.*	heureusement,	*happily.*
hardiment,	*boldly.*	héxagone,	*an hexagon.*
hargneux,	*cross, peevish.*	héxamètre,	*hexameter.*
haricots,	*French beans.*	hiatus,	*a gap.*
haricot,	*(a sort of French dish).*	hièble,	*wall-wort.*
haridelle,	*a sorry horse, a jade.*	hier,	*yesterday.*
harnacher,	*to harness.*	hiéroglyphique,	*hieroglyphick.*
harnois,	*harness.*	hippocras,	*hypocras.*
haro,	*a hue and cry.*	hypocrite,	*hypocrite.*
harpe,	*harp.*	hirondelle,	*a swallow.*
harpon,	*a harping iron.*	histoire,	*history.*
harpie,	*harpy.*	historien,	*historian.*
hart,	*a faggot band.*	historique,	*historical.*
hasard*,	*chance.*	histrion,	*a buffoon.*
hasarder,	*to venture.*	hiver,	*winter.*
hase,	*a doe-hare,* or *coney.*	hiverner,	*to winter.*
hâte,	*haste.*	hoir *and* hoirie,	*heir, inheritance.*
hâter,	*to hasten.*	holocauste,	*a burnt sacrifice.*
se hâter,	*to make haste.*	homélie,	*an homily.*
hâtif,	*hasty, forward.*	homicide,	*an homicide.*
havage,	*hangman's fees.*	hommage,	*homage.*
have,	*wan, pale.*	homme,	*man.*
havir,	*to burn.*	homogène,	*homogeneous.*
havre,	*haven, harbour.*	homologuer,	*to confirm.*
havre-sac,	*knapsack.*	homologation,	*confirmation.*
haubert,	*a coat of mail.*	honnête,	*honest.*
haut-bois,	*hautboy.*	honnêtement,	*honestly.*
haussier,	*to raise.*	honneur,	*honour.*

* We also say *une chose d'hasard,* a second-hand thing.

carnavals, *pals*, *régals*; as also proper names in *al*; as *deux Juvenals* two *Juvenals*, *trois Martials* three Martials.

The following nouns in *ail* follow also the general rule.

attirail,	train.	*éventail*,	fan.	*portail*,	front gate of a church.
camail,	a sort of priest-dress.	*épouvantail*,	scarecrow.	*serail*,	seraglio.
détail,	particulars.	*gouvernail*,	helm.		
		mail,	mall.		

These two, *bercail* sheepfold, and *poitrail* the breast of a horse, have no plural. —— *Bétail* cattle, is a noun of multitude singular without plural; as *bestiaux*, a noun plural of the same signification without singular.

These following adnouns in *al* have no plural in use for the masculine.

austral,	southern.	*frugal*,	frugal.	*nuptial*,	nuptial.
boréal,	northern.	*jovial*,	jovial.	*pastoral*,	pastoral.
claustral,	claustral.	*lustral*,	lustral.	*pascal*,	paschal.
conjugal,	conjugal.	*littéral*,	literal.	*total*,	total.
diamétral,	diametral.	*matinal*,	early.	*trivial*,	trivial.
fatal,	fatal.	*nasal*,	nasal.	*vénal*,	venal.
filial,	filial.	*natal*,	native.	*spécial*,	special.
final,	final.	*naval*,	naval.	*libéral*,	liberal.

Except that we say *les arts libéraux* liberal arts, and *des cierges pascal* (large wax-tapers burnt in churches at Easter among the Roman catholics).—Neither is *martial* warlike, used at all in the plural.

We do say *des armées navales* sea armaments: but instead of *combats navals*, or *batailles navales*, we say *des combats sur mer*.——We say *les pseaumes pénitentiaux* the penitential psalms; but not *un pseaume pénitential* or *pénitentiel*, but *un des pseaumes pénitentiaux*, one of the penitential psalms, that adnoun being not used in the singular.

3*dly*, *ciel*,	heaven,	make in the plural	*cieux*,	heavens.
œil,	eye,		*yeux*,	eyes.
aïeul,	grand-father,		*aïeux*,	grand-fathers.
gentil-homme,	one nobly descended. (*l* is liquid)		*gentils-hommes*,	nobly descended. (*l* is silent)

Loy and *loix*, as also *Roy* and *Roix*, are quite obsolete: we now-a-days spell *loi* a law, and *Roi* a king, and their plural *lois* and *Rois* are regular.

When a compound noun is formed of a noun and an adnoun, both take the mark of the plural. Thus we say,

un arc-boutant, a buttress; *des arcs-boutans*, buttresses.
un cerf-volant, a paper-kite; *des cerf-volans*, paper kites.
des bouts-rimés, rhymes of verses given to fill up.
les Gardes Françoises, the French Guards.

When a compound noun is formed of a preposition and a noun, or of a verb and a noun, the noun only takes the mark of the plural. Thus we say,

un avant-coureur, a fore-runner; *des avant-coureurs*, fore-runners.
un entre-sol, an enter-sole; *des entre-sols*, enter-soles.
un abat-jour, a sky-light; *des abat jours*, sky-lights.
un cure-dent, a tooth-picker; *des cure-dents*, tooth-pickers.
un tourne-broche, a jack; *des tourne broches*, jacks.
un garde-fou, a rail; *des garde-fous*, rails.

When a compound noun is formed of two nouns united by a preposition, the first only must take the mark of the plural. Thus we say,

un œil-de-bœuf, an oval window; *des œils-de-bœuf*, oval windows.
un ciel-de-lit, a tester; *des ciels-de lit*, testers.
un jet-d'eau, a water-spout; *des jets-d'eau*, water-spouts.

un

un chef d'œuvre, a master-piece; *des chefs-d'œuvre*, master-pieces.
un cul-de-lampe, a tail-piece; *des culs-de-lampe*, tail-pieces.
un arc-en-ciel, a rainbow; *des arcs-en-ciel*, rainbows.

I cannot help mentioning a gross mistake that has crept into the French Academy's Dictionary, and misled some modern Grammarians, who write *des chefs-d'œuvres*, *des arc-en-ciels*, *des ciels-de-lit*; which implies contradiction, and even nonsense: can the mark of the plural be affixed to a thing which is not presented as numerable? However, we say, in painting, *le ciel*, *les ciels*; but we mean only the air, the clouds, not the skies.

Nouns compounded of the pronoun *mon*, *ma*, change *mon*, *ma*, into *mes* in the plural, besides the characteristic final letter of that number; as,

Sing.	*monsieur*,	master,	Plur.	*messieurs*,	gentlemen.
	madame,	madam,		*mesdames*,	ladies.
	monseigneur,	my lord,		*messeigneurs*,	my lords.
	mademoiselle,	miss,		*mesdemoiselles*,	ladies.

In all languages several nouns have no plural: such are,

1*st*, Nouns of virtues and vices; as *la charité* charity, *la haine* hatred, *la foi* faith, *l'orgueil* pride, &c. so far only as they express habits; for when they express acts, they are used in the plural: as *faire des charités*, to give alms.

2*dly*, Nouns of metals; as *de l'or* gold, *du cuivre* copper, *du plomb* lead, &c. but in another sense we say *des plombs* leaden vessels, *des fers* fetters.

3*dly*, These following:

absinthe,	wormwood.	*courroux*,	wrath.	*le toucher*,	feeling.
artillerie,	artillery.	*Eucharistie*,	Lord's supper.	*repos*,	rest.
attirail,	implements.	*Extrême-onction* *,		*naturel*,	nature.
bonheur,	happiness.	*faim*,	hunger.	*noblesse*.	nobility.
colère,	anger.	*fiel*,	gall.	*pauvreté*,	poverty.
gloire,	glory.	*fumée*,	smoke.	*soif*,	thirst.
honte,	shame.	*disette*,	scarcity.	*sang*,	blood.
jeunesse,	youth.	*fuite*,	flight.	*salut*,	safety.
lait,	milk.	*enfance*,	infancy.	*sommeil*,	sleep.
mollesse,	effeminacy.	*la vue*,	the sight.	*total*,	whole.
le prochain,	our neighbour.	*l'ouie*,	hearing.	*vieillesse*,	old age.
réputation,	reputation.	*l'odorat*,	smelling.	*virilité*,	manhood.
renommée,	fame.	*le goût*,	the taste.	*miel*,	honey.

* One of the seven sacraments of the church of *Rome*.

As also infinitives and adjectives used substantively; as *le boire* & *le manger* eating and drinking, *l'utile* & *l'agréable* profit and pleasure.

4*thly*, Nouns of number have no plural in French; or rather, tho' they are plural by their nature, except *un*, yet they don't take the final *s* which characterises that number: as *trois deux* three two's, *deux quatre* two fours, *quatre six* four sixes, *dix mille* ten thousand, &c. Except *vingt*, *cent*, and *million*; as *six vingts hommes* six score men, *deux cens écus* two hundred crowns, &c.——*oui* and *non* used substantively, have no plural neither; as *je ne me soucie ni de* vos oui *ni de* vos non, I care neither for your *yea's* nor your *no's*.

Proper names have no plural, unless they are used metaphorically.

Thus we say, *les deux Corneilles*, *les Turenne*, *les Lamoignon*, &c. but we say *ils sont les Césars* & *les Alexandres de leur siècle*, they are the Cæsars and Alexanders of their age.

The following nouns have only the plural in use:

Alpes, Alps.
annales, annals.
ancêtres, ancestors.
aïeux, forefathers.
agnets (*être aux*) to be upon the catch.
arrérages, [arrears.
assises, assises.
atours, apparel.
avives, vives (in horses a disease).
étailles, dainties.
besicles, spectacles.
broussailles, briars.
Calendes, Calends.
catacombes, catacombs.
ciseaux, scissars.
* *complies*, closing prayers of the day.
confins, confines.
confitures, sweet-meats.
décombres, rubbish.
délices, delight.
dépens, cost.
écrouelles, the king's evil.
entraves, shackles.
entrailles, entrails.
entreprises, transactions.
étrivières, soundly lashing.
épousailles, espousals.
fiançailles, betrothing.
funérailles, funerals.
fonts, the font for christening.
frais, expences.
galliots, galleons.
gens, people.
hardes, clothes.
hémorrhoïdes, piles.
immondices, filth.
* *laudes*, morning prayers.
limites, limits.
mânes, the ghost of one deceased.
matériaux, materials.
* *matines*, matins.
mœurs, manners.
mouchettes, snuffers.
munitions, ammunitions †.
nippes, goods, things.
* *nones*, the nones.
obsèques, obsequies.
pleurs, tears.
proches, relations.
prémices, first-fruits.
Pyrénées, Pyrenees.
représailles, reprisals.
rets, a net.
rogations, rogation day.
stigmates, prints, marks.
ténèbres, darkness.
* *vêpres*, vespers.
vergettes, a blush.
vivres, victuals.

* *Matines*, *laudes*, *nones*, *vêpres*, and *complies*, are part of the divine service called in the church of *Rome* the *Canonical Hours*.

† Except that we say *du pain de munition*, ammunition-bread.

The following nouns, merely Latin, are of both numbers:

des alleluia, *des* libera, (church terms.)
des alibi, (a law term.)
des linea. (new paragraphs.)
des accessit, (certificates.)
des petits item, small articles.
des duo, *des trio*, *des quatuor*,
trois errata, three errata's.
quatre duplicata, four duplicata's.
des Acacia, Acacias.
des exeat, (leave to go out.)
des fac-totum, people who do all in a family.
trois in folio, three folio's.
six in quarto, six quarto's.
huit in octavo, eight octavo's.
cinq pater & cinq ave, five pater-nosters.
des ave, *des ave Maria*.
des orémus, collects.
des te deum, te deum's.
ses ergò, his therefore's.
And *des a-parte*, aside (what an actor speaks aside upon the stage.)
We likewise say,
des in-douze, duodecimo, in twelves.
des in-seize, sixteens.
des in dix-huit, eighteens.
des in-vingt-quatre, twenty-fours.
des a, *des b*, *des i*, &c. a's, b's, i's, &c.

SECTION II.

Of the GENDER *of Nouns.*

Nouns are either of the *masculine* or of the *feminine* gender.

Nouns relating to males, or *he's*, are masculine; and those relating to females, or *she's*, are feminine: as,

Masc.

Masc. Gend.		Fem. Gend.	
un Dieu,	a God,	*une Déesse*,	a Goddess.
un Roi,	a King,	*une Reine*,	a Queen.
le Jupiter de Phidias,	Phidias's Jupiter,	*la Diane d' Ephèse*,	the Diana of Ephesus.
un male,	a male, a cock, or a buck,	*une femelle*,	a female, hen, or doe.
un chien,	a dog,	*une chienne*,	a bitch.
un cheval,	a horse,	*une jument*.	a mare.

Except these two, *gardes* guards, and *troupes* troops, which are feminine, though they relate to men; as *les gardes Françoises sont de bonnes troupes*, the French guards are good troops. Except also *tendron*, which is masculine, though it relates to a girl; as *un jeune tendron*, a young lass.

Family names, common to both sexes, are masculine or feminine, according as they are said of a man or woman; as *le savant Dacier*, the learned Mr. Dacier, *la savante Dacier*, the learned Madam Dacier.

In other nouns the gender is known by their terminations.

Nouns of the following terminations are of the feminine gender.

1*st*, Nouns in *tié* and *té*; as *une amitié* a friendship, *la santé* health, &c.

Except of those in *té* these eight or nine:

un arrêté de compte,	a settled account,	*un pâté*,	a pye,
le côté,	the side,	*un traité*,	a treaty,
un été,	a summer,	*du thé*,	tea,
un comité,	a committee,	*le bénédicité*,	(the first word of the prayer said by the Roman Catholics before their meals).
un comté,	a county or earldom,		

2*dly*, Nouns in *ion*; as *une action* an action, *une passion* a passion, &c.

Except these twenty-four:

un alérion,	an eaglet,	*un boxion*,	a blow,
l'alcion,	the halcyon,	*un lampion*,	a sort of lamp for illuminations in rejoicing nights,
un bastion,	a bastion,	*un million*,	a million,
le bestion,	the head of a ship,	*le morion*,	a sort of military punishment,
un camion,	a short pin,	*un morpion*,	a crab-louse,
un champion,	a champion,	*l'Orion*,	(a constellation,)
le chorion,	the chorion,	*un pion*,	a man at chess or draughts,
le croupion,	the rump,	*le Septentrion*,	the North,
un embrion,	an embryo,	*un scion*,	a sprig,
un fanion,	a standard,	*un scorpion*,	a scorpion,
un gabion,	a gabion,	*le talion*,	retaliation.
les gallions,	the galleons,		
gavion,	throat,		

N. B. Crayon *and* rayon, *which are masculine, don't fall under this rule.*

3*dly*,

3*dly*, Nouns in *zon* and *son*, after a vowel or diphthong; as *une saison* a season, *une prison* a prison, &c. Except these eight:

le blason,	heraldry,	*un oison*,	a young goose,
un frison,	an under-petticoat,	*un peson*,	a steel-yard;
un gason,	a green plot,	*du poison*,	poison,
l'horison,	the horizon,	*un tison*,	a brand,

N. B. *Nouns in* sson *don't fall under this rule.*

4*thly*, Nouns in *eur*, as also in *eure*: as *une peur* a fear, *la chaleur* heat, *une heure*, an hour, &c.

Except of the first these twelve:

un bonheur,	good luck,	*l'Equateur*,	the Equator,
un malheur,	a misfortune,	*l'honneur*,	honour,
le cœur,	the heart,	*un déshonneur*,	a dishonour,
un chœur,	a choir, *or* chorus,	*la labeur*,	the labour,
l'interieur,	the inward part,	*le lecteur*,	the reader,
l'extérieur,	the out-side,	*le faiseur*, (pron. *feseur*)	the maker;

and all other nouns in *eur* derived from verbs, which change *eur* into *euse* for their feminine, or are only applicable to men; as *un docteur* a doctor, *un voleur*, *une voleuse*, a thief, &c.

Except also *pleurs* tears, which is masculine.—Of nouns in *eure*, except these three, *de beurre* butter, *le leurre* a lure (for a hawk), and *du feurre* straw.

5*thly*, Nouns ending in *x*: as *la paix* peace, *une noix* a walnut, *de la chaux* lime, &c.

Except these twelve:

du borax,	borax,	*le reflux*,	the ebb,
le choix,	the choice,	*un lynx*,	a lynx,
un crucifix,	a crucifix,	*le prix*,	the price,
le faix,	the weight,	*le Styx*.	the Stygian river,
du houx,	holly,	*du storax*,	a sweet-smelling gum, and the
un phénix,	a phœnix,		letter *x*.
le flux,	the flowing,		

6*thly*, The following nouns, which cannot be brought under a particular class of termination:

une brebis,	a sheep,	*de la glu*,	bird-lime,	*la nuit*,	the night (but not *minuit*, midnight†),
une clé or *clef*,	a key,	*la gent*,	the race or nation*,		
de la chair,	flesh,				
une cour,	a court,	*la hart d' un fagot*,	a band for a faggot,	*la loi*,	the law,
une cuiller,	a spoon,			*la soif*,	thirst,
une dent,	a tooth,	*une iris*,	a crocus,	*une souris*,	a mouse,
une dot,	a portion,	*une part*,	a share,	*une tour*,	a tower,
de l'eau,	water,	*la peau*,	the skin,		(but not *un tour*, a turn),
la faim,	hunger,	*une main*,	a hand,		
la fin,	the end,	*la merci*,	the mercy,	*une tribu*,	a tribe,
une fois,	a time,	*la mer*,	the sea,	*la vertu*,	virtue,
la foi,	faith,	*la mort*,	death,	*une vis*,	a screw.
une forêt,	a forest,	*la nef*,	the body of a church,		
une fourmi,	an ant,				

* *la gent* is a burlesque sort of word, used only in poetry.

† *la nuit passée*, last night; *il est minuit sonné*, it has struck twelve (at night).

As to the other nouns ending in *e* not ſounded, as there are as many of them of the maſculine gender as of the feminine, and both in a very great number, I ſhall ſet down in the *Appendix* a liſt of all the nouns maſculine that end in *e* not ſounded; as alſo another of thoſe which admit either gender, according to their ſeveral ſignifications. One muſt only obſerve here, that the nouns of the following termination, with *e* not ſounded, are of the feminine gender.

1*ſt*, Nouns ending in any vowel or diphthong before *e* not ſounded: ſuch are theſe terminations, *ée*, *aie*, *ie* and *uie*, *oie* and *oye*, *oue* and *ue*; as *une armée* an army, *une plaie* a wound, *de la ſoie* ſilk, *la joie* joy, *une ortie* a nettle, *la pluie* the rain, *une roue* a wheel, *de la morue* cod-fiſh, &c.

Except from nouns in *ée* theſe twenty-four:

l' Apogée,	Apogee,	*le nymphée,*	
un caducée,	a caduceum,	*le périgée,*	perigee,
un collisée,	a colliſæum,	*le périnée.*	the perinæum,
le coryphée,	the chief,	*le Pyrée.*	a celebrated haven of Athens,
l' Empyrée,	the empyrean heaven,	*les Pyrénées,*	the Pyreneans,
les champs élyſées,	the elyſian fields,	*le Ruphée,*	
le gynecée,		*un ſpondée,*	a ſpondee,
un hyménée,	marriage, wedlock,	*un trochée,*	a trochee,
le Lycée,	the Lyceum,	*les teſtacées,* and *les cruſtacées,*	
le mauſolée,	a mauſoleum,	*un trophée,*	a trophy,
le Muſée,	the Muſæum,		

And theſe twelve from thoſe in *ie*, *oie*, and *ue*.

Aphélie,	Aphelion,	*un pavie,*	a neſtarine,
un génie,	a genius,	*le périhélie,*	perihelium,
un incendie,	a conflagration,	*un parélie,*	perihelium, *(mock-ſun)*
le Meſſie,	Meſſiah,	*le bain-marie,*	balneum mariæ,
un menſtrue,	a menſtruum,	*le foie,*	the liver,
un parapluie,	an umbrella,	*du pou de ſoie,*	paduaſoy.

2*dly*, Nouns ending in *ance* or *anſe*, *ence* or *enſe*: as *une balance* a pair of ſcales, *une anſe* an ear or handle, *la conſcience* conſcience, *une défenſe* a defence, &c. Except *le ſilence* ſilence.

3*dly*, Nouns ending in *ailie*, *eille* and *elle*: as *de la paille* ſtraw, *une oreille* an ear, *une chandelle* a candle, &c. Except *un cure-oreille* an ear-picker, and *un perce-oreille* an ear-wig: but thoſe in *ail*, *eil*, and *el*, are maſculine.

4*thly*, All nouns ending in *ace* and *aſſe*: as *de la glace* ice, *un paillaſſe* a ſtraw-bed, &c.

5*thly*,

vers; and besides, exact lists of animals, birds, fishes, &c. trees, plants, and flowers, whose names are mostly used.

Comté a county or earldom, and *Duché* a duchy, formerly used in both genders, are now masculine: but we say in the feminine *la Franche-Comté* (the County of Burgundy), and *une Vicomté* a Vicecounty, as likewise *une Comté-Pairie*, and *une Duché-Pairie*

Epithalame epithalamium, is masculine; but *épigramme* an epigram, and *thériaque* treacle, are feminine.

Couple is feminine in the signification of number only; as *une couple d'œufs* a couple of eggs: and when it comprehends besides another accessory idea, as of union, &c. it is masculine; as *un beau couple* a fine couple, (meaning two married people.)

Amour love, and *orgue* organ, are masculine in the singular and feminine in the plural: as,

Sing.	*l'amour divin,*	the love of God.	Plur.	*de folles amours,*	foolish amours.
	un bel orgue,	a fine organ.		*de belles orgues,*	fine organs.

But *orgue* is very seldom used in the singular; and *amours*, signifying Cupids, are masculine: as *les amours rians & badins la suivent partout*, wanton Cupids follow her every where.

anagramme,	anagram,	are feminine.	*hymne,*	hymn,	are masculine.
énigme,	an enigma,		*dialecte,*	dialect,	
épitaphe,	an epitaph,		*épisode,*	an episode,	
épithète,	an epithet,				
équivoque,	equivocation,				
horoscope,	horoscope,				

Moreover, adjectives used substantively; nouns of number, ordinal, proportional, and distributive; infinitives, adverbs, and prepositions also, taken substantively, are masculine; as

le rouge,	red.	*un cinq,*	a five.	*le manger,*	eating.
le noir,	black.	*un cinquième,*	a fifth.	*le devant,*	the fore-part.
le néc, airé, what is requisite, &c.		*un dixième,*	a tenth.	*le derrière,*	the hind-part, &c.
un deux,	a two.	*le double,*	the double.		
un quatre,	a four.	*le triple,*	the treble.	*le peu que je sais,*	the little I know.
		le boire,	drinking.		

Except that we make *antique* feminine, (*une antique*) *statue* or *médaille* being understood. We also say in mathematics, *une courbe*, a curve; *une perpendiculaire*, a perpendicular; *une tangente*, a tangent; *ligne* being likewise understood.

Nouns compound of a noun and a verb, are likewise masculine. Thus tho' *oreille*, *noisette*, *broche*, &c. are feminine, yet we say *un cure-oreille*, an ear-picker; *un casse-noisette*, a nut-cracker; *un tourne-broche*, a jack; *un passe-velours*, a velvet-flower. Except *une garderobe*, a wardrobe.

SECTION III.

Of the ARTICLE.

The noun performs divers offices in speech. Sometimes it expresses the subject of which something is spoken, and sometimes the object which particularises that which is said of the subject.

At other times, we consider in the noun the relation which one thing bears to another, or to an action: as *le Roi aime le peuple*, the king loves the people; *le peuple aime le Roi*, the people love the King; *la sagesse du Roi*, the King's wisdom; *présenter un*

placet

placet un Roi, to present a petition to the King; *ressembler au Roi*, to be like the King; *un présent pour le Roi*, a present for the King; *aller chez le Roi*, to go to the King, *&c.*

Those different states or relations of the noun, those various respects in which it may be considered, are denoted in Latin by a variety of terminations in the noun, which they call *cases*. In French, as well as in English, they are denoted by the place which the noun has in the sentence, and by a particular sort of words called prepositions. The noun, considered as the subject, comes before the verb; and after it, when considered as the object. The above mentioned examples, where the same nouns are used in different states, ought to make this plain, without any other illustration. *Roi* is subject in the first, and object in the second: on the contrary, *peuple* is object in one and subject in the other. In the other examples, the noun is not used either as subject or object, but its other relations to the preceding noun or verb are denoted by the words immediately coming before it: things being always in relation to each other, either of union or separation, fitness or unfitness, quality, effect, cause, end, order, dependence, situation, *&c.*

Therefore there are no such things as cases and declensions in our languages, wherein the several states or relations of the noun are marked by the place which they keep in the sentence, and by prepositions. But as none of them denotes so many various relations as these two *de* and *à*, which are contracted with the article in two particular cases, though each of them remain the same in English, I will set down examples of the ways of considering the noun in French, with respect to its chief relations, for method's sake only, and to accustom the beginner to that contraction, which is a little puzzling at first.

The article is a particle established to specify the extent of the sense in which the noun is taken.

		Sing. Numb.			*Plur. Numb.*	
		Masc.	*Fem.*	*M. & F.*	*Masc. & Fem.*	
First	*State*	le,	la,	l'	les,	*the.*
Second	*State*	du,	de la,	de l'	des,	*of the.*
Third	*State*	au,	à la,	à l'	aux,	*to the.*

The article agrees with the noun in gender and number, *the* being in French *le*, for the masculine gender; *la* for the feminine, when the noun begins with a consonant or *h* aspirate; the letter *l'* only, with the elision, when it begins with a vowel or *h* mute; and *les* for the plural number, with all sorts of nouns.

The

States.	*Singular Number.*		*Plural Number.*	
1*st.*	Monsieur,	*master.*	Messieurs,	*gentlemen.*
2*d.*	de monsieur,	*of master.*	de messieurs,	*of gentlemen.*
3*d.*	à monsieur,	*to master.*	à messieurs,	*to gentlemen.*

15*th. Example of nouns used with the particle* un, *and* une.

1*st.*	un Roi,	*a King.*	des Rois,	*Kings.*
2*d.*	d'un Roi,	*of a King.*	de Rois,	*of Kings.*
3*d.*	à un Roi,	*to a King.*	à des Rois,	*to Kings.*
1*st.*	une Reine,	*a Queen.*	des Reines,	*Queens.*
2*d.*	d'une Reine,	*of a Queen.*	de Reines,	*of Queens.*
3*d.*	à une Reine,	*to a Queen.*	à des Reines,	*to Queens.*

CHAP. II.

Of ADNOUNS.

THE ADNOUN is a part of speech serving to express the *qualities* of things, or what they are.

They are called *adnouns* or *adjectives*, because they are as added to the *nouns* or *substantives*, which they are either joined with, or supposed in the sentence, to *qualify* the things which the others serve to *name*: as *savant* learned, *beau* and *belle* handsome, *commode* convenient, *&c.* which are qualities that may be considered in, and affirmed of, the nouns *man*, *woman*, *house*; as *un homme savant* a learned man, *une belle femme* a handsome woman, *une maison commode* a convenient house, *&c.*

The adnouns agree with the nouns in gender and number; and therefore it is of moment to know how to form their genders.

SECTION I.

Of the Formation of the Feminine Gender of Adnouns.

Adnouns ending in *e* not sounded, are of both genders; that is, the same for the masculine and feminine: as,

Masc. Gend.	*Fem. Gend.*
un honnête homme, *an honest man.*	une honnête femme, *an honest woman.*
un procédé indigne, *unworthy proceeding.*	une conduite indigne, *unworthy way of behaving.*

The

The others, generally speaking, only add *e* not sounded for their feminine gender: as,

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*
grand, *great*,	grande.	savant, *learned*,	savante.	rond, *round*,	ronde.

This rule never varies with respect to the adnouns that end with a vowel, and all participles: as,

Masc.	*Fem.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*
aisé, *easy*,	aisée.	aimé, *loved*,	aimée.	fait, *done*,	faite.
jòli, *pretty*,	jolie.	perdu, *lost*,	perdue.	pris, *taken*,	prise.

Except however *béni* holy, and *favori* darling, which make *bénite* and *favorite* in their feminine.

Here follow rules for forming the feminine gender of the other adnouns, which all end their masculine with one of these consonants, *c*, *f*, *l*, *n*, *t*, or in *eux* and *eur*.

1*st*, Adnouns ending in *eur* and *eux*, change *eur* and *eux* into *euse* for the feminine: as,

Masc.		*Fem.*	*Masc.*		*Fem.*
raill*eur*,	jeering,	rallll*euse*.	heur*eux*,	happy,	heur*euse*.

Except these eleven, *antérieur*, foregoing, former: *postérieur*, hind, latter; *citérieur*, citerior; *ultérieur*, furthermost; *intérieur*, inward; *extérieur*, outward; *majeur*, senior; *mineur*, junior; *supérieur*, superior; *inférieur*, inferior; and *meilleur*, better; which follow the general rule, and make *antérieure*, *intérieure*, &c.

Except also *vieux* old, which makes *vieille*, from its old masculine *vieil*, still used before some substantives beginning with a vowel, or *h* not aspirate: as *un vieil habit* an old suit of clothes. We use it with *homme* only in this phrase of the Gospel, *dépouiller le vieil homme* to put off the old man; otherwise we express an old man by *vieillard*, as an old woman by the feminine of *vieil*, taken substantively *une vieille*; that word being the feminine of *vieux*: as *une vieille maison* an old house.

2*dly*, Adnouns ending with *c*, which are only eight in number, form their feminine, the three first, in changing their final *c* into *che*, and the five others into *que*: as,

Masc.		*Fem.*	*Masc.*		*Fem.*
blan*c*,	*white*,	blan*che*.	publi*c*,	*public*,	publi*que*.
fran*c*,	*sincere*,	fran*che*.	Gre*c*,	*Greek*,	Gre*que*.
se*c*,	*dry*,	se*che*.	Tur*c*,	*Turkish*,	Tur*que*.
cadu*c*,	*in decay*,	cadu*que*.	ammonia*c*,	*ammoniac*,	ammonia*que*.

3*dly*, Adnouns ending with *f*, form their feminine in changing their final *f* into *ve*: as,

Masc.		*Fem.*	*Masc.*		*Fem.*
neu*f*,	*new*,	neu*ve*.	vi*f*.	*quick*,	vi*ve*.

4*thly*, Of adnouns ending with *l*, those which have *a* or *i* before *l* follow the general rule; and the others which have *e*, *o*, *u*, or *ei* before *l*, double that final *l* before *e*; as does also *gentil*: as,

Masc.		*Fem.*	*Masc.*		*Fem.*
fata*l*,	*fatal*,	fata*le*.	nu*l*,	*no man*,	nu*lle*.
subti*l*,	*subtle*,	subti*le*.	pare*il*,	*alike*,	pare*ille*.
cru*el*,	*cruel*,	cru*elle*.	genti*l**,	*genteel*,	genti*lle*.

* l *is silent in* gentil, *and liquid in* gentille.

mou,	*soft*,	from their	mol,	and double	mo*lle*,
fou,	*foolish*,	feminine	fol,	also *l* before *e*	fo*lle*,
beau,	*fine*,	of their old	bel,	making in	be*lle*,
nouveau,	*new*,	masculine	nouvel;	their feminine	nouve*lle*,

which old masculines are still used before nouns beginning with a vowel; as *un fol entêtement* a foolish infatuation, *un bel esprit* a wit, *un nouvel amant* a new lover, &c.— The masculine *bel* is not only retained in this phrase, *cela est bel & bon* that is very well, or very good, but also in the surname of some of the kings of *France*, without being followed by a word beginning with a vowel; as *Charles le Bel* Charles the Fair, *Philippe le Bel* Philip the Fair, &c.

5*thly*, Of Adnouns ending with *n*, those only double *n* in their feminine which have *o* before *n*, or end in *ien*: the others follow the general rule; as,

Masc.		*Fem.*	*Masc.*		*Fem.*
bo*n*,	*good*,	bo*nne*.	divin,	*divine*,	divine.
anci*en*,	*ancient*,	anci*enne*.	plein,	*full*,	pleine.

6*thly*, Of adnouns ending with *t*, those only double *t* in their feminine which have *e* or *o* before it (few only being excepted, such as *secret*, *complet*, *dévot*); the others that have *i* or *a*, or an improper diphthong, or a consonant before *t*, follow the general rule; as,

Masc.		*Fem.*	*Masc.*		*Fem.*
ne*t*,	*clean*,	ne*tte*.	ingrat,	*ungrateful*,	ingrate.
so*t*,	*foolish*,	so*tte*.	droit,	*right*,	droite.
petit,	*little*,	petite.	constant,	*constant*,	constante.

These six following double their final *s* before *e*: the eleven others are not so regular:

Masc.	bas,	épais,	exprès,	gras,	gros,	las,
	low,	*thick*,	*express*,	*fat*,	*big*,	*tired*,
Fem.	basse.	épaisse.	expresse.	grasse.	grosse.	lasse.

Masc.

Masc.		*Fem.*	*Masc.*		*Fem.*
bénin,	*benign,*	bénigne.	jaloux,	*jealous,*	jalouse.
malin,	*malignant,*	maligne.	nu,	*naked,*	nue.
long,	*long,*	longue.	vert,	*green,*	verte.
doux,	*sweet,*	douce.	*To which add these two participles.*		
frais,	*cool, fresh,*	fraîche.			
roux,	*reddish,*	rousse.			
cru,	*raw,*	crue.	absous,	*absolved,*	absoute.
faux,	*false,*	fausse.	dissous,	*dissolved,*	dissoute.

SECTION II.

Of the Comparison of Adnouns.

As an adnoun expresses the quality of a thing, and, when compared with that of another, that quality may be found more or less such, or equal others, or exceed them all; hence arise what Grammarians call the three degrees of comparison, the positive, the comparative, and the superlative: which they should have rather called degrees of *signification*; since the positive is never used with comparison, and the signification of the adnoun is most times increased to the highest pitch, without any comparison at all. However,

The adnoun, in as much as it expresses only the quality of a thing, is called *positive*; as *sage* wise, *beau* handsome, *méchant* bad, *&c.*

The quality of a thing compared with another's, and affirmed to equal it, or exceed it, or come short of it, is called *comparative*; which therefore is threefold; as *aussi sage que lui* as wise as he, *plus beau qu'elle* handsomer than she, *moins méchant qu'eux* less bad than they.

The quality of a thing affirmed in the highest degree is called *superlative*; which is either *absolute*, as *très-sage* most wise, *fort beau* very handsome, *bien méchant* very bad; or *relative*, as *le plus sage, le plus beau, le plus méchant de tous*, the wisest, the handsomest, the worst of all.

That comparison of adnouns, that is, the rising or lessening their signification, or denoting equality in the quality of things, is made in French by placing some of these particles before them; *plus* more, *moins* less, *aussi, si,* as, so, *tant, autant* (so much, so many, as much, as many), and *mieux* better, before participles: as *aussi sage que lui, plus beau qu'elle, moins méchant qu'eux, mieux*

fait better made, *il n'est pas* si *grand* qu'*elle* he is not *so* tall *as* she.

Elle n'a pas tant *d'esprit* que *sa sœur, mais elle a* autant *de vivacité, & elle est* aussi *aimable.*	She has not *so much* wit *as* her sister, but she has *as much* livelinesS, and is *as* amiable *as* she.

And for denoting the highest or lowest degree of the adnoun, we put one of these adverbs of excess before it, *très*, most; *bien*, *fort*, very; *infiniment*, *extrêmement*, *prodigieusement* (extremely, vastly, mightily); or if there is relation, we put the article before the comparative adverbs, which we make agree in gender and number with the noun; as masc. *le plus sage*, fem. *la plus sage*, the wisest; masc. *le mieux fait*, fem. *la mieux faite*, the best made; masc. *les moins mauvais*, fem. *les moins mauvaises*, the least bad.

Three adnouns only, in French, denote by themselves the comparison; *meilleur* better, *pire* worse, and *moindre* less.

Meilleur is the comparative of *bon* good, whose relative superlative is formed by putting the article before its comparative; as,

Pos. *bon* good; Comp. *meilleur*, better; Sup. *le meilleur*, the best.

After the same manner, *mauvais* bad, has for its comparative *pire* worse; and for its superlative *le pire* the worst: and *petit* little, for its comparative *moindre* less; and for its superlative *le moindre* the least; tho' we also say,

Posit.	Comp.		Superl.	
petit, little,	*plus petit*, or *moindre*,	less,	*le plus petit*, or *le moindre*,	the least.
mauvais, bad,	*plus mauvais*, or *pire*,	worse,	*le plus mauvais*, or *le pire*,	the worst.
méchant, wicked	*plus méchant*, or *pire*,	more wicked,	*le plus méchant*, or *le pire*,	the most wicked.
But we don't say *bon*, good, instead of *bon*,	*plus bon*, *meilleur*,	better,	*le plus bon*, *le meilleur*,	the best.

Observe that the pronouns adjective have the same effect as the article in making the superlative degree; and *mon meilleur ami* is equal to *le meilleur de mes amis*, the best of my friends.

Adverbs increase or decrease also in their signification; as *très-sagement*, very wisely; *fort habilement*, very artfully; *plus-finement qu'on ne peut dire*, more cunningly than can be said; *le plus subtilement qu'on puisse imaginer*, with the greatest subtlety one can imagine.

imagine. And these three form their comparative and superlative irregularly.

Posit.		Comp.		Superl.	
bien,	well,	*mieux*,	better,	*le mieux*,	the best.
mal,	ill,	*pis*, *plus mal*,	worse,	*le pis*, or *le plus mal*,	the worst.
peu,	little,	*moins*,	less,	*le moins*,	the least.

bien denotes either the *quality* or the *quantity*: if it is used in the former sense, its comparative is *mieux*; if in the latter, it is *plus*: as *bien fait* well made, *mieux fait* better made, *bien fatigué* much tired, *plus fatigué* more tired.

These two adnouns, *prochain* and *voisin*, next, near, can be used only in the positive, and never in the comparative or superlative. They are supplied by the comp. and superl. of the other adnoun *proche* near, *plus proche* nearer, *le plus proche*, the nearest, instead of *plus prochain*, *le plus prochain*, *plus voisin*, *le plus voisin*.——However, *voisin* may well take *fort* or *trop* before it: as *nous sommes fort voisins*, we live very near one another, *nos maisons sont trop voisines*, our houses are too near one another.

There are besides six other words of a superlative kind and signification, that end in *issime*: as *sérénissime* most serene, *éminentissime* most eminent, *révérendissime* most reverend, *illustrissime* most illustrious, *généralissime* generalissimo, and *savantissime* most learned. This last is of a low style.

CHAP. III.

Of PRONOUNS.

PRONOUNS are words which usually stand for the particular noun of a thing or person.

There are four sorts of Pronouns: the Personal, the Relative, the Demonstrative, and the Indeterminate.

Of Pronouns Personal.

Pronouns Personal are divided into five orders or classes; 1*st*, those of the first person; 2*dly*, of the second; 3*dly*, of the third masculine; 4*thly*, the third feminine; 5*thly*, the third indeterminate.

Pronouns of the first Person.

State.	*Sing. Numb.*		*Plur. Numb.*	
1*st*.	Je, moi,	*I.*	Nous,	*we.*
2*d*.	de moi,	*of me.*	de nous,	*of us.*
3*d*.	à moi, mei, me,	*to me.*	à nous, nous,	*to us.*
4*th*.	*me, moi*,	*me.*	nous,	*us.*

Pronouns of the second Person.

State.	*Sing. Numb.*		*Plur. Numb.*	
1*st.*	Tu, toi,	*thou.*	Vous,	*you.*
2*d.*	de toi,	*of thee.*	de vous,	*of you.*
3*d.*	à toi, toi, te,	*to thee.*	à vous, vous,	*to you.*
4*th.*	te, toi,	*thee.*	vous,	*to you.*

Pronouns of the third Person Masculine.

1*st.*	Il, lui,	*he, it.*	Ils, eux,	*they.*
2*d.*	de lui,	*of him, of it.*	d'eux,	*of them.*
3*d.*	à lui, lui,	*to him, to it.*	à eux, leur,	*to them.*
4*th.*	le, lui,	*him, it.*	les, eux,	*them.*

Pronouns of the third Person Feminine.

1*st.*	Elle,	*she, it.*	Elles,	*they.*
2*d.*	d'elle,	*of her, of it.*	d'elles,	*of them.*
3*d.*	à elle, lui,	*to her, to it.*	à elles, leur,	*to them.*
4*th.*	la, elle,	*her, it.*	les, elles,	*them.*

Pronouns of the third Person Indeterminate.

1*st.*	On, soi,	*one's self.*	3*d. St.*	à soi, se,	*to one's self.*
2*d.*	de soi,	*of one's self.*	4*th.*	se, soi,	*one's self.*

Out of the pronouns personal are made some adnouns called *Possessive*, because they shew, that the thing spoken of belongs to the person or thing which they serve to denote. It is wrongfully they are reckoned a particular class of pronouns, since their office is not to stand for the name of a thing, but only to qualify it. These pronominal adnouns are of two sorts, absolute, and relative.

Pronominal adnouns absolute always come before the nouns which they qualify, doing the office of the article. They are six in number, *viz.*

	Sing. Masc. Fem. Plur.		*M. & F.*	
1*st Stat.*	mon, ma, mes,	*my.*	2*d State.*	de mon, de ma, de mes, *of my.*
	ton, ta, tes,	*thy.*	3*d.*	à mon, à ma, à mes, *to my.*
	son, sa, ses,	*his, her, its.*		

	Sing. M. & F.	*Plur. M. & F.*			
1*st State.*	notre,	nos,	*our.*	2*d St.*	de notre, de nos, *of our.*
	votre,	vos,	*your.*		
	leur,	leurs,	*their.*	3*d.*	à notre, à nos, *to our.*

Pronominal adnouns relative are so called, because they, not being joined to their noun, suppose it either expressed before or understood, and are related to it. They are also six, which answer to each of the pronominal adnouns absolute, and take the article.

Stat.

Stat.	*Sing. Maſ. Fem.*	*Plu. Maſc. Fem.*		
1ſt.	le mien,	la mienne,	les miens, les miennes,	*mine.*
	le tien,	la tienne,	les tiens, les tiennes,	*thine.*
	le ſien,	la ſienne,	les ſiens, les ſiennes,	*bis, hers.*

2d. du mien, de la mienne, des miens, des miennes, *of mine, &c.*

Maſc. and Fem.

1ſt.	le nôtre,	la nôtre,	les nôtres,	*ours.*
	le vôtre,	la vôtre,	les vôtres,	*yours.*
	le leur,	la leur,	les leurs,	*theirs.*

2d. du nôtre, de la nôtre, des nôtres.
3d. au nôtre, à la nôtre, aux nôtres, *&c.*

Of Pronouns Relative.

Pronouns relative are uſed after nouns and pronouns perſonal, as part of their retinue; and to which they are ſo nearly related, that without them they have no ſignification.

There are four pronouns relative, *qui*, *quel*, *quoi*, and *le*: *qui*, *quoi*, and *le*, are for both genders and numbers, and take no article; but *quel* takes the article, and forms with it but a ſingle word, viz. *lequel*, &c.

1ſt. State.	qui,	*who, that.*	quoi, que,	*what.*
2d.	de qui, dont,	*of whom.*	de quoi, dont,	*of what.*
		of that, whoſe.	à quoi,	*to what.*
3d.	à qui,	*to whom, to that.*	que, quoi,	*what,*
4th.	que, qui,	*whom, that.*		

Sing. Maſc.	*Fem.*	*Plur. Maſc.*	*Fem.*	
1ſt. lequel,	laquelle;	leſquels,	leſquelles,	*which.*
2d. duquel,	de laquelle;	deſquels,	deſquelles, dont,	*of which, whoſe.*
3d. auquel,	à laquelle;	auxquels,	auxquelles,	*to which.*

1ſt. State.	le,		*him, it.*
2d.	en,	*of him, of her, of it, of them.*	
3d.	y,	*to him, to her, to it, to them.*	

Theſe pronouns (except *le*) are uſed for aſking queſtions, to which add *quel*, another pronominal adnoun, which is never uſed without a noun or pronoun after it: as,

Quel eſt cet homme-là? Who is that man?
Quels ſont-ils? Quelles ſont-elles! Who, *or* What are they?

Sing. Maſc.	*Fem.*	*Plur. Maſc.*	*Fem.*	
1ſt. State. quel,	quelle;	quels,	quelles,	*what.*
2d. de quel,	de quelle;	de quels,	de quelles,	*of what.*
3d. à quel,	à quelle;	à quels,	à quelles,	*to what.*

Of Pronouns Demonſtrative, which are,

ce, cet, cette, ces. ‖ *ceci, cela.* ‖ *celui, celle, ceux, celles.* ‖ *celui-ci, celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci.* ‖ *celui-là, celle-là, ceux-là, celles-là.* ‖ *ce que, ce qui.*

Theſe

These pronouns are called Demonstrative, because they denote more precisely, and, as it were, demonstrate either the nouns before which they come, or those they stand for, and therefore they have no article. The pronoun *ce*, from which the others are derived, and which is for that reason called *Primitive*, is used only before nouns masculine beginning with a consonant, or *h* aspirate; *cet* is used before nouns masculine beginning with a vowel, or *h* not aspirate; *cette* before all nouns feminine; and *ces* before all nouns of the plural number, and for both genders.

States.	*Sing. Masc.*	*Fem.*		*Plur. M. & F.*	
1*st.*	ce, *or* cet,	cette,	*this* or *that.*	ces,	*these* or *those.*
2*d.*	de ce, cet,	de cette,	*of this, that.*	de ces,	*of these, those.*
3*d.*	à ce, cet,	à cette,	*to this, that.*	à ces,	*to these, those.*
1*st.*	celui, *he* or *that,*	celle, *she* or *that,*	ceux,	celles,	*they* or *those.*
2*d.*	de celui, *of him,*	de celle, *of her,*	de ceux,	de celles,	*of them.*
3*d.*	à celui, *to him,*	à celle, *to her,*	à ceux,	à celles,	*to them.*
1*st.*	celui ci, celle-ci,	*this,*	ceux ci,	celles-ci,	*these.*
2*d.*	de celui-ci, de celle ci,	*of this,*	de ceux-ci,	de celles-ci,	*of these.*
3*d.*	à celui-ci, à celle-ci,	*to this,*	à ceux-ci,	à celles-ci,	*to these.*
1*st.*	celui-là, celle-là,	*that,*	ceux-là,	celle-là,	*those.*
2*d.*	de celui-là, de celle-là,	*of that,*	de ceux-là,	de celles-là,	*of those.*
3*d.*	à celui-là, à celle-là,	*to that,*	à ceux-là,	à celles-là,	*to those.*
1*st.*	ceci, *this,*	cela, *that,*	ce qui,	ce que,	*which, that which, what.*
2*d.*	de ceci, *of this,*	de cela, *of that,*	de ce qui,	de ce que,	*of which, of that,* &c.
3*d.*	à ceci, *to this,*	à cela, *to that,*	à ce qui,	à ce que,	*to which, to that,* &c.

Of Pronouns Indeterminate.

These pronouns are called Indeterminate, because they denote and express their object in a general indeterminate manner. Besides *on* already mentioned, these pronouns are *quelqu'un quelqu'une, chacun chacune, nul nulle, pas un pas une, aucun aucune, quiconque, personne, l'un l'autre, l'un & l'autre, l'un ou l'autre, ni l'un ni l'autre, plusieurs, tout,* and *rien.*

States.	*Masc.*	*Fem.*		
1*st.*	chacun,	chacune,	*every body,*	or *every one.*
2*d.*	de chacun,	de chacune,	*of every body,*	*every one.*
3*d.*	à chacun,	à chacune,	*to every body,*	*every one.*

States.	*Sing. Masc.*	*Fem.*		
1*st.*	quelqu'un,	quelqu'une,	*somebody,*	or *some one.*
2*d.*	de quelqu'un,	de quelqu'une,	*of somebody,*	*some one.*
3*d.*	à quelqu'un,	à quelqu'une,	*to somebody,*	*some one.*
	Plur. Masc.	*Fem.*		
1*st.*	quelques uns,	quelques unes,		*some ones.*
2*d.*	de quelques uns,	de quelques unes,		*of some ones.*
3*d.*	à quelques uns,	à quelques unes,		*to some ones.*

States.

States.	*Sing. Masc.*	*Fem.*	
1*st.*	aucun,	aucune,	*nobody*, or *none.*
2*d.*	de aucun,	d'aucune,	*of nobody*, *none.*
3*d.*	à aucun,	à aucune,	*to nobody*, *none.*
1*st.*	nul,	nulle,	*none*, or *nobody.*
2*d.*	de nul,	de nulle,	*of none*, *nobody.*
3*d.*	à nul,	à nulle,	*to none*, *nobody.*
1*st.*	pas un,	pas une,	*not one*, *never a one*, *none*, *nobody.*
2*d.*	de pas un,	de pas une,	*of not one*, or *none*, &c.
3*d.*	à pas un,	à pas une,	*to not one*, or *none*, &c.
1*st.*	l'un l'autre,	l'une l'autre,	*one another.*
2*d.*	l'un de l'autre,	l'une de l'autre,	*of one another.*
3*d.*	l'un à l'autre,	l'une à l'autre,	*to one another.*

	Plur. Masc.	*Fem.*	
1*st.*	les uns les autres,	les unes les autres,	*one another.*
2*d.*	les uns des autres,	les unes des autres,	*of one another.*
3*d.*	les uns aux autres,	les unes aux autres,	*to one another.*

	Sing. Masc.	*Fem.*	
1*st.*	l'un & l'autre,	l'une & l'autre,	*both.*
2*d.*	de l'un & de l'autre,	de l'une & de l'autre,	*of both.*
3*d.*	à l'un & à l'autre,	à l'une & à l'autre,	*to both.*

	Plur. Masc.	*Fem.*	
1*st.*	les uns & les autres,	les unes & les autres,	*both.*
2*d.*	des uns & des autres,	des unes & des autres,	*of both.*
3*d.*	aux uns & aux autres,	aux unes & aux autres,	*to both.*

	Sing. Masc.	*Fem.*	
1*st.*	l'un ou l'autre,	l'une ou l'autre,	*either.*
2*d.*	de l'un ou de l'autre,	de l'une ou de l'autre,	*of either.*
3*d.*	à l'un ou à l'autre,	à l'une ou à l'autre,	*to either.*

	Plur. Masc.	*Fem.*	
1*st.*	les uns ou les autres,	les unes ou les autres,	*either.*
2*d.*	des uns ou des autres,	des unes ou des autres,	*of either.*
3*d.*	aux uns ou aux autres,	aux unes ou aux autres,	*to either.*

	Sing. Masc.	*Fem.*	
1*st.*	ni l'un ni l'autre,	ni l'une ni l'autre,	*neither.*
2*d.*	ni de l'un ni de l'autre,	ni de l'une ni de l'autre,	*of neither.*
3*d.*	ni à l'un ni à l'autre,	ni à l'une ni à l'autre,	*to neither.*

	Plur. Masc.	*Fem.*	
1*st.*	ni les uns ni les autres,	ni les unes ni les autres,	*neither.*
2*d.*	ni des uns ni des autres,	ni des unes ni des autres,	*of neither.*
3*d.*	ni aux uns ni aux autres,	ni aux unes ni aux autres,	*to neither.*

Stat.

Cent-trente, &c.	*an Hundred & Thirty,*	130, &c.	CXXX, &c.
Deux cens, (*x* is dropped, and the final consonants in the following also, as before any other word beginning with a consonant)	*Two Hundred,*	200.	CC.
Trois cens,	*Three Hundred,*	300.	CCC.
Quatre cens,	*Four Hundred,*	400.	CD.
Cinq cens,	*Five Hundred,*	500.	D *or* IↃ.
Six cens,	*Six Hundred,*	600.	DC.
Sept cens,	*Seven Hundred,*	700.	DCC.
Huit cens,	*Eight Hundred,*	800.	DCCC.
Neuf cens,	*Nine Hundred,*	900.	CM, *or* DCCCC.
Mille,	*a Thousand,*	1000.	M *or* CIↃ.
Deux Mille,	*Two Thousand,*	2000.	IIↃ *or* II.M.
Trois Mille,	*Three Thousand,*	3000.	III.M.
Quatre Mille,	*Four Thousand,*	4000.	IV.M.
Cinq Mille,	*Five Thousand,*	5000.	V.M.
Six Mille,	*Six Thousand,*	6000.	VI.M.
Sept Mille,	*Seven Thousand,*	7000.	VII.M.
Huit Mille,	*Eight Thousand,*	8000.	VIII.M.
Neuf Mille,	*Nine Thousand,*	9000.	IX.M.

Dix Mille, 10000.	*Ten Thousand,* XM *or* CCIↃↃ. *or* XCIↃ.
Vingt Mille, 20000.	*Twenty Thousand,* XXCIↃ.
Trente Mille, 30000.	*Thirty Thousand,* XXXCIↃ.
Quarante Mille, 40000.	*Forty Thousand,* XLCIↃ.
Cinquante Mille, 50000.	*Fifty Thousand,* IↃↃↃ.
Cent Mille, 100000.	*an Hundred Thousand,* CCCIↃↃↃ.
Deux Cens Mille, 200000.	*Two Hundred Thousand,* CCM *or* CCↃↃ.
Cinq Cens Mille, 500000.	*Five Hundred Thousand,* DM. *or* D. ↃↃ.
un Million, 1000000.	*a Million.* CCCCIↃↃↃↃ.

Ordinal

Ordinal Numbers denote the order and rank of things: such are,

le Premier,	1r.	*the First.*	1st.
le Second, le Deuxième,	2e.	*the Second.*	2d.
le Troisième,	3e.	*the Third.*	3d.
le Quatrième,	4e.	*the Fourth.*	4th.
le Cinquième,	5e.	*the Fifth.*	5th.
le Sixième,	6e.	*the Sixth.*	6th.
le Septième,	7e.	*the Seventh.*	7th.
le Huitième,	8e.	*the Eighth.*	8th.
le Neuvième,	9e.	*the Ninth.*	9th.
le Dixième,	10e.	*the Tenth.*	10th.
le Onzième,	11e.	*the Eleventh.*	11th.
le Douzième,	12e.	*the Twelfth.*	12th.
le Treizième,	13e.	*the Thirteenth.*	13th.
le Quatorzième,	14e.	*the Fourteenth.*	14th.
le Quinzième,	15e.	*the Fifteenth.*	15th.
le Seizième,	16e.	*the Sixteenth.*	16th.
le Dix-septième,	17e.	*the Seventeenth.*	17th.
le Dix-huitième,	18e.	*the Eighteenth.*	18th.
le Dix-neuvième,	19e.	*the Nineteenth.*	19th.
le Vingtième,	20e.	*the Twentieth.*	20th.
le Vingt & unième,		*the Twenty first.*	
le Vingt-deuxième, &c.		*the Twenty-second*, &c.	
le Trentième,		*the Thirtieth.*	
le Quarantième,		*the Fortieth.*	
le Cinquantième,		*the Fiftieth.*	
le Soixantième,		*the Sixtieth.*	
le Soixante & dixième,		*the Seventieth.*	
le Quatre-vingtième,		*the Eightieth.*	
le Quatre-vingt-dixième,		*the Ninetieth.*	
le Centième,		*the Hundredth.*	
le Cent-cinquantième		*the Hundred and Fiftieth.*	
le Deux-centième,		*the two Hundredth.*	
le Millième,		*ten Thousandth.*	

Collective Numbers denote a plurality of things expressed by a denomination of the singular number. Such are,

Un tercet,	*a stanza of three verses.*
une tierce,	*a tierce, a sequence of three cards.*
un tricon,	*a trial or pair-royal.*

un

un quatrain, *a quatrain, a stanza of four verses.*
une quarte, *a quart, a fourth.*
un sixain, (*pron*, sizain) *a stanza of six verses*, also *six packs of cards.*
un huitain, *a stanza of eight verses.*
une huitaine, *eight days together.*
un huitième, *the eighth part.*
une huitième, *a sequence of eight cards.*
une octave, *an octave, a stanza of eight verses*, &c.
une neuvaine, *a novena, a nine days devotion.*
un neuvième, *the ninth part.*
un dizain, *a stanza of ten verses.*
une dizaine, *ten, tithing.*
un dixième, *the tenth part.*
une douzaine, *a dozen.*
une demi-douzaine, *half a dozen.*
un quinzain, *terms of tennis court, fifteen all.*
une quinzaine, *a fortnight, fifteen things.*
une quinte, *a quint, fifth.*
une vingtaine, *a score* or *twenty.*
un vingtième, *a twentieth part.*
une trentaine, *thirty.*
un trentain, *terms of tennis court, thirty all.*
une quarantaine, *forty, quarantain.*
une cinquantaine, *fifty.*
une soixantaine, *the number of sixty.*
une centaine, *an hundred.*
un millier, *a thousand.*
un million, *a million.*
un milliant, *ten hundred thousand millions.*
une milliasse (*a term of contempt, or of familiarity*), } *thousands and thousands, a vast number,*

armée an army, *peuple* people, *&c.* are also collective nouns; but they differ from the numbers in this, that they indicate no *quantum.*

Distributive Numbers are those that express the parts of a *totum* or whole divided, as *la moitié* the half, *le tiers, le quart*, &c. the third or fourth part.

Multiplicative Numbers, also called *Proportional*, indicate an increase both of number and quantity, as *le double* double, *le triple* treble, *le centuple* an hundred fold.

CHAP. V.

Of VERBS.

THE VERB is a part of ſpeech which ſerves to expreſs that which is attributed to the ſubject in denoting the *Being* or *Condition* of the things and perſons ſpoken of, the *Actions* which they do, or the *Impreſſions* they receive.

Four ſorts of verbs may be diſtinguiſhed in French.

1*ſt*, The verb *ſubſtantive*, which declares what the ſubject is, and is always followed by an adnoun, that particulariſes what that ſubject is: as *être riche*, *ſage*, *ſavant*, &c. to be rich, wiſe, learned, *&c.*

2*dly*, The verb *active*, which denotes the action or impreſſion of the ſubject, and is attended by a noun which is the object of that action or impreſſion; as *aimer la vertu* to love virtue, *recevoir des lettres* to receive letters.

3*dly*, The verb *neuter*, which is neither ſubſtantive nor active, tho' it often has the ſame ſignification; that is, it comprehends in itſelf the term of the action, impreſſion, or condition, which it ſerves to denote, but without being followed by any noun, ſpecifying ſtill more that action: as *agir* to act, *marcher* to walk, *obéir* to obey, *languir* to languiſh: which ſignifies as much as *faire quelque choſe* to do ſomething, *exercer l'obeiſſance* to practiſe obedience, *être languiſſant* to be languiſhing.

4*thly*, The verb *reflected*, whoſe ſubject and object, the principle and term of the action, have a reflected relation to each other; and which governs no other noun, but that which it is governed by: as *je m'ennuie* I am weary, from *s'ennuyer* to be weary; *vous vous plaignez* you complain, from *ſe plaindre* to complain; *il ſe bleſſe* he hurts himſelf, from *ſe bleſſer* to hurt one's ſelf. In the firſt inſtance it is *I*, who am both the principle and term of wearineſs; in the ſecond it is *you*, who are the principle and term of *complaint*; in the third it is *he*, who *hurts*, and is *hurted*.——Sometimes the prepoſition *entre* is put between the two pronouns and the verb, or the pronoun *l'un l'autre* after the verb, as this makes the relation quite reciprocal: as *ils s'entretuent*, they kill one another; *ils ſe ruinent l'un l'autre*, they ruin each other.

As to the verbs *Paſſive* and *Impersonal*, they are not particular ſorts of verbs in French.

The verbs paſſive (ſo called, becauſe they expreſs not the action produced by the ſubject,

subject, but that which it suffers from, and is occasioned by a foreign cause acting upon it) are composed of the verb substantive *to be*, and a participle.

The verbs impersonal are only verbs neuter; so called from their being conjugated with the third pers. sing. only; as *il pleut* it rains: whereas the four other sorts of verbs are also called *personal*, because they are conjugated with all the pronouns personal, both in the singular and plural number.

It is to be observed, that any verb active may become a reflected one, whenever the principle of the action acts upon itself; and therefore that many reflected verbs, as also impersonal, are so only grammatically, or arbitrarily, with respect to language, and not by their significations: as *je me plains* I complain, *il faut* one must, &c.

One must distinguish in verbs the Mood, the Tense, the Number, and the Person.

They call *Moods* the divers uses that are made of a verb, in using it either directly and positively, or indirectly and conditionally, or in an indeterminate and unspecified manner.

In each verb there are four moods: the Infinitive, the Indicative, the Subjunctive, and the Imperative.

The *Infinitive* expresses the very action of the verb, but in an indefinitive, indeterminate sense, without specifying any particular agent or time, and is the root of the verb; as *aimer* to love, *faire* to do.

The *Indicative* shews, in a direct and positive manner, the divers tenses of the verb; that is, the particular times wherein any action may happen: as *je fais* I do, *je fis* I did, *je ferai* I shall or will do.

The *Subjunctive* shews also divers tenses of the verb: but indirectly and conditionally, always supposing another verb affirming directly (or in the indicative), which it follows and belongs to; or after conjunctions (that shall be taken notice of in the Syntax), and by which it is governed: as *il faut que je fasse* I must do, *afin qu'il vienne* that he may come.

The *Imperative* commands, desires, intreats, exhorts: as *faites cela* do that, *qu'il parle* let him speak.

Tenses are the periods of time, denoting when such actions of verbs were, are, or shall be done; or impressions made, or conditions any one was, is, or shall be under; and properly are only three, Present, Past, and Future: tho' these are again subdivided, for a greater distinction, as will be seen in the tenses themselves.

Each tense has two numbers, the singular and the plural; as *j'aime* I love, *nous aimons* we love: and each number three persons. The first is that who speaks, expressed by *je* I, for the sing. and *nous* we, for the plur. The second that is spoken to, expressed by *tu* thou, and *vous* you, *or* ye. The third that is *spoken of*, expressed by *il* he, for the sing. masc. *ils* they, for

the plur. *elle* she, for the sing. fem. *elles* they, for the plur. or *an*, or some noun; which noun always demands the third person, and regulates the sing. or plur. of the verb, according to its own number.

Observe that in French, as in English, the second pers. plur. *(vous)* is used in speaking to one single person: the second sing. *(tu)* being used only either with familiarity, intimacy, and tenderness, or out of scorn: in which two respects it is of great use; but the following adnoun referring to *vous*, must be of the singular: as *vous êtes sage & prudent*, or *belle & vertueuse*, you are wise and prudent, *or* beautiful and virtuous.

In the *Indicative* mood there are *ten* tenses, five of which are *simple*, and five *compound*.

The Present.	The Compound of the Present.
The Imperfect.	The Compound of the Imperfect.
The Preterite.	The Compound of the Preterite.
The Future.	The Compound of the Future.
The Conditional.	The Compound of the Conditional.

The *Subjunctive* has *four* tenses, two whereof are likewise compound of the two first.

The Present.	The Compound of the Present.
The Preterite.	The Compound of the Preterite.

As there are in French ten sorts of verbs, that have divers terminations in their infinitive, I shall divide the regular verbs into ten Conjugations: and as those verbs form their compound tenses by the help of two others, called from thence *Auxiliaries*, we shall begin with those *Auxiliary* verbs, and first with *avoir*, which serves itself to conjugate *être*.

Observe that to conjugate a verb, is to express all its natural forms, in going through all the inflections and variations, which it can admit of in Speech: that is, considering the action which it expresses, in all the different periods of time, wherein it may take place, and in the various divers subjects, to which it may be applied. And here it may not be amiss to mention the necessity of having the Auxiliary verbs fixed in the memory to the utmost exactness; since the compound tenses of all the verbs, and the expressing, what the Latins called, the *Passive* verbs, so entirely depend upon them.

AVOIR.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense —	— avoir,	*to have.*
Gerund —	— ayant,	*having.*
Participle —	— eu,	*had.*
Compound of the Present	— avoir eu,	*to have had.*
Compound of the Gerund	— ayant eu,	*having had.*

INDICATIVE.

Present.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. J'ai, *I have.*	tu as, *thou hast.*	il a, *he has.*
P. Nous avons, *we have.*	vous avez, *ye* or *you have.*	ils ont, *they have.*

Imperfect Tense.

S. J'avois, *I had.*	tu avois, *thou had'st.*	il avoit, *he had.*
P. Nous avions, *we had.*	vous aviez, *ye* or *you had.*	ils avoient, *they had.*

Preterite Tense.

S. J'eus, *I had.*	tu eus, *thou had'st.*	il eut, *he had.*
P. Nous eumes, *we had.*	vous eutes, *ye* or *you had.*	ils eurent, *they had.*

Future Tense.

S. J'aurai, *I shall* or *will have.*	tu auras, *thou shalt* or *wilt have.*	il aura, *he shall* or *will have.*
P. Nous aurons, *we shall* or *will have.*	vous aurez, *ye* or *you shall* or *will have.*	ils auront, *they shall* or *will have.*

Conditional Tense.

S. J'aurois, *I would, could, should,* or *might have.*	tu aurois, *thou would'st, could'st, should'st,* or *might'st have.*	il auroit, *he would, could, should,* or *might have.*
P. Nous aurions, *we would, could, should, or might have.*	vous auriez, *ye* or *you would, could, should,* &c.	ils auroient *they would, could, should,* or might have.

Com-

Compound of the Present Tense.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	J'ai eu, *I have had.*	tu as eu, *thou hast had.*	il a eu, *he has had.*
P.	Nous avons eu, *we have had.*	vous avez eu, *ye* or *you have had.*	ils ont eu, *they have had.*

Compound of the Imperfect Tense.

S.	J'avois eu, *I had had.*	tu avois eu, *thou had'st had.*	il avoit eu, *he had had.*
P.	Nous avions eu, *we had had.*	vous aviez eu, *ye* or *you had had.*	ils avoient eu, *they had had.*

Compound of the Preterite Tense.

S.	J'eus eu, *I had had.*	tu eus eu, *thou had'st had.*	il eut eu, *he had had.*
P.	Nous eumes eu, *we had had.*	vous eutes eu, *ye* or *you had had.*	ils eurent eu, *they had had.*

Compound of the Future Tense.

S.	Jaurai eu, *I shall have had.*	tu auras eu, *thou shalt have had.*	il aura eu, *he shall have had.*
P.	Nous aurons eu, *we shall have had.*	vous aurez eu, *ye* or *you shall have had.*	ils auront eu, *they shall have had.*

Compound of the Conditional Tense.

S.	J'aurois eu, *I would, could, should* or *might have had.*	tu aurois eu, *thou would'st, could'st, should'st,* or, &c.	il auroit eu, *he would, could, should,* or *might have had.*
P.	Nous aurions eu, *we would, could,* &c. *have had.*	vous auriez eu, *ye* or *you would,* &c. *have had.*	ils auroient eu, *they would, could,* &c. *have had.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present Tense.

S. que	J'aie, *I may have.*	tu aies, *thou may'st have.*	il ait, *he may have.*
P. que	Nous ayons, *we may have.*	vous ayez, *ye* or *you may have.*	ils aient, *they may have.*

Preterite Tense.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. que	J'eusse, *I had, or might have.*	tu eusses, *thou had'st, or might'st have.*	il eût, *he had, or might have.*
P. que	Nous eussions, *we had, or, &c.*	vous eussiez, *ye or you had, or, &c.*	ils eussent, *they had, or might have.*

Compound of the Present Tense.

S. que	J'aie eu, *I may or can have had.*	tu ais eu, *thou mayest have had.*	il ait eu, *he may have had.*
P. que	Nous ayons eu, *we may, &c.*	vous ayez eu, *ye or you may have had.*	ils aient eu, *they may have had.*

Compound of the Preterite Tense.

S. que	J'eusse eu, *I had or might have had.*	tu eusses eu, *thou had'st, had, or might'st have, &c.*	il eût eu, *he had had, or might have had.*
P. que	Nous eussions eu, *we had had, or, &c.*	vous eussiez eu, *ye or you had had, or might, &c.*	ils eussent eu, *they had had, or might have had.*

IMPERATIVE.

S.	Aie, *have, or have thou.*	qu' il ait, *let him have.*
P. Ayons, *let us have.*	ayez, *have, or have ye.*	qu' ils aient, *let them have.*

ETRE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense	être,	*to be.*
Gerund	étant,	*being.*
Participle	été,	*been.*
Compound of the Present	avoir été,	*to have been*
Compound of the Gerund	ayant été,	*having been.*

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. Je suis, *I am.*	tu es, *thou art.*	il est, *he is.*
P. Nous sommes, *we are.*	vous êtes, *ye or you are.*	ils sont, *they are.*

Imper-

Imperfect Tense.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. J'étois, *I was.*	tu étois, *thou wast.*	il étoit, *he was.*
P. Nous étions, *we were.*	vous étiez, *ye* or *you were.*	ils étoient, *they were.*

Preterite Tense.

S. Je fus, *I was,*	tu fus, *thou wast.*	il fut, *he was.*
P. Nous fumes, *we were.*	vous futes, *ye* or *you were.*	ils furent, *they were.*

Future Tense.

S. Je ferai, I *shall* or *will be.*	tu feras, *thou shalt* or *wilt be.*	il fera, *he shall* or *will be.*
P. Nous ferons, *we shall* or *will be.*	vous ferez, *ye* or *you shall* or *will be.*	ils feront, *they shall* or *will be.*

Conditional Tense.

S. Je ferois, *I would, could, should,* or *might be.*	tu ferois, *thou would'st, could'st, should'st,* &c.	il feroit, *he would, could, should,* or *might be.*
P. Nous ferions, *we would, could,* &c.	vous feriez, *ye* or *you would, could,* &c.	ils feroient, *they would, could,* &c.

Compound of the Present Tense.

S. J'ai été, *I have been.*	tu as été, *thou hast been.*	il a été, *he has been.*
P. Nous avons été, *we have been.*	vous avez été, *ye* or *you have been.*	ils ont été, *they have been.*

Compound of the Imperfect Tense.

S. J'avois été, *I had been.*	tu avois été, *thou had'st been.*	il avoit été, *he had been.*
P. Nous avions été, *we had been.*	vous aviez été, *ye* or *you had been.*	ils avoient été, *they had been.*

Compound of the Preterite Tense.

S. J'eus été, *I had been.*	tu eus été, *thou had'st been.*	il eut été, *he had been.*
P. Nous eumes été, *we had been.*	vous eutes été, *ye* or *you had been.*	ils eurent été, *they had been.*

Compound of the Future Tense.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	J'aurai été, *I shall have been.*	tu auras été, *thou shalt have been.*	il aura été, *he shall have been.*
P.	Nous aurons été, *we shall have been.*	vous aurez été, *ye* or *you shall have been.*	ils auront été, *they shall have been.*

Compound of the Conditional Tense.

S.	J'aurois été, *I would, could, should,* or *might have been.*	tu aurois été, *thou would'st, could'st, should'st,* or, &c.	il auroit été, *he would, could, should,* or *might have been.*
P.	Nous aurions été, *we would, could,* &c.	vous auriez été, *ye would, could,* &c.	ils auroient été, *they would, could,* &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

S. que	Je sois, *I may be, I be.*	tu sois, *thou may'st be.*	il soit, *he may be.*
P. que	Nous soyons, *we may be.*	vous soyez, *ye* or *you may be.*	ils soient, *they may be.*

Preterite Tense.

S. que	Je fusse, *I was* or *were,* or *might be.*	tu fusses, *thou wast,* or *wert,* or *mightest be.*	il fût, *he was, were,* or *might be.*
P. que	Nous fussions, *we were,* &c.	vous fussiez, *ye* or *you were,* or, &c.	ils fussent, *they were,* or *might be.*

Compound of the Present Tense.

S. que	J'aie été, *I may have been.*	tu aies été, *thou mayest have been.*	il ait été, *he may have been.*
P. que	Nous ayons été, *we may have been.*	vous ayez été, *ye* or *you may have been.*	ils aient été, *they may have been.*

Compound of the Preterite Tense.

S. que	J'eusse été, *I had been,* or *might,* &c.	tu eusses été, *thou had'st been,* or *might'st,* &c.	il eût été, *he had been,* or *might have been.*
P. que	Nous eussions été, *we had been,* or, &c.	vous eussiez été, *ye* or *you had been,* &c.	ils eussent été, *they had been,* &c.

IMPERATIVE.

	First Person.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.		Sois, *be*, or *be thou.*	qu'il soit, *let him be.*
P.	Soyons, *let us be.*	soyez, *be*, or *be ye.*	qu'ils soient, *let them be.*

It is not with the French Verbs as with the English ones. The English distinguish the moods and tenses of their verbs by these particles, *do, did, shall, will, can, may, should, could, would, might*, and *let*, prefixed to the word of the verb, which is the same throughout, except in the participles and preterites: whereas French verbs change their inflexions and terminations, not only in every mood and tense, but even in every person; the different ways of expressing the action of the verb amounting to no less than ninety-four; which makes the conjugation of them pretty hard, tho' it is at the same time so important, that Foreigners cannot too much apply themselves to it. In order therefore to do it more effectually, I shall set down Rules, whereby the Learner may easily arrive at the exact and ready formation of the tenses of the verbs, and the persons of those tenses: which being once well considered, and learnt, the conjugating of the verbs will be freed from that difficulty, which otherwise it would be necessarily attended with.

Besides that, I have joined a Table of all the conjugations, wherein one may see at one view, how each tense simply is derived, and formed from its infinitive. I cannot too much recommend the Students to make themselves familiar with it, since tho' one could not lay down principles common to all verbs in the forming of their several tenses, those ten conjugations include an infallible way of conjugating above 3000 Regular verbs: so that after knowing in what consists the difference of those called Irregular, which shall be also set in order, one will be thoroughly acquainted with the French Verbs.

Before I lay down rules for the forming of the verbs, it is to be observed, that there will be none about the forming of the Participle, and Preterite and Present tenses: not that there can be no rules contrived for the forming of those tenses; but because the ten different conjugations would require twice ten different and particular rules; and the perusing of the following table with ever so little attention, will sufficiently supply the want of such further rules. It will therefore be enough to take notice of all that is general to the regular verbs.

Rules for the Formation of the Tenses of the French Verbs.

1*st Rule.* In all verbs the Gerund ends in *ant*, the Imperfect in *ois*, the Future in *rai*, and the Conditional in *rois*.

2*d R.* The *Imperfect* is formed from the *Gerund*; by changing *ant* into *ois*: as

Ger.	Parl-ant, *speaking.*	*Im-per.*	Je parl-ois,	*I did speak.*
	Lis-ant, *reading.*		Je lis-ois,	*I did read.*

3*d R.* The *Future* is formed from the *Infinitive*, by adding *ai* to the final *r*, or if it ends in *e* mute, by changing that *e* into *ai*: as,

Infinit.	Parler, *to speak.*	*Fu-ture.*	Je parler-ai,	*I shall speak.*
	Lire, *to read.*		Je lir-ai,	*I shall read.*

4th R. The *Conditional* is likewise formed from the *Infinitive*, by adding *ois* to the final *r*, or changing the final *e* mute into *ois*: as,

Infinit.	Parler, *to speak.*	*Condition.*	Je parler-ois,	*I would speak.*
	Lire, *to read.*		Je lir-ois,	*I would read.*

Exceptions.

1st. The verb *faire* to do, changes *ai* into *e* mute in its future and conditional tenses. Thus spell and read *je ferai* I shall do, *je ferois* I would do. In its gerund, present, and imperfect tenses, though you spell *faisant* doing, *nous faisons* we do, *je faisois* I did; you pronounce all these words as if they were written with *fe* instead of *fai*.

2dly. Verbs ending in *enir*, as *tenir* to hold, change *enir* into *iendrai*, and *iendrois*, for their future and conditional; *je tiendrai* I will hold, *je tiendrois* I would hold, instead of *tenirai* and *tenirois*.

3dly. Verbs in *evoir*, as *recevoir* to receive, change *evoir* into *evrai* and *evrois*, for their future and conditional; *je recevrai* I shall receive, *je recevrois* I would receive, instead of *recevoirai* and *recevoirois*.

5th R. The *Present* of the *Subjunctive* is formed from the *Gerund*, by changing *ant* into *e* mute: as,

Ger.	Parl-ant, *speaking.*	*Pres.*	que	je parl-e,	*I may speak*
	Lis-ant, *reading.*	*Subj.*		je lis-e,	*I may read.*

Exceptions.

1st. The verb *faire* changes *aisant* of its gerund, into *asse* for its subjunctive present: as from *faisant* doing, *que je fasse* that I may do, instead of *faisse*.

2dly. Verbs in *enir* form their subjunctive, by changing *enant* into *ienne*: *tenant* holding, *qui je tienne* that I may hold, instead of *tene*.

3dly. Verbs in *evoir* change *evant* into *aive*, for the subjunctive: *recevant* receiving, *que je reçoive* I may receive, instead of *receve*.

6th R. The *Preterite* of the *Subjunctive* is formed from the *second* person of the *Preterite* of the *Indicative*, by adding *se* (mute) as,

Pret. Indic.	tu parlas,	*thou spok'st.*	*Pret. Subj.*	que	parlas-se,	*I might speak.*
	lus,	*read'st.*			lus-se,	*I might read.*

And

And tho' the final *s* of the preterite of the indicative is preceded by *n*, as in preterites of verbs in *enir*, that *s* is doubled in the subjunctive, and the third person takes *t* instead of *sse*: as *tu tins* thou heldest, *que je tinsse* that I might hold, *qu'il tint* he might hold.

Rules for forming the second *and* third *Persons of the Sing. Numb. in all Verbs.*

1*st Rule.* The first person of every tense always ends either in *e* mute, or *s* or in *x*, or in *ai*. When it ends in *e* mute, the second persons add *s* to it, and the third is like the first: as,

1*st.P.*	Je parle,	*I speak.*	que	je souffre,	*I may suffer.*
2*d.*	Tu parles,	*thou speakest.*		tu souffres,	*thou mayest suffer.*
3*d.*	Il parle,	*he speaks.*		il souffre,	*he may suffer.*

2*d R.* When the first person ends with *s* or *x*, the second is like the first, and the third takes *t* instead of the final *s* or *x*: as,

1*st.*	Je lis,	*I read.*		Je veux,	*I am willing.*
2*d.*	Tu lis,	*thou readest.*		Tu veux,	*thou art willing.*
3*d.*	Il lit,	*he reads.*		Il veut,	*he is willing.*

In verbs that have *d* or *t* immediately before the final *s* of the first person, that *s* is left out in the third person: as,

1*st.*	J'entends,	*I hear.*		Je mets,	*I put.*
2*d.*	Il entend,	*he hears.*		Il met,	*he puts.*

3*d R.* When the first person ends in *ai* (as in the Preterite and Future tenses), the second changes the final *i* into *s*, and the third leaves it out quite: as,

1*st.*	Je parlai,	*I spoke.*		Je parlerai,	*I shall speak.*
2*d.*	Tu parlas,	*thou spokest.*		Tu parleras,	*thou shalt speak.*
3*d.*	Il parla,	*he spoke.*		Il parlera,	*he shall speak.*

Except the third person of the preterite of the subjunctive, which ends with *t* in all verbs, *sse* of the first person being changed into *t* with a circumflex over the preceding vowel: as,

1*st.*	Que	je parlasse, *I might speak.*	Que	je fisse, *I might do.*
2*d.*		il parlât, *he might speak.*		il fît, *he might do.*

Rules for forming the three Persons *of the* Plural *Number of Tenses in all verbs.*

1*st Rule.* The plural number of the present tense of the indicative is formed from the gerund, by changing ant into ons for the

the *first* person, into *ez* for the second, and into *ent* (mute) for the third: as from

Ger. parl-ant, *speaking.*			lis-ant,		*reading.*
Pres. Plur.			*Pres. Plur.*		
1*st*. *P.* Nous parl-ons,	*we speak.*		Nous lis-ons,		*we read.*
2*d.* Vous parl-ez,	*ye speak.*		Vous lis-ez,		*ye read.*
3*d.* Ils parl-ent,	*they speak.*		Ils lis-ent,		*they read.*

Except, 1*st*, The two last persons of the present of *faire*, which, though it forms its first person plural *faisons* from its gerund *faisant*, yet makes *faites* in the second, instead of *faisez*, and in the third *font*, instead of *faisent*.

The same exception takes place for the second person plural of the same tense in the verb *dire*, *disant*, which makes *dites* instead of *disez*.

2*dly*. The last person of verbs in *enir*, which ends in *iennent*, as from *tenant* holding, *nous tenons* we hold, *vous tenez* you hold, *ils tiennent* they hold, instead of *tennent*.

3*dly*. The last person of verbs in *avoir*, which ends in *oivent*, as from *recevant* receiving, *nous recevons* we receive, *vous recevez* you receive, *ils reçoivent* they receive, instead of *recevent*.

2*d R*. The plural of the imperfect is formed from the first person singular, by changing *ois* into *ions* for the first person, into *iez* for the second, and into *oient* (pronounced like the first person) for the third: as from

Sing. Je parl-ois,	*I*	*did speak.*	Je lis-ois,	*I did*	*read.*
Plur. Nous parl-ions,	*we*		Nous lis-ions,	*we did*	
2*d P.* Vous parl-iez,	*ye*		Vous lis-iez,	*ye did*	
3*d.* Ils parl-oient,	*they*		Ils lis-oient,	*they did*	

3*d R*. The plural of the preterite is formed from the first person singular (always ending in *ai* or *s*), by changing *ai* into *ames* for the first person, into *ates* for the second, and *èrent* (sounded only as the letter *r*) for the third: or by changing *s* into *mes* (mute) for the first person, into *tes* (mute) for the second, and *rent* (*ent* also mute) for the third: as from

Sing. Je parl-ai,	*I spoke.*	Je lu-s,	*I read.*
Plur. Nous parl-ames,	*we spoke.*	Nous lu-mes,	*we read.*
2*d.* Vous parl-ates,	*ye spoke.*	Vous lu-tes,	*ye or you read.*
3*d.* Ils parl èrent,	*they spoke.*	Ils lu-rent,	*they read.*

4*th*

4th R. The plural of the future is formed from the first person singular, by changing *rai* into *rons* for the first person, into *rez* for the second, and into *ront* for the third: as from

Sing.	Je	parle-rai,	*I*	*will speak.*	Je	li-rai,	*I will read.*
Plur.	Nous	parle-rons,	*we*		Nous	li-rons,	*we will read.*
2d.	Vous	parle-rez,	*ye*		Vous	li-rez,	*ye will read.*
3d.	Ils	parle-ront,	*they*		Ils	li-ront,	*they will read.*

5th R. The plural of the conditional is formed from the first person singular, by changing *rois* into *rions* for the first person, into *riez* for the second, and into *roient* (pronounced like the first person) for the third: as from

Sing.	Je	parle-rois,	*I would*	*speak.*	Je	li-rois,	*I*	*would read.*
Plur.	Nous	parle-rions,	*we would*		Nous	li-rions,	*we*	
2d.	Vous	parle-riez,	*you would*		Vous	li-riez,	*ye*	
3d.	Ils	parle-roient,	*they would*		Ils	li-roient,	*they*	

6th R. The plural of the present and preterite of the subjunctive is formed from the first person singular, by changing *e* mute into *ions* for the first person, into *iez* for the second, and into *ent* (mute) for the third: as from

Sing.	Que je	parl-e,	*that I*	*may speak.*	Que je	parlass-e,	*that I might*	*speak.*
Plur.	Nous	parl-ions,	*we*		Nous	parlass-ions,	*we might*	
2d.	Vous	parl-iez,	*ye*		Vous	parlass-iez,	*ye might*	
3d.	Ils	parl-ent,	*they*		Ils	parlass-ent,	*they might*	

Except again, *1st*, In verbs in *enir*, the plural number of the present, which is not formed from the first pers. sing. ending in *ienne*, but makes *enions*, *eniez*, *iennent*; *que je tienne* I may hold, *nous tenions* we may hold, *vous teniez* you may hold, *ils tiennent* they may hold.

2dly. In verbs in *evoir*, the plural of the present, which is not formed from the first person ending in *oive*, but makes *evions*, *eviez*, *oivent*; *que je reçoive* I may receive, *nous recevions* we may receive, *vous receviez* you may receive, *ils reçoivent* they may receive.

Observe moreover, *1st*, that the verbs of the first conjugation, ending in *er*, have the three persons singular, and the third plu-

ral

ral of the subjunctive, like to the same persons of the indicative: a

1*st Sing.*	Je parle,	*I speak.*	Que	je parle,	*I may spea*
2*d.*	tu parles,	*thou speak'st.*		tu parles,	*thou mayest spea*
3*d.*	il parle,	*he speaks.*	Que	il parle,	*he may spea*
3*d Pl.*	ils parlent,	*they speak.*		ils parlent,	*they may spea*

Verbs of the other conjugations have only the third plur alike.

2*dly.* The first and second persons plural of the subjunctiv are in all verbs alike to the same persons plural of the imperfe of the indicative: as,

	Ind. Imperfect.			*Sub. Present.*	
1*st.*	Nous parlions,	*we did speak.*	Que	nous parlions,	*we may spea*
2*d.*	Vous parliez,	*ye did speak.*		vous parliez,	*ye may spea*

Except again in *faire*, which, as it does not form regularl its subjunctive from its gerund *faisant*, but makes *fasse* in the fir person sing. so consequently makes in the plural *fassions*, an *fassiez*. *See the 6th Conjugation.*

As for the Imperative mood, the second person sing. (for has no first person) and the first and second plur. are the same : those of the present of the indicative; leaving out the pronouns *tu fais* thou dost, *nous faisons* we do, *vous faites* ye do. and th third persons of both numbers the same as those of the subjunctive *qu'il fasse* let him do, *qu'ils fassent* let them do.

But take notice, 1*st*, that the verbs of the first conjugation, and others too endi the first person of the indicative in *e* not sounded, leave out in the second person of t imperative the final *s* of the same of the indicative, unless that second person be im mediately followed by the relative pronouns *en* and *y*, in which only case it keeps *s* as *cherches-en*, seek for some : *vas-y*, go thither; but say without *s*, *cherche un mei leur ami*, seek for a better friend; *va en France*, go to France, *en* being here a pr position.

2*dly.* Verbs of the other conjugations keep in the second person of the imperati the final *s* of the indicative.

Tenses compound are always formed from the participle the verb in question, joined to the tenses simple of the auxilia *avoir*; as in *parler* to speak.

The compound of the present tense is formed from the prese of *avoir*, and the participle *parlé*, spoken: as,

Sing.	J'	ai	parlé,	*I*	*have*
	tu	as		*thou*	*hast*
	il	a		*he*	*has*
Plur.	nous	avons		*we*	*have*
	vous	avez		*ye*	*have*
	ils	ont		*they*	have

spoken.

T

The Compound of the Imperfect is formed from the imperfect of the auxiliary, and the participle: as,

Sing.	J' avois	parlé,	*I had*	*spoken.*
	tu avois		*thou had'st*	
	il avoit		*he had*	
Plur.	nous avions		*we had*	
	vous aviez		*ye had*	
	ils avoient		*they had*	

The Compound of the Preterite is formed from the preterite of the auxiliary and the participle: as,

Sing.	J' eus	parlé,	*I had*	*spoken.*
	tu eus		*thou had'st*	
	il eut		*he had*	
Plur.	nous eumes		*we had*	
	vous eûtes		*ye had*	
	ils eurent		*they had*	

The Compound of the Future is formed from the future of the auxiliary and the participle: as,

Sing.	J' aurai	parlé,	*I shall have*	*spoken.*
	tu auras		*thou shalt have*	
	il aura		*he shall have*	
Plur.	nous aurons		*we shall have*	
	vous aurez		*ye shall have*	
	ils auront		*they shall have*	

The Compound of the Conditional is formed from the conditional of the auxiliary and the participle: as,

Sing.	J' aurois	parlé,	*I would have*	*spoken.*
	tu aurois		*thou would'st have*	
	il auroit		*he would have*	
Plur.	nous aurions		*we would have*	
	vous auriez		*ye would have*	
	ils auroient		*they would have*	

Likewise in the Subjunctive, the Compound of the Present is formed from the present of the subjunctive of the auxiliary, and the participle: as,

Sing.	J' aie	parlé,	*I may have*	*spoken.*
	tu aies		*thou may'st have*	
Que	il ait		*he may have*	
Plur.	nous ayons		*we may have*	
	vous ayez		*ye may have*	
	ils aient		*they may have*	

The

The Compound of the Preterite is formed from the preterite of the subjunctive of the auxiliary, and the participle: as,

Sing.	J' eusse	parlé,	*I had*	or *might have*
	tu eusses		*thou had'st*	*spoken.*
Que	il eût		*he had*	
Plur.	nous eussions		*we had*	
	vous eussiez		*ye had*	
	ils eussent		*they had*	

In the infinitive mood the Present and Gerund have also each its compound: *to wit*, from the present of the infinitive, and the Gerund of the auxiliary, and the participle: as,

Pres.	avoir	parlé,	*to have*	*spoken.*
Part.	ayant		*having*	

First CONJUGATON.

Of Verbs in er.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense	——	Parler	*to speak.*
Gerund	——	Parlant	*speaking.*
Participle	——	Parlé	*spoken.*
Compound of the Present	——	Avoir parlé	*to have spoken.*
Compound of the Gerund	——	Ayant parlé	*having spoken.*

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. Je parle *, *I speak.*	tu parles, *thou speak'st.*	il parle, *he speaks.*
P. Nous parlons, *we speak.*	vous parlez, *ye* or *you speak.*	ils parlent, *they speak.*

Imperfect.

S. Je parlois †, *I did speak.*	tu parlois, *thou did'st speak.*	il parloit, *he did speak.*
P. Nous parlions, *we did speak.*	vous parliez, *ye* or *you did speak.*	ils parloient, *they did speak.*

* *or* I do speak, *or* am speaking; thou dost speak, *or* thou art speaking, *&c.*
† *or I spoke; or* I was speaking; thou wast speaking, *&c.*

Preterite

-i-rai,
-i-rons,

-i-rai,
-i-rons,

-iend-r
-iend- ror

-ev-rai,
-ev-rons,

fe-rai,
-rons,

-ind-ra
-ind- ron

-oît-ra
-oit- ron

-ui-rai
-ul- rons

-d-rai,
-d- rons

Preterite.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
Je parlai, *I spoke.*	tu parlas, *thou spokest.*	il parla, *he spoke.*
Nous parlames, *we spoke.*	vous parlates, *ye* or *you spoke.*	ils parlèrent, *they spoke.*

Future.

Je parlerai, *I shall* or *will speak.*	tu parleras, *thou shalt* or *wilt speak.*	il parlera, *he shall* or *will speak.*
Nous parlerons, *we shall* or *will*, &c.	vous parlerez, *ye* or *you shall* or *will*, &c.	ils parleront, *they shall* or *will speak.*

Conditional.

S. Je parlerois, *I should, would, could,* or *might speak*	tu parlerois, *thou would'st, could'st, should'st,* or, &c.	il parleroit, *he would, could, should,* or, &c.
P. Nous parlerions, *we would, could,* &c.	vous parleriez, *ye* or *you would,* &c.	ils parleroient, *they would, could,* &c.

Comp. of Pref.	J'ai	parlé, &c.	*I have**	*spoken,* &c.
Comp. of Imp.	J'avois		*I had*	
Comp. of Pret.	J'eus		*I had*	
Comp. of Fut.	J'aurai		*I shall have*	
Comp. of Cond.	J'aurois		*I would,* &c. *have*	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. que	Je parle, *I may speak.*	tu parles, *thou may'st speak,* &c.	il parle, *he may speak.*
P. que	Nous parlions, *we may,* &c.	vous parliez, *ye* or *you may speak.*	ils parlent, *they may speak.*

Preterite.

S. que	Je parlasse, *I spoke,* or *might speak.*	tu parlasses, *thou spokest,* &c.	il parlât, *he spoke.*
P. que	Nous parlassions, *we,* &c.	vous parlassiez, *ye* or *you spoke.*	ils parlassent, *they spoke.*

Comp. of Pref. que	J'aie	parlé, &c.	*I have* or *may have*	*spoken,* &c.
Comp. of Pret. que	J'eusse		*I had* or *might have*	

* *or* I spoke, *or* I did speak; *or* I have been speaking.

IMPERATIVE.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.		Parle, *speak thou* *.	qu'il parle, *let him speak.*
P.	Parlons, *let us speak.*	Parlez, *speak,* or *speak ye.*	ils parlent, *let them speak.*

After the same manner are conjugated about 2700 verbs ending in *er*, most of which are inserted in the Vocabularly, there being but two irregular in the language.

* *or* do thou speak, do ye speak.

Second CONJUGATION;

Of Verbs in ir *in general*; *Gerund in* issant.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Agir, *to act*, *Ger.* Agissant, *acting*. *Part.* Agi, *acted*.
C. Pres. Avoir agi, *to have acted*. *C. Ger.* Ayant agi, *having acted*.

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	J'agis, *I act.*	tu agis, *thou acteſt.*	il agit, *he acts.*
P.	Nous agissons, *we, &c.*	vous agissez, *ye*, or, *&c.*	ils agissent, *they act.*

Imperfect.

S.	J'agissois, *I did act.*	tu agissois, *thou*, &c.	il agissoit, *he did act.*
P.	Nous agissions, *we did act.*	vous agissiez, *ye* or *you did act.*	ils agissoient, *they did act.*

Preterite.

S.	J'agis, *I acted.*	tu agis, *thou acted'ſt.*	il agit, *he acted.*
P.	Nous agimes, &c.	vous agites, *ye*, or, *&c.*	ils agirent, *they*, *&c.*

Future.

S.	J'agirai, *I ſhall* or *will act.*	tu agiras, *thou ſhalt* or *wilt act.*	il agira, *he ſhall* or *will act.*
P.	Nous agirons, *we ſhall* or *will act.*	vous agirez, *ye* or *you ſhall*, or, &c.	ils agiront, *they ſhall* or *will act.*

Con-

Conditional.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	J'agirois, *I would, could, should,* &c.	tu agirois, *thou might'st act.*	il agiroit, *he would, could, should,* &c.
P.	Nous agirions, *we would, could,* &c.	vous agiriez, *ye,* or *you would,* &c.	ils agiroient, *they would, could,* &c.

Comp. of Pres.	J'ai	agi, &c.	*I have* / *I had* / *I had* / *I shall have* / *I should,* &c. *have* — *acted,* &c.
Comp. of Imp.	J'avois		
Comp. of Pret.	J'eus		
Comp. of Fut.	J'aurai		
Comp. of Cond.	J'aurois		

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S.	que J'agisse, *I may act.*	tu agisses, *thou may'st act.*	il agisse, *he may act.*
P.	que nous agissions, *we may act.*	vous agissiez, *ye* or *you may act.*	ils agissent, *they may act.*

Preterite.

S.	que J'agisse, *I acted,* or *might act.*	tu agisses, *thou acted'st.*	il agît, *he acted.*
P.	que nous agissions, *we acted.*	vous agissez, *ye* or *you acted.*	ils agissent, *they acted.*

Comp. of Pres.	que J'aie	agi, &c.	*I have* or *may have* — *acted,* &c.
Comp. of Pret.	que J'eusse		*I had* or *might have*

IMPERATIVE.

S.	Agis, *act thou.*	qu'il agisse, *let him act.*	
P.	Agissons, *let us act.*	agissez, *act* or *act ye.*	qu'ils agissent, *let them act.*

About 200 verbs in *cir, dir, mir, nir, tir,* &c. are conjugated after this verb, and are set down in the Vocabulary.

Third CONJUGATION;

Of more particular Verbs in ir; *Gerund in* ant.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Sentir, *to smell. Ger.* Sentant, *smelling. Part.* Senti, *smelt.* *C. Pres.* Avoir senti, *to have smelt. C. Ger.* Ayant senti, *having smelt.*

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Je sens, *I smell.*	tu sens, *thou smellest.*	il sent, *he smells.*
P.	Nous sentons, *we smell.*	vous sentez, *ye* or *you smell.*	ils sentent, *they smell.*

Imperfect.

S.	Je sentois, *I did smell.*	tu sentois, *thou didst smell.*	il sentoit, *he did smell.*
P.	Nous sentions, *we did smell.*	vous sentiez, *ye* or *you did smell.*	ils sentoient, *they did smell.*

Preterite.

S.	Je sentis, *I smelt.*	tu sentis, *thou smelt'st.*	il sentit, *he smelt.*
P.	Nous sentimes, *we smelt.*	vous sentites, *ye* or *you smelt.*	ils sentirent, *they smelt.*

Future.

S.	Je sentirai, *I shall* or *will smell.*	tu sentiras, *thou shalt* or *wilt smell.*	il sentira, *he shall* or *will smell.*
P.	Nous sentirons, *we shall* or *will*, &c.	vous sentirez, *ye* or *you shall*, or, &c.	ils sentiront, *they shall* or *will smell.*

Conditional.

S.	Je sentirois, *I would, could, should,* or *might smell.*	tu sentirois, *thou would'st, could'st, should'st*, or, &c.	il sentiroit, *he would, could, should,* or *might smell.*
P.	Nous sentirions, *we would, could*, &c.	vous sentiriez, *ye* or *you would*, &c.	ils sentiroient, *they would, could*, &c.

Comp. of Pres. J'ai *Comp. of Imp.* J'avois *Comp. of Pret.* J'eus *Comp. of Fut.* J'aurai *Comp. of Cond.* J'aurois	senti, &c.	*I have* *I had* *I had* *I shall have* *I should*, &c. *have*	*smelt*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S.	Je sente, *I may smell.*	tu sentes, *thou may'st smell.*	il sente, *he may smell.*
que P.	nous sentions, *we may smell.*	vous sentiez, *ye* or *you may smell.*	ils sentent, *they may smell.*

Preterite.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	que Je sentisse, *I smelt, or might smell.*	tu sentisses, *thou smelt'st.*	il sentît, *he smelt.*
P.	que Nous sentissions, *we smelt.*	vous sentissiez, *ye or you smelt.*	ils sentissent, *they smelt.*

Comp. of Pres. que { J'aie } sentis, { *I have* or *may have* } *smelt,*
Comp. of Pret. que { J'eusse } &c. { *I had* or *might have* } &c.

IMPERATIVE.

S. Sens, *smell thou,* qu'il sente, *let him,* &c.
P. Sentons, *let us smell.* sentez, *smell,* &c. qu'ils sentent, *let them smell.*

Of this conjugation there are eighteen verbs both Primitive and Derivative, *to wit:*

mentir, *to lie.*
démentir, *to give a lie.*
partir, *to set out.*
repartir, *to set out again,* or *to reply.*
sortir, *to go,* or *get out.*
ressortir, *to get out again.*
se repentir, *to repent.*
servir, *to serve.*
se servir, *to make use.*
desservir, *to clear a table,* or *do an ill office.*
sentir, *to smell* or *feel.*
consentir, *to consent.*
pressentir, *to have a foresight.*
ressentir, *to resent,* or *feel again.*
dormir, *to sleep.*
redormir, *to sleep again.*
endormir, *to lull asleep.*
s'endormir, *to fall asleep.*
se rendormir, *to fall asleep again.*

partir and *repartir, sortir* and *ressortir,* are conjugated with *être.*

Fourth CONJUGATION;

Of Verbs in enir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Tenir, *to hold.* *Ger.* Tenant, *holding.* *Part.* Tenu, *held.*
C. Pres. Avoir tenu, *to have held.* *C. Ger.* Ayant tenu, *having held.*

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

S. Je tiens, *I hold.* tu tiens, *thou holdest.* il tient, *he holds.*
P. Nous tenons, &c. vous tenez, *ye,* or, &c. ils tiennent, *they hold.*

Imperfect.

S. Je tenois, *I did hold.* tu tenois, *thou didst hold.* il tenoit, *he did hold.*
P. Nous tenions, *we did hold.* vous teniez, *ye* or *you did hold.* ils tenoient, *they did hold.*

Preterite.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. Je tins, *I held.*	tu tins, *thou held'st.*	il tint, *he held.*
P. Nous tinmes, *we held.*	vous tintes, *ye* or *you held.*	ils tinrent, *they held.*

Future.

S. Je tiendrai, *I shall* or *will hold.*	tu tiendras, *thou shalt* or *wilt hold.*	il tiendra, *he shall* or *will hold.*
P. Nous tiendrons, *we shall* or *will hold.*	vous tiendrez, *ye* or *you shall*, or, *&c.*	ils tiendront, *they shall* or *will hold.*

Conditional.

S. Je tiendrois, *I should, would, could,* or *might hold.*	tu tiendrois, *thou would'st, could'st, should'st,* &c.	il tiendroit, *he would, could, should,* or *might hold.*
P. Nous tiendrions, *we would,* &c.	vous tiendriez, *ye* or *you would,* &c.	ils tiendroient, *they would, could,* &c.

Comp. of Pres. J'ai	tenu, *&c.*	*I have*	*held,* &c.
Comp. of Imp. J'avois		*I had*	
Comp. of Pret. J'eus		*I had*	
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai		*I shall have*	
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois		*I should,* &c. *have*	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. que	Je tienne, *I may hold.*	tu tiennes, *thou may'st hold.*	il tienne, *he may hold.*
P. que	Nous tenions, *we may hold.*	vous teniez, *ye* or *you may hold.*	ils tiennent, *they may hold.*

Preterite.

S. que	Je tinsse, *I held,* or *might hold.*	tu tinsses, *thou held-est.*	il tînt, *he held.*
P. que	Nous tinssions, *we held.*	vous tinssiez, *ye* or *you held.*	ils tinssent, *they held.*

Comp. of Pres. que	J'aie	tenu, *&c.*	*I have* or *may have*
Comp. of Pret. que	J'eusse		*I had* or *might have*

held, &c.

IMPE-

IMPERATIVE.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Tiens, *hold*, or, &c.	qu'il tienne, *let him*, &c.
P. Tenons, *let us hold.*	tenez, *hold*, or, *hold ye.*	ils tiennent, *let them hold.*

The verbs of this conjugation, to the number of twenty-four, are,

s'abstenir, *to abstain.*	venir, *to come.*	se souvenir, *to remember.*
appartenir, *to belong.*	intervenir, *to entervene.*	se ressouvenir, *to recollect, to call to mind.*
contenir, *to contain.*	devenir, *to become.*	† avenir, *to happen.*
détenir, *to detain.*	convenir, *to agree*, or *to become.*	parvenir, *to attain to.*
obtenir, *to obtain.*	disconvenir, *to disagree.*	prévenir, *to prevent.*
retenir, *to retain, to keep.*	provenir, *to proceed, to come from.*	revenir, *to come again.*
soutenir, *to maintain, to hold, to uphold.*	* contrevenir, *to contravene, to infringe.*	subvenir, *to relieve.*
entretenir, *to keep up.*		survenir, *to befal, to happen unexpectedly.*
maintenir, *to maintain.*		

venir, revenir, devenir, convenir, disconvenir, provenir, parvenir, and *survenir*, are conjugated with *être*.

* *contrevenir* is a law term, and used in few tenses too. Its compound tenses, when used, are formed from *avoir*, tho' its primitive *venir* has them of *être*.

† *avenir* is an obsolete verb impersonal. We now-a-days say *il arrive* it happens, *il arriva* it happened, instead of *il avient, il avint*, &c.

bénir to bless, is of the second conjugation, having the same inflections as *agir*.— The Part. of *bénir* is *béni*, and *bénie*, blessed; but we also say *bénit* and *bénite*, speaking of such church-ceremonies; as *du pain bénit* hallowed bread, *de l'eau bénite* holy water, &c.

Fifth CONJUGATION

Of Verbs in evoir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr. Recevoir, *to receive. Ger.* Recevant, *receiving. Part.* Reçu, &c.
G. Pr. Avoir reçu, *to have received. C. Ger.* Ayant reçu, *having received.*

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

S. Je reçois, *I receive.*	tu reçois, *thou receivest.*	il reçoit, *he receives.*
P. Nous recevons, *we receive.*	vous recevez, *ye* or *you receive.*	ils reçoivent, *they receive.*

Imperfect.

S. Je recevois, *I did receive.*	tu recevois, *thou didst receive.*	il recevoit, *he did receive.*
P. Nous recevions, *we did receive.*	vous receviez, *ye* or *you did*, &c.	ils recevoient, *they did receive.*

Preterite.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Je reçus, *I received.*	tu reçus, *thou received'st.*	il reçut, *he received.*
P.	Nous reçumes, *we received.*	vous reçutes, *ye* or *you received.*	ils reçurent, *they received.*

Future.

S.	Je recevrai, *I shall* or *will receive.*	tu recevras, *thou shalt* or *wilt*, &c.	il recevra, *he shall receive.*
P.	Nous recevrons, *we shall* or *will*, &c.	vous recevrez, *ye* or *you shall*, or, &c.	il recevront, *they shall receive.*

Conditional.

S.	Je recevrois, *I should, could*, &c.	tu recevrois, *thou would'st*, &c.	il recevroit, *he would, could*, &c.
P.	Nous recevrions, *we would*, &c.	vous recevriez, *ye* or *you would*, &c.	il recevroient, *they would*, &c.

Comp. of Pres. J'ai
Comp. of Imp. J'avois
Comp. of Pret. J'eus
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois
} reçu, &c. { *I have*, *I had*, *I had*, *I shall have*, *I should*, &c. *have* } *received*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. que	Je reçoive, *I may receive.*	tu reçoives, *thou mayest receive.*	il reçoive, *he may receive.*
P. que	Nous recevions, *we may receive.*	vous receviez, *ye* or *you*, &c.	ils reçoivent, *they may receive.*

Preterite.

S. que	Je reçusse, *I receive*, or *might have received.*	tu reçusses, *thou received'st.*	il reçût, *he received.*
P. que	Nous reçussions, *we receive.*	vous reçussiez, *ye received.*	ils reçussent, *they received.*

Comp. of Pres. que { J'aie } reçu, &c. { *I have*, or *might have*, } *received*, &c.
Comp. of Pret. que { J'eusse } reçu, &c. { *I had*, or *might have* } *received*, &c.

IMPE-

IMPERATIVE.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.		Reçois, *receive*, &c.	qu'il reçoive, *let him*, &c.
P.	Recevons, *let us receive.*	recevez, *receive*, or *receive ye.*	qu'ils reçoivent, *let them receive.*

The seven regular verbs of the fifth conjugation are,

appercevoir,	*to perceive.*	devoir,	*to owe.*	recevoir,	*to receive.*
s'appercevoir,	*to perceive.*	re devoir,	*to owe again.*	percevoir,	(*a law term for* recevoir.)
concevoir,	*to conceive.*	décevoir,	*to deceive.*		

decevoir is quite out of use; we now-a-days make use of *tromper.*

See in the Appendix another signification of *devoir*, as also its true use and conjugation.

Sixth CONJUGATION;

Of Verbs in aire.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pref. Faire, *to do.* *Ger* Faisant, *doing.* *Part.* Fait, *done.*
C. Pref. Avoir fait, *to have done.* *C. Ger.* Ayant fait, *having done.*

INDICATIVE.

Present.

S.	Je fais,	*I do.*	tu fais,	*thou doest.*	il fait, *he does.*
P.	Nous faisons,	*we do.*	vous faites,	*ye* or *you do.*	ils font, *they do.*

Imperfect.

S.	Je faisois,	*I did.*	tu faisois,	*thou didst.*	il faisoit, *he did.*
P.	Nous faisions,	*we did.*	vous faisiez,	*ye* or *you did.*	ils faisoient, *they did.*

Preterite.

S.	Je fis,	*I did.*	tu fis,	*thou didst.*	il fit, *he did.*
P.	Nous fimes,	*we did.*	vous fites,	*ye*, or, &c.	ils firent, *they did.*

Future.

S.	Je ferai,	*I shall* or *will do.*	tu feras,	*thou shalt* or *wilt do.*	il fera, *he shall* or *will do.*
P.	Nous ferons,	*we shall* or *will do.*	vous ferez,	*ye* or *you shall* or *will do.*	ils feront, *they shall* or *will do.*

Con-

Conditional.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Je ferois, *I should, could, would*, &c.	tu ferois, *thou would'st*, &c.	il feroit, *he would, could, should*, &c.
P.	Nous ferions, *we would*, &c.	vous feriez, *ye* or *you would, could*, &c.	ils feroient, *they would, could*, &c.

Comp. of Pres.	J'ai	fait, &c.	*I have*	*done*, &c.
Comp. of Imp.	J'avois		*I had*	
Comp. of Pret.	J'eus		*I had*	
Comp. of Fut.	J'aurai		*I shall have*	
Comp. of Cond.	J'aurois		*I would*, &c. *have*	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. que	Je fasse, *I may do.*	tu fasses, *thou*, &c.	il fasse,	*he may do.*
P. que	Nous fassions, *we may do.*	vous fassiez, *ye* or *you may do.*	ils fassent,	*they may do.*

Preterite.

S. que	Je fisse, *I did*, or *might do.*	tu fisses, *thou didst.*	il fît,	*he did.*
P. que	Nous fissions, &c.	vous fissiez, *ye*, &c.	ils fissent,	*they did.*

Comp. of Pres.	que J'aie	fait, &c.	*I have* or *may have*	*done*, &c.
Comp. of Pret.	que J'eusse		*I had* or *might have*	

IMPERATIVE.

S.	Fais, *do*, or *do thou.*	qu'il fasse,	*let him do.*
P.	Faisons, *let us do.* faites, *do*, or *do ye.*	qu'ils fassent,	*let them do.*

The Derivatives of *faire*, which are six, and of a very extensive use, are the only regular verbs of the 6th conjugation.

contrefaire, *to counterfeit.* refaire, *to do again.* satisfaire, *to satisfy.*
défaire, *to undo.* *to make up again.* surfaire, *to exact, to ask too much.*
redéfaire, *to undo again.*

to which add *forfaire* to trespass or fail, tho' used only in the infinitive and comp. of the pres. as in this phrase, *une fille qui a forfait à son honneur*, a maid that has forfeited or lost her honour.

Seventh CONJUGATION;

Of Verbs in aindre, eindre, *and* oindre.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr. Craindre, *to fear. Ger.* Craignant, *fearing. Part.* Craint, *feared. C.P. Avoir craint, to have feared. C. Ger.* Ayant craint, *having feared.*

INDI-

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Je crains, *I fear.*	tu crains, *thou*, &c.	il craint, *he fears.*
P.	Nous craignons, *&c.*	vous craignez, *&c.*	ils craignent, *&c.*

Imperfect.

S.	Je craignois, *I, &c.*	tu craignois, *&c.*	il craignoit, *he*, &c.
P.	Nous craignions, *&c.*	vous craigniez, *&c.*	ils craignoient, *&c.*

Preterite.

S.	Je craignis, *I feared.*	tu craignis, *thou, &c.*	il craignit, *he feared.*
P.	Nous craignimes, *&c.*	vous craignites, *&c.*	ils craignirent, *&c.*

Future.

S.	Je craindrai, *I shall* or *will fear.*	tu craindras, *thou shalt* or *wilt fear.*	il craindra, *he shall* or *will fear.*
P.	Nous craindrons, *&c.*	vous craindrez, *&c.*	ils craindront, *&c.*

Conditional.

S.	Je craindrois, *I should, could*, &c.	tu craindrois, *thou should'st*, or, *&c.*	il craindroit, *he should fear.*
P.	Nous craindrions.	vous craindriez, *&c.*	ils craindroient, *&c.*

Comp. of Pres.	J'ai	craint, *&c.*	*I have*
Comp. of Imp.	J'avois		*I had*
Comp. of Pret.	J'eus		*I had*
Comp. of Fut.	J'aurai		*I shall have*
Comp. of Cond.	J'aurois		*I should*, &c. *have*

feared, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S.	Je craigne, que *I may fear.*	tu craignes, *thou may'st fear.*	il craigne, *he may fear.*
P.	Nous craignions, *we may fear.*	vous craigniez, *ye may fear.*	ils craignent, *they may fear.*

Preterite.

S.	Je craignisse, que *I feared* or *might.*	tu craignisses, *thou feared'st.*	il craignît, *he feared.*
P.	Nous craignissions, *we feared.*	vous craignissiez, *ye feared.*	ils craignissent, *they feared.*

Comp-

Comp. of Pref.	que	J'aie	craint,	*I have* or *may have*	*feared*,
Comp. of Pret.	que	J'eusse,	&c.	*I had* or *might have*	&c.

IMPERATIVE.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Crains, *fear*, or *fear thou.*	il craigne, qu' *let him fear.*
P. Craignons, *let us fear.*	craignez, *fear ye.*	ils craignent, *let*, &c.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pref. Joindre, *to join.* *Ger.* Joignant, *joining.* *Part.* Joint, *joined.*
C. Pr. Avoir joint, *to have joined.* *C. Ger.* Ayant joint, *having joined.*

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

S. Je joins, *I join.* tu joins, *thou join'st.* il joint, *he joins.*
P. Nous joignons, *&c.* vous joignez, *ye*, &c. ils joignent, *they join.*

Imperfect.

S. Je joignois, *I did*, &c. tu joignois, *thou*, &c. il joignoit, *he did join.*
P. Nous joignions, *&c.* vous joigniez, *ye*, &c. ils joignoient, *&c.*

Preterite.

S. Je joignis, *I joined.* tu joignis, *thou*, &c. il joignit, *he joined.*
P. Nous joignimes, *&c.* vous joignites, *ye*, &c. ils joignirent, *&c.*

Future.

S. Je joindrai, *I*, &c. tu joindras, *thou*, &c. il joindra, *he will*, &c.
P. Nous joindrons, *&c.* vous joindrez, *ye*, &c. ils joindront, *&c.*

Conditional.

S. Je joindrois, *I*, &c. tu joindrois, *thou*, &c. il joindroit, *he*, &c.
P. Nous joindrions, *&c.* vous joindriez, *ye*, &c. ils joindroient, *&c.*

Comp. of Pref.	J'ai	joint, *&c.*	*I have*	*joined*, &c.
Comp. of Imp.	J'avois		*I had*	
Comp. of Pret.	J'eus		*I had*	
Comp. of Fut.	J'aurai		*I shall have*	
Comp. of Cond.	J'aurois		*I should*, &c. *have*	

SUB-

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Je joigne, *I*, &c.	tu joignes, *thou*, &c.	qu'il joigne, *he*, &c.
que P.	Nous joignions, *we may join.*	vous joigniez, *ye may join.*	ils joignent, *they may join.*

Preterite.

S. que	Je joignisse, *I joined*, or *might join.*	tu joignisses, *thou joinedst.*	il joignît, *he joined.*
P.	Nous joignissions, *we joined.*	vous joignissiez, *ye joined.*	ils joignissent, *they joined.*

Comp. of Pres. que J'aie joint, &c. { *I have* or *may have* } *joined*, &c.
Comp. of Pret. que J'eusse joint, &c. { *I had* or *might have* } *joined*, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

S.	Joins, *join thou.*	qu'il joigne, *let him join.*
P.	Joignons, *let us join.*	joignez, *join*, or *join ye.*	qu'ils joignent, *let them join.*

The verbs of the 7th conjugation, to the number of nineteen, are,

astreindre, *to oblige, to tie up.*
atteindre, *to reach, hit.*
* aveindre, *to take, reach, or fetch out.*
ceindre, *to gird.*
contraindre, *to constrain, to compel.*
craindre, *to fear.*
enceindre, *to inclose, to incompass.*
† enfreindre, *to infringe.*
enjoindre, *to enjoin.*
éteindre, *to extinguish, to put out.*
feindre, *to feign, dissemble.*
joindre, *to join.*
‡ oindre, *to anoint.*
peindre, *to paint, draw.*
plaindre, *to pity.*
se plaindre, *to complain.*
§ poindre, *to peep, to dawn.*
restreindre, *to astringe, to restringe, limit.*
teindre, *to dye*, or *to colour.*

* *aveindre* is confined to some common forms of speech, but quite banished from all style. Its imperfect, two preterites, and imperative, are never used.

† *enfreindre* is seldom used in common conversation, and is only of the sublime style.

‡ *oindre* is used only in speaking of sacred ceremonies (particularly in the church of Rome) wherein oil is used: otherwise we say *frotter* to rub. The only phrase wherein *oindre* is kept, is in this Proverbial saying (which also grows obsolete), *Oignez vilain, il vous poindra*; Save a thief from hanging, and he'll cut your throat.

§ *poindre* is another obsolete word, used only in the infinitive, and that too in poetry, after the verb *commencer*: as *Le jour commençoit à poindre*, The day began to peep: in which case it is neuter, and of quite another signification than in the just mentioned proverb, wherein it signifies *to hurt.*

Eighth CONJUGATION;

Of Verbs in oître.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

P. Connoître, *to know.* Ger. Connoissant, *knowing.* Part. Connu, &c.
C. Pres. Avoir connu, *to have known.* C. Ger. Ayant connu, having, &c.

INDI-

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Je connois, *I know.*	tu connois, *thou*, &c.	il connoit, *he knows.*
P.	Nous connoissons, *we know.*	vous connoissez, *ye know.*	ils connoissent, *they know.*

Imperfect.

S.	Je connoissois, *I did know.*	tu connoissois, *thou did'st know.*	il connoissoit, *he did know.*
P.	Nous connoissions, *we did know.*	vous connoissiez, *ye* or *you did know.*	ils connoissoient, *they did know.*

Preterite.

S.	Je connus, *I knew.*	tu connus, *thou*, &c.	il connut, *he knew.*
P.	Nous connumes, *we knew.*	vous connutes, *ye* or *you knew.*	ils connurent, *they knew.*

Future.

S.	Je connoîtrai, *I shall* or *will know.*	tu connoîtras, *thou shalt* or *wilt*, &c.	il connoîtra, *he shall* or *will know.*
P.	Nous connoîtrons, *we*, &c.	vous connoîtrez, *ye shall* or *will know.*	ils connoîtront, *they shall* or *will know.*

Conditional.

S.	Je connoîtrois, *I should*, &c.	tu connoîtrois, *thou would'st*, &c.	il connoîtroit, *he would*, &c.
P.	Nous connoîtrions, *we*, &c.	vous connoîtriez, *ye would*, &c.	ils connoîtroient, *they would*, &c.

Comp. of Pres. J'ai	connu, &c.	*I have*	*known*, &c.
Comp. of Imp. J'avois		*I had*	
Comp. of Pret. J'eus		*I had*	
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai		*I shall have*	
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois		*I should*, &c. *have*	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S.	Je connoisse, *I* que *may know.*	tu connoisses, *thou may'st*, &c.	il connoisse, *he may know.*
P.	Nous connoissions, *we*, &c.	vous connoissiez, *ye* or *you*, &c.	ils connoissent, *they may know.*

Pre-

Preterite.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Je connusse, *I knew* or *might know.*	tu connusses, *thou knew st.*	il connût, *he knew.*
P.	Nous connussions, *we knew,*	vous connussiez, *ye knew.*	ils connussent, *they knew.*
Comp. of Pref.	que J'ai connu, &c.	*I have* or *may have* *knew*n, &c.	
Comp. of Pret.	que J'eusse connu, &c.	*I had* or *might have* *knew*n, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

S.	Connois, *knew thou.*	qu' il connoisse, *let him knew.*	
P.	Connoissons, *let us know.*	connoissez, *knew,* or *know ye.*	qu' ils connoissent, *let them knew.*

The eleven verbs of the eighth conjugation are,

connoître, *to know.*
méconnoître, *to forget, to know no more.*
reconnoître, *to know again, to acknowledge.*
paroître, *to appear.*
disparoître, *to disappear.*
* apparoître, *to appear.*
* comparoître, *to appear, make one's appearance.*
croître, *to grow.*
accroître, *to accrue.*
décroître, *to decrease, to grow less.*
recroître, *to grow again.*

* *apparoître* and *comparoître* are only used in law.

Ninth CONJUGATION;

Of Verbs in uire.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pref. Instruire, *to instruct.* *Ger.* Instruisant, *instructing.* *Part.* Instruit, *instructed.*
C. Pref. Avoir instruit, *to have instructed.* *C. Ger.* Ayant instruit, *having instructed.*

INDICATIVE.

S.	J'instruis, *I instruct.*	tu instruis, *thou instructest.*	il instruit, *he instructs.*
P.	Nous instruisons, *we instruct.*	vous instruisez, *ye instruct.*	ils instruisent, *they instruct.*

Imperfect.

S.	J'instruisois, *I did instruct.*	tu instruisois, *thou didst instruct.*	il instruisoit, *he did instruct.*
P.	Nous instruisions, *we did,* &c.	vous instruisiez, *ye did instruct.*	ils instruisoient, *they did instruct.*

Pre-

Preterite.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	J'instruisis, *I instructed.*	tu instruisis, *thou instructedst.*	il instruisit, *he instructed.*
P.	Nous instruisimes, *we instructed.*	vous instruisites, *ye instructed.*	ils instruisirent, *they instructed.*

Future.

S.	J'instruirai, *I shall or will instruct.*	tu instruiras, *thou shalt* or *wilt*, &c.	il instruira, *he shall* or *will*, &c.
P.	Nous instruirons, *we shall or will*, &c.	vous instruirez, *ye shall* or *will*, &c.	ils instruiront, *they shall* or *will*, &c.

Conditional.

S.	J'instruirois, *I should*, &c.	tu instruirois, *thou would'st*, &c.	il instruiroit, *he would*, &c.
P.	Nous instruirions, *we would*, &c.	vous instruiriez, *ye would*, &c.	ils instruiroient, *they would instruct.*

Comp. of Pres. J'ai
Comp. of Imp. J'avois
Comp. of Pret. J'eus
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois
} instruit, &c. { *I have*, *I had*, *I had*, *I shall have*, *I should*, &c. *have* } *instructed.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S.	J'instruise, *I may instruct.*	tu instruises, *thou may'st*, &c.	il instruise, *he may instruct.*
que P.	Nous instruisions, *we*, &c.	vous instruisiez, *ye may*, &c.	ils instruisent, *they may instruct.*

Preterite.

S.	J'instruisisse, *I instructed*, or *might instruct.*	tu instruisisses, *thou*, &c.	il instruisît, *he instructed.*
que P.	Nous instruisissions, *we*, &c.	vous instruisissiez, *ye*, &c.	ils instruisissent, *they*, &c.

Comp. of Pres. J'aie
Comp. of Pret. J'eusse
que } instruit, &c. { *I may have*, *I might have* } *instructed*, &c.

IMPE-

IMPERATIVE.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Instruis, *instruct thou.*	il instruise, *let him* qu' *instruct.*
P. Instruisons, *let us instruct.*	instruisez, *instruct you* or *ye*, &c.	ils instruisent, *let them instruct.*

The nineteen verbs of the ninth conjugation are,

* bruire,	*to rustle.*	induire,	*to induce.*	*to build.*	
conduire,	*to conduct.*	introduire,	*to introduce.*	instruire,	*to instruct.*
reconduire,	*to reconduct.*	produire,	*to produce.*	détruire,	*to destroy.*
† cuire,	*to boil, to bake.*	réduire,	*to reduce, to bring to.*	‡ luire,	*to shine.*
recuire,	*to boil again.*	séduire,	*to seduce.*	‡ reluire,	*to shine.*
enduire,	*to plaster,* or *to do over.*	traduire,	*to translate.*	‡ nuire,	*to hurt.*
		construire,	*to construct,* or	déduire,	*to deduct, to abate.*

* *bruire* is said of thunder, wind, and waves, and used only in the imperfect, and part. which is a mere adnoun. As the gerund *bruyant* is irregular, so is the imperfect *bruyoit.*

† *cuire*, besides *boiling* and *baking*, is also englished by *to do*: *Cela n'est pas assez cuit*, That is not done enough; *Faites recuire cette viande-à*, Get that meat done better. *cuire*, used in the third persons only, signifies *to smart.*

‡ *luire*, *reluire*, and *nuire*, take no c at the end of the participle as the others do, and therefore make *lui*, *relui*, and *nui*.

Tenth CONJUGATION;

Of Verbs in endre, *and* ondre.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pref. Vendre, *to sell.* *Ger.* Vendant, *selling.* *Part.* Vendu, *sold.*
C. Pref. Avoir vendu, *to have sold.* *C. Ger.* Ayant vendu, *having sold.*

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

S. Je vends, *I sell.*	tu vends, *thou*, &c.	il vend, *he sells.*
P. Nous vendons, *we sell.*	vous vendez, *ye* or *you sell.*	ils vendent, *they sell.*

Imperfect.

S. Je vendois, *I did sell.*	tu vendois, *thou did'st sell.*	il vendoit, *he did sell.*
P. Nous vendions, *we did sell.*	vous vendiez, *ye* or *you did sell.*	ils vendoient, they did sell.

Preterite.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Je vendis, *I sold.*	tu vendis, *thou*, &c.	il vendit, *he sold.*
P.	Nous vendimes, *we sold.*	vous vendites, *ye* or *you sold.*	ils vendirent, *they sold.*

Future.

S.	Je vendrai, *I shall* or *will sell.*	tu vendras, *thou shalt* or *wilt sell.*	il vendra, *he shall* or *will sell.*
P.	Nous vendrons, *we shall* or *will sell.*	vous vendrez, *ye shall* or *will sell.*	ils vendront, *they shall* or *will sell.*

Conditional.

S.	Je vendrois, *I would, could*, &c.	tu vendrois, *thou would'st*, &c.	il vendroit, *he would, could*, &c.
P.	Nous vendrions, *we would*, &c.	vous vendriez, *ye would*, &c.	ils vendroient, *they would*, &c. *sell.*

Comp. of Pref.	J'ai	vendu, &c.	*I have*
Comp. of Imp.	J'avois		*I had*
Comp. of Pret.	J'eus		*I had*
Comp. of Fut.	J'aurai		*I shall have*
Comp. of Cond.	J'aurois		*I should*, &c. *have*

sold, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S.	Je vende, *I may* que *sell.*	tu vendez, *thou may'st sell.*	il vende, *he may sell.*
P.	Nous vendions, *we may sell.*	vous vendiez, *ye may sell.*	ils vendent, *they may sell.*

Preterite.

S.	Je vendisse, *I sold* or *might* que *sell.*	tu vendisses, *thou*, &c.	il vendît, *he sold.*
P.	Nous vendissions, *we*, &c.	vous vendissiez, *ye sold.*	ils vendissent, *they sold.*

Comp. of Pref. que	J'aie	vendu, &c.	*I may have*
Comp. of Pret. que	J'eusse		*I might have*

sold.

IMPERATIVE.

S.	Vends, *thou.*	*sell* or *sell* qu'	il vende, *let him sell.*
P.	*Vendons, let us sell.*	vendez, *sell* or *sell ye.*	ils vendent, *let them sell.*

The

The regular verbs of this termination are,

attendre, *to expect* or *to wait for.*	entendre, *to hear, to understand.*	tendre, *to tend, to bend.*
condescendre, *to condescend, to comply.*	étendre, *to stretch out.*	prétendre, *to pretend, to claim.*
descendre, *to go, come,* or *get down.*	fendre, *to cleave, split.*	rendre, *to give away, return, render.*
	pendre, *to hang.*	répandre, *to spill, to pour down.*
	vendre, *to sell.*	

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Répondre, *to answer.* *Ger.* Répondant, *answering.* *Part.* Répondu, *answered.*

C. Pres. Avoir répondu, *to have answered.* *C. Ger.* Ayant répondu, *having answered.*

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Je réponds, *I answer.*	tu réponds, *thou answer'st.*	il répond, *he answers.*
P.	Nous répondons, *we answer.*	vous répondez, *ye answer.*	ils répondent, *they answer.*

Imperfect.

S.	Je répondois, *I did answer.*	tu répondois, *thou didst answer.*	il répondoit, *he did answer.*
P.	Nous répondions, *we did answer.*	vous répondiez, *ye did answer.*	ils répondoient, *they did answer.*

Preterite.

S.	Je répondis, *I answered.*	tu répondis, *thou answered'st.*	il répondit, *he answered.*
P.	Nous répondimes, *we answered.*	vous répondites, *ye answered.*	ils répondirent, *they answered.*

Future.

S.	Je répondrai, *I shall* or *will,* &c.	tu répondras, *thou shalt* or *wilt,* &c.	il répondra, *he shall* or *will answer.*
P.	Nous répondrons, *we shall* or *will,* &c.	vous répondrez, *ye shall* or *will,* &c.	ils répondront, *they shall* or *will,* &c.

Conditional.

S.	Je répondrois, *I would, could,* &c.	tu répondrois, *thou would'st,* &c.	il répondroit, *he would,* &c.
P.	Nous répondrions, *we would,* &c.	vous répondriez, *ye would,* &c.	ils répondroient, *they would,* &c.

Comp. of Pref. J'ai	répondu, *&c.*	*I have*	*answered, &c.*
Comp. of Imp. J'avois		*I had*	
Comp. of Pret. J'eus		*I had*	
Comp. of Fut. J'aurai		*I shall have*	
Comp. of Cond. J'aurois		*I would, &c. have*	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Je réponde, *I may answer.*	tu répondes, *thou may'st, &c.*	il réponde, *he may answer.*
P.	Nous répondions, *we, &c.*	vous répondiez, *ye may, &c.*	ils répondent, *they may answer.*

Preterite.

S.	Je répondisse, *I answered,* or *might answer.*	tu répondisses, *thou, &c.*	il répondît, *he answered.*
P.	Nous répondissions, *we, &c.*	vous répondissiez, *ye, &c.*	ils répondissent, *they answered.*

Comp. of Pref.	que J'aie	répondu, *&c.*	*I may have*
Comp. of Pret.	que J'eusse		*I might have*

answered, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

S.		Réponds, *answer,* or *answer thou.*	il réponde, *let him* qu' *answer.*
P.	Répondons, *let us answer.*	répondez, *answer,* or *answer ye.*	ils répondent, *let them answer.*

The regular verbs of this termination are,

confondre,	*to confound.*	refondre,	*to cast new mould.*	pondre,	*to lay eggs.*
correspondre,	*to correspond.*	morfondre,	*to make catch cold.*	répondre,	*to answer.*
fondre,	*to melt.*			tondre,	*to shear.*

perdre,	*to lose.*	Ger. perdant,	*losing.*	Part. perdu,	*lost.*
mordre,	*to bite.*	Ger. mordant,	*biting.*	Part. mordu,	*bit.*

follow also the tenth conjugation; to which one may add *tordre*, to twist, of which the participle is *tordu*; its old participle *tors* is now-a-days an adjective, used in these expressions, *du fil tors*, twisted thread; *une colonne torse*, a wreathed column; *bouche torte*, wry mouth.

I have said that Reflected verbs are so called, because they govern no other object but the subject they are governed by. They are therefore conjugated with a double pronoun before each *person*, one of which governs the verb as its subject, and the other

other is governed as its object; as *se blesser*, to hurt one's self; *je me blesse*, I hurt myself; in which instance the English verb answers exactly to that which the French call Reflected. But we have a great many more that are rendered into English by mere neuter; as *se lever* to rise; which shall be set down here as an example of conjugating this sort of verbs, which don't form their compound tenses from *avoir*, as in English, but from the other auxiliary *être*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. Se lever, *to rise.* *Ger.* Se levant, *rising.* *Part.* Levé, *risen.* *C. Pres.* S'être levé, *to have risen.* *C. Ger.* S'étant levé, *having risen.*

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. Je me lève, *I rise.*	tu te lèves, *thou rises.*	il se lève, *he rises.*
P. Nous nous levons, *we rise.*	vous vous levez, *ye* or *you rise.*	ils se lèvent, *they rise.*

Imperfect.

S. Je me levois, *I did rise.*	tu te levois, *thou didst rise.*	il se levoit, *he did rise.*
P. Nous nous levions, *we did rise.*	vous vous leviez, *ye did rise.*	ils se levoient, *they did rise.*

Preterite.

S. Je me levai, *I rose.*	tu te levas, *thou*, &c.	il se leva, *he rose.*
P. Nous nous levames, *we rose.*	vous vous levates, *ye rose.*	ils se levèrent, *they rose.*

Future.

S. Je me leverai, *I shall* or *will rise.*	tu te leveras, *thou shalt* or *wilt rise.*	il se levera, *he shall* or *will rise.*
P. Nous nous leverons, *we shall*, &c.	vous vous leverez, *ye shall* or *will*, &c.	ils se leveront, *they shall* or *will rise.*

Conditional.

S. Je me leverois, *I would* or *should*, &c.	tu te leverois, *thou would'st*, or, &c.	il se leveroit, *he would* or *should*, &c.
P. Nous nous leverions, *we should*, or, &c.	vous vous leveriez, *ye would*, or, &c.	ils se leveroient, *they would* or *should*, &c.

Compound of Present.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Je me suis levé, *I have risen.*	tu t'es levé, *thou hast risen.*	il s'est levé, *he has risen.*
P.	Nous nous sommes levés, *we*, &c.	vous vous êtes levés, *ye have risen.*	ils se sont levés, *they have risen.*

Compound of Imperfect.

S.	Je m'étois levé, *I had risen.*	tu t'étois levé, *thou had'st risen.*	il s'étoit levé, *he had risen.*
P.	Nous nous étions levés, *we had risen.*	vous vous étiez levés, *ye had risen.*	ils s'étoient levés, *they had risen.*

Compound of Preterite.

S.	Je me fus levé, *I had risen.*	tu te fus levé, *thou had'st risen.*	il se fut levé, *he had risen.*
P.	Nous nous fumes levés, *we had*, &c.	vous vous futes levés, *ye*, &c.	ils se furent levés, *they had risen.*

Compound of Future.

S.	Je me serai levé, *I shall have risen.*	tu te seras levé, *thou shalt have risen.*	il se sera levé, *he shall have risen.*
P.	Nous nous serons levés, *we shall*, &c.	vous vous serez levés, *ye*, &c.	ils se seront levés, *they shall*, &c.

Compound of Conditional.

S.	Je me serois levé, *I would have risen.*	tu te serois levé, *thou would'st have risen.*	il se seroit levé, *he would have risen.*
P.	Nous nous serions levés, *we*, &c.	vous vous seriez levés, *ye*, &c.	ils se seroient levés, *they would*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present Tense.

S. que	Je me lève, *I may rise.*	tu te lèves, *thou may'st rise.*	il se lève, *he may rise.*
P. que	Nous nous levions, *we*, &c.	vous vous leviez, *ye* or *you*, &c.	ils se lèvent, *they may rise.*

Preterite.

S. que	Je me levasse, *I rose* or *might rise.*	tu te levasses, *thou*, &c.	il se levât, *he rose.*
P. que	Nous nous levassions, &c.	vous vous levassiez, *ye*, or, &c.	ils se levassent, *they rose.*

Com-

Compound of Present.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Je me sois levé, *I may have risen.*	tu se sois levé, *thou hast risen,*	il se soit levé, *he has risen.*
que P.	Nous nous soyons levés, *we, &c.*	vous vous soyez levés, *ye,* &c.	ils se soient levés, *they have,* &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

S.	Je me fusse levé, *I had or might have risen.*	tu te fusses levé, *thou hadst,* &c.	il se fût levé, *he had risen.*
que P.	Nous nous fussions levés, *&c.*	vous vous fussiez levés, *ye,* or, *&c.*	ils se fussent levés, *they had,* &c.

IMPERATIVE.

S.	Lève-toi, *rise,* or *rise thou.*	qu'	il se lève, *let him rise.*
P. Levons-nous, *let us rise.*	levez-vous, *rise,* or *rise ye* or *you.*		ils se lèvent, *let them rise.*

We shall treat elsewhere of the use of the tenses, and then observe how the English commonly use the preterite instead of the three first compound tenses of the French: but it must be sufficient now to conjugate all the tenses *Grammatically*, for the best learning of the verbs. Observe only here, that *I am risen, I was risen,* &c. that are seen in some Grammars to answer the French of the compound tenses, and signify properly in French, *je suis levé, j'étois levé,* &c. imply quite another sense than those tenses of the reflected verb *se lever.*

The following verbs neuter, form likewise their compound from *être*:

accourir,	to run to.	*entrer,*	to enter; to come, or get in.	*venir,*	to come.
aller,	to go.	*monter,*	to go up, to come, or get up.	*revenir,*	to come again.
aborder,	to land.	*mourir,*	to die.	*devenir,*	to become.
arriver,	to arrive.	*naître,*	to be born.	*convenir,*	to agree.
choir,	to fall.	*partir,*	to go, to depart, to set out.	*disconvenir,*	to disagree.
décheir,	to decay.	*sortir,*	to go out.	*provenir,*	to come from.
décéder,	to die.	*tomber,*	to fall down.	*parvenir,*	to attain.
descendre,	to go, come, or get down.			*survenir,*	to befall.
rester,	to stay.			*intervenir,*	to intervene.
retourner,	to return.				

Therefore you should say: *Je suis arrivé ce matin,* I arrived this morning; not *J'ai arrivé,* &c. *Elle est venue cette après-midi,* she came this afternoon; not *Elle a venu,* &c.

Some of these verbs are also used actively, that is, attended by a noun as their object: then they form their compounds from *avoir.* Therefore, tho' we say when the verb is neuter, *Elle est montée,* she is got up; *Elle est descendue,* she has come, or got down; yet when the verb is attended by a noun, we say, *Elle a* descendu *l'escalier plus aisément qu'elle ne l'a monté,* she went, or got down the stairs more easily than she got up.

croître to grow, *sortir* to go out, *demeurer* to live, *rester* to stay, are equally well conjugated with *être* or *avoir*; as *il est,* or *il a fort crû,* he is very much grown; *je suis sorti,* or *j'ai sorti ce matin,* I went out this morning. We say equally well *J'ai* accouru, and

and *Je suis accouru à son secours*, I ran to his assistance, But *avoir* and *être* construed with *sortir* and *demeurer*, imply two different things. *Il est sorti*, signifies that he is not at home, or within the place where one is, and is englished thus, *he is gone out* or *abroad*; and *il a sorti* signifies that he has been out on some business or other, but is come back again since: *il a sorti ce matin*, he went out this morning.

In the same manner *il a demeuré à Paris*, signifies that he has lived at *Paris* for a while, and is no more there: and *il est demeuré à Paris*, that he remained at *Paris*, to continue to live there; or at least that he is there still.

Again; *sortir* and *promener* are also used actively: as *sortez ce cheval de l'écurie, & le promenez*, get the horse out of the stable and walk him.

When the verb *passer* is attended by a noun and a preposition, it is conjugated with *avoir*, and with *être* when it is used absolutely without any retinue; as *J'ai passé par l'Allemagne*, I passed through Germany; *vous attendez le courier, il est passé*, you stay for the express, he is passed, or gone.

As to the verbs called *Irregular*, because they don't form all their tenses according to the aforesaid rules; observe that their irregularities fall only upon either of these tenses, present (of both moods), preterite, and future: and therefore I should only need to set down their irregularities, were this Grammar designed for Scholars only. But as it is calculated for learners of all sorts, and those of the meanest capacity can't have too much help in this matter, I shall take notice of those verbs in such a manner as will make the conjugation of them very easy to any learner, setting down (for abbreviation sake) the termination of each person only.

Observe further, that, in verbs irregular, the preterite is ordinarily like the participle, in adding *s* when it has none: as *Je mis* I put, from *mis* put; *Je conclus* I concluded, from *conclu* concluded.

VERBS IRREGULAR.

There are but two * verbs irregular in the first conjugation: *aller* to go, and *puer* to stink; which is irregular only in the spelling of the three persons sing. of the pres. of the indicative, *Je pus, tu pus, il put*, instead of *je pue, tu pues, il pue*, all the rest being regular. However, French politeness dislikes the very word *puer*, and instead of it, we, in conversation, make use of *sentir mauvais*.

Aller is very irregular throughout; and as it is of a very extensive use with the explicative particle *en* and a double pronoun, it shall be set down here at length; but children must first learn the plain verb *aller*, before they conjugate the reciprocal *s'en aller*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. S'en aller, *to go away.* *Ger.* S'en allant, *going away.* *Part.* allé, *gone away.*

C. Pr. S'en être allé, *to have gone away.* *C. Ger.* S'en étant allé, *having gone away.*

* *J'envoierai* and *j'envoierois*, have prevailed instead of the regular future and conditional of *envoyer* (*J'envoyerai, J'envoyerois.*)

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. Je m'en vais, *I go away.*	tu t'en vas, *thou goest away.*	il s'en va, *he goes away.*
P. Nous nous en allons, *we go away.*	vous vous en allez, *ye* or *you go away.*	ils s'en vont, *they go away.*

Imperfect.

S. Je m'en allois, *I did go away.*	tu t'en allois, *thou did'st go away.*	il s'en alloit, *he did go away.*
P. Nous nous en allions, *we did*, &c.	vous vous en alliez, *ye* or *you did*, &c.	ils s'en alloient, *they did go away.*

Preterite.

S. Je m'en allai, *I went away.*	tu t'en allas, *thou wentest away.*	il s'en alla, *he went away.*
P. Nous nous en allames, *we went*, &c.	vous vous en allates, *ye* or *you*, &c.	ils s'en allèrent, *they went away.*

Future.

S. Je m'en irai, *I shall* or *will go away.*	tu t'en iras, *thou shalt* or *wilt*, &c.	il s'en ira, *he shall* or *will go away.*
P. Nous nous en irons, *we shall*, &c.	vous vous en irez, *ye* or *you shall*, &c.	ils s'en iront, *they shall*, &c. *go away.*

Conditional.

S. Je m'en irois, *I should*, &c. *go away.*	tu t'en irois, *thou would'st*, &c.	il s'en iroit, *he would*, &c. *go away.*
P. Nous nous en irions, *we*, &c.	vous vous en iriez, *ye* or *you*, &c.	ils s'en iroient, *they would*, &c. *go away.*

Compound of Present.

S. Je m'en suis allé, † *I have gone away.*	tu t'en es allé, *thou hast gone away.*	il s'en est allé, *he has gone away.*
P. Nous nous en sommes allés, *we*, &c.	vous vous en êtes allés, *ye have*, &c.	ils s'en sont allés, *they have*, &c.

Compound of Imperfect.

S. Je m'en étois allé, ‡ *I had gone away.*	tu t'en étois allé, *thou hadst*, &c.	il s'en étoit allé, *he had gone away.*
P. Nous nous en étions allés, *we*, &c.	vous vous en étiez allés, *ye had*, &c.	ils s'en étoient allés, *they had gone*, &c.

† or *I have been gone away*, or *I am gone away.*
‡ or *I had been gone away*, or *I was gone away.*

Com-

Compound of the Preterite.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S.	Je m'en fus allé. * *I had gone away.*	tu t'en fus allé, *thou hadst gone away.*	il s'en fut allé, *he had gone away.*
P.	Nous nous en fumes allés, *we*, &c.	vous vous en futes allés, *ye*, &c.	ils s'en furent allés, *they had gone away.*

Compound of the Future.

S.	Je m'en serai allé, ‡ *I shall have*, &c.	tu t'en seras allé, *thou wilt have gone*, &c.	il s'en sera allé, *he will have gone*, &c.
P.	Nous nous en serons allés, *we*, &c.	vous vous en serez allés, *ye*, &c.	ils s'en seront allés, *they will have*, &c.

Compound of Conditional.

S.	Je m'en serois allé, *I should*, &c.	tu t'en serois allé, *thou would'st*, &c.	il s'en seroit allé, *he would have*, &c.
P.	Nous nous en serions allés, *we*, &c.	vous vous en seriez allés, *ye*, &c.	ils s'en seroient allés, *they would*, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. que	Je m'en aille, *I may go away.*	tu t'en ailles, *thou may'st go away.*	il s'en aille, *he may go away.*
P.	Nous nous en allions, *we*, &c.	vous vous en alliez, *ye* or *you*, &c.	ils s'en aillent, *they may go away.*

Preterite.

S. que	Je m'en allasse, *I went* or *might go away.*	tu t'en allasses, *thou went'st away.*	il s'en allât, *he went away.*
P.	Nous nous en allassions, *we*, &c.	vous vous en allassiez, *ye*, or, &c.	ils s'en allassent, *they went*, &c.

Compound of Present.

S. que	Je m'en sois allé, *I have gone*, &c.	tu t'en sois allé, *thou hast*, &c.	il s'en soit allé, *he has*, &c.
P.	Nous nous en soyons allés, *we*, &c.	vous vous en soyez allés, *ye*, &c.	ils s'en soient allés, *they*, &c.

* or *I had been gone away*, or *was gone away.*
‡ or *I shall have been gone away*, or *I shall be gone away.*

Com-

Compound of the Preterite.

	First Persons.	*Second Persons.*	*Third Persons.*
S. que *P.*	Je m'en fusse allé, *I had* or *might have gone.*	tu t'en fusses allé, *thou hadst*, &c.	ils s'en fût allé, *he had gone away.*
	Nous nous en fussions allés, &c.	vous vous en fussiez allés, *ye*, &c.	ils s'en fussent allés, *they*, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

S.	Va-t-en, *go thou away*†,	qu'	ils s'en aille, *let*, &c.
P.	Allons-nous-en, *let us go away*‡.	allez vous en, *go away, get away*, &c.	ils s'en aillent, *let them go away.*

Observe 1*st*, that all the compound tenses of *aller* are double, they being equally well formed with the verb substantive *être* and the participle *allé*; as *je suis allé, j'étois allé*, and with the auxiliary *avoir*, and the part. *été*; as *j' ai été, j'avois été*, &c.

2*dly*, One must very warily distinguish the proper compound tenses of *aller* (*j'ai été, j' avois été*, &c.) from the use that the participle of the same verb (*allé*) is put to with the verb *être* (*je suis allé, j'étois allé*), which imply quite another sense than that signified by the action of the verb. For *Il est allé à Paris* (for example), far from expressing the action signified by the compound of the present of *aller*, intimates that either *he is at Paris*, or at least *is still on his journey thither*, which is properly englished thus, *he is gone to Paris*. But *Il a été à Paris*, he has been at Paris (which is the proper compound of the present of *aller*), signifies that *he has travelled to Paris*, and is returned from thence. I have therefore set down the two ways in English (*I am gone away*, and *I have been gone away*, for *je m'en suis allé*), which may be both used conformably to this observation.

3*dly*, The preterite tenses of *aller* and *s'en aller* are also double, those of the verb *être* being equally well used. *J'allai* or *Je fus*; *J'allasse* or *Je fusse*, I went; *Je m'en allai*, or *Je m'en fus*, I went away. But we don't say with the double pronoun and the particle *en*, *Je m'en ai été*, as we say without them *J'ai été*, I have been, *or* have gone.

4*thly*, The difference between *aller* and *s'en aller* is this. The first is used to denote only the going from one place to another; whereas *s'en aller* denotes the very departure, the just going away directly; or at least shews the specified time of setting out from one mentioned or supposed place.

5*thly*, *s'en aller* is also said of liquors, to signify their running away from the vessels wherein they are kept: as *le vin s'en va, le tonneau ne vaut rien*, the wine runs away, the vessel is good for nothing.

6*thly*, *venir* to come, *revenir* to come back again, and *retourner* to return, are also conjugated with a double pronoun and the particle *en*; as *Je m'en reviens*, I am coming back again, *Il s'en retourne*, he is returning; and either way must be used according to the aforesaid difference between *aller* and *s'en aller*.

7*thly*, Though the Participle of *recouvrer* to recover, or to get again, is now-a-days *recouvré*, as usual to all verbs of the first conjugation, yet custom keeps still the old participle *recouvert* in law-style, as likewise in this proverb, *Pour un perdu deux recouverts*, for one lost two recovered, *or* found again.

† or Get you gone. ‡ or Let us be gone away.

VERBS IRREGULAR *of the 2d and 3d* CONJUGATION, *viz. in* ir.

Inf. ACQUERIR, *to acquire, to get, to purchase.* acquérir, *to acquire.* *Ger.* acquérant, *acquiring.* *Part.* acquis, *acquired.*

Pref. J'acqui-ers, iers, iert; Nous acqué-rons, rez, acquièrent.
Imp. J'acquér-ois, ois, oit; Nous acquér-ions, iez, oient.
Pret. J'acqu -is, is, it; Nous acqui -mes, tes, rent.
Fut. J'acquer-rai, ras, ra; Nous acquer-rons, rez, ront.
Cond. J'acquer-rois, rois, roit; Nous acquer-rions, riez, roient.
S. P. Que J'acqu-ière, ières, ière; Nous acquér-ions, iez, acquièrent.
Pr. Que J'acqu-isse, isses, ît; Nous acqui-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
Imper. Acquiers, qu'il acquière; acqué-rons, rez, qu'ils acquièrent.

The other verbs that follow the same conjugation are *conquérir* to conquer, and *requérir* to require, which last is only used in law: *conquérir* is used only in the infinitive, both preterite and compound tenses. As for *querir* to fetch, it has but the infinitive in use, and that too immediately after the verbs *aller* to go, *venir* to come, and *envoyer* to send: and *s'enquérir de* to inquire after, is become obsolete; instead of which we now-a-days say *s'informer.*

BOUILLIR.

Inf. bouillir, *to boil.* *Ger.* bouillant, *boiling.* *Part.* bouilli, *boiled.*

Pref. Je bous, bous, bout; Nous bouill -ons, ez, ent.
Imp. Je bouill-ois, ois, oit; Nous bouill -ions, iez, oient.
Pret. Je bouill-is, is, it; Nous bouilli-mes, tes, rent.
Fut. Je bouilli-rai, ras, ra; Nous bouilli-rons, res, ront.
Cond. Je bouill-rois, rois, roit; Nous bouilli-rions, riez, roient.
S.P. Je bouill-e, es, e; Nous bouill-ions, iez, ent.
Pr. Que Je bouill-isse, isses, ît; Nous bouilli-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
Imper. Bous, qu'il bouille; bouill-ons, ez, qu'ils bouillent.

Its compound is *rebouillir*, to boil again.——That verb is seldom used but in the infinitive and 3d persons of its tenses: and it is always neuter. Therefore don't say *bouillir de la viande*, as in English, *to boil meat*, but *faire bouillir de la viande.*

COURIR.

Inf. courir, *to run.* *Ger.* courant, *running.* *Part.* couru, *run.*

Pref. Je cours, cours, court; Nous cour-ons, ez, ent.
Imp. Je cour-ois, ois, oit; Nous cour-ions, iez, oient.
Pret. Je cour-us, us, ut; Nous couru-mes, tes, rent.
Fut. Je cour-rai, ras, ra; Nous cour-rons, rez, ront.
Cond. Je cour-rois, rois, roit; Nous cour-rions, riez, roient.
S. P. Je cour-e, es, e; Nous cour-ions, iez, ent.
Pr. Que Je cou-russe, russes, rût; Nous couru-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
Imper. Cours, qu'il coure; cour-ons, ez, qu'ils courent.

After

After the same manner are conjugated these seven verbs:

accourir, *to run to.*
concourir, *to concur, to conspire.*
encourir, *to incur, to fall under.*
discourir, *to discourse.*
parcourir, *to run over, to survey.*
recourir, *to have recourse to.*
secourir, *to succour, to relieve.* But the compound tenses of *accourir* are conjugated with *être.*

CUEILLIR, *to gather, to pick up.*

Inf. cueillir, *to gather.* *Ger.* cueillant, *gathering.*
Part. cueilli, *gathered.*

Pres.	Je cueill-e,	es, e;	Nous cueill-ons, ez, ent.
Imp.	Je cueill -ois,	ois, oit;	Nous cueill-ions, iez, oient.
Pret.	Je cueill -is,	is, it;	Nous cueilli-mes, tes, rent.
Fut.	Je cueille-rai,	ras, ra;	Nous cueille-rons, rez, ront.
Cond.	Je cueille-rois,	rois, roit;	Nous cueille-rions, riez, roient.
S. P.	Je cueill -e,	es, e;	Nous cueill -ions, iez, ent.
Pr.	Je cueill-isse	isses, ît;	Nous cueilli-ssions, ssiez, ssent.

Imper. Cueille, qu'il cueille; cueill-ons, ez, qu'ils cueillent.

accueillir, to make welcome, is very little used; in lieu thereof we say *faire accueil*, and *faire bon accueil*. *Recueillir*, to collect, to gather together, is conjugated after the same manner.

FUIR, *and* s'ENFUIR.

Fuir is both active and neuter: when it is neuter, 'tis *to run away*; and *to shun, to avoid*, when active.

Inf. fuir, *to shun.* *Ger.* fuyant, *shunning.* *Part.* fui, *shunned.*

Pres.	Je fuis	fuis, fuit;	Nous fuy-ons, ez, fuient.
Imp.	Je fuy-ois,	ois, oit;	Nous fuy-ions, iez, oient.
Pret.	Je fuis,	fuis, fuit;	Nous fui-mes, tes, rent.

This Preterite is seldom used; instead of je fuis, *and* je m'enfuis, *we say (when the verb is neuter)* je pris la fuite, *from* prendre la fuite, *to run away: and* j'évitai, *from* éviter *to avoid, to shun (when it is active).*

Fut.	Je fui-rai,	ras, ra;	Nous fui-rons, rez, ront.
Cond.	Je fui-rois	rois, roit;	Nous fui-rions, riez, roient.
S.P.	Je fuy-e,	es, fuie;	Nous fuy-ions iez, fuient.
Pr.	Je fui-sse,	sses, fuît;	Nous fui-ssions, ssiez, ssent.

The

The Pref. tense is very little used, and the Pret. tense still less: instead of them we say, Je prenne la fuite, je prisse la fuite; j'évite, j'évitasse.

Imper. Fuie, qu'il fuie; fuy-ons, ez, qu'ils fuient.

HAIR.

Inf. haïr, *to hate.* *Ger.* haïssant, *hating.* *Part.* haï, *hated.*
Pref. Je hais, ais, it; Nous haïss-ons, ez, ent.
Imper. Hai, qu'il haïsse; haïssons, ez, qu'ils haïssent.

The irregularity of this verb falls only upon those tenses. All the other tenses are regular. (See the 2d conjug.) *Its Pret. tenses are never used; its compounds very little.*

MOURIR, *and* se MOURIR, *to be a dying.*

Inf. mourir, *to die.* *Ger.* mourant, *dying.* *Part.* mort, *dead.*

Pref.	Je meurs, meurs, meurt;	Nous mour-ons, ez, meurent.
Imp.	Je mour-ois, ois, oit;	Nous mour-ions, iez, oient.
Pret.	Je mour-us, us, ut;	Nous mouru-mes, tes, rent.
Fut.	Je mour-rai, ras, ra;	Nous mour-rons, rez, ront.
Cond.	Je mour-rois, rois, roit;	Nous mour-rions, riez, roient.
S. P. que	Je meur-e, es, e;	Nous mour-ions, iez, meurent.
Pr.	Je mou-russe, russes, rût;	Nous mouru-ssions, ssiez, ssent.

Imper. Meurs, qu'il meure; mour-ons, ez, qu'ils meurent.

The compound tenses are formed from être.

OUVRIR.

Inf. ouvrir, *to open.* *Ger.* ouvrant, *opening.* *Part.* ouvert, *open.*

Pref.	J'ouvr-e, es, e;	Nous ouvr-ons, ez, ent.
Imp.	J'ouvr-ois, ois, oit;	Nous ouvr-ions, iez, oient.
Pret.	J'ouvr-is, is, it;	Nous ouvri-mes, tes, rent.
Fut.	J'ouvri-rai, ras, ra;	Nous ouvri-rons, rez, ront.
Cond.	J'ouvri-rois, rois, roit;	Nous ouvri-rions, riez, roient.
S. P. que	J'ouvr-e, es, e;	Nous ouvr-ions, iez, ent.
Pr.	J'ouvr-isse, isses, ît;	Nous ouvri-ssions, ssiez, ssent.

Imper. Ouvre, qu'il-ouvre; ouvr-ons, ez, qu'ils ouvrent.

Souffrir to suffer, or to bear, and *offrir* to offer, with its derivative *méfoffrir* to underbid (very little used), *couvrir* to cover, *découvrir* to discover, and *recouvrir*, to cover *again*, are conjugated after *ouvrir*.

SAILLIR,

SAILLIR, to gush out, is out of use; as also ASSAILLIR, to assault, except perhaps in the participle *assailli*, assaulted. And TRESSAILLIR, which is commonly attended by *de*, as *tressaillir de joie* to leap for joy, *tressailir de peur* to start out of fear, is more used in the infinitive, the gerund, and the pres. imp. and pret. than in the other tenses.

Inf. tressaillir, *to start.* *Ger.* tressaillant, *starting.* *Part.* tressailli, *started.*

Pres.	Je tressaill-e,	es,	e;	Nous tressaill-ons, ez, ent.
Imp.	Je tressaill-ois,	ois,	oit;	Nous tressaill-ions, iez, oient.
Pret.	Je tressailli-is,	is,	it;	Nous tressailli-mes, tes, rent.
Fut.	Je tressailli-rai,	ras,	ra;	Nous tressailli-rons, rez, ront.
Cond.	Je tressailli-rois,	rois,	roit;	Nous tressailli-rions, riez, roient.
S.P.	Que Je tressaill-e,	es,	e;	Nous tressaill-ions, iez, ent.
Pr.	Je tressaill-isse,	isses,	ît;	Nous tressailli-ssions, ssiez, ssent.

No Imperative.

Saillir may still be used in these persons, *les eaux sailissent*, the waters gush out; *le sang saillissoit*, the blood gushed out; *mon sang a saillis fort loin*, my blood has gushed out a great way.

REVETIR,

to invest with, to bestow; or *to confer a dignity upon one*; is always used in a figurative sense.

Inf. revêtir, *to invest.* *Ger.* revêtant, *investing.* *Part.* revêtu, *invested.*

Pres.	Je rev-êts,	êts,	êt;	Nous revêt-ons, ez, ent.
Imp.	Je revêt-ois,	ois,	oit;	Nous revêt-ions, iez, oient.
Pret.	Je revêt-is,	is,	it;	Nous revêti-mes, tes, rent.
Fut.	Je revêti-rai,	ras,	ra;	Nous revêti-rons, rez, ront.
Cond.	Je revêti-rois,	rois,	roit;	Nous revêti-rions, riez, roient.
S. P.	Que Je revêt-e,	es,	e;	Nous revêt-ions, iez, ent.
Pr.	Je revêt-isse,	isses,	ît;	Nous revêti-ssions, ssiez, ssent.

Imper. Revêts, qu'il revête; revêt-ons, ez, qu'ils revêtent.

Vêtir to clothe, is used only in the infinitive, and part. *vêtu* clothed: as to the other tenses, we make use of *habiller.*——*Se revêtir* to put on one's clothes, is sometimes used, though not throughout: but *travestir* to disgrise, and *investir* to invest, are regular verbs of the 2d. conj. altho' they are seldom used but in the infinite, the participle, future, conditional, and preterites.

Faillir to fail, and *défaillir* to faint away, are quite become obsolete. We have substituted to the former *manquer*, and to the latter *s'évanouir*, or *tomber en défaillance.*

Ouïr to hear, is used only in the compound tenses, and that too with the verb *dire* after it; *J'ai ouï dire* I have heard, *J'avois ouï dire* I have heard, *&c.* In all other cases we make use of *entendre* or *apprendre.*

Férir an old obsolete verb. Its infinitive is kept in this phrase only, *sans coup férir* without striking one blow.

IRREGULAR VERBS *of the 5th* CONJUGATION, *or in* oir.

s'ASSEOIR.

Inf. s'asseoir, *to sit down.* *Ger.* s'asseyant, *sitting down.* *Part.* assis, *sat down.*

Pr. Je m'ass -ieds, ieds, ied; Nous nous ass -eyons, eyez, eyent.
Im. Je m'assey-ois, ois, oit; Nous nous assey-ions, iez, oient.
Pr. Je m'ass -is, is, it; Nous nous assi -mes, tes, rent.
Fu. Je m'assierai, *or* m'assérai, *or* m'asseyerai, *&c.* *Authors are*
Co. Je m'assierois, *or* m'assérois *or* m'asseyerois, *&c.* *divided about*
the spelling and pronouncing of these two tenses, but it is better to avoid using them.
Sub. que Je m'ass-eye, eyes, eye; Nous nous assey-ions, iez, ent.
Pr. que Je m'ass-isse, isses, ît; Nous nous assi ssions, ssiez, ssent.
Imper. Assied-toi qu'il s'asseye; asseyons-nous, asseyez-vous, qu'ils s'asseyent.

Instead of using the three persons singular, and the third plural of the Pres. of both moods, is better to take another turn, and use the persons of either of these verbs se mettre sur, se reposer, se placer, prendre place, *according to the sense. But,*

The following regular way of conjugating s'asseoir *begins to prevail, which is doubtless occasioned by the difficulties attending the irregular way of conjugating it. However, I don't recommend it before it be entirely established by use.* (This way is rather confined to the high style; the other suits the conversation best.)

Inf. s'asseoir, *to sit down.* *Ger.* s'assoyant, *sitting down.* *Part.* assis, *sat down.*

Pres.	Je m'ass -ois, ois, oit;	Nous nous assoy-ons,	es, eat.
Imp.	Je m'assoy-ois, ois, oit;	Nous nous assoy-ions,	iez, oient.
Pret.	Je m'ass -is, is, it;	Nous nous assi -mes,	tes, rent.
Fut.	Je m'assoi -rai, ras, ra;	Nous nous assoi -rons,	res, ront.
Cond.	Je m'assoi -rois, rois, roit;	Nous nous assoi-rions,	riez, roient.
S. P. que	Je m'assoi -e es, e;	Nous nous assoy-ions	ies, ent.
Pret. que	Je m'ass -isse, isses, ît;	Nous nous assi -ssions,	ssiez, ssent.

asseoir, is used also actively; as *asseyez*, or *asseyez cet enfant*, sit down the child.

rasseoir, besides its reduplicative signification of *sitting again*, is also used neutrally in the sense of *settling*; as *laisser rasseoir une liqueur*, or *ses esprits*, to let a liquor, or one's spirits settle, in which sense its use is confined to the infinitive.

surseoir to adjourn, is used only in law, in the infinitive, the participle *sursis*, and perhaps the future *surseoira*. On the contrary,

seoir to become, *or* sit well, is never used in the infinitive, but only in the third persons of both numbers of the subjoined tenses: as,

Cette couleur vous sied bien, That colour sits you well,
Ces couleurs ne vous siéent pas, Those colours don't sit you well; and never *sient* or *seyant*. It being not therefore conjugated like *asseoir*. I'll set down here the tenses wherein the verb is used. It has no preterite or compound tenses, and is said both with respect to manners, dress, colours, or any thing like relating to persons. *Its gerund* should be *seyant*; as,

Cette couleur vous seyant bien, vous n'en devriez jamais changer.
Since that colour sits you well, you should never change it.

But

But it is better to avoid using of it.—*Séant, sis, sise,* thought by some the right participles of *seoir,* are only verbal adnouns and participles of another obsolete verb used only in some phrases like these.

Le Roi séant *en son lit de justice,*	The King sitting upon his throne;
Le Parlement séant *à Windsor,*	The parliament sitting at Windsor;
Un héritage sis *en tel endroit,*	An estate lying in such a place.

But the verbal adnoun *séant* is used in the sense of the verb before our consideration: as,

Il n'est pas séant *de siffler en compagnie,* It is not decent to whistle in company.

Cette perruque courte n'est pas séante *à un homme de son rang,* That short bob is not decent for one of his dignity.

Pres. Il sied,	*that sits.*	ils siéent,	*they sit.*
Imp. Il seyoit,	*that sitted.*	ils seyoient,	*they sitted.*
Fut. Il siéra,	*that will sit.*	ils siéront,	*they will sit.*
Cond. Il siéroit,	*that would sit.*	ils siéroient,	*they would sit.*

This verb is also used impersonally: as,

Il sied mal à un homme sage de, &c, It ill becomes a wise man to, *&c.*

POUVOIR.

Inf. pouvoir, *to be able. Ger.* pouvant, *being able. Part.* pu, *been able.*

Pres. Je puis, peux, peut; Nous pouv-ons, ez, peuvent.
Conversation and Poetry allow Je peux.

Imp. Je pouv-ois, ois, oit; Nous pouv-ions, iez, oient.
Pret. Je pus, pus, put; Nous pu- mes, tes, rent.
Fut. Je pour-rai, ras, ra; Nous pour-rons, rez, ront.
Cond. Je pour-rois, rois, roit; Nous pour-rions, riez, roient.
One r only is sounded in these two tenses.
S. P. Je pui-sse, sses, sse; Nous puis-ions, iez, ent.
Pr. Je puisse, puisses, pût; Nous puis-ions, siez, ssent.
No Imperative.

See in the Appendix the right use and conjugation of that Verb.

SAVOIR, *formerly* sçavoir.

Inf. savoir, *to know. Ger.* sachant, *knowing. Part.* su, *known.*

Pres. Je sai, *or* je sais, sais, sait; Nous sav- ons, ez, ent.
Imp. Je sa -vois, vois, voit; Nous sav- ions, iez, oient.
Pret. Je sus sus, sut; Nous su -mes, tes, rent.
Fut. Je sau -rai, ras, ra; Nous sau-rons, rez, ront.
Cond. Je sau -rois, rois, roit; Nous sau-rions, riez, roient.
S. P. Je sach -e es, e; Nous sach-ions, iez, ent.
Pr. Je susse susses, sût; Nous su -ssions, ssiez, ssent.
Imp. Sache, qu'il sache; sachons, sachez, qu'ils sachent.

VOIR.

Inf. voir, *to see.* *Ger.* voyant, *seeing.* *Part.* vu, *seen.*

Pres.	Je vois,	vois, voit;	Nous voy-ons,	ez,	voient.
Imp.	Je voy-ois,	ois, oit;	Nous voy-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je vis,	vis, vit;	Nous vi -mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je ver-rai,	ras, ra;	Nous ver-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je ver-rois,	rois, roit;	Nous ver-rions,	riez,	roient.

In those two tenses pronounce double r like a single one.

S.P.	Que Je voy-e,	es, e;	Nous voy-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Que Je visse,	visses, vît;	Nous vissions,	vissiez,	vissent.

Imp. Vois, qu'il voye; Voyons, -ez, qu'ils voyent.

After *voir*, are conjugated, *entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of; *pourvoir*, to provide; *prévoir*, to foresee; and *revoir*, to see again: but *pourvoir* and *prévoir* don't make their future and conditional in *errai* and *errois* as their primitive does; but in *oirai* and *oirois* (*je pourvoirai, tu prévoiras, il pourvoiroit, nous prévoirions*, &c.): *pourvoir* differs also from all others in its preterite tenses, which are not ended in *is* and *isse*, but in *us* and *usse*, (*je pourvus, je pourvusse*).

VOULOIR.

Inf. vouloir, *to be willing.* *Ger.* voulant, *being willing.* *Part.* voulu, *been willing.*

Pres.	Je veux	veux, veut;	Nous voul-ons,	ez,	veulent.
Imp.	Je voul-ois,	ois, oit;	Nous voul-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je voul-us,	us, ut;	Nous voul-umes,	utes,	urent.
Fut.	Je voud-rai,	ras, ra;	Nous voud-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je voud-rois,	rois, roit;	Nous voud-rions,	riez,	roient.
S.P.	Que Je veuill-e,	es, e;	Nous voul-ions,	iez,	veuillent.
Pr.	Que Je voul-usse,	usses, ût;	Nous voul-ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.

No Imperative.

See in the Appendix the true use and conjugation of that verb.

VALOIR.

Inf. valoir, *to be worth.* *Ger.* valant, *being worth.* *Part.* valu, *been worth.*

Pres.	Je vaux,	vaux, vaut;	Nous val- ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je val- ois,	ois, oit;	Nous val- ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je val- us,	us, ut;	Nous val- umes,	utes,	urent.
Fut.	Je vaud-rai,	ras, ra;	Nous vaud rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je vaud-rois,	rois, roit;	Nous vaud-rions,	riez,	roient.
S.P.	Que Je vaill-e,	es, e;	Nous val ions,	iez,	vaillent.
Pr.	Que Je val- usse,	usses, ût;	Nous val- ussions,	ussiez,	ussent.

Imper. Vaux, qu'il vaille; Val-ons, ez, qu'ils vaillent.

Revaloir, to be even with one; and *prévaloir*, to prevail, follow the same conjugation, except that *prévaloir* makes in the present subj. *prévale*, and not *prévaille*.

MOU-

MOUVOIR.

Inf. mouvoir, *to move.* *Ger.* mouvant, *moving.* *Part.* mu, *moved.*
Pres. Je meus, meus, meut; Nous mouv-ons, ez, meuvent.
Imp. Je mou-vois, vois, voit; *&c. Fut. & Cond. (if used)* mouvrai, *and* mouvrois, *&c.*
Sub. Je meuv-e, es, e; Nous mouv-ions, iez, meuvent.
The preterite tenses, which should be Je mus, Je musse, *are very seldom used.*
Imper. Meus, qu'il meuve; Mouv-ons, ez, qu'ils meuvent.

Mouvoir is a technical term, which also has few tenses in use. In common conversation we use *remuer.* Its derivatives are *émouvoir, démouvoir,* and *promouvoir.*

démouvoir is a law term used only in the infinitive in such phrases as these: *se démouvoir,* to desist; *démouvoir quelqu'un de ses prétentions,* to make one desist of his pretensions.

apparoir, v. n. another law term, used only in the infinitive, and third person sing. as *Comme il appert par un tel acte,* As it appears by such an act.

promouvoir has only the part. in use, and that too speaking of Church preferments and holy orders; as *promu à l'Episcopat,* promoted to a Bishoprick.

émouvoir is used only in the infinitive, and in the sense of *working* with respect to purges: as *Il est difficile à émouvoir,* he is hard to be purged. *émouvoir* is used also for *exciter,* to excite; as *émouvoir les passions, une sédition.* Its part. as also compound tenses, are used in the last sense, to wit, that of *being concerned (ému,* concerned); *s'émouvoir* is sometimes also used in the third pers. of the pres. in the same sense: as *Il s'émeut de rien,* The least thing concerns him; *Il ne s'émeut de rien,* He is concerned at nothing.

As for *choir* and *déchoir,* they are quite out of use, except in the infinitive, and participles *chu* and *déchu*; and *tomber,* to fall, has taken their place.—Its derivative *échoir,* is only used in the part. *échu*; in the third person sing. of the pres. and fut. and perhaps the gerund *(échéant),* as in such phrases like these;

Si le cas y échoit, (pron. sometimes *échet*)	If the occasion occurs, if there be occasion.
Le terme échoit le six du mois,	The rent expires the sixth of the month.
Mon terme échera demain,	My rent will be out to-morrow.
Le terme est échu,	The rent *or* quarter is out, *or* expired.
Cela lui est échu par le sort,	That fell to him by lot.

avoir to have, has also its derivatives; *ravoir,* to have again; and *se ravoir,* to recover one's strength; but they are used in the infinitive only: as,

Il veut le ravoir,	He desires to have it again.
Il a de la peine à se ravoir,	He recovers his strength but slowly.

IRREGULAR VERBS *of the 6th* CONJUGATION, *or in* aire.

PLAIRE.

Inf. plaire, *to please.* *Ger.* plaisant, *pleasing.* *Part.* plu, *pleased.*

Pres.	Je plais,	plais,	plait;	Nous plais-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je plais-ois,	ois,	oit;	Nous plais-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret	Je plus,	plus,	plut;	Nous plu-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je plai rai,	ras,	ra;	Nous plai-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je plai-rois,	rois,	roit;	Nous plai-rions,	riez,	roient.
S P.	Je plais-e,	es,	e;	Nous plais-ions,	ez,	ent.
Pr.	Je plu-sse,	sses,	sût;	Nous plu-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Plais, *qu'il plaise*; plai-sons, sez, qu'ils plaisent.

Its derivatives *déplaire*, to displease; *complaire*, to comply; and *taire*, to conceal; or *je taire*, to hold one's tongue, follow the same conjugation.

TRAIRE.

Inf. traire, *to milk.* *Ger.* trayant, *milking.* *Part.* trait, *milkt.*

Pref.	Je trais,	trais, trait;	Nous tray-ons,	ez,	traient.
Imp.	Je tray-ois,	ois, oit;	Nous tray-ions,	iez,	oient.
Fut.	Je trai-rai,	ras, ra;	Nous trai-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je trai-rois,	rois, roit;	Nous trai-rions,	riez,	roient.
Sub.	Je tray-e,	es, e;	Nous tray-ions,	iez,	ent.
Imper.	Trais, qu'il traye;		tray-ons, ez, qu'ils trayent.		

Traire has no preterite in use——Its derivatives, *abstraire*, to abstract; *distraire*, to divert from; *extraire*, to extract; and *soustraire*, to substract, or take from; have only the infinitive, pref. and fut. in use (and that too in the singular number), as also the part. *distrait, extrait, abstrait, soustrait*, and the compound tenses. Instead of the tenses and number out of use, we use a periphrase, saying, *nous faisons abstraction.*——The part. of *traire* is used in these expressions, *de l'or* ou *de l'argent trait*, gold or silver wire. ——*Rentraire*, to sinecraw, is also conjugated like *traire*, without preterite tenses.

Braire, to bray, like an ass, is used in the infinitive, and third persons of the pref. only (*il brait, ils braient*).

BOIRE.

Inf. boire, *to drink.* *Ger.* buvant, *drinking.* *Part.* bu, *drank.*

Pref.	Je bois,	bois, boit;	Nous buv-ons,	ez,	boivent.
Imp.	Je buv-ois,	ois, oit;	Nous buv-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je bus,	bus, but;	Nous bu-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je boi-rai,	ras, ra;	Nous boi-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je boi-rois,	rois, roit;	Nous boi-rions,	riez,	roient.
S.P.	Je boiv-e,	es, e;	Nous buv-ions,	iez,	boivent.
Pr.	Je busse,	busses, bût;	Nous bu-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.
Imper.	Bois, qu'il boive;		Buv-ons, ez, qu'ils boivent.		

CROIRE.

Inf. croire, *to believe.* *Ger.* croyant, *believing.* *Part.* cru, *believed.*

Pref.	Je crois,	crois, croit;	Nous croy-ons,	ez,	croient.
Imp.	Je croy-ois,	ois, oit;	Nous croy-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je crus,	crus, crut;	Nous cru-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je croi-rai,	ras, ra;	Nous croi-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je croi-rois,	rois, roit;	Nous croi-rions,	riez,	roient.
S.P.	Je croie,	croies, croie;	Nous croy-ions,	iez,	croient.
Pr.	Je crusse,	crusses, crût;	Nous cru-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.
Imper.	Crois, qu'il croie;		Croy-ons, ez, qu'ils croient.		

Its derivative *accroire* is used in the infinitive only, and that too with the verb *faire* before it; as *faire accroire*, or *en faire accroire*, to impose upon one; and *s'en faire accroire*, to be self-conceited.

IRREGULAR VERBS *of the* 8*th* CONJUGATION, *or in* aître.

NAITRE.

Inf. naître, *to be born.* *Ger.* naissant, *being born.* *Part.* né, *born.*

Pres.	Je nais,	nais, nait;	Nous naiss-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je naiss-ois,	ois, oit;	Nous naiss-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je na -quis,	quis, quit;	Nous naqui-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je naît -rai,	ras, ra;	Nous naît-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je naît -rois,	rois, roit;	Nous naît-rions,	riez,	roient.
S.P.	Je naiss-e,	es, e;	Nous naiss-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je naqu-isse,	isses, ît;	Nous naqui-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Nais, qu'il naisse; Naiss-ons, ez, qu'ils naissent.

Naître forms its compound of *être*: its derivative is *renaître*, to be born again.——*paître*, to graze, follows the same conjugation, but it has no participle nor preterite tenses in use; tho' *se repaître* to feed upon (very little used), has *repu* for its participle, and *repus*, *repusse* for its preterites. *L'oiseau a pu*, the bird has fed, is a phrase of falconry.

IRREGULAR VERBS *of the* 9*th* CONJUGATION, *or in* ire.

DIRE.

Inf. dire *to say*, or *tell.* *Ger.* disant, *saying.* *Part.* dit, *said.*

Pres.	Je dis,	dis, dit;	Nous disons,	dites,	disent.
Imp.	Je dis-ois,	ois, oit;	Nous dis-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je dis,	dis, dit;	Nous dimes,	dites,	dirent.
Fut.	Je di-rai,	ras, ra;	Nous di-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je di-rois,	rois, roit;	Nous di-rions,	riez,	roient.
S.P.	Je dis-e,	es, e;	Nous dis-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je disse,	disses, dît;	Nous dissions,	dissiez,	dissent.

Imper. Dis, qu'il dise; disons, dites, qu'ils disent.

contredire,	*to contradict.*	maudire,	*to curse.*	prédire,	*to foretell.*
se dédire,	*to unsay, retract.*	interdire,	*to interdict, to forbid.*	redire,	*to tell again.*
médire,	*to slander, speak ill.*			confire,	*to preserve fruit.*

follow the same conjugation; with this exception, that, except *redire*, which is conjugated all throughout like its primitive, they form regularly the 2d perf. plur. of the pres. and make *disez* instead of *dites*; and *maudire* doubles its *s* through the whole verb (*maudissant*, *nous maudissons*, *je maudissois*, &c.)

LIRE.

Inf. lire, *to read.* *Ger.* lisant, *reading.* *Part.* lu, *read.*

Pres.	Je lis,	lis, lit;	Nous lis -ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je lis-ois,	ois, oit;	Nous lis -ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je lus,	lus, lut;	Nous lu-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je li-rai,	ras, ra;	Nous li -rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je li-rois,	rois, roit;	Nous li -rions,	riez,	roient.
S.P.	Je lis-e,	es, e;	Nous lis-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je lusse,	lusses, lût;	Nous lu-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Lis, qu'il lise; li-sons, sez, qu'ils lisent.

élire, to elect, and *relire*, to read again, are conjugated after the same manner; to which you may add *circoncire*, to circumcise; and *suffire*, to suffice; which, however, differ in this: their participles are *circoncis*, (with a final s) and *suffi* without a final s), and they make in their pret. *Je circoncis, je circoncisse*, I circumcised, *Je suffis, je suffisse*, I sufficed.

RIRE.

Inf. rire, *to laugh.* *Ger.* riant, *laughing.* *Part.* ri, *laughed.*

Pref.	Je ris,	ris,	rit;	Nous ri-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je ri-ois,	ois,	oit;	Nous ri-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je ris,	ris,	rit;	Nous ri-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je ri-rai,	ras,	ra;	Nous ri-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je ri-rois,	rois	roit;	Nous ri-rions,	riez,	roient.
S P.	Je ri-e,	es,	e;	Nous ri-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je risse,	risses,	rît;	Nous ri-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Ris, qu'il rie; rions, ez, qu'ils rient.

sourire, to smile, is conjugated like *rire*.

E'CRIRE.

Inf. écrire, *to write.* *Ger.* écrivant, *writing.* *Part.* écrit, *written.*

Pref.	J'é-cris,	cris,	crit;	Nous écriv-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	J'écriv-ois,	ois,	oit;	Nous écriv-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	J'écri-vis,	vis,	vit;	Nous écrivi-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	J'écri-rai,	ras,	ra;	Nous écri-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	J'écri-rois,	rois,	roit;	Nous écri-rions,	riez,	roient.
S.P.	J'écriv-e,	es,	e;	Nous écriv-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	J'écri-visse,	visses,	vît;	Nous écrivi-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. écris, qu'il écrive; écri-vons, vez, qu'ils écrivent.

After the same manner are conjugated,

décrire,	to describe.	*proscrire*,	to proscribe, to out-law.	*souscrire*,	to subscribe.
inscrire,	to inscribe.			*transcrire*,	to transcribe.
prescrire,	to prescribe.	*récrire*,	to write again.	*circonscrire*,	to circumscribe.

VIVRE.

Inf. vivre, *to live.* *Ger.* vivant, *living.* *Part.* vécu, *lived.*

Pref.	Je vis,	vis,	vit;	Nous viv-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je viv ois,	ois,	oit;	Nous viv-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je vé-cus,	cus,	cut;	Nous vécu-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je viv-rai,	ras,	ra;	Nous viv-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je viv-rois,	rois,	roit;	Nous viv-rions,	riez,	roient.
S.P.	Je viv-e,	es,	e;	Nous viv-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je vé-cusse,	cusses,	cût;	Nous vécu-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Vis, qu'il vive; Vi-vons, vez, qu'ils vivent.

Its derivatives are revivre, to revive; and *survivre*, to survive, out-live.

SUIVRE.

SUIVRE.

Inf. suivre, *to follow.* *Ger.* suivant, *following.* *Part.* suivi, *followed.*

Pref.	Je suis,	suis,	suit;	Nous suiv-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je suiv-ois,	ois,	oit;	Nous suiv-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je sui-vis,	vis,	vit;	Nous suivi-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je suiv-rai,	ras,	ra;	Nous suiv-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je suiv-rois,	rois,	roit;	Nous suiv-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je suiv-e,	es,	e;	Nous suiv-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je sui-visse,	visses,	vît;	Nous suivi-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Suis, qu'il suive; suiv-ons, ez, qu'ils suivent.

Its derivatives are *poursuivre*, to pursue, and *s'ensuivre*, which is used only in the third persons of both numbers. It is also used impersonally; as *Il s'ensuit de là que*, &c. from whence it follows that, &c.

Frire, to fry, is used only in the infinitive, the participle *frit* with the compound tenses, in the sing. of the pref. *Je fris, tu fris, il frit*; and perhaps in the fut. *Je frirai, ras, ra*, &c. In many other circumstances one must make use of a periphrase; as *faisant frire*, frying, instead of its gerund; *Vous faites trop frire ce poisson*, You fry that fish too much.

Bruire, to rustle, is used only in the infinitive, and the 3d persons of the imperfect, *Il bruyoit*, it rustled; *Les flots bruyoient*, the billows roared, although the gerund be *bruissant*; *bruyant, ante*, being a verbal adnoun.

IRREGULAR VERBS *of the* 10*th* CONJUGATION, *or in* endre, ompre, ettre.

PRENDRE.

Inf. prendre, *to take.* *Ger.* prenant, *taking.* *Part.* pris, *taken.*

Pref.	Je prends,	prends,	prend;	Nous pren-ons,	ez,	nent.
Imp.	Je pren-ois,	ois,	oit:	Nous pren-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je pris,	pris,	prit;	Nous pri-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je prend-rai,	ras,	ra;	Nous prend-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je prend-rois,	rois,	roit;	Nous prend-rions,	riez,	roient.
S. P.	Je pre-nne,	nnes,	nne;	Nous pren-ions,	iez,	nent.
Pr.	Je prisse,	prisses,	prît;	Nous pri-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Prends, qu'il prenne; pren-ons, ez, qu'ils prennent.

Its derivatives are *apprendre*, to learn; *désapprendre*, to unlearn; *comprendre*, to understand; *entreprendre*, to undertake; *se méprendre*, to be mistaken; *reprendre*, to rebuke, chide, also to take again; and *surprendre*, to surprise: all which are conjugated like their primitive.

ROMPRE.

Inf. rompre, *to break.* *Ger.* rompant, *breaking.* *Part.* rompu, *broken.*

Pref.	Je romps,	romps,	rompt;	Nous romp-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je romp-ois,	ois,	oit;	Nous romp-ions,	iez,	oient.

Pret. Je rom-pis, pis, pit; Nous rompi-mes, tes, rent.
Fut. Je romp-rai, ras, ra; Nous romp-rons, rez, ront.
Cond. Je romp rois, rois, roit; Nous romp-rions, riez, roient.
S. P. Je romp-e, es, e; Nous romp ions, iez, ent.
Pr. Je rom-pisse, pisses, pît; Nous rompi-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
Imper. Romps, qu'il rompe; Romp-ons, ez, qu'ils rompent.

Its derivatives are *corrompre*, to corrupt; and *interrompre*, to interrupt.

BATTRE.

Inf. battre, *to beat.* *Ger.* battant, *beating.* *Part.* battu, *beaten.*

Pres. Je bats, bats, bat; Nous batt-ons, ez, ent.
Imp. Je batt-ois, ois, oit; Nous batt-ions, iez, oient.
Pret. Je bat-tis, tis, tit; Nous batti-mes, tes, rent.
Fut. Je batt-rai, ras, ra; Nous batt-rons, rez, ront.
Cond. Je batt-rois, rois, roit; Nous batt-rions, riez, roient.
S. P. Je batt-e, es, e; Nous batt-ions, iez, ent.
Pr. Je bat-tisse, tisses, tît; Nous batti-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
Imper. Bats, qu'il batte; Batt-ons, ez, qu'ils battent.

Abattre, to pull down; *combattre*, to fight; *se débattre*, to struggle; *s'ébattre*, to sport (an expression of the burlesque style); *rabattre*, to bate, abate; and *rebattre*, to beat again, are conjugated like *battre*.

METTRE.

Inf. mettre, *to put.* *Ger.* mettant, *putting.* *Part.* mis, *put.*

Pres. Je mets, mets, met; Nous mett-ons, ez, ent.
Imp. Je mett-ois, ois, oit; Nous mett-ions, iez, oient.
Pret. Je mis, mis, mit; Nous mi-mes, tes, rent.
Fut. Je mett-rai, ras, ra; Nous mett-rons, rez, ront.
Cond. Je mett-rois, rois, roit; Nous mett-rions, riez, roient.
S. P. Je mett-e, es, e; Nous mett-ions, iez, ent.
Pr. Je misse, misses, mît; Nous missions, missiez, missent.
Imper. Mets, qu'il mette; Mett-ons, ez, qu'ils mettent.

These following are conjugated after the same manner;

admettre, to admit.
commettre, to commit.
démettre, to remove, turn out.
se démettre, to resign.
omettre, to omit.
s'entremettre, to intermeddle.
permettre, to permit.
promettre, to promise.
remettre, to deliver, put again.
compromettre, to compromise.
soumettre, to submit.
transmettre, to transmit, to convey.

CONCLURE.

Inf. conclure, *to conclude.* *Ger.* concluant, *concluding.* *Part.* conclu, *concluded.*

Pres. Je con-clus, clus, clut; Nous conclu-ons, ez, ent.
Imp. Je conclu-ois, ois, oit; Nous conclu-ions, iez, oient.

Pret.

Pret. Je con-clus, clus, clut; Nous conclu-mes, tes, rent.
Fut. Je conclu-rai, ras, ra; Nous conclu-rons, rez, ront.
Cond. Je conclu-rois, rois, roit; Nous conclu-rions, riez, roient.
S.P. Je con clue, clues, clue; Nous conclu-ions, iez, ent.
Pr. Je conclu-sse, sses, conclût; Nous conclu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
Imper. Conclus, qu'il conclue; conclu-ons, ez, qu'ils concluent.

exclure, to exclude, is conjugated after the same, except that the part. is *exclus* with a final *s*, and the feminine is both *exclue*, and *excluse*: as *Il fut exclus de l'assemblée*, he was excluded from the assembly; *Elle en fut aussi exclue*, or *excluse*, she was also excluded from it.

CONVAINCRE.

Inf. convaincre, *to convince.* *Ger.* convainquant, *convincing.* *Part.* convaincu, *convinced.*

Pref.	Je con-vaincs, vaincs, vainc;	convainqu-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je convainqu-ois, ois, oit;	convainqu-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je convain-quis, quis, quit;	convainqui-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je convainc-rai, ras, ra;	convainc-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je convainc-rois, rois, roit;	convainc-rions,	riez,	roient.
S.P.	Je convain-que, ques, que;	convainqu-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je convain-quisse, quisses, quît;	convainqui-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Convaincs, qu'il convainque; convainqu-ons, ez, qu'ils convainquent.

vaincre, to vanquish, *or* to overcome, is conjugated after the same manner; but it is not used in the pref. nor in some other tenses, instead of which we say *triompher*, or *être victorieux*. You may also spell *convaincant* and *convaincous* with a *c* instead of *qu*.

COUDRE.

Inf. coudre, *to sew.* *Ger.* cousant, *sewing.* *Part.* cousu, *sewed.*

Pref.	Je couds, couds, coud;	Nous cous-ons,	ez,	ent.
Imp.	Je cous-ois, ois, oit;	Nous cous-ions,	iez,	oient.
Pret.	Je cou sis, sis, sit;	Nous cousi-mes,	tes,	rent.
Fut.	Je coud-rai, ras, ra;	Nous coud-rons,	rez,	ront.
Cond.	Je coud-rois, rois, roit;	Nous coud-rions,	riez,	roient.
S.P.	Je cou-se, ses, se;	Nous cous-ions,	iez,	ent.
Pr.	Je cousisses, sisses, sît;	Nous cousi-ssions,	ssiez,	ssent.

Imper. Couds, qu'il couse; Cou-sons, sez, qu'ils cousent.—*In the preter. tenses beware of saying* Je cousus, je coususse, *as some people do.*

The only compounds this verb has are *découdre*, to unsew, and *recoudre*, to sew again.

MOUDRE.

Inf. moudre, *to grind.* *Ger.* moulant, *grinding.* *Part.* moulu, *ground.*

Pref. Je mouds, mouds, moud; Nous moul-ons, ez, ent.
Imp. Je moul-ois, ois, oit; Nous moul-ions, iez, oient.

Pre

Pret. Je mou-lus, lus, lut; Nous moulu-mes, tes, rent.
Fut. Je moud-rai, ras, ra; Nous moud-rons, rez, ront.
Cond. Je moud-rois, rois, roit; Nous moud-rions, riez, roient.
S.P. Je mou-le, les, le; Nous moul-ions, iez, ent.
Pr. Je mou-lusse, lusses, lût; Nous moulu ssions, ssiez, ssent.
Imper. Mouds, qu'il moule; Moul-ons, ez, qu'ils moulent.

Its derivatives are *émoudre*, to whet, to set an edge; and *remoudre*, to grind again.

RÉSOUDRE.

Inf. résoudre, *to resolve.* *Ger.* résolvant, *resolving.* *Part.* résolu, *resolved.*

Pres. Je ré-souds, souds, soud; Nous résolv-ons, ez, ent.
Imp. Je résolv-ois, ois, oit; Nous résolv-ions, iez, oient.
Pret. Je réso-lus, lus, lut; Nous résolu-mes, tes, rent.
Fut. Je résoud-rai, ras, ra; Nous résoud-rons, rez, ront.
Cond. Je résoud-rois, rois, roit; Nous résoud-rions, riez, roient.
S.P. Je résolv-e, es, e; Nous résolv-ions, iez, ent.
Pr. Je réso-lusse, lusses, lût; Nous résolu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.
Imper. Résous, qu'il résolve; résolv-ons, ez, qu'ils résolvent.

Soudre, to solve, is used in the infinitive only. *Absoudre*, to absolve, and *dissoudre*, to dissolve or liquefy, follow the same conjugation: but they have no preterite in use, and their part. are *absous* and *dissous*; as likewise that of *résoudre* is *résous*, when that verb signifies *changing a thing into another.* Example; *un brouillard* résous *en pluie*, a mist resolved into rain. *Absous* is not used in the feminine, but *dissous* makes *dissoute. Mais de quelle manière, & en quel temps a-t-elle été dissoute?* But in what manner, and when was it dissolved?

Clorre, to close or shut close; *déclorre*, to unclose; *enclorre*, to enclose; and *éclorre*, to be hatched, or to blow open; they are verbs defective, and very seldom used but in the inf. and part. with both *avoir* and *être*: as,

J'ai enclos mon jardin d'un bon mur, I have enclosed my garden with a good wall.
Je n'ai pas clos l'œil de la nuit, I did not shut my eyes last night.
Mes vers à soie sont éclos, My silk-worms are hatched.

clorre is used only in the infinitive, participle, the three pers. sing. of the pres. *Je clos, tu clos, il clot*; the fut. *Je clorrai*; and the cond. *Je clorrois.*

éclorre may also be used in the fut. as (speaking of the same insects), *Ils n'éclorront jamais sans chaleur*, they will never be hatched without heat. In any other tense we make use of a periphrase with the verb *faire*, and the inf. of the verb: as *Mettez-les au soleil pour les faire éclorre*, instead of *pour qu'ils éclosent*, set them in the sun to make them hatch: though we also not improperly say in the present indic. *Mes vers à soie éclosent à merveille*, my silk-worms come out charmingly.

From three other obsolete verbs, there remain some tenses and persons consecrated by custom to certain sciences, and phrases, tho' their infinitive is now-a-days hardly known.

I. The third persons of the pres. and imperf. of *gésir* (*gît*, *gissent*, *gissoit*), chiefly used in Epitaphs: as *Ci gît*, here lies, *&c.*

II. The participle of *issir* (*issu*), used in speaking of Lineage and Genealogy: as *Il se prétend issu des anciens Comtes de*, he pretends that he is *descended* from the ancient Earls of, *&c.. Cousin issu de germain*, second cousin: as likewise the gerund of the same verb (*issant*), used in heraldry only: as *Il porte de sinople au lion issant de gueules*, he bears sinople a lion *rising* out of gules.

III. The part. of *tisser* (*tissu*), generally used in all compound tenses with both *avoir* and *être*: as *Ce drap-là est bien tissu*, that cloth is well woven, or weaved.

Verbs IMPERSONAL *are conjugated thus.*

Indicative Mood.

Pref. Il y a,	*there is, there are.*	Il faut,	*one,* or *it must,* or *it is necessary.*
Imp. Il y avoit,	*there was, there were,*	Il falloit,	*it was requisite, needful.*
Pret. Il y eut.	*there was, there were,*	Il fallut,	
Fut. Il y aura,	*there shall* or *will be.*	Il faudra,	*it will be necessary,* &c.
Cond. Il y auroit,	*there would,* &c.	Il faudroit,	*it would,* &c. *be,* &c.

Subjunctive.

Pref. qu'il y ait,	*there be,* or *may be.*	qu'il faille,	*it may be necessary,*
Pret. qu'il y eût,	*there were,* or *might be.*	qu'il fallût,	*it were,* or *might be requisite,* &c.

Infinitive.

Pref. y avoir,	*there to be.*	*See in the Syntax what concerns this impersonal.*
Ger. y ayant,	*there being.*	

Which impersonal verbs have also their compound tenses, formed by adding *eu* to each tense: as *il y a eu*, there has *or* have been, *il y avoit eu*, there had been, *&c.* The others form them from *avoir*, and their participle: as *il a fallu* it has been requisite, *il avoit fallu* it had been, *&c.*—*Il faut* has no infinitive in use; but the others have one, as also gerunds and participles, which shall be set down here.

Indicative.			*Infinitive.*	*Ger.*	*Part.*
Il pleut,	*it rains;*	*from*	pleu-voir,	vant,	plu*.
Il bruïne,	*it drizzles;*		bruï-ner,	nant,	né.
Il gèle,	*it freezes;*		ge -ler,	lant,	lé.
Il grêle,	*it hails;*		grê -ler,	lant,	lé.
Il neige,	*it snows;*		nei -ger,	geant,	gé.
Il tonne,	*it thunders;*		ton -ner,	nant,	né.
Il éclaire,	*it lightens;*		éclai-rer,	rant,	ré.

Il est, c'est, Il fait, } *it is;* { il fait *is used with adnouns and some nouns denoting the disposition of the weather: as* il fait chaud, beau, crotté, *it is hot, fine, dirty;* il fait du vent, *the wind blows,* &c.

* The future and conditional of *pleuvoir* are pleuvra, il pleuvroit, &c. pleuvrons.

Indicative.	*Infinitive.*	*Ger.*	*Part.*
Il arrive, *it happens*; *from*	arri -ver,	vant,	vé.
Il convient, *it becomes*;	conve-nir,	nant,	nu.
Il est à propos, convenable, *&c. it is fit, proper, meet*, &c.			
Il importe, *it matters, it concerns*;	impor-ter,	tant,	té.
Il semble, *it seems*;	sem -bler,	blant,	blé.
Il paroît, *it appears*;	paroî -tre,	ssant,	paru.
Il sied, *it is decent*, or becoming.			
Il s'ensuit que, *it follows that*;	s'ensui-vre,	vant,	
Il s'agit de cela, *that is the matter in hand*.	ag -ir	issant,	i.
Il vaut mieux que, *it is better that*;	va -loir,	lant,	lu.
Il ne tient pas à lui que, *it is not his fault if*;	te -nir,	nant,	nu.
Il m'ennuie de, *&c. it tires me to*, &c.	ennuy-er,	ant,	é.
Il plaît à Madame de, *My lady likes*, or *is pleased to*, &c.	plai -re,	sant,	plu.
Il se peut que / Il se peut faire que, *it may be that*, &c.	pou -voir,	vant,	pu.
Il suffit que, *&c. it is enough that*, &c.	suffi -re,	sant,	suffi.
Il y va de la vie, *life is at stake*;	al -ler,	lant,	lé.
Il se tint hier un conseil, *a council was held yesterday*.	te -nir	nant,	nu.

CHAP. VI.

Of ADVERBS.

THE ADVERB is a part of speech invariable, which neither governs nor is governed by any other, and serves to denote some circumstance of that which is signified by a Noun, an Adnoun, a Verb, or even an Adverb: as,

Véritablement ami, truly friend.
aimer bien, to love well.
infiniment juste, infinitely just.
très-souvent, very often.
étroitement unis, strictly united.
toujours à contre-temps, always unseasonably.

Adverbs are either simple, as *hier* yesterday, *beaucoup* much, *présentiment* presently; or compound, as *avant-hier* the day before yesterday, *en quantité* in plenty, *à présent*, *tout-à-l'heure*, at present, instantly.

Adverbs may be considered with respect to Time, Place, Order, Quantity and Number, Quality and Manner, Affirmation, Negation,

Negation and Doubt, Comparison, Collection or Division, and Interrogation.

Adverbs of Time.

I. *Of the present Time.*

A présent,	*at present.*
pour le présent,	*for the present.*
présentement,	*presently.*
maintenant,	*now.*
aujourd'hui,	*to day, now a-days.*
à cette heure,	*at this hour,* or *time, presently.*
tout-à-l'heure,	*this minute, even now.*
sur le champ,	*directly, upon the spot.*
à l'instant,	*instantly.*
vîte,	*quick.*
jusqu'ici,	*hitherto.*
jusqu' à présent,	*till now.*
il y a huit jours,	*a week ago.*
il y a quinze jours,	*fortnight ago.*
il y a long-temps,	*a great while ago.*
il n'y a pas long-temps.	*not long ago.*
il y a quelque temps,	*some time ago.*
il n'y a qu'un moment,	*just now.*
il y a trois jours,	*three days ago.*
il y a un mois,	*a month ago.*
il y a un an,	*a year ago.*

II. *Of the Time past.*

hier,	*yesterday.*
avant-hier,	*the day before yesterday.*
le jour précédent,	*the day before.*
autrefois,	*formerly, once.*
jâdis (*s* sounds)	*in times of yore.*
anciennement,	*anciently.*
dernièrement,	*lately.*
depuis-peu,	*of late.*
auparavant,	*before.*
récemment,	*recently.*
tout récemment, nouvellement,	*newly.*
la dernière fois,	*the last time.*
l'autre jour,	*the other day.*
hier matin, hier au matin,	*yesterday morning.*
la semaine passée,	*the last week.*
le mois dernier,	*the last month.*
l'année passée, l'année dernière,	*last year.*

III. *Of the Time to come.*

demain,	*to-morrow.*
après demain,	*the day after to-morrow.*
le lendemain,	*the next day.*
le sur-lendemain,	*two days after.*
le jour suivant,	*the following day.*
ce matin,	*this morning.*
ce soir,	*this,* or *to-night, this evening.*
cette après-midi, cette après-dînée,	*this afternoon.*
cette après-soupée,	*this after supper.*
demain matin,	*to-morrow-morning.*
demain au soir,	*to-morrow-night.*
bientôt,	*soon, very soon, in a short time.*
dans peu,	*shortly.*

dans

dans peu de temps, { *within a little while.*
tantôt, { *anon, by and by, now and then.*
l'année qui vient, *the next year.*
le mois prochain, *the next month.*
désormais, *hereafter.*
dorénavant, *henceforth.*
à l'avenir, *for the future.*
dans deux ou trois jours d'ici, { *two or three days hence.*
dans six mois, *six months hence.*
dans un an d'ici, *a year hence.*
avant qu'il soit long-temps, { *before it is long.*

IV. *Of a Time unspecified.*

d'abord, *first, at first.*
souvent, *often, oftentimes.*
quelquefois, *sometimes.*
rarement, *seldom.*
soudain, *on a sudden.*
subitement, *suddenly.*
au plutôt, *the soonest.*
au plutard, *the latest.*
au plutôt, *as soon as possible.*
au plus vîte, en toute diligence, { *with all speed.*
jamais, *never, ever, at any time.*
à jamais, *for ever.*
toujours, *always.*
pour toujours, *for ever and ever.*
à toute heure, *every moment.*
à tout moment, *every minute.*
à tout bout de champ, { *ever and anon, at every turn.*
continuellement, *continually.*
sans cesse, { *without ceasing, for ever.*
cependant, *in the mean while.*
d'ordinaire, *mostly, most times.*
à l'ordinaire, *usually, as usual.*
ordinairement, *ordinarily.*
communément, *commonly.*
fréquemment, *frequently.*
presque toujours, { *almost always, most commonly.*
presque jamais, *never hardly.*
la plûpart du temps, *most times.*
tôt, *soon.*
tard, *late.*
trop tôt, *too soon.*
trop tard, *too late.*
de bonne heure, *early, betimes.*
de bon matin, de grand matin, { *very early, early in the morning.*
pas encore, *not yet.*
bien long-temps, *mighty long.*
alors, *then.*
pour lors, *at that time.*
dès lors, *from that time.*
depuis, *since.*
depuis ce temps-là, *ever since.*
encore, *again.*
de nouveau, *a-new.*
de plus belle, *a-fresh.*
à loisir, *leisurely.*
quand, *when.*
le matin, dans la matinée, { *in the morning.*
dans l'après-dinée, { *in the afternoon.*
le soir, *in the evening.*
sur le soir, { *towards night,* or *the evening.*
en même temps, *at the same time.*
de jour, *by day, in the day-time.*
de nuit, { *by night, in the night-time.*
jour & nuit, *night and day.*
en plein jour, en plein midi, { *at noon day.*
de deux jours l'un, tous les deux jours, { *every other day.*

tout

tout d'un coup, *all at once, at one dash, all on a sudden.*
tout à coup, *suddenly, all of a sudden.*
plus que jamais, *more than ever.*
à point nommé, *in the nick of time.*
à propos, *seasonably, apropos.*
fort à propos, *very seasonably.*
dans l'occasion, *upon the occasion.*
en moins de rien, *in a trice.*
en un clin d'œil, *in the twinkling of an eye.*
tous les jours, *every day.*
tout le jour, *all the day.*
tout le long du jour, *all the day long.*
tant que le jour dure, *as long as it is day-light.*
toute la nuit, *all the night.*
de jour en jour, *daily.*
au premier jour, *the next day.*
à la première occasion, *with the first opportunity.*
à temps, *in good time.*
avec le temps, *in time.*
de temps en temps, *now and then, from time to time.*
en tout temps, *at all times.*
en temps & lieu, *in a proper time and place.*

Adverbs of Place.

où, *where, whither.*
d'où, *whence.*
de quel endroit, *from what place.*
par où, *which way, thro' where.*
par quel endroit, *thro' what place.*
ici, *here, hither, to this place.*
d'ici, *hence, from here.*
par ici, *this way, thro' this place.*
là, *there.*
de là, *thence.*
par là, *that way, thro' that place.*
là haut, *above.*
en haut, *up, up stairs.*
ici dessus, *here above.*
bas, à bas, *down.*
en bas, *down on the ground.*
là bas, *below there, yonder.*
ici dessous, *under here, here below.*
d'en haut, *from above.*
d'en bas, *from below.*
par haut, par en haut, *upward.*
par bas, par en bas, *downward.*
de côté & d'autre, *up and down.*
dedans, en dedans, là dedans, *within.*
dehors, *out, without doors.*
en dehors, *without.*
jusqu'où, *how far.*
jusqu'ici, *so far, down to here, as far as this place.*
jusques là, *so far, down to there, as far as that place.*
à l'entour, tout autour, *round about.*
ici autour, *hereabout.*
là autour, aux environs, *thereabout.*
tous les lieux d'alentour, *all places round about.*
loin, *far.*
bien loin, *very far.*
près, *near.*
bien près, *very near.*
proche, *by.*

tout proche,	*hard by.*
tout auprès,	
tout contre,	
près d'ici,	*just by.*
ici-près,	
tout près d'ici,	
la porte joignante,	*the next door to it.*
de près,	*near, by.*
de plus près,	*nearer.*
vis-à-vis,	*over against.*
à côté,	*by.*
de côté,	*aside.*
à-terre,	*down.*
par terre,	*down on the ground.*
devant,	*before.*
par devant,	
sur le devant,	*on the fore-part,* or *forwards.*
derrière,	*behind.*
par derrière,	
sur le derrière,	*on the hind-part,* or *backwards.*
dessus,	*upon.*
dessous,	*under.*
quelque part,	*somewhere, any where.*
nulle part,	*no where.*
en aucun endroit,	*in no place.*
ailleurs,	*elsewhere.*
autrepart,	*somewhere else.*
par-tout,	*all about, every where.*
deçà,	*on this side.*
en deçà,	
de ce côté-ci,	
de-là	*on that side.*
en de-là,	
de ce côté-là,	
des deux côtés,	*on both sides.*
de part & d'autre,	
de tous côtés,	*on every side,*
de toutes parts,	*on all sides.*
d'un côté & d'autre,	*about and about.*
au même endroit,	*in the same place.*
dans ce lieu-là,	*in that place.*
dans cet endroit-là,	
dans ce même endroit-là,	*in that very same place.*
par de-là,	*farther.*
plus loin,	
çà & là,	*up and down.*
dans le voisinage.	*in the neighbourhood.*
céans,	*here, within.*
à droite,	*on the right,* or *on the right hand.*
sur la droite,	
à main droite,	
à gauche,	*on the left,* or *on the left-hand.*
sur la gauche,	
à main gauche,	
tout droit,	*straight along.*
tout du long,	*all along.*
tout le long,	
depuis le haut jusqu'en bas,	*from the top to the bottom.*
au dedans & au dehors,	*at home and abroad.*
dans le royaume & hors du royaume,	
dans les pays étrangers,	*abroad.*

Adverbs of Order.

premièrement,	*first,* or *firstly.*
secondement,	*secondly.*
deuxièmement,	
troisièmement,	*&c. thirdly,* &c.
en premier lieu,	*in the first place.*
en second lieu,	*in the second place.*
en dernier lieu,	*lastly, in the last place.*
avant,	*before.*
après,	*after.*

avant

avant toutes choses,	*above all things.*
de suite,	*one after another.*
tout de suite,	*together.*
ensuite,	*afterwards, next to that,* or *in the next place.*
tout de suite,	*of a breath, at once, without any stop.*
ensemble,	*together.*
à la file,	*one after another.*
de front, / de rang,	*abreast.*
tour à tour,	*by turns.*
à la ronde,	*round about.*
alternativement,	*alternately.*
l'un après l'autre,	*one after another.*
à la fois,	*at once.*
enfin,	*at length, in short, in the end.*
à la fin,	*in fine, finally, at last.*
pour conclusion,	*to conclude.*
d'ordre, / par ordre, / en ordre,	*orderly, in* or *with order.*
confusément,	*confusedly.*
pêle-mêle,	*promiscuously, in a jumble.*
en foule,	*in a crowd.*
de fond en comble,	*utterly, wholly.*
sens dessus dessous,	*upside down, topsy-turvy.*
sens devant derrière,	*preposterously.*
tout rebours,	*the wrong way,* or *side.*
pareillement,	*likewise.*
semblablement, / de la même manière,	*in the like,* or *same manner.*

Adverbs of Quantity and Number.

combien,	*how much, how many.*
peu,	*little, few.*
un peu,	*a little, some.*
tant soit peu,	*ever so little.*
beaucoup,	*much.*
guères,	*but little.*
pas beaucoup,	*not much.*
assez,	*enough.*
suffisamment,	*sufficiently.*
trop,	*too much.*
trop peu,	*too little.*
peu à peu,	*little by little.*
à peu près,	*near about, pretty near.*
environ,	*about.*
à peu de choses près,	*within a small matter.*
tant,	*so much.*
autant,	*as much.*
plus, / davantage,	*more.*
moins,	*less.*
de plus,	*moreover, over and above.*
tout au plus,	*at most.*
par dessus le marché,	*over,* or *into the bargain.*
au moins, / du moins, / pour le moins,	*at least.*
en abondance,	*in plenty.*
abondamment,	*plentifully.*
en grand nombre,	*in a great number.*
en grande quantité,	*in a great quantity.*
à pleines mains,	*plentifully.*
à foison,	*largely.*
cher,	dear.
trop cher,	too dear. chère.

chèrement, *dearly.*
à bon marché, *cheap.*
à grand marché, *very cheap.*
à vil prix, *at a low price.*
entièrement, *entirely, wholly.*
à plate couture, *totally.*
à demi, *half, by half, by halves.*
infiniment, *infinitely.*
à l'infini, *vastly.*
tout-à-fait, *quite, altogether.*
étrangement, *strangely.*
admirablement, *admirably.*
merveilleusement, *wonderfully.*
presque, quasi, } *almost.*
absolument, { *absolutely, by all means.*
passablement, { *tolerably, indifferent.*
médiocrement, *indifferently.*
combien de fois, } *how many times, how often.*
une fois, *once.*
deux fois, *twice.*
trois fois, *thrice,* or *three times.*
dix fois, *ten times.*
vingt fois, *twenty times.*
cinquante fois, *fifty times.*
cent fois, *a hundred times.*
mille fois, *a thousand times.*

Adverbs of Quality and Manner.

bien, *well, right.*
mal, *bad, wrong.*
fort bien, { *very well,* or *very right.*
fort mal, { *very bad, very ill, very wrong.*
à merveilles, { *admirably well, wonderfully.*
ni bien ni mal, { *neither well nor bad; neither right nor wrong.*

sagement, *wisely.*
justement, *justly*
joliment, *prettily.*
galamment, *cleverly.*
prudemment, *prudently.*
civilement, *civilly.*
constamment, *constantly.*
vivement, *briskly.*
à l'aise, { *easily, at ease, comfortably.*
nonchalamment, *carelessly.*
négligemment, *negligently.*
au préalable, *previously.*
préalablement, *first of all.*
de but en blanc, { *point blank, bluntly.*
à fond, *thoroughly.*
à plomb, *perpendicularly.*
à nu, *bare, naked.*
à plein, *fully.*
à plaisir, *for pleasure sake.*
à faux, *falsely.*
à moitié chemin, *half way.*
à peine, *hardly, scarce, scarcely.*
à regret, { *grudgingly, with reluctancy.*
à contre-cœur, *against the grain.*
à contre gré, } *against one's will,* or *mind.*
de bon cœur, *heartily.*
de bonne volonté, *very willingly.*
de gaité de cœur, } *on purpose, for the sake of mischief.*
de guet-à-pens, *wilfully.*
de gré, *willingly.*
de plein gré, de bon gré, } *of one's own accord.*
à mon gré, *to my mind.*
à votre gré, *to your mind.*
à son gré, *to his,* or *her mind.*
à leur gré, *to their mind.*
de force, par force, } *forcibly, by force.*

à cou-

à couvert, { *secure, under a cover*, or *shelter.*
à découvert, *openly.*
au naturel, *to the life.*
à reculons, en arrière, } *backwards.*
à la renverse, *upon one's back.*
à tâtons, *groping.*
à l'endroit, *on the right side.*
du bon sens, *the right way.*
à l'envers, { *the wrong side outwards.*
du mauvais sens, } *the wrong way*, or *the wrong side.*
de tout sens, de tous les sens, } *every way.*
à bon droit, { *deservedly, justly, rightly.*
à tort, *wrongfully.*
avec raison, *with a cause.*
sans raison, *without a cause.*
à l'envi, { *in emulation of one another, with a contention who shall do best.*
à la rigueur, *strictly.*
de sens rassis, { *with a sound judgment.*
de sang froid, *in cool blood.*
exprès, { *on purpose, for the purpose.*
à dessein, *designedly, purposely.*
par malice, { *maliciously, mischievously.*
de propos délibéré, } *on set purpose.*
tout de bon, *in good earnest.*
sérieusement, *seriously.*
pour rire, *in a joke.*
pour badiner, *in jest.*
en riant, en badinant, } *for fun.*
de son chef, de *sa tête*, { *of his*, or *her own head, mind*, or *accord.*

étourdiment, *giddily.*
à l'étourdie, *heedlessly.*
sottement, *sillily.*
témérairement, *rashly.*
à la légère, *lightly.*
à la volée, { *headlong, inconsiderately.*
à la hâte, { *hastily, in a hurry, in a huddle.*
précipitamment, { *with precipitation.*
brusquement, *bluntly.*
par inadvertence, *inadvertently.*
par mégarde, *by oversight.*
par méprise, *through mistake.*
au hasard, *at random.*
par hasard, { *by chance, accidentally.*
à l'aventure, *at a venture.*
à tout hasard, au pis aller, } *let the worst come to the worst.*
goute à goute, *by drops.*
à l'étroit, *narrowly.*
d'accord, *agreed.*
à genoux, { *on one's knees, with my, his, her, their, bended knees.*
à mort, *mortally.*
à la mort, à l'article de la mort, au point de la mort, } *at the point of death.*
tout au long, *at large.*
tout-à-fait, *quite.*
à la bonne foi, de bonne foi, } *sincerely.*
de bon jeu, de bonne guerre, } *fairly.*
de nécessité, *necessarily.*
à toute force, *by all means.*
de toutes les manières, *all ways.*
à tous égards, { *to all intents and purposes.*
à l'improviste, *unawares.*

au dépourvu,	*unthought on.*
sans y penser, sans s'y attendre,	*unexpectedly.*
inopinément,	*napping.*
à l'amiable,	*amicably.*
en ami,	*friendly.*
à fleur d'eau,	*between wind and water.*
à l'étuvée,	*stewed.*
en paix,	*in peace.*
paisiblement,	*peaceably.*
en repos,	*quietly.*
à vide,	*empty.*
à sec,	*dried up.*
sans façon,	*without ceremony.*
de travers,	*cross, across.*
de biais,	*bias, crosi, slopingly.*
de guingois,	*awry.*
de niveau,	*even with.*
avec soin,	*carefully.*
exactement,	*exactly, accurately.*
grossièrement,	*rudely.*
d'une manière grossière,	*unmannerly.*
fort et ferme,	*stoutly.*
en diligence,	*in haste.*
à pied,	*on foot.*
à cheval,	*on horseback.*
à califourchon,	*astradale.*
en carrosse,	*in a coach.*
en bateau,	*in a boat.*
à la mode,	*after the fashion.*
à la Françoise,	*after the French way* or *fashion.*
à l'Angloise,	*after the English fashion.*

Adverbs of Affirmation.

oui,	*yes.*
oui-dà,	*ay, ay marry.*
oui vraiment, oui en vérité,	*yes indeed.*
certes, assurément,	*sure, to be sure, assuredly.*
certainement,	*certainly.*
en vérité,	*in truth.*
à la vérité,	*indeed.*
vraiment,	*verily.*
véritablement,	*truly.*
sans doute,	*without doubt.*
volontiers,	*readily, willingly.*
sans faute,	*without fail.*
immanquablement, infailliblement,	*infallibly.*
indubitablement,	*undoubtedly.*

Of Negation.

non, ne, ni, point, pas, non pas,	*no, not.*
point du tout,	*not at all.*
nullement,	*by no means.*
en nulle manière.	*in no wise, not in the least.*

Of Doubt.

peut-être,	*perhaps.*
probablement,	*probably.*
vraisemblablement,	*very likely.*

Adverbs of Comparison, &c.

ainsi,	*thus.*
de même,	*so.*
comme cela,	*like this,* or *that.*
de cette manière?	*after,* or *in this* or *that manner.*
en partie,	*partly.*
tout autant,	*as much, exactly so.*
tout à la fois,	*altogether.*
séparément,	*separately.*
à part,	*apart, by one's self.*
à l'écart,	*out of the way.*
à quartier,	*aside.*
plus, *more.*	moins, *less.*
pis, *worse.*	mieux, *better.*
de pis en pis,	*worse and worse.*
de mieux en mieux,	*better and better.*

ni plus ni moins,	*neither more nor less.*
de part & d'autre,	*on both sides.*
à plus forte raison,	*much more*, or *much less.*
universellement,	*universally.*
généralement,	*generally.*
doucement,	*gently.*
autrement,	*otherwise.*
particulièrement,	*particularly.*
en particulier,	*especially, in private.*
principalement,	*chiefly.*
sur-tout,	*above all.*
après-tout,	*after all, upon the whole.*
au contraire,	*on the contrary.*

Of Interrogation.

quand, *when.*	pourquoi, *why.*
combien, *how much, how many.*	
combien de fois,	*how often, how many times.*
comment,	*how.*
où,	*where.*

CHAP. VII.

Of PREPOSITIONS.

A PREPOSITION is a part of speech indeclinable, which denotes the several relations of nouns, pronouns, verbs, adverbs, and even propositions, and without which it has no complete sense: as

Avec la permission du Roi, with the King's leave; *pour moi*, for me; *après avoir diné*, after having dined; *jusqu'à présent*, till now; *jusqu'après minuit*, till past midnight.

Prepositions are either simple; as *devant* before, *sur* upon, *par* by, *&c.* or compound; as *au devant de, vis-à-vis*, over against, *par dessus* above, *&c.*

The following Prepositions are immediately followed by their regimen, or the noun which they govern.

A	Londres,	At *London.*
De	France,	From *France.*
Dès	ce temps-là,	From *that time.*
Avant	vous,	Before *you.*
Devant	lui,	Before *him.*
Derrière	elle,	Behind *her.*
Avec	moi,	With *me.*
Attendu	sa promesse,	Considering *his promise.*
Vû	son âge,	Seeing *his age.*
Chez	nous,	At, *or* to *our house.*
Après	les Fêtes,	After *the* Holydays.
Depuis	Noël,	Since Christmas.
Dans	la ville,	In *the* city.

En	été,	In *summer.*
Durant	l'hiver,	During *the winter.*
Pendant	la cérémonie,	During *the ceremony.*
Entre	vous & moi,	Between *you and me.*
Parmi	eux,	Among *them.*
Environ	dix hommes,	About *ten men.*
Vers	la nuit,	Towards *night.*
Envers	ses amis,	To, *or* towards *his friends.*
Selon	son avis,	According to *his advice.*
Suivant	ce qu'il sera,	According to *what he will do.*
Comme	sa mère,	Like *his*, or her *mother.*
Contre	la porte,	By *the door.*
Touchant	l'ouvrage,	Concerning *the work.*
Concernant	l'affaire,	About *the matter.*
Sans	raison,	Without *any reason.*
Pour	les frais,	For *the charges.*
Moyennant	cela,	By *that* means.
Nonobstant	cela,	Notwithstanding *that.*
Excepté / *Hormis* / *Hors*	la science,	Except / But *learning.*
Malgré	tout le monde,	In spite of *all the world.*
Outre	ce sujet,	Besides *that subject.*
Par	la fenêtre,	By, *or* at *the window.*
Sur	la table	Upon *the table.*
Sous	la chaise,	Under *the chair.*
de Dessus	son visage,	From *her face.*
de Dessous	le lit,	From *under the bed.*
par Dessus	la tête,	Above *the head.*
par Dessous	le carrosse,	Under *the coach.*
par Deçà	les monts,	On this side *the Alps.*
par Delà	la rivière,	On that side *the river.*
à Travers	le corps,	Through *the body.*
sauf	son recours,	But with *a remedy.*

The following require the other Preposition de *before the next noun, or are always attended by one of these particles*, de, du, des.

Auprès	*de* moi,	By *me.*
Près	*du* feu,	Near *the fire.*
Proche	*du* Palais,	Near *the Palace.*
Faute	*de* payement,	For want of *payment.*
Hors	*de* la ville,	Out of *the city.*
Loin	*du* bois,	At a distance from the wood.
Le long	*de* la prairie,	Along the meadow.

Ensui

Ensuite	*de* cela,	After *that.*
A cause	*d'*elle,	On *her account.*
A l'égard	*de* la fille,	As to *the girl.*
A l'insçu	*de* son père,	Without the knowledge of *his father.*
A l'exception	*de* son mari,	*Her husband* excepted.
A moins	*d'*un écu,	Under *a crown.*
A la réserve	*d'*une pension,	Excepting *a pension.*
A couvert	*de* l'orage,	Sheltered from *the storm.*
A l'abri	*des* coups,	Secure from *the blows.*
Au deçà / *En deçà*	*de* la haie,	On the side of *the hedge.*
Au delà	*du* Rhin,	On the other side *the Rhine.*
Au dessus	*d'*elle,	Above *her.*
Au dessous	*de* lui,	Below *him.*
Au devant	*de* quelqu'un (aller)	*To go and meet one.*
Au derrière	*de* la porte,	Behind *the door.*
Autour / *A l'entour*	*du* pot,	About the *bush.* (Prov.)
Aux environs	*de* sa maison,	Round about *his house.*
A l'exclusion	*de* sa femme,	Excepting *his wife.*
A force	*de* bras,	By strength of *arms.*
A rebours	*de* poil,	Against *the hair.*
Au prix	*de* son honneur,	At the expense of *his honour.*
A raison	*de* cinq* pour cent,	At the rate of *five per cent.*
Vis-à vis	*de* la Bourse,	Over-against *the Exchange.*
A l'opposite	*de* sa maison,	Opposite to *his house.*
Au travers	*de* la cuisse,	Through *his thigh.*
Au lieu	*de* cela,	Instead of *that.*
Au moyen	*de* quoi,	In virtue *whereof.*
Au péril / *Au risque*	*de* sa vie,	At the peril of *his life.*
Au milieu	*de* la rue,	In the middle of *the street.*
A fleur	*d'*eau,	Near the edge of *the water.*
Au niveau	*de* la cour,	Even with *the yard.*
A rez de terre, ou	*de* chaussee,	Even, *or* level with *the ground.*
A côté	*de* sa femme,	By *his wife.*
A la faveur	*de* la nuit,	By means of *the night.*
Au dépens	*de* la compagnie,	At the expense of *the society.*
En dépit	*de* son mari,	In spite of *her husband.*
A la mode	*de* France,	After the manner of *the French.*
Pour l'amour	*d'*elle,	For the sake of *her.*
Au grand regret	*de* tout le monde,	To the great regret of *every body.*

* *g* is sounded.

These four require the other Preposition à *before their noun, or are always attended by one of these particles*, à, au, aux.

Jusqu'	*aux* Indes,	As far as *the Indies.*
Par rapport	*à* lui,	With respect to *him.*
Quant	*à* moi,	As for *my part.*
Sauf	*à* la partie à se pourvoir,	But *the plaintiff is at liberty to sue* (a law phrase).

CHAP. VIII.

Of CONJUNCTIONS.

A CONJUNCTION is a part of speech indeclinable, which serves to join the members and parts of speech together, showing the dependency of relation, and coherency between the words and sentences.

Most of them are Adverbs or Prepositions attended by *que* or *de*: and therefore it is to be observed here, that many and the same words are Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions, according to the divers respects with which they are used grammatically, that is, according to the divers relations which they have to the other parts of speech which they are joined to.

Conjunctions are either simple or compound. They are divided into Comparative and Copulative, or of Collection; Disjunctive, Adversative, or of Opposition; Conditional, and Exceptive; Dubitative, Declarative, and Concessive; Causal, Concluding, or of Conclusion, and Transitive.

Conjunctions *Copulative* are those that join, and, as it were, couple two terms together; as two Adnouns with one and the same Noun or Verb; or two Prepositions with the same affirmation or negation. And the *Comparative* are those that denote besides a respect of Comparison between things. Such are

et, &.	*and.*	de même que,	*as, just as.*
comme,	*as, whereas.*	ainsi que,	*as, as also, as likewise.*
comme si,	*as if, as tho'.*	tant que,	*as much as, as many as.*
de sorte que, en sorte que, de manière que, tellement que, si bien que,	*so that, in such a manner that, insomuch that.*	non plus,	*neither.*
		non plus que,	*no more than.*
		en tant que,	*as, as much as.*
aussi *(followed by* que)	*as.*	non-seulement,	not only.
aussi bien que,	*as well as.*		mais

mais encore,	*but also*, or *but even.*	savoir,	*to wit.*
mais même,		d'autant que,	*whereas, for as much as.*
mais aussi,		ni plus ni moins que,	*just as, even as.*
de plus,	*moreover, besides, further.*		
outre cela,	*besides, besides that, add to that.*	and *si*, so, in the sense of *aussi*: as *si savant que*, so learned that, *or* as, *&c.*	
outre que,			
joint que,			

The *Disjunctive* show a respect of separation or division; as,

ni,	*nor, neither.*	au lieu de,	*instead of.*
soit,	*whether.*	au lieu que,	*whereas.*
soit que,	*or.*	ou, *or* ou bien,	*or else.*

The *Adversative* denote restriction or contrariety:

mais,	*but.*	nonobstant que,	*notwithstanding that.*
néanmoins,	*nevertheless.*	bien loin de,	*far from, so far from.*
pourtant,	*yet, however.*	tant s'en faut que,	
toutefois,	*yet, for all that.*	quoique,	*although*, or *though*, or *tho'.*
cependant,	*yet, however, in the mean while.*	bien que,	
		encore que,	

The *Conditional*, which suppose a condition, serve to restrain and limit what has been just said: as,

si,	*if, whether.*	en tout cas,	*however*, or *whatever happens.*
sinon,	*if not, or else.*		
comme si,	*as if, as tho'.*	à moins que,	*unless.*
pourvû que,	*provided that, so.*	à moins de,	
à condition que,	*upon condition*, or *with a proviso that, suppose, put the case*, or *in case that.*	sans, sans que,	*without.*
bien entendu que,		si ce n'est que,	*except that.*
supposez que,		excepté que,	
posez le cas que,		quand,	*tho', altho', followed in French by the* conditional *tense.*
au cas que,		quand même,	
en cas que,		quand bien même,	
en cas de,			

The *Dubitative* show some doubt or suspension of the mind: as, si, *whether*; savoir si, *whether or no, the question is whether.*

The *Declarative*, which serve to illustrate and explain a thing: as, pour lors, *then.* savoir, *to wit.* sur-tout, especially. c'est-à-dire, *that is to say.* comme par exemple, *as for instance*, or example.

The

oui dà, *ay, ay.*
eh bien, *well.*
adieu, *farewell.*
voici, *here is, behold.*
voilà, *there is,* or *there are.*

Besides the articles le, la, les; *and these, invented to imitate the sounds of dumb creatures, and the noise which is occasioned by the clashing of bodies against one another,* Bêê, Cric, Crac, Tic, Tac, Pouf, Patatras.

Interjective Particles.

ah!	*ha, ah! (for almost all the emotions of the mind, as* joy, fear, grief, &c. *but differently uttered according to the emotion which it expresses.)*
hélas!	*alas! (for grief.)*
ouf. aï, *or* aye,	*pho! (for pain.)*
bon!	*well, right, (for both assenting and dissenting to something, liking or disliking.)*
ouais,	*edod, pshaw, (for discontent.)*
fi,	*fye upon, (for dislike and aversion.)*
oh! oh! oh!	*(for derision.)*
que! quoi!	*how! what! (for exclamation.)*
Eh! / bon Dieu! / Miséricorde! / O dame!	*lack a-day, / bless me, / Dear Sirs! / for surprise.*
allons, / courage, / alerte,	*come on, / cheer up, / courage, / for encouraging those we speak to.*
bis, (*s* sounds)	*encore, again, (for repeating.)*
holà, / tout beau,	*hold, / softly, / for repressing, checking, and stopping some emotion.*
paix, chut, 'st	*hist, hush, (for silencing.)*
Garre,	*have a care, clear the way, (for making people go out of the way.)*
holà, ho, hem,	*o, ho, soho, (for calling.)*
Vive le Roi, / Vive la joie, / Vivat,	*Huzza! (for shouting.)*
Zest,	*fiddlestick, pshaw, (for derision and dislike.)*

PART

PART III.

Of SYNTAX, *or* CONSTRUCTION.

SYNTAX is the regular joining of the Parts of Speech together, conformably to the genius of a language.

In the construction of the French speech, two things are most accurately to be considered: Concord and Government.

CONCORD is the absolute agreement of,

I. The Article and Adnoun with the Noun.

II. The Verb with its Subject.

III. The Relative with the Antecedent.

GOVERNMENT is the influence which some parts of speech have over others: as,

I. A Verb, Adnoun, or Preposition over a Noun or Pronoun, in requiring it to be in such or such a state rather than in another.

II. A Conjunction, or Preposition over a Verb, which they govern in such or such a Mood.

III. A Noun over an Adnoun, by which sometimes it will be followed, and another time will give the Adnoun the precedency as likewise Verbs over Adverbs, or Adverbs over themselves; some having the special privilege of coming before others, when they meet together in a sentence.

Herein consists the whole mystery of the French Tongue. Therefore, after having seen hitherto the form and nature of the words which it is composed of, we shall, in the same order, consider their Use and Construction.

CHAP. I.

Of NOUNS.

D

I. WHEN two or more nouns come together, without a comma between them, they all govern each the next in the second state (or genitive case), and so on (that is, the first is always followed by the preposition *de*, either alone, or contracted with the article before the next noun); but that second state can never come in French before the noun that governs it, as in English, but after: as,

Les Gardes du Roi, The King's guards.

La porte de la maison, the house's gate.

La

A *La Philosophie de Newton*, Newton's Philosophy.

Pour le service de la flotte du Roi, for the service of the King's fleet.

Voici la maison de l'associé du frère de ma femme, here's my wife's brother's partner's house.

Elle avoit médiocrement d'esprit, She had a moderate understanding.

Sometimes *of* is left out in English, and the latter noun, instead of the preposition, is put former, and ends in *s*; as in
B the example, *my wife's brother's partner's house*, instead of *the house* of *the partner* of *the brother* of *my wife*.——Sometimes also the two nouns come together without *of* before the latter, or *'s* after the former, and like a compound word: as *the chamber-door*: but the first of them is governed of the second, which must always come first in French with one of these particles, *de*, *du*, *des*, before the governed; as in the said instances.

II. The Article and Adnoun agree with the Noun in gender and number: as,

Un beau Prince, a handsome Prince.

Un belle Princesse, a handsome Princess.

C *Le méchant homme*, the wicked man.

La méchante femme, the wicked woman.

De méchantes gens, wicked people.

Nevertheless we say still *Lettres royaux* (a law term), instead of *Lettres patentes*, or *Patentes du Roi*, Lettres patents, used on all other occasions.

III. When two or more nouns of different numbers and genders, or genders only, have an adnoun common to both, it agrees in number and gender with the last: as,

Il avoit les yeux & la bouche ouverte, } His eyes and mouth
or *Il avoit la bouche & les yeux ouverts*, } were opened.

D *Il trouva les étangs & les rivières* glacées, He found the ponds and rivers frozen.

But when there is one, or many words, between the last noun and the adnoun, that adnoun (common to all) agrees with the noun masculine, tho' the last noun be feminine: and if the nouns are singular, then the adnoun common shall be put in the plural number, and masculine gender:

L'étang & la rivière étoient glacés,

The ponds and river were frozen.

Les étangs & les rivières qu'il trouva glacés,

The ponds and rivers which he found frozen.

Le travail, la conduite & la fortune joints *ensemble*, and not *jointes*, (on account of the word *ensemble*, which presents a whole.) A

Pains, conduct, and fortune joined together.

And when the adnoun (common to three or more nouns, whether of the same or of different genders) is preceded and governed by the verb *être*, it must have another noun plural, as *choses*, *avantages*, *biens*, *maux*, &c. to agree with: as

L'or, l'argent, la renommée, les honneurs, & les dignités, sont des choses *incertaines & périssables*, or *sont des* biens *incertains & périssables.*

Gold, silver, fame, honours, and dignities, are uncertain and perishable. B

Chose, a thing (a noun feminine), joined to *quelque* (*quelque chose*, something), is masculine, and therefore requires the next adnoun or pronoun relative to agree with that gender: as,

Je suis assis sur quelque chose, *qui me paroît* dur, I sit upon something that feels hard; *Quand j'ai perdu* quelque chose, *je* le *cherche*, when I have lost something, I look for it.

Partie, a part (a noun fem.), governing a noun masc. and attended by an adnoun, won't have the adnoun agree with it, but with that noun masc. which it governs in the second state: as,

Il a une partie du bras cassé, and not *cassée*, a part of his arm is broken.

Il trouva une partie de ses hommes morts, and not *morte*, he found a part of his men dead.

It is the same with these words, *la plupart*, the most part; *foule*, crowd; *troupe*, *multitude*, multitude; *nombre*, number; *moitié*, half; *espèce*, kind; *sorte*, sort, governing a noun masc. and attended by an adnoun: as, C

Quand il vit la plupart or *la moitié de ses soldats étendus par terre* or *tués*, and not *étendue* and *tuée*, when he saw the most part, or half of his soldiers lying down, or killed; *une troupe de gens étourdis*, and not *étourdie*, a multitude of giddy people; *une espèce de bois qui est fort dur*, and not *dure*, a kind of wood which is very hard; *une sorte de vin qui est assez bon*, not *bonne*, a pretty good sort of wine. But the other collective nouns are not liable to that construction, and we say,

Les tiers des vignes est gelé, not *gelées*; the third part of the vines are frozen; *les trois quarts du château furent brulés*, and not *fut brulé*, three parts out of four of the castle were burnt.

And if the noun governed in the second state is feminine, the adnoun agrees likewise with its gender: as,

Quand il vit une partie de son armée défaite, when he saw a part of his army defeated; *une espèce de pierre qui est fort dure*, a kind of stone very hard; *une sorte de liqueur assez bonne*, a tolerable good sort of liquor. D

(See also page 274.)

CHAP. II.

Of the ARTICLE.

NOUNS express things, 1°. in a *general* and *universal* sense, including the whole species of the thing signified by the word: as *Man* was born, or *Men* were born for society; *L'homme est né*, or *les hommes sont nés pour la société*. Man and *Men* is said of human kind, and signifies every man and woman:

2°. In

A 2°. In a *particular* and *individual* sense, denoting a particular object, one individual only of the species: as *The earth* turns and not *the sun*, la terre *tourne*, & *non* le soleil; *The Man* whom I speak of is not sociable, l'homme *dont je parle n'est pas sociable*. *The earth*, *the sun* denote particular objects; and *the man* is taken in an individual sense, for I speak of one man only, and I show who that man is who is not sociable, *to wit*, he that I speak of.

3°. In a *limited* sense, which denotes neither the totality or universality, nor any particular individual of the species, but only part of it: as *Bread* is enough for me, *Du pain me suffit*; Give me some *meat* and *beer*, *Donnez-moi de la viande & de la*
B *bière*; We daily see *men* that have less reason than *brutes*: *On voit tous les jours* des hommes *qui ont moins de raison que* des bêtes; *Bread*, *meat*, *beer*, *men*, and *brutes*, are not taken in the general sense, that includes the totality of the substance and species; for I do not speak of all the *bread*, *meat*, *beer* in the world, nor of all *men* and *brutes*, but only of part of those substances, and some of those species.—Neither do I speak of any particular part of those substances, nor of any individual man or brute. Therefore these words are taken in a limited sense.

4°. Nouns express things in an *indefinite* and *unspecified* sense, not so much serving to name any particular thing, as to qua-
C lify that which has been named before; as Kings are *men* as well as others, *Les Rois sont* hommes *comme les autres*; She is a *woman*, *Elle est* femme; *men* and *woman*, are not used, in these and other like sentences, in order to name the things which are the subject of the speech, but only to qualify this noun *Kings* and pronoun *she*, which are spoken of, in showing what both are.

It appears by these observations, wherein the ways of using nouns are carefully analysed, that they require the article in all the senses but one, in which they may be taken; that the article is the same in all relations and circumstances of the noun, being *le* for the masc. *la* for the fem. and *les* for the plur.
D masc. and fem. and that the limited sense, which excludes both the universality and individuality, is expressed by the particle *de* before the article, with which it is contracted, according to the genius of the language, when the noun is masculine, and begins with a consonant.

Nothing therefore is more plain, and easy to explain, than the construction of the article; and yet nothing has been more perplexed by our Grammarians, who are at a loss how *to treat it*, making it several fold, and all dividing it into *definite* and *indefinite*, and subdividing it besides, without being

able

able to define what they mean, or to account for the construction of the article. The following are clear, exact, and easy rules concerning the whole matter. A

¶ Proper names of Persons and Places, as Towns, Villages, &c. take no article. See p. 214. 12°.]

The article is used, 1°, Before the names of the things which are spoken of. Therefore nouns of Substances, Arts, Sciences, Metals, Virtues and Vices, nouns of Countries, Kingdoms and Provinces, Mountains, Rivers, and Winds, and others like, having no article before them in English, require the article in French; as,

L'*or* & l'*argent ne sauroient faire* le *bonheur de* l'*homme*,
Gold and *silver* cannot make the happiness of *man*. B
La *vertu seule peut le rendre heureux*, & *il n'y a que* le *vice qui puisse le rendre malheureux*,
Virtue alone can make him happy, and nothing but *vice* can make him unhappy *or* miserable.
La *France est le plus beau pays de* l'*Europe*,
France is the finest country in *Europe*.
Le *sort de* l'*Espagne dépend de* la *Havanne*,
The fate of *Spain* depends upon the *Havanna*.
C'est à l'*Angleterre qu'on doit* la *découverte de* la *circulation* du *sang*,
It is to *England* the world is beholden for the discovery of the circulation of the blood. C

From the nouns of Countries, Kingdoms and Provinces, except these, which take their names from their capital city, besides some republics.

Alger,	Algier.	*Grenade*,	Grenada.	*Monaco*,	Monaco.
Avignon,	Avignon.	*Gênes*,	Genoa.	*Naples*,	Naples.
Babylone,	Babylon.	*Genève*,	Geneva.	*Orange*,	Orange.
Candie,	Candia.	*Florence*,	Florence.	*Rome*,	Rome.
Cordoue,	Cordova.	*Lucques*,	Lucca.	*Séville*,	Seville.
Corse,	Corsica.	*Léon*,	Leon.	*Tolède*,	Toledo.
Comminges,	Comminges.	*Malthe*,	Malta.	*Tunis*,	Tunis.
Cornouailles,	Cornwall.	*Maroc*,	Morocco.	*Tripoli*,	Tripoli.
Chipre,	Cyprus.	*Murcie*,	Murcia.	*Valence*,	Valentia.
Carthage,	Carthage.	*Madagascar*,	Madagascar.	*Venise*,	Venice.

Except some few, taken notice of in my Exercises, those proper names of countries are commonly used with one of these before them, *république*, *principauté*, *état*, *pays*, *île*; as, *l'île de Candie* ou *de Malthe*, the island of Candia *or* Malta; *le pays d'Avignon*, the country of Avignon; *la principauté d'Orange*, the principality of Orange; *la république de Genève*, the republic of Geneva, &c. D

2°. When the words attending the names of Countries and Kingdoms (in Europe), respect them immediately as to *coming from*, or *going out*, the names of those countries are used without the article.

Therefore we say with the preposition *de* only, *Venir de France*, to come *from France*; *Sortir d'Angleterre*, to go out of England.

A *Le blé se vend un écu* le *boisseau*, wheat is sold for a crown *a* bushel;
Le beurre vaut six sous la *livre*, butter costs six pence *a* pound;
Les œufs valent quatre sous la *douzaine*, eggs cost a groat *a* dozen.

¶ In the following phrases, and the like, the French article *le* is likewise used instead of the English indefinite article *a*:

Dans la prospérité en peut difficilement reconnoître l'ami, it is difficult to know *a* friend in prosperity; *l'air spirituel dans les hommes*, *a* sprightly mien in men; *le chien est l'ami de l'homme*, the dog is *a* friend to man.]

6° These following prepositions (twenty one in number) generally will have the article before the next noun.

avant,	before	*envers*,	towards.	*pendant*,	for.
B *après*,	after.	*excepté*.	except.	*selon*,	according.
chez,	at, to.	*hors*,	out.	*sous*,	under.
dans,	in.	*hormis*,	except.	*suivant*,	according.
depuis,	since.	*nonobstant*,	notwithstanding.	*sur*,	upon.
devant,	before.			*touchant*,	concerning.
derrière,	behind.	*parmi*,	among.	*vers*,	towards.
durant,	during.				

As *chez le Prince*, at the Prince's; *dans la chambre*, in the room; *sous la table*, under the table, *&c.*

en will have no article before the next noun; as *en ville* in town, *en campagne* in the country, *&c.* and

C The following prepositions sometimes require the article before the next noun (when it is used as a *Denomination* or *Appellation*); and sometimes not (when it is used only as a *Modification* or *Qualification*):

à,	at, to.	*contre*,	against.	*pour*,	for.
de,	of, from.	*entre*,	between.	*outre*,	besides.
avec,	with.	*par*,	by.	*sans*,	without.

Examples will make this rule more plain to those who are not used to abstract observations.

Sans les passions, où seroient la vertu & le vice?
Without passions, where would virtue and vice be?
D *Vivre sans passions c'est vivre sans plaisirs*,
Living without passions is living without pleasures.

Passions, *vertu*, and *vice*, in the first sentence, are used as denominations, or names of the things which are the subject of our speech. *Passions* and *plaisirs* are not used in the second, as denominations; for they are not the things of which something is said; *vivre* (living) is the thing spoken of: but they are used as modifications or qualifications, showing what sort of living is spoken of.

7° The article is used before all nouns of dignities, qualities, offices, and professions, even before names or abusive words, so they

they come after such names as *monsieur*, *monseigneur*, *madame*, *mademoiselle*: as, A

Monsieur le *Dauphin*, the Dauphin; *Madame* la *Duchesse*, my Lady-Duchess; *Mr.* le *Docteur*, Doctor; *Monseigneur* l'*Archevêque*, my Lord Archbishop; *Monsieur* le *Paresseux*, Mr. Lazybones, or Idle-back; *Madame* la *Coureuse*, Mrs. Gad about; *Mademoiselle* la *Libertine*, Mrs. Romp; *&c.*

Except with nouns of trades and mechanical professions, which never take *monsieur* or *madame* before them. Thus we do not say of, or to Merchants, Taylors, Shoemakers, *&c.* *Mr. le Marchand*, *Mr. le Tailleur*, *Mr. le Cordonnier.*

B

The article is used in speaking and calling to people, which relation of the noun answers to the Vocative of the Latin: as,

Ecoutez, la *belle fille*, hark ye, pretty girl.
Parlez, l'*homme*, *parlez*, la *femme*,
Speak to me, man or woman.

We also say without the article, but with an adnoun before the noun, or without any noun at all, *Ecoutez*, *bon homme*, *ou bonne femme*, hark ye, good man or woman; *Etudiez paresseux*, study, you idle fellow.——Calling to a coachman, we say without the article, *Cocher*, *êtes-vous loué?* Coachman, are you hired? tho' we call to a man that sells rabbits about the streets, or to an herb-woman, with the article, *l'homme aux lapins*, *la femme aux herbes.* This oddness of expression will be best learnt by practice. It is enough to have taken notice of it.

As for the particle interjective *ô* before nouns, it is used only with exclamation: as *O infortuné que je suis!* O unhappy me! *O femme, que ta vertu est grande!* How great is thy virtue, O woman! C

8°. The article is used with nouns having an adnoun before them in sentences of admiration and exclamation; in which case, the noun is always repeated with *que* between, without any verb. These ways of speaking are rendered in English as follows:

L'illustre maison que *la maison de Bourbon!*
What an illustrious house the house of Bourbon is!
Le *sage Roi* que *le Roi de Prusse!*
What a wise and prudent King the King of Prussia is!
L'indigne traitement que *celui qu'elle m'a fait souffrir!*
How unworthy is the treatment I have received from her! D

9°. When the noun is not taken in a general and universal sense, including the whole species; nor in the particular and individual sense, denoting a particular object, one particular individual of the species; but denotes only part of the substance or thing signified by the noun; that limited sense is expressed by the particle *de* before the article, or contracted with it, if the noun is masculine. (*See* p. 111.) Nouns taken in that sense imply the word *some*, which in English is sometimes expressed, *sometimes not; and in French is never understood*: as,

A *Donnez-moi* du *pain*, de la *viande*, de l'*argent*, des *habits*;
Give me *some* bread, *some* meat, money, clothes.
Cette liqueur ressemble à du *vin*, that liquor is like wine.
J'ai affaire à des *gens fort honnêtes*,
I have to do with very honest people.

But when the noun is preceded by an adnoun, it loses its article, and is contented with the particle *de*: as,

Donnez-moi de *bon pain*, de *bonne viande*, de *bons habits*;
Give me good bread, good meat, good clothes.
J'ai affaire à de *fort honnêtes gens*, I have to do with very, *&c.*

B Again, *On l'a dépouillé* de *belles charges qu'il possédoit*, he has been divested of fine places which he enjoy'd; *On l'a dépouillé* des *belles charges qu'il possédoit*, he has been stript of the fine places which he was possessed of. The word *charge* is restrained in the first sentence, by the limiting particle *de*, and signifies only *some of his places*; whereas in the other sentence, the article contracted with the preposition (*des* for *de les*) shows that the word is taken in the universal sense, and signifies *all his places*. From whence you may observe, that some expressions that seem to be alike in French, are very far from being so.

10°. In many cases either of these two particles, *du* or *un*, may be used; but with this difference:

When the noun is used without an adnoun, it requires *du*; and *un*, when with an adnoun: as,

C *Il y a* du *danger à aller sur mer*, there is danger in going to sea.
Ceux qui vont sur mer, courent un *grand danger*, or *de grands dangers*, those who go to sea run a great danger, *or* great dangers.
J'entens du *bruit* (and not *un bruit*), I hear a noise.
J'entens un *grand bruit* (and not *du*), I hear a great noise.

The particle *un* (which is no more an article than *quelque*, *tout*, &c.) is used in speaking of things that can be told one by one; or are denoted by opposition to two or more; as *J'ai un pain*, I have a loaf; *Je ne veux qu'une pomme*, I will have but one apple.

11°. The pronouns *moi*, *toi*, *soi*; *ce*, *celui*; *qui*, *quel* (taken in the sense of *what*); *mon*, *ton*, *son*, &c. used either with or without the prepositions *de*, *à*, &c. take no article: But *mien*, *tien*, *sien*, &c.
D *même*, and *quel* (in the sense of *which*), always require it: as,

De qui parlez-vous?	*De quel homme parlez-vous?*
Who are you speaking of?	Of what man are you speaking?
Duquel? De laquelle?	*De lui, D'elle, D'eux,*
Of which?	Of him, Of her, Of them.

12°. No article is used with proper names of Persons, Places, and Planets (except *la terre* the earth, *le soleil* the sun, *la lune* the moon), and before these nouns of honour which use has prefixed to proper names;

Monsieur,

Monsieur, Sir, Master,	*Maître*, Master,	A
Madame, Madam,	*Messire*, } a particular title of	
Mademoiselle, Miss,	*Saint*, } some persons of dis-	
Monseigneur, my Lord,	*Sainte*, } tinction and Saints.	

When these nouns are used without the pronoun of which they are composed, they take the article: as *le sieur*, *la dame*, *la demoiselle*, &c. We also say *les Messieurs qui sont ici*, the gentlemen who are here; and never *les Mesdames*, not *les Messeigneurs*: but *les Dames*, *les Seigneurs*.

From proper names, except some of renowned Poets and Painters of Italy, which keep the article: B

Le Tasse,	*l'Arioste*,	*le Titien*,	*le Poussin*,	*l'Aretin*,
du Tasse,	*de l'Arioste*,	*du Titien*,	*du Poussin*,	*de l'Arétin*,
au Tasse,	*à l'Arioste*,	*au Titien*,	*au Poussin*,	*à l'Arétin*.

Add to them *le Bourdon*, *le Brugle*, *le Caracha*, *le Corrège*, *le Guide*, *le Guerchin*, *le Mutien*, *le Tintoret*, *l'Albane*, *le Bernardin*, *le Dominiquain*, *l'Espagnolet*, *le Pinturicchio*. But we don't say *le Michel-Ange*, *le Raphael*, &c.

When any of these particles, *le*, *la*, *de*, *du*, *des*, make part of the proper name, it is never contracted with the prepositions:

Du Pré,	*Le Maître*,	*De Tourville*,	*La Place*,
de du Pré,	*de le Maître*,	*de de Tourville*,	*de la Place*,
à du Pré.	*à le Maître*,	*à de Tourville*, &c.	*à la Place*.

And when we speak in a contemptuous manner of a woman (it is always the case when we speak of a woman of the town), we use the article, besides the particle of the proper name: as, *Je ne veux plus voir la Du Pré*, I will see Du Pre's wife no more. C

That contemptuous manner of expressing was formerly used also in speaking of an actress, but now it ceases to prevail, since talents are more regarded than the private life of the person; and we say, in speaking of a celebrated actress, *Madame*, *Mademoiselle*.

The preposition *de* is sometimes left out before the word *saint*, for abbreviation sake: as, *l'Eglise St. Paul*, St. Paul's Church; *le Cimetière St. Jean* (a famous place in *Paris*); *la foire St. Laurent*, St Laurence's fair; *la porte St Denis*, St. Denis's gate; *le Faubourg St. Germain* (one of the suburbs of Paris). We also say *le Quai Peletier* (a key at Paris), *le Cours la Reine*, and *le Bourg la Reine* (proper names of places).

13°. When proper names are used in a determinate sense, that is, when they are applied to particular objects, or qualified by an adnoun, then they take the article: as, D

Le Dieu des Chrétiens, the God of Christians; *le bon Dieu ne sauroit être cruel*, God Almighty cannot be cruel; *l'Archimède d'Angleterre*, the Archimedes of England; *l'Amphitrion de Molière*, the Amphitrion of Moliere; *les Cicérons & les Démosthènes*, (and sometimes *les Cicéron*, *les Démosthène*), the Cicero's and the Demosthenes's; *Monsieur le Brun*, Master Brown.

We say without the article *Jean épousera Marie*, John will marry Mary; and with the article *le vieux Janot aime la jeune Babet*, old Jack loves young Betty.

A I cannot help anticipating here the construction of the preposition *de*, and considering some of the relations which it denotes.

14°. The preposition *de* only, without the article, is used,

1*st*, Before nouns following one of these, *sorte*, *espèce*, *genre*, and any other noun of which they express the *Kind*, *Character*, *Cause*, *Matter*, *Quality*, *Nature*, and *Country:* which tribe of nouns are usually englished by an adnoun, or even by the noun itself, placed adjectively, and making together, as it were, but a word compound: as,

Un mal de tête, the head-ache; *une sorte de fruit*, a sort of fruit; *une étoffe de soie*, a silk-stuff; *une montre d'or*, a gold-watch; *de*
B *la laine d'Espagne*, Spanish wool; *une conduite de fou*, a foolish conduct, &c.

Sometimes the English adnoun may be rendered likewise by an adnoun in French; as in the last example, *une conduite folle*, a foolish conduct: but sometimes too the French have no adnoun of the same nature as the English adnoun, and therefore express the English adnoun by a noun of the same signification with *de* before the other noun: as,

Ma diablesse de *femme*,
My devilish wife.
Mon vaurien de *fils*, & *sa* coquine de *mère*,
My *good-for-nothing* son, and his worthless mother.

Sometimes the English express themselves after the same manner as the French, except that the French have no other particle before the second noun but *de*: as,

C'est un Diable d'*homme*,
He is a *Devil of* a man.

C

2*dly*, Before the word of the measure of Magnitude or Increase: as, *il croît tous les jours* d'*un pouce*, it grows an inch every day.

3*dly*, After pronouns indeterminate, *Personne*, *quelqu'un*, &c. *quoi*, *ce qui*, *ce que*, *tout ce qui*, *Je ne sais quoi*, and the impersonal *il y a:* as,

Il n'y a personne de *blessé*, there is nobody wounded.

Y en avoit-il quelqu'un d'*ivre?* Was any of them drunk?

Il y a dans son style je ne sais quoi de *dur*, his style has I don't know what harshness in it.

Ce que je remarque de *drôle*, What I observe comical, &c.

D 4*thly*, Before a participle, when a noun of number precedes: as, *Il y a trente vaisseaux* d'*achevés*, there are thirty ships finished; *il y eut cent hommes* de *tués*, there were an hundred men killed.

It may be sometimes left out, when the noun is expressed before the participle, as in the aforesaid sentences, *cent hommes tués*, *trente vaisseaux achevés*; but those sentences are more usually and elegantly construed with the particle *de*; whereas it cannot be omitted after the noun of number, when the relative pronoun *en* stands in the sentence for the noun: as,

Il y en a trente d'*achevés*, thirty of them are finished.

Il y en eut cinquante de *tués & cent* de *blessés*, there were fifty men killed and an hundred wounded. A

5*thly*, The preposition *de* is used after these words of quantity:

abondance,	abondance *de* vivres,	*plenty of victuals.*
assez,	assez *de* provisions,	*provisions enough.*
beaucoup,	beaucoup *d'*esprit,	*much wit.*
combien,	combien *de* vaisseaux,	*how many ships.*
disette,	disette *de* savans,	*scarcity of learned men.*
guères,	guères *d'*argent,	*very little money.*
peu,	peu *de* gens croient,	*few people think.*
plus & moins,	plus *d'*effets & moins *de* paroles,	*more deeds and fewer words.* B
davantage,	Je n'*en* ai pas davantage,	*I have no more of it.*
quantité,	quantité *de* fruit,	*a great deal of fruit.*
grand nombre,	grand nombre *de* Grammaires,	*a vast number of Grammars.*
tant,	tant *d'*écrivains le disent,	*so many writers say so.*
autant,	autant *de* femmes que *d'*hommes,	*as many women as men.*
trop,	trop *de* peine,	*too much trouble.*

As likewise after

point & pas,	point *de* sens commun,	*no common sense.* C
	pas *de* monnoie,	*no change.*
jamais,	il n'a jamais *d'*argent,	*he never has any money.*
que,	que *de* peines & de soins!	*what care and trouble!*
quoi,	quoi *de* plus juste!	*what can be fairer!*
rien,	rien *de* remarquable,	*nothing remarkable.*
quelque chose,	quelque chose *de* bon,	*something good.*

Bien is also used for *beaucoup*, with this difference, that *bien* requires after it the article; as,

bien de la *peine*	} or	{ *beaucoup* de *peine*,	much pain.
bien du *temps*		*beaucoup* de *temps*,	much time.
bien de l'*argent*		*beaucoup* d' *argent*,	much money.

Observe, that assez *is never put in French after the noun which it governs, as in English, but always before:* as assez de temps, *time enough.* D

But if the noun that comes after those words is determined by what follows, it requires the article besides: as,

Donnez-moi un peu de vin,	*Un peu du vin qui est dans cette bouteille*,
Give me a little wine.	A little of the wine which is in that bottle.
J'ai encore beaucoup d'argent,	*Beaucoup de l'argent que j'ai apporté de France*,
I have a good deal of money still.	A good deal of the money which I brought from France.

15°. Nouns are used without either article or preposition in these following cases: 1°, At the title of a performance, and in the

A the middle of sentences, where they characterise in a particular manner the person or thing spoken of, in which cases the English use especially the particle *a*: as,

Discours sur les obligations de la Religion naturelle,
A discourse concerning the obligations of natural religion.
Première partie——*Préface*——*Table des Matières*,
The first part——*The* Preface——*The* Contents.
Le Comte de Clermont, Prince du sang, mourut le, &c.
The Count of Clermont, *a* Prince of the blood, died the, *&c.*
Le St. George, vaisseau de guerre de quatre vingt-dix pièces de canon.
The St. George, *a* ninety-gun ship.

B 2*dly*, When they come after a pronoun interrogative, or exclamative; as also in sentences of exclamation; or when they they are used by apposition: as,

Quel esprit elle a! Quelle beauté! Quelle Dame avez-vous vûe?
What *a* wit she has! What *a* beauty! What lady have you seen?

Les plus belles fleur sont de bien peu de durée. La moindre pluie les ternit, le vent les fane, le soleil les brûle, et achève de les sécher: sans parler d'une in-
C *finité d'insectes qui les gâtent & les incommodent: naturelle & véritable image de la beauté des Dames.*

The handsomest flowers last but a very short time. The least rain tarnishes them, the wind withers them, the sun scorches them, and completes the drying of them; without mentioning an infinite number of insects that spoil and hurt them: *a* natural and true image of the Ladies beauty!

3*dly*, When they meet with a noun of number, whether it comes before or after them: which noun of number, when it is used as a surname to Kings and Sovereigns, always comes the last, and is the Cardinal number, and not the Ordinal (except in two cases), as in English: as,

Mille cavaliers contre cent fantassins, la partie n'est pas égale,
D *A* thousand horse against *an* hundred foot, it is not fair.
Louis quinze, Lewis *the* fifteenth. *Henry quatre*, Henry *the* 4th.

But if besides the number, the noun had a relation to something else, it would take the article: as,

Les cent fantassins qui se sont défendus contre les *mille cavaliers qu'on avoit envoyés contre eux*, &c. The hundred foot who fought with the thousand horse that were sent against them, *&c.*

4*thly*, After the verb *être*, having not *ce* for its subject (*c'est*); as likewise after *devenir* to become, être estimé, être pris pour, passer pour, to be reckoned, to be accounted, to pass for: because

cause the noun serves then only to qualify something spoken of, and not to name: as, *Mes paroles sont esprit & vie*, my words are spirit and life; *les Rois sont hommes*, Kings are men; *elle est femme*, or *c'est une femme*, she is a woman; *il passe pour matelot*, he passes for a sailor; *il deviendra Docteur avec le temps*, he will prove a Doctor in time. A

But if the noun coming after *être*, or any of the said verbs, is attended by an adnoun, or any other appartenance, it takes the particle *un*: as *Dieu est esprit*, God is *a* spirit; *Dieu est* un *esprit infini*, God is an infinite spirit; *Dieu est* un *Etre qui a toutes les perfections possibles*, God is a being who has all possible perfections, *&c.* B

5*thly*, When nouns are used in an indeterminate and unspecified sense, as likewise in a pathetical way of speaking, or proverbially, as,

Le sage n'a ni amour ni haîne, the wise man has neither love nor hatred. *Il est plein de vin*, it is full of wine. *Intérêt, honneur, conscience sont sacrifiés*, interest, honour, conscience are sacrificed. *Plus fait douceur que violence*, gentle means are more successful than violent means.

16°. No article is put before an adnoun separated from its noun; as, *Les hommes sont méchans*, men are wicked; unless, 1*st*, the adnoun is used substantively, or the noun is understood: as speaking of wine and colours, C

J'aime mieux le *rouge que* le *blanc*, I like red better than white.

Le *verd blessa moins la vûe que* le *rouge*, green hurts the eyes less than red.

Il faut préférer l'utile à l'agréable; we must prefer useful things to those that are agreeable.

2*dly*, Unless it is to qualify a proper name, and distinguish between several persons who could go by the same name: as,

Louis le *bien-aimé*, Lewis the well-beloved: *Chilpéric* le *fainéant*, Chilperic the sluggish.

¶ Verbs, adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions may also be used substantively; in which case they take the article masculine: as, D

Le boire, le manger, le dormir; Drinking, eating, sleeping. (Sometimes the article is likewise left out in French).

Le pourquoi & le comment de toutes choses; The why and the how of every thing.

Le pour & le contre; The pro and con.

Il ne loue guères sans quelque mais; He seldom praises without some restriction.

Il n'y faut pas mettre tant de si et de mais: You must not use so many ifs and ands.]

17°. When a noun has two adnouns joined together by a conjunction, the article is sometimes repeated before each adnoun, and sometimes not. If the adnouns are synonymous, or near akin in their signification, the article is put only before the first: as,

La

A 7*thly*, Adnouns ending in *ic*, *ique* and *if* (tho' some may also come before the noun); as *le bien public*, the public good; *un esprit pacifique*, a pacific mind; *un enfant vif*, a quick child; &c. Except again *du vif-argent*.

8*thly*, Adnouns ending in *able* (mostly derived from verbs): for tho' some may also come before the noun, yet one can never speak improperly in placing them after; as *une terre labourable*, arable land; *un pays inhabitable*, an uninhabitable country; *une personne aimable*, or *une aimable personne*, a lovely person; &c.

3°. Of common adnouns these sixteen generally come before
B the noun:

beau,	fine.	*gros*,	big.	*moindre*,	less.
bon,	good.	*jeune*,	young.	*petit*,	little.
brave,	brave.	*mauvais*,	bad, ill.	*saint*,	holy.
cher,	dear.	*méchant*,	naughty.	*vieux*,	old.
chétif,	sorry.	*meilleur*,	better.	*vrai*,	true.
grand,	great.				

As *un beau garçon*, a fine boy; *un gros ventre*, a big belly; *de bon pain*, good bread; *un petit visage*, a little face; *un brave officier*, a brave officer; *un chétif cheval*, a sorry horse; *six beaux chevauxbais*, six fine bay horses.

C Most other adnouns are almost indifferently placed before or after the noun; at least it is only by reading good books, one can learn which are better put before, and which after. Thus use will have you say, *le haut style*, and *le style sublime*, the lofty style; *les campagnes voisines*, the neighbouring fields; *les bords lointains*, the remote shores; *un habit vieux*, an old coat; *du vin vieux*, old wine; and never *du vieux vin*, *le style haut*, *le sublime style*, &c.

Nu (naked) is one of the adnouns that come after the noun; yet it comes before, and is indeclinable, in one particular case, when jointly with its noun it makes a compound word. Thus though we say *la tête nue*, *les pieds nus* (with one's head or feet bare), we nevertheless say also *être nu-tête* (to be uncovered), *marcher nu pieds* (to walk without shoes and stockings).

¶ In general, the ear must be consulted for the construction of adnouns; they come first, if they are less harmonious than their substantives; they come last, if they
D are more harmonious.]

4°. When the noun is attended by two adnouns, it is sometimes indifferent to put them before or after it: as *un homme méchant*, *& ingénieux*, or *un ingénieux & méchant homme*, an ingenious and wicked man; but it is more sure to put them after, for we don't say *un méchant & ingénieux homme*.

If the noun has three or more adnouns belonging to it, they must absolutely be put after it with the Enclitic *et* before the *last*: which must likewise be observed, even when there are but *two adnouns*; for we do not say *un ingénieux méchant homme*, as

the

the English do, an ingenious wicked man, nor *un désagréable ennuyeux ouvrage*, a disagreeable tedious work. A

Some adnouns being construed with certain nouns will come first, and when construed with others will come last. Thus we say,

homme juste,	a just man.	*juste prix*,	reasonable rate.
action juste,	a just action.	*juste défense*,	a just defence.
action basse,	a mean action.	*à bas prix*,	at a low price.

We likewise say, *le bas Languedoc*, *la basse Normandie*, lower Languedoc or Normandy, *la haute*, *ou basse Saxe*, upper or lower Saxony; *la basse Autriche*, lower Austria; *le bas Rhin*, the lower Rhine; *&c.* and *les pays-bas*, not *les bas pays*, the low countries, not *le Rhin bas*, *le Rhin haut*, &c.

Some other adnouns, which will be put after the noun when they are taken in the proper sense, must be put before it when they are taken in the figurative; as, B

Proper Sense.		Figurative Sense.	
un fruit mûr,	ripe fruit.	*une mûre délibération*,	a mature deliberation.
un homme maigre,	a thin man.	*une maigre chère*,	poor fare.
une femme vive,	a quick woman.	*une vive douleur*,	a smart or sharp pain.
un homme bon,	a good-natured man.	*un bon homme*,	one who means no harm.
un homme pauvre,	a poor man.	*un pauvre homme*,	a sorry fellow.

Many adnouns may be used substantively in French, which the genius of the English Tongue does not allow; I shall take notice of them in a more proper place.

§ II. Of adnouns some always require after them either a noun or a verb, which they govern: as *digne de louange*, praise worthy; *digne d'être aimé*, worthy to be loved; *capable d'enseigner*, capable to teach; *propre à tout*, fit for any thing; *il n'est pas propre à commander en chef*, he is not fit to command in chief; *&c.* C

Some will be used absolutely without being ever attended by any noun or verb: as, *sage*, wise; *vertueux*, virtuous; *incurable*, incurable; *intrépide*, undaunted; *&c.*

Others may be construed both with and without a noun; as *C'est une femme insensible*, She is a woman without any sensibility. *Elle est insensible à l'amour*, She is insensible and a stranger to the passion of love. *Il vit content*, He lives content; *Il est content de sa condition*, He is contented with his condition.

1°. The following adnouns require the preposition *de* before the next noun. Observe that some of them require in English D the preposition *at* or *with* before it.

digne,	worthy.	*mécontent*,	discontented.	*enragé*,	enraged.
indigne,	unworthy.	*comblé*,	loaded, heapt up.	*avide*,	greedy.
capable,	capable.	*taxé*,	taxed.	*las*,	tired.
incapable,	incapable.	*chargé*,	loaded.	*fatigué*,	fatigued.
aise,	glad.	*accusé*,	accused.	*ennuyé*,	weary.
ravi,	overjoyed.	*contrit*,	sorrowful.	*libre*,	free.
joyeux,	joyful.			*qualifié*,	one that has the character of, &c.
content,	contented.				

A as likewise adnouns signifying *Fulness*, *Emptiness*, *Plenty* or *Want*: as *Il est digne de louange*, he is worthy of praise. *Indigne de l'estime que j'ai pour lui*, unworthy of the esteem which I have for him. *Capable* or *incapable de servir sa patrie*, capable *or* incapable to serve one's country. *Comblé d'honneurs*, loaded with honours. *Taxé d'avarice*, charged with avarice. *Chargé de dettes*, deep in debt. *Accusé de mensonge* or *d'avoir menti*, accused of lying. *Je suis aise* or *ravi de son succès*, I am glad, *or* overjoyed at his success. *Fatigué de courir*, fatigued with running. *Ennuyé de la vie* or *de vivre*, weary of life. *Il est qualifié d'ivrogne*, he has the character of a drunkard. *Avide de gloire*, greedy of glory, *&c.*

B 2°. The following adnouns require the preposition *à* before the next noun.

adroit,	dexterous.	*ingénieux*,	ingenious.	*propre*,	fit.
bon,	good.	*contraire*,	contrary.	*ardent*, *âpre*,	eager.
beau,	fine.	*opposé*,	opposite.		
laid,	ugly.	*conforme*,	conformable.	*occupé*,	busy.
agréable,	agreeable.			*lent*,	slow.
désagréable,	disagreeable.	*semblable*,	like.	*nuisible*,	hurtful.
		pareil,	alike.	*prompt*,	quick.
comparable,	comparable.	*enclin*,	inclined.	*prêt*,	ready.
		adonné,	given, addicted.	*sensible*,	sensible.
C *agile*,	nimble.			*insensible*,	insensible.
alerte,	brisk, pert.	*porté*,	apt, prone.	*souple*,	pliant.
habile,	skilful.	*sujet*,	subject, liable.	*aise*, *facile*,	easy.

And all adnouns signifying *Inclination*, *Aptness*, *Fitness* and *Unfitness*, *Advantage* and *Disadvantage*, *Profit* or *Disprofit*, *Due*, *Submission*, *Resistance* and *Difficulty*, &c. as,

Je suis sensible au froid, I am sensible of cold. *Il est insensible aux affronts*, he is insensible of affronts. *Etre porté ou enclin à quelque chose*, to be apt, or inclined to something. *Lent au travail*, slow to work. *Prompt au jeu, ou à jouer*, quick to play. *Propre à* D *tout*, fit for any thing. *Nuisible à la santé*, hurtful to health. *Souple au marteau*, malleable, *&c.*

3°. These adnouns signifying Dimension, *haut*, high, tall; *profond*, deep; *épais*, thick; *gros*, big; *large*, wide, broad, and *long*, long, which come after the words of the measure of magnitude in English, come before in French, and are attended by the preposition *de*: as,

Une colonne haute de *soixante pieds*. A column sixty feet *high*.
Le fossé est profond de *vingt pieds*, & large de *dix*,
The ditch is twenty feet *deep*, and ten *broad*.

Or (which is much better, and more generally used) the adnoun of the dimension is turned into its noun in French, with the word of the measure before, as in English, but so that both the word of the measure, and that of the dimension, are preceded by the preposition *de*: as, A

Un homme de *six pieds* de *hauteur*, A man six feet *high*.
Un fossé de *vingt pieds* de *profondeur*, A ditch twenty feet *deep*.

And the verb substantive *to be* is also turned into the verb *to have*, governing the noun of the measure, with the preposition *de* before the noun of dimension: as,

Le fossé a *vingt pieds* de *profondeur*, & *dix* de *largeur*,
The ditch *is* twenty feet *deep*, and ten *broad*. B

The words of measures are,

une aune,	an ell.	*un arpent*,	an acre.	*une brasse*,	a fathom.
une verge,	a yard.	*une perche*,	a rod.	*une toise*,	another measure containing six feet in length.
un pied,	a foot.	*un pas*,	a pace.		
un pouce,	an inch.	*une lieue*,	a league.		
une ligne,	a line.	*un mille*,	a mile.		
une coudée,	a cubit.	*un stade*,	a stade or furlong.		
un empan,	a span.				

¶ Adnouns are sometimes used substantively; in which case they take the article.] (See p. 219.) C

§ III. 1°. We have seen that the highest or lowest degree of comparison is expressed in French by the particles *le*, *la*, *les*, put before the adverbs *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, followed by the adnoun. But as (according to the first observations of the 2*d* section of this chapter) some adnouns come before the noun, and others after, so whenever it is the case of the adnoun in the highest or lowest degree to come after the noun, it requires the article before *plus* or *moins*, tho' the noun that comes before has it already, either with or without a preposition: as,

C'est la coutume des *peuples* les *plus barbares*, D
It is the custom of the most barbarous nations.
Il a obéi au *commandement* le *plus injuste qu'on puisse faire*,
He has obeyed the most unjust command that can be made.
Je compte sur l'ami le *plus obligeant*,
I rely upon the most obliging friend.

C'est une des *femmes* les *plus belles de Paris*, She is one of the most beautiful women in Paris; which is equal to *c'est une des plus belles femmes de Paris*.

A 2°. The noun that follows the adnoun in the highest or lowest degree is always preceded by the preposition *de* (or the particles *du*, *des*) generally rendered into English by *in*: as,

Le plus savant homme du *monde*,
The most learned man *in* the world.
La plus impertinente des *femmes*,
The most impertinent of women.

3°. When the superlative is followed by a verb, if that verb is in English the present, or preterite tense, or their compounds, it must be put in French in the subjunctive, preceded by the re-
B lative pronoun *qui*, *dont*, &c. as,

L'homme le plus savant qui soit,
The most learned man that *is*.
La plus belle personne que j'aie *jamais vue*,
The handsomest person *I have* ever seen.

And if the superlative is of an adverb, and not of an adnoun, the verb must be preceded by the conjunction *que*: as,

Le plus soigneusement qu'il *se puisse*, or *qu'on puisse*,
The most carefully that can be.

C 4°. The particle *than* that follows the comparative in English, is rendered in French by *que* before the next noun or pronoun: as,

Il est plus habile que *son frère*,
He is more ingenious *than* his brother.
Il agit moins sincèrement que *vous*,
He acts, *or* deals less sincerely *than* you.

5°. If *than* is followed by a verb in the infinitive, it must be made in French by the infinitive with the particle *de* after *que*; or by the imperfect of the indicative, or its compound, with the conjunction *si* after *que*: as,

D *Il aime mieux demeurer à rien faire* que de *travailler*,
He rather chooses to be idle *than* work.
Il est plus heureux que *s'il régnoit*,
He is happier *than* if he reigned.

And if the verb that follows *than* in English is not in, nor can be rendered by the infinitive, it must take in French the negative *ne* before it: as,

Il est plus habile que *je* ne *croyois*,
He is more ingenious than I thought.

¶ That is to say: *Je ne le croyois pas si habile.*]

But if there comes before the verb a conjunction governing it, the negative may be left out: as, A

Je le trouve à présent moins beau que quand *je l'achetai*,
I now find it less handsome than when I bought it.

¶ That is: *Qu'il ne l'étoit quand*, &c. *than* it was *when*, &c.]

6°. The simple comparative *plus* and *moins* meeting with a number are attended by the preposition *de*: as,

Il a plus de *vingt ans*, and never *plus que*,
He is above twenty.

Therefore the preposition *above* before a noun of number must always be rendered into French by *plus de*. B

7°. The preposition *by* and the adverb *than*, used to join a certain definite quantity to the adnoun or adverb of the comparison, are expressed in French by *de*: as,

Il est plus grand de *toute la tête*,
He is taller *by* a whole head, *or* he is *a head* taller.
Nous sommes plus d'*à moitié persuadés*,
We are more *than* half convinced.

Beaucoup and *peu*, denoting comparison, have likewise the particle *de* before them: as, C

Il est de *beaucoup plus grand*, He is much taller.
Si vous êtes plus gros que lui, c'est de *peu*,
If you are bigger than he is, it is but a little.

¶ However, we sometimes say, *il est beaucoup plus grand*; without *de*.]

8°. The particles comparative *si* and *aussi*, which are always followed by *que* after the adnoun, are englished, *si* and *aussi* by *so*, before the adnoun, and *que*, by *that* or *as* after it, or by *as*, both before and after; but *aussi* gives more force to the comparison than *si*: as,

Je ne le croyois pas si *brave*, or aussi *brave* qu'*il est*, D
I did not think him *so* courageous *as* he is.
Est-il si *méchant* qu'*on le dit?* Is he *so* wicked *as* they say?
Elle est aussi *belle* que *sa sœur*, She is *as* handsome *as* her sister.

Tant and *autant*, followed likewise by *que* (as much, so much as), are construed with verbs and nouns, as *si* and *aussi* with adnouns: as,

Elle n'a pas tant *d'esprit* que *sa sœur, mais elle a* autant *de vivacité, & elle est* aussi *aimable*: She has not *so much* wit as her sister, but she has *as much* livelinefs, and is as amiable as she.

A *Je l'estime* autant que *votre frère*,
I esteem him *as much as* I do your brother.
L'un est aussi *savant* que *l'autre*, The one is *as* learned *as* the other.

Si is used in negative sentences; and in affirmative, only when there is no comparison of equality made between two things: but in affirmative sentences implying comparison, *aussi* must be used: as, *Il n'est rien de* si *doux* que *la liberté:* Nothing is so sweet as liberty.

Elle aime si *violemment* qu'*elle en perd la raison:* She loves *so* excessively *that* it disturbs her reason, *or* she grows distracted.

Le plaisir de l'étude est un plaisir aussi *tranquille*, que *celui des pas-*
B *sions est agité:* The pleasure of studying is *as* calm, *as* that of the passions is tumultuous.

9°. The particles comparative *si* and *aussi*, *plus* and *le plus*, must be repeated before each adnoun or adverb governed, as likewise *tant* before each noun, and *autant* before each verb, when there are many in the sentence: as,

Il est si *sage*, si *prudent*, si *éclairé* & si *discret*, *qu'on peut en sûreté lui confier un secret:* He is *so* wise, *so* prudent, enlightened, and discreet, that one may safely entrust him with a secret.

Une jeune homme aussi *sage*, aussi *capable*, & *qui prend* tant *de*
C *peine*, *mérite qu'on le protège:* So sober a young man, *so* capable, and who takes *so much pains*, deserves to be protected.

Son amant est plus *beau*, plus *jeune*, & plus *riche qu'elle*,
Her lover is handsomer, younger, and richer than she is.

Observe all along that the verb substantive *to be*, which ordinarily follows *than* and the comparative or superlative in English, is always left out in French, and that we are then contented with *que* and the pronoun; without a verb after it (*plus riche qu'elle*, and not *qu'elle est*, as in English, richer than she is).

10°. *As*, repeated with an adverb between, is rendered into French either by *aussi* and *que*, or *le plus* and *que* with the adverb between: as, Come *as* often *as* you can.

D *Venez* aussi *souvent* que *vous pourrez*, or, le plus *souvent* que *vous pourrez*.

Lastly, these comparative ways of speaking:

a *The more an hydropick drinks, the more thirsty he is,*
b *The more I see her, the more I hate her,*
c *The richer men are, the happier they are,* or
d *Men are so much the more happy, as they are more rich,*
e *The poorer people are, the less care they have, &c.*

are rendered into French by *plus* or *moins* beginning each part of the sentence, and followed by the noun, or pronoun which is

the subject to the verb; then the verb, then the adnoun of the comparison, if there be any, or even the noun, if there be one governed by the verb: thus, A.

[a] *Plus un hydropique boit, plus il a soif,*
[b] *Plus je la vois, plus je la hais,*
[c] *Plus on est riche, plus on est heureux,* or
[d] *On est d'autant plus heureux qu'on est plus riche,*
[e] *Plus on est pauvre, moins on a d'embarras,* &c.

CHAP. IV.

B

Of PRONOUNS, *and first of Pronouns Personal.*

§ I. OF Pronouns personal, some (viz. *je, tu, il,* &c.) are *Conjunctive*, that is, always coming before the verb, whether they govern or are governed; the other (viz, *moi, toi, lui,* &c.) *Disjunctive*, that is, governed of prepositions, and following the construction usual to nouns. But the chief thing to be observed is, the order in which the conjunctives are placed, when several of them meet together before the verb, especially with the negatives *ne* and *pas*. C

1°. The personal Conjunctives *je, nous; tu, vous; il, elle; ils, elles*; come before the verb as its subject, either immediately, as *Je dis* I say, or with one or more pronouns, or the negative *ne* between, as *Je vous dis* I tell you, *Je ne dis pas* I do not say; but they will not admit of any adverb, or other word, between themselves and the verb, as they do in English. Therefore we say *Je vois toujours* I always see, *Je lui dis dans ce temps-là*, or *Je lui dis alors* I at that time, *or* I then told him; and never *Je toujours vois, Je dans ce temps-là lui dis*, or *J'alors lui dis*.

Only in certain forms, the word *soussigné*, and the title and quality of the person that speaks, is put between the Conjunctive and the verb, thus: *Je soussigné déclare* I underwritten declare, D

Je, Jean Smith, Docteur en Medecine, certifie, &c.
I, John Smith, Doctor in Physic, do certify.

The same personal conjunctives come after their verbs in these following cases:

1*st*. After these six verbs, *dire* to say, *répondre* to answer, *répliquer* to reply, *continuer* to continue, *poursuivre* to pursue, and *s'écrier* to cry out, by Parenthesis (as is practised in English with *to say*, tho' not so generally as in French) as,

Vous étudiez, dites-vous, or dit-il, You study, say you, or you say, or says he.
Vous voyez, disent-ils, or répondit-il, or *s'écria-t-il, l'état où nous sommes réduits,*
You see, they say, or answered he, or cried he out, the condition we are reduced to.

2dly.

A 2dly, With the Preterite subjunctive of *devoir*, and *pouvoir*; which way of speaking (with *devoir*) may be resolved by the conjunction *quand* with the Conditional; as,

Dussiez-vous me condamner, or *Quand vous devriez me condamner*,
Tho' you should condemn me.
Pussiez-vous and *Puissiez-vous être heureux*, May you live happy.
Ne valût il qu'un sou, Were it worth but one penny.

3dly, After these Conjunctions *ainsi*, *aussi*, *peut-être*, *du moins*, *au moins*, *en vain*, and *à peine*: as,

Ainsi, or *aussi mérite-t-il d'être avancé*, Therefore he deserves to be preferred.
Du moins deviez-vous m'en avertir, At least you should have told me of it.
En vain cherche-t-il des excuses, In vain he seeks for an excuse.
Peut-être s'imagine-t-il, Perhaps he thinks.
A peine eut-il parlé, que, . . . He had hardly spoken, &c.

But observe, that in this last case it is an elegance only, and not a law of Grammar, B to put the conjunctives after their verbs, and that we say too, *aussi il mérite d'être avancé*, *du moins vous deviez m'en avertir*, &c. And *dussiez-vous me condamner* is said by ellipsis for *quoique vous dussiez me condamner*; and *puissiez vous être content*, for *je souhaite que vous soyez content*, that tense of *pouvoir* being then used as and for what Grammarians call the Optative Mood of *souhaiter* to wish.

2°. ¶ The English personal pronouns, *I*, *thou*, *he*, &c. when unaccompanied by a verb, or answering to the verb *to be*, are always rendered into French by the pronouns disjunctive, *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, &c.

It is I, *c'est moi*; It is he, *c'est lui*; It is we, *c'est nous*; It is they, *ce sont eux*, *ce sont elles*.
Who is there? qui est là? *I*, c'est moi.
Who has done that? qui a fait cela? *I*, *Sir*, moi, Monsieur.

If in the same sentence one or more pronouns of the other persons meet with one of the first, politeness requires, in French as in English, that the first person, being C the person who speaks, should be named the last:

Vous & moi, you and I; *lui & moi*, he and I; *elle & moi*, she and I; *eux & moi*, they and I; *vous & nous*, ye and we; *lui & nous*, he and we; *eux & nous*, they and we.

It is the same, when the first person joins with nouns or names of persons:
Pierre & moi, Peter and I; *vos frères & moi*, your brothers and I; *son cousin & nous*, his cousin and we.

The same politeness requires that the person spoken to should be named before the person spoken of; hence the pronouns disjunctive of the second persons always come before those of the third, and before nouns.

Toi & ton frère, thou and thy brother; *Vous & mon père*, you and my father; *Vous & votre ami*, you and your friend; *Vous & Pierre*, you and Peter; *Vous & lui*, you and he; *Vous & eux*, you and they; *avec vous & avec eux*, with you and them.

However, in spite of politeness, as the first person, to speak the language of Gram- D marians, is the noblest of the three, and the second is more noble than the third, if there be a verb expressed in the sentence, the first person, in preference to the two others, must be its leader, or the second in the absence of the first.] Therefore,

¶ When one or more nouns, and one or more pronouns meet together with a verb as its virtual subject, those pronouns must be disjunctive, either singular or plural; but in any case the verb must be in the plural number, and besides have for its *grammatical* subject, or nominative, a conjunctive pronoun plural, of the noblest person among the disjunctive pronouns, which then, together with the nouns connected with

with them, may come indifferently either before or after the verb: as, A

Lui & moi, nous apprenons le François; Or, *Nous apprenons le François, lui & moi*;	Both he and I learn French.
Vous & lui, vous apprendrez le François; Or, *Vous apprendrez le François, vous et lui*;	Both you and he will learn French.
Mon frère, ma sœur, ma cousine & moi, nous allames hier à la comédie; Or, *Nous allames hier à la comédie, mon frère, ma sœur, ma cousine et moi*;	My brother, my sister, my cousin and I went to the play last night.
Vous, votre cousin, sa femme et moi, nous irons ce soir à la comédie; Or, *Nous irons*, &c.—*Vous, votre cousin*, &c.	You, your cousin, his wife and I will go to the play to-night. B
Vous, M. Adam, sa cousine et moi, nous irons dans la même voiture; Or, *Nous irons*, &c.—*Vous, M. Adam*, &c.	You, Mr. Adam, his cousin and I will go in the same carriage.
Nous sommes contens, lui et moi; Or, *Lui et moi nous sommes contens*;	He and I are satisfied.

Je suis content, et lui aussi; I am satisfied, and so is he.

Vous et votre frère, vous êtes heureux; you and your brother are happy. C

Vous et lui, vous êtes toujours à vous quereller; you and he are always quarrelling.]

To this rule there is an exception; for tho' the disjunctives of the first and second persons *moi* and *toi*, can never be construed as subjects to a verb, without another conjunctive, yet when the disjunctives are put before the verb, and the last of them is a pronoun of the third person (*lui* or *eux*), the conjunctive (*il* or *ils*) is sometimes left out, and sometimes expressed before the following verb (and therefore the disjunctive *lui* and *eux* are then only subject to and coming before the verb), and sometimes also it is indifferent to express it or not. It is not possible to determine positively when after those disjunctives the conjunctive must be left out, and when not, nor when it is indifferent to express it or not. But these cases occurring very seldom, and being almost always confined to common conversation, it must suffice to take notice here of the following instances: D

We say: *Mon frère et lui sont arrivés*; My brother and he are arrived: not *ils sont arrivés*. ¶ The conjunctive *ils* is suppressed, because the noun *frère* and the disjunctive pronoun *lui* are both of the same person, *viz.* the third.]

On the contrary, we say: *Je demeure, et lui* il *part*; I stay, and he goes. *Je partirai et toi tu resteras*; I shall set out, but you will stay. ¶ The conjunctive *il, tu*, can by no means be suppressed, because the subjects are of different persons. As for the suppression of the disjunctive, see the last paragraph *next page*, C.]

However, it is indifferent to say: *Je demeurai, et lui* il *s'en alla*, or *Je demeurai, et lui s'en alla*; I stay'd, and he went away; *Vous en êtes fâché, et eux s'en réjouissent*, or, *& eux ils s'en réjouissent*; you are sorry for it, but they rejoice at it. ¶ The conjunctive, *il, ils*, may be left out, notwithstanding the difference of persons, because the second

A second verb is reflected, and the pronoun *se*, which accompanies it, is sufficient to indicate the third person.]

But observe 1st, That it is only in common conversation you may express the conjunctive or not.

2dly, That, as in the first instance, the noun and pronoun may equally well come after the verb, and you may say, *Ils sont arrivés mon frère & lui* (which is the best way to avoid the difficulty); so it is always safe, and never improper, to begin the sentence with the conjunctive, even in common conversation, and say, *Nous apprenons le François, lui & moi:* He and I learn French.

3dly, That the disjunctives *lui* and *eux*, as has been seen in some of the preceding phrases, may in a regular speech be the subject of and come before the verb, without any conjunctive: But,

1°. Either the disjunctives must be attended by the adnoun *seuls* or, *Plus je vis avec le Cacique & sa sœur, plus j'ai de peine à me persuader qu'ils soient de cette nation; eux seuls connoissent & respectent la vertu* The more I live with the Cacick and his sister,

B the less I can believe that they are of that nation: *they alone* know and respect virtue.

2°. Or it must be separated from its verb, by another middle sentence joining to it, by the means of a relative or gerund: as, Lui *qui ne savoit pas qu'ils étoient réconciliés, fut fort surpris de les voir ensemble: He*, who did not know that they were reconciled, was much surprised to see them together.

Eux, *voyant que la pluralité des suffrages l'emporteroit, commencèrent par protester:* They, seeing that the majority of the votes would carry it, began with a protest.

3°. Or the sentences wherein they are used, relate the particulars of some fact, declared in general in the former member, (but distributed, in the latter, among the agents of it): as,

Les deux frères & le cousin ont commis le meurtre; eux *ont lié l'homme, & lui l'a assommé.* The two brothers and the cousin have committed the murder; *they* have tied the man, and *he* has knocked him on the head.

¶ In this phrase: *Elle est contente, et lui l'est aussi*; She is satisfied, and so is he:

C the verb is repeated because the two subjects *elle* and *lui* are not of the same gender.

And in this, with much more reason: *Elle est contente, mais lui ne l'est pas*, She is satisfied, but he is not so: because, besides the difference of gender, the second member of the phrase is negative.

But when there is no distribution of action to make; no contrast, opposition, or comparison to express, the disjunctive is by no means necessary, and the verb is contented with a conjunctive: as,

Je te quitte, et tu n'en témoignes point de regret; I leave you, and you show no regret for it *Je lui ai parlé, et il a promis de venir*; I spoke to him, and he has promised to come.]

3°. If the pronouns are governed by the verb, either as its object, or end, the first must be a conjunctive, coming before the verb, and the other, or others, disjunctive, and put after it: as,

D *On* me *parle aussi bien qu'a* vous *&* à eux: I am spoken to as well as he and they, *or* They speak to me, as well as to you and to them.

4°. Observe that the conjunctives of the third person of both genders, *il, ils*; *elle, elles*, are used with respect to irrational and inanimate creatures; which pronouns are englished by *it* and *they* for the plural: as,

speaking of	a tree,	Il *porte beaucoup de fruit,*	*It* bears much fruit.
	an apple,	Elle *n'est pas mûre,*	*It* is not ripe.
	a horse,	Il *boite,*	He is lame.
	a hen,	Elle *ne pond plus,*	It or she lays no more eggs.

Moreover

Moreover *il* is used before verbs impersonal, or rather verbs are very often used impersonally with this pronoun, which is commonly rendered into English by *it* or *there*; as *il arriva*, it *or* there happened: as likewise before verbs neuter, followed by another subject besides, which second subject is the only one in English; as, A

Il est arrivé un accident;
An accident has happened, *or*
There is an accident happened.
Il viendra tantôt quelqu'un:
Somebody will come by and by.

It is the same when questions are asked; as,

Est il arrivé quelque accident?
Did some accident happen?
Viendra-t-il du monde, ou *viendra-t-il quelqu'un tantôt?*
Will somebody come by and by?

But in this last case *il* most times comes the last, and the noun the first, as we shall see when we treat of Questions. But observe further, that in these impersonal ways of speaking, the noun that follows the verb requires before it the particle *de* or *un*, or some pronoun or adnoun indeterminate, such as *quelqu'un*, *divers*, *certain*, and never takes the article (except with the limiting particle), as in these instances: B

Il est arrivé un accident, for
Un accident est arrivé.
Il viendra quelqu'un, *du monde*, *des gens*, *certaines ou diverses personnes*, instead of
Quelqu'un, *du monde viendra*; *des gens*, *certaines personnes viendront*,
Somebody, some people will come.

The disjunctives *moi*, *lui*, *eux*, as likewise *nous* and *vous*, which are both conjunctives and disjunctives, may come both before and after a verb, but with another conjunctive, unless the verb is in the infinitive, or imperative: as,

Vous dites cela, & moi *je l'ai vu*,
You say that, and I have seen it.
Lui, *il soutient cela*, or *Il soutient cela*, lui? C
He maintains that, doth he?
Moi, *faire cela!*
Should, *or* could I do that!
Me soupçonner de cela, moi!
Should, *or* could I be suspected of that!
Faites moi, *Faites-nous cela comme il faut*,
Do that as it should be.

Which pronouns, thus used as a redundancy, serve to give more weight to what one says, especially with the infinitive: for thus we intimate a sort of reproach to those we speak to, for their believing us guilty of what is mentioned; but observe that in the last instance *moi* and *nous* are the disjunctives of the third relation, that is, implying the preposition *à*, and standing for *à moi*, *à nous*; that they are used only with the imperative; and that it is only in familiar conversation they may be thus used as a redundancy. D

5° The second state of the pronouns personal (viz. *de moi*, *de lui*, *de vous*, &c.) cannot be, strictly speaking, used after a noun in the second relation to which they are joined by the Enclitic & *:* but one must make use of a pronominal adnoun relative, or a pronoun relative. Therefore instead of saying

C'est le sentiment de mon frère & de moi, or & de lui, it is better to say, *C'est le sentiment de mon frère* & le mien, *or* le sien, *or* take this turn, *C'est mon sentiment* & celui de mon frère: That is the *opinion of my brother*, and mine too.

Except

A Except in the following expressions, wherein the pronominal adnoun cannot be used as in English, but in the second relation of the person, governed by a noun that comes first.

Pour l'amour de moi,	*Pour l'amour* de lui, d'elle, d'eux.
For my sake.	For his, her, their sake.
A cause de moi,	*En dépit* de moi,
On my account.	In spite of me.

Or when the pronoun personal is compound, *viz.* of *moi, lui,* &c. and *même*: as *Je ne veux pas être homicide de* moi-même, I won't be my own self's murderer. And tho' we say *pour l'amour de moi*, yet we don't say, *l'amour de soi* self-love, but *l'amour de soi-même*, or *l'amour-propre*: but we say, as the English do, *pour mon plaisir* for my
B pleasure, *pour son plaisir* for her or his pleasure.

¶ Likewise, *un portrait de moi*, means a portrait drawn by me; whereas *mon portrait*, my portrait, means a portrait representing my person.]

§ II. 1°. When the verb governs the pronoun personal, it must come between the subject and the verb: as,
Je le *vois*, I see him. *Vous* lui *parlez*, You speak to him, *or* to her. *Il* leur *est avantageux*, it is advantageous to them; and not *Je vois lui*, or *le*, *Je parle à lui*, or *à elle*, *Il est avantageux à eux*.

Except, 1*st*, When the verb is at the imperative, without a negation; for then the pronoun comes last: and if it is of the first
C or second person, and in the third state, the second disjunctives, *moi*, *toi*, are used, instead of the conjunctives *me* and *te*: as,

Portez-le, carry him; *voyez-la*, see her; *parlez-lui*, speak to him; *dites-moi*, tell me: and not *dites me* nor *me dites*, nor *dites à moi*; though we say with the two pronouns, *donnez-m'en*, give me some; *vous me parlez*, you speak to me; *parlez-moi*, speak to me; and with a negation, *ne me parlez pas*, do not speak to me. *Voyons-les*, let us see them; *ne les voyons pas*, don't let us see them.

But if two imperatives come together, with a conjunction copulative, the latter will have the pronoun come before it: as,
D *Voyez-la & la consolez*, and not *voyez-la & consolez-la*, see her and comfort her. At least the first construction is much better.

2*dly*, With the verbs *être* (signifying *belonging*), *avoir*, *penser*, *songer*, *viser* (respecting to a person and not a thing), *aller*, *venir*, *courir*, *accourir*, *boire*; as likewise with reciprocal verbs, the pronoun in the third state governed must be a disjunctive, and come after them: as,

Ce livre est à moi, and not *m'est*,
That book is mine, *or* belongs to me.

Vous

Vous en avez un à lui, and not *vous lui en avez un*, A
You have one of his.

In these instances, we don't use the pron. possess. *mien*, as in English, instead of the personal *moi*, because in the first instance *être* signifies *appartenir*, which governs the third state; and in the other, *un livre à lui* is said by ellipsis for *un livre qui est à lui*; tho' with *appartenir* we say, *qui lui appartient*, not *qui appartient à lui* that belongs to him.

Je songe, or *Je pense à vous*, and not *Je vous songe*, &c.
I am thinking of you.

Il vise à eux, he aims at them.

Elle boit à vous, she drinks to you.

Je vais à vous, I go to you. *Ils viennent à moi*, they come to me. B
Nous nous fions à vous, we trust you, and not *nous nous vous fions*.
Cela s'addresse à moi, that is directed to me, and not *cela se m'addresse*.

3*dly*, When the verb governs two pronouns in the third state, so that they are used as by opposition; as likewise, when it rather denotes the order in which a thing must be done, the pronouns must be disjunctive, and come after the verb: as,

Je parle à lui & non à vous, (or) *C'est à lui que je parle & non pas à vous:* I speak to him and not to you.

Buvez à elle, puis à la compagnie: drink to her, then to the company. C

Donnez à lui d'abord, ensuite à elle, puis aux autres:
Give to him first, then to her, then to the others.

2°. In all other cases, disjunctives must be used, as in answer to questions, and after prepositions: as,

Qui est-ce qui dit cela? lui & eux, or *c'est lui, ce sont eux:*
Who says that? He and they, *or* it is he, it is they.

Qui cherchez-vous? elle & sa fille?
Who do you seek for? her and her daughter?

C'est lui, it is he. *C'est elle*, it is she. *Ce n'est pas moi*, it is not I.
Pour moi, for me. *Après lui*, after him. *Devant elle*, before her. D
(See p. 230. 2°.)

3°. *Ne* and *pas* or *point* are particles answering the English negative *not*. The French put *ne* before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after it, if the tense is simple, and between the auxiliary and the participle, if it is compound.——*Ne* must always come immediately after the word that expresses the subject, whether a noun or pronoun conjunctive: as,

Je ne parle pas, I do not speak. *Vous ne dites point*, you don't say.
L'homme n'est pas venu, the man is not come.

Except.

A Except, 1*st*, When the verb is at the second person of the imperative; in which case *ne*, that always comes before the verb, comes besides before the pronoun, if the verb is reciprocal; but *pas* always follows the verb: as, *Ne vous fâchez pas*, don't be angry.

2*dly*, In sentences of interrogation: as,

Ne *fais je* pas *ce que vous me dites?* Don't I do what you bid me?

3*dly*. On such occasions when the Pronouns conjunctive governing the verb come after it: as,

Aussi ne *prétend-il pas cela?* Neither does he pretend to that.

See those cases, pag. 230. A.

¶ 4*thly*, When there is a conjunctive governed by the verb: as, *Je ne l'ai pas dit*,
B I have not said it; *ne le faites pas*, do not do it.]

4°. When the verb is attended by two pronouns personal, *viz.* one in the fourth state, and the other in the third, the pronoun in the third state must come before that in the fourth: as,

Je vous *le dis*, I tell it you. *On* me *la donne*, it is given me.

Except only when the pronoun in the third state is of the third person (*lui* or *leur*), or when the verb is at the imperative; for then the conjunctive of the fourth relation comes before that of the third: as,

Vous le *lui dites*, you tell it him *or* her. *Il* la *leur refuse*, he refuses it to them. *Donnez-le-moi*, give it me. Whereas we say
C in the indic. *Il* me le *donne*, he gives it to me.

5°. *y* and *en* come after other pronouns, and immediately before the verb: as

Je vous les y *enverrai*, I will send them to you there.

Je ne vous en *parle pas*, I don't speak to you of it, *or* of them.

And when *y* and *en* meet together, *y* comes before *en*: as,

Je vous y en *enverrai*, I will send you some there.

Je ne vous y en ferai pas tenir,

I will remit you none there, (money, *for instance.*)

6°. The pronouns governed of the verb come after it in this
D following case (but in the same order as when they come before it).

When the verb is in the second persons, and first plur. of the imperative, without negative. Thus tho' we say in the third persons, *Qu'il le fasse*, let him do it. *Qu'ils lui en parlent*, let them mention it to him; or in the other persons, with a negative,

Ne nous y fions pas, let us not trust to that;

Ne lui en donnez pas, do not give him any: yet we say in the first person plur. and the second persons, without negative,

Fions-nous-y, let us trust to that, *Donnez-lui-en*, give him some.

With

With the negative we say, A

Ne les y *menez pas*, Don't carry them there.
Ne l' y *menez pas*, Don't carry him there.
Ne nous y *menez pas*, Don't carry us there.
Ne m' y *menez pas*, Don't carry me there.
Ne m' y *envoyez pas*, Don't send me there.
Ne m' y *portez pas*, Don't carry me there.

Without the negative we say,

Menez les- y, Carry them there.
Menez-l' y, Carry him there.
Menez-nous-y, Carry us there.

But, with a pronoun of the first person singular, we say, B

Menez -y-moi, Take me there.
Envoyez y-moi, Send me there.
Portez -y-moi, Carry me there,

and never *Menez-moi-y*, nor *menez-m'y*, &c.

¶ However, for the sake of harmony, we say: *Conduisez-moi là*, conduct me there; not *conduisez-y*, to avoid the repetition of *z* in two contiguous syllables.]

In sentences of Interrogation the conjunctive pronouns come also after the verb.

§ III. 1°. The several ways of asking questions in French are, C

1*st*, With the Pronoun Interrogative *qui*, and *lequel*, as *Qui croit cela?* Who believes that? *Lequel des deux vous a plu?* Which of the two has pleased you?

2*dly*, With the adnoun or incomplete pronoun *quel*, and the noun of the subject of the question before the verb, as in the expositive form: as, *Quel homme seroit assez hardi pour*, &c. What man should be so bold as to, &c.

3*dly*, If the subject of the question is a pronoun personal, or the primitive demonstrative *ce*, it comes after the verb, if the tense is simple; or between the auxiliary and participle, if it is compound: as, *Est-ce votre livre?* Is it your book? D

Avez-vous fait? Have you done?

Connoissez-vous monsieur? Do you know the gentleman?

4*thly*, If the subject of the question is a noun, or a pronoun indeterminate, the sentence begins with that noun or pronoun, then the verb, if the tense is simple, or the auxiliary if it is compound, and moreover the conjunctive *il* or *elle*, *ils* or *elles*, or *on*, agreeing in gender and number with the subject: as,

L'homme vient-il? Does the man come?

La femme est-elle venue? Is the woman come?

La

A *Les enfans peuvent-ils s'appliquer?* Can children apply themselves?
Quelqu'un fait-il ce que vous faites, or *Fait-on ce que vous faites?*
Does any body do what you do?
Personne ne fait-il cela? Does nobody do that?

5*thly*, If the verb of the question is reciprocal, the sentence begins with one of the two pronouns, if the subject is expressed by a pronoun; or with a noun and a pronoun, if it is expressed by a noun; and the other pronoun comes after the verb, or between the auxiliary and participle, according as the tense is either simple or compound: as,

Vous *souvenez-vous de cela?* Do you remember that?
B *Ma femme se repent-elle de sa faute?*
Does my wife repent of her fault?
Les matelots se sont-ils enrichis dans cette expédition?
Did the sailors grow rich in that expedition?

And if the verb of the question ends with a vowel, *t* must be added to it between two hyphens (-*t*-), in order to avoid the *hiatus*. Therefore write and pronounce *Aime-t il*, does he love? *Va-t elle*, does she go? and never *aime il*, *va elle*.

2°. The pronouns attending the verb keep the same order in the interrogative form, as in the declarative, as *Le ferai je?* shall I do it? *Le lui direz-vous?* will you tell it him? *Me le commandez-*
C *vous?* do you command it me? *Y en porterons-nous?* shall we carry some thither? *Ne vous l'a-t-il pas dit?* did he not tell it you?

It is to be noted, that it is usual in French, among polite well-bred people, and when we speak to one of a higher station, or to whom we show respect, to speak to them with the pronoun of the third person, as if we were speaking of somebody else. Thus, to ask you *how do you do*, well-bred people say

Comment se porte monsieur, or *madame?*
How does your honour do?
How does your ladyship do?
Monsieur apprend-il le François?
Do you learn French?
Monsieur a-t-il voyagé en Italie?
instead of *avez-vous voyagé*, &c.
D Have you travell'd to Italy?
Sa Majesté l'ordonne-t-elle?
Does your Majesty order it?
(or) *Si sa Majesté l'ordonne*,
If your Majesty orders it.

We have said, that when the question is asked with a pronoun personal of the first person, that pronoun comes after the verb thus, *suis-je?* am I? *entens-je?* do I hear? But observe, 1st, that in verbs of the first conjugation, wherein the first person ends in *e* not sounded, that *e* is changed into *é acute*, before the pronoun, which ends also in *e* not sounded: as,

Aimé-je? do I love? *N'étudié-je pas?* don't I study?

2*dly*, That no question can be asked in this manner with some verbs, especially these five, *mentir* to lie, *perdre* to lose, *rompre* to break, *sentir* to feel, *dormir* to sleep: so that we don't say

Menté

Menté je,	nor	*mens-je,*	do I lie?
Perdé je,		*perds-je,*	do I lose?
Rompé je,		*rompz-je,*	do I break?
Senté-je,		*sens-je,*	do I feel?
Dormé je,		*dors-je,*	do I sleep?

A

the former, because *é* acute can't be used in this manner but with verbs of the first conjugation; and the latter (*mens-je*), because it sounds too harsh, and can besides occasion some ambiguity in speech. Therefore in the case of these verbs, the question must be asked after another manner: as, *Est-ce que je mens?* or *Croyez-vous que je mente?* Do you think that I lie? *Trouvez-vous que je rompe cela comme il faut?* Do you think that I break that as it should be? or speak without interrogation.

3dly, This way of asking a question (*Est-ce que*) is of great use in French: but it is less used in order to be informed merely of any thing, which is the chief purpose of interrogations, than to assure others that we need not be informed of it, or that the case is not as they think. As likewise when we don't expect a thing, or we fear lest it should happen, we show our surprise or fear by *Est-ce que*. For instance, when I ask this question, *Pleut-il?* Does it rain? I only want to know whether it rains or no. But when I say *Est-ce qu'il pleut?* I besides show my surprise at it, which is thus englished: *It don't rain, does it?* Again, when I say, *A-t-il du jugement?* Has he any judgment? I want to be informed whether the person spoken of has any judgment or no. But by this other question, *Est-ce qu'il a du jugement?* I intimate that I know very well that he has no judgment. B C

By this question, *Viendra-t-il?* Will he come? I want to know whether he will come or no: and by this other, *Est-ce qu'il viendra?* I show my surprise at, or fear of his coming.

Again, by this question, *Est-ce aujourd'hui fête?* Is this day a holy-day? I desire to be informed whether or no this is a holy-day; but by this other, *Est-ce que c'est aujourd'hui fête?* I show my surprise and wonder at this day being a holy-day.

Sometimes also this way of speaking is used to deter people from believing what is said; as, *Est ce que je joue!* which is as much as *Je ne joue point*, and cannot be (I think) properly englished thus, *Do I game?* or *Am I a gamester?* but (if I am not very much mistaken) thus, *Who games? not I.* D

¶ This way of asking a question (*Est-ce que*) is hardly used but with the first person singular of the present and preterite tenses in the indicative mood of some verbs wherein the simple way is too harsh, and never with the other persons, unless we want to show surprise or fear. Therefore never say in France, as a great many people do in England, speaking to a hosier for instance, *est-ce que vous vendez des bas de soie*, do you sell silk stockings? but only *vendez-vous des bas de soie?* for the hosier, instead of answering, yes, Sir; would laugh, and answer you, why not, Sir?

We never say in French *parlé-je*, do I speak? with an *é* grave, as some people do: but *parlé-je?* with an *é* acute.]

A 4*thly*, The same way of asking a question with a negative (*n'est-ce pas que*) signifies always, that we take that for certain, which is the subject of the question, and want only to be confirmed in it, or to have it approved by others; and *n'est-ce pas* may equally well come at the beginning of the sentence with *que*, or at the end with a comma before: as,

N'est ce pas qu'il pleut?	or	*Il pleut, n'est-ce pas,* It rains, don't it?
N'est-ce pas qu'il a du jugement?		*Il a du jugement, n'est-ce pas?* he has judgment, han't he?
N'est-ce pas qu'il viendra?		*Il viendra, n'est ce pas?* He will come, won't he?
B *N'est-ce pas qu'il joue?*		*Il joue, n'est-ce pas?* He games, don't he?
N'est-ce pas qu'il fait froid?		*Il fait froid, n'est-ce pas?* It is cold, i'n't it?

Whereas by these questions,

Ne pleut-il pas?	Don't it rain?	we only want to be informed of what we ask.
N'a-t-il pas de jugement?	Has he no judgment?	
Ne viendra-t il pas?	Won't he come?	
Ne joue-t-il pas?	I'n't he a gamester?	
C *Ne fait-il pas froid?*	I'n't it cold?	

It will not be amiss, when the scholar has learnt so far, to make him conjugate every day a regular verb with an Interrogation, *then with a* Negative, *then both with an* Interrogation *and* Negative *together, and with the particles* en *and* y; *which will both make him more ready in the conjugations, and render the dependence of those particles upon the verb more familiar to him.*

Examples:

Je parle,	I speak.	*J'en envoie,*	I send some.
Parlé-je?	do I speak?	*Je n'en envoie pas,*	I send none.
Je ne parle pas,	I don't speak.	*J'y en porte,*	I carry some thither.
Ne parlé je pas?	don't I speak?	*Je n'y en porte pas,*	I carry none thither.
J'en parle,	I speak of it	*Y en porté-je,*	do I carry any there?
En parlé-je?	do I speak of it?	*N'y en porté-je pas,*	don't I carry some there?
Je n'en parle pas,	I don't speak of it.	*Vous y en porterai-je?*	sha'l I carry? &c.
D *N'en parlé-je pas?*	don't I speak of it?	*Ne vous y en porterai je pas?*	shall I not carry? &c.

§ IV. The Pronouns Conjunctives, whether governing, or governed of the verb, that is, whether its subject or object, are sometimes repeated, and sometimes not.

1*st*, These Conjunctives, *je*, *tu*, *nous*, *vous*, are repeated before each verb, when the verbs are in different tenses: as,

Je dis & je dirai *toujours*, I say, and will always say.
Nous avons parlé & nous *parlerons encore pour lui*,
We have spoken for him, and will speak again.

When

When the tenses are the same, they need not be repeated: as, A
Je pense & dis qu'il a bien fait, or *Je pense & je dis qu'il*, &c.
I think and say that he has done very well.
Nous l'avons vu & touché, we have seen and touched it.

The Pronouns of the third person, *il*, *elle*; *ils*, *elles*, need not be repeated in common conversation; tho' the tenses vary: as,
Il n'a jamais rien valu, & ne vaudra jamais rien,
He never was good for any thing, and will always be good for nothing.
Elle est toujours fille, & la sera toute sa vie, or *elle la sera*, &c.
She is a maid still, and will be so as long as she lives. (*See* pag. 246‡. C.) B

2*dly*, All Conjunctives are repeated, when in the same sentence one passes from the affirmative to the negative, and so reciprocally: as likewise when the second verb is preceded by one of these conjunctions, *mais* but, *même* even, *cependant* yet, *néanmoins* nevertheless, *ainsi* so, *aussi* therefore, *ou* or, and *que* (standing for a conjunction): as,
Il l'aime, & il *ne veut pas en convenir*,
He loves her, and won't own it.
Il le dit, mais il *ne le pense pas*,
He says so, but he don't think so. C
Elle n'en croit rien, & cependant elle *ne veut pas l'épouser*,
She believes nothing on't, and yet she won't marry him.
Il le fait, & même il *s'en vante*, (or) aussi il *en convient*.
He does it, and even boasts of it, *or* and therefore owns it.
Nous le trouverons, ou nous *ne le trouverons pas*,
We shall find him, or not.
Lorsque vous ferez votre devoir, & que vous *vous comporterez bien*,
When you will do your duty, and behave well.

3*dly*, All Conjunctives governed are repeated before their verbs: as, D
Il me prie & me *conjure*, He desires and entreats me.
Je vous dis & vous *déclare*, I say and declare to you.

Except when the second verb is of the same signification, and composed of the first, or denotes only repetition of its action: as,
Il ne fait que nous dire & redire la même chose,
He does nothing but tell us the same thing over again;
Elle le fait & défait, or *refait quand bon lui semble*,
She does it and undoes, *or* does it again when she thinks fit.

A *The Use and Construction of the Pronoun Indeterminate* on.

§ V. This pronoun (formed, by corruption, of the word *homme*) is called Indeterminate, because it is used to speak in general, without specifying any person particular; it is of a very extensive use.

1°. *on* is rendered into English several ways. Sometimes by *one*, as *on croiroit*, one would think; sometimes by the pronoun of the third pers. plur. *they*, or that of the first *we*; as *on dit*, they say, *on apprend* we hear; sometimes also by these indeterminate words, *people*, *men*, *a body*, &c. as *on s'imagine*, people or men
B think: but *on* is more generally and better englished by converting the verb from the active voice into the passive; as *on croit*, it is thought.

2°. Now the Passive voice, both in French and English, is expressed by the verb substantive (*être* to be), through all its tenses, joined to the participle of a verb active. For instance, the participle of *to hold*, being *held*, if you put *to be* before it, you have the verb passive *to be held*, and all the tenses of the same, in this manner:

	Active voice.		*Passive voice.*	
Inf.	To hold,	*tenir.*	To be held,	*être tenu.*
C *Pres.*	I hold,	*Je tiens.*	I am held,	*Je suis tenu.*
Imp.	I did hold,	*Je tenois.*	I was held,	*J'étois tenu.*
Pret.	I held,	*Je tins.*	I was held,	*Je fus tenu.*
Fut.	I shall *or* will hold,	*Je tiendrai.*	I sh. &c. be held,	*Je serai tenu.*
Cond.	I should, &c. hold,	*Je tiendrois.*	I should, &c.	*Je serois tenu.*
Comp.	I have held,	*J'ai tenu*, &c.	I have, &c.	*J'ai été tenu*, &c.

3°. In order therefore to put into English a sentence with the particle *on*, if the French verb governs no noun, or is followed by *que*, you need only english *on* by it, and convert the active state of the verb into the passive thus, *on croit* it is thought, *on avoit dit que*, &c. it had been reported that, &c.—Sometimes the En-
D glish pronoun is left out: as, *comme on a déjà dit*, as has been said already; in which sentence *it* is necessarily understood.

4°. If the French verb governed of *on* is a verb active, attended by a noun or pronoun as its object, that noun or pronoun must be made the subject of the verb in English, and the verb active converted into the passive state, and put in the same tense as in French: as,

On tint hier un conseil à Whitehall;
Yesterday a council was held at Whitehall.

un conseil (a council) being the noun that expresses the object of the French verb, must be that of the subject in English: *tint* (held) being the preterite of the verb active, must be changed into the same tense of the passive state, *fut tenu* (was held). Again; A

On le tiendra au palais de St. James, it will be held at St. James's.
Le conseil qu'on tint hier, the council that was held yesterday.

5°. If the verb governed of *on* is not immediately followed by a noun or pronoun, but by another verb in the infinitive, then it is the noun or pronoun, the object of the second verb, that must be made the subject in English, and the second verb active converted into the passive state: as, B

On doit tenir aujourd'hui un conseil à Whitehall,
This day a council is to be held at Whitehall.
On doit le tenir à St. James, it is to be held at St. James's.
Le conseil qu'on doit tenir demain,
The council that is to be held to morrow.

In those instances *on* is the *subject* coming before the verbs *tint*, *tiendrai*, and *doit*: and the pronouns *le* and *que*, governed of the same verbs as *object*, are made the subject in English.

¶ The manner of translating *on* into English by *they*, is very improper; unless *on* be the consequent of an antecedent, in the plural number, expressed before; as, C
Hier les Communes s'assemblèrent, or *le Parlement s'assembla*; on *délibéra d'abord*, &c. The House of Commons, *or*, The Parliament met yesterday: *they* deliberated at first, &c.
Every where else, the safest is to turn *on* into the passive voice.]

6°. On the other hand, as the Passive voice is very seldom used in French (for the expressing of which we make use of the particle *on* with the active voice), in order to put into French such sentences as are expressed by the verb substantive *to be*, and the participle of another verb, one need only consider the noun that expresses the subject of the verb in English: If that subject is the particle *it* (not relating to any thing before), *it* must be rendered by *on*, and the verb converted from its passive state into the active, D as *it is thought*, on croit.

7°. If the verb has a noun or pronoun relative for its subject, after changing the passive state into the active, one must give it *on* for its subject, and the English subject for its object: as,

Yesterday a council was held at Whitehall,
On tint hier un conseil à Whitehall.
It is to be held at St. James's, on doit le tenir à St. James,
The council that was held yesterday, le conseil qu'on tint hier.

A In which instances the verb passive *was held*, and *to be held*, is changed into TINT and TENIR governed of the subject ON, and the words *a council*, *it*, and *that*, expressing the subject in English, are made the object of the French verb.

¶ Which evidently shows that the only difference between a phrase passive and a phrase active, is, that, in the latter, the object of the action is governed of the verb, whereas it is its leader in the *so mer.*]

L'on is the same pronoun as *or*, which takes sometimes the article *le*, but for better sound's sake only; as will appear from the following observations:

1*st*, In the beginning of a speech or sentence, *on* must be used, and *l'on* never.

2*dly*, In the middle of a sentence after a word ending with a consonant, or *e* not sounded; as, *Celui dont* on *parle*, he that is spoken of; *Quand il parle* on *écoute avec attention*, when he speaks every body listens attentively.

B On the other hand *l'on* is used, 1*st*, after all words ending with a vowel, except *e* not sounded; as *En cette extrémité* l'on *ne sauroit faire autre chose*, in this necessity nothing else can be done. ¶ However, *l'* might be left out, because there is naturally a little pause after *extrémité*, which would even require a comma.]

Nevertheless we say *si on le veut*, and not *si l'on le veut*, if they will have it so: *si on le* offending less the ear than *si l'on le*.

2*dly*, After *&*, *et*, and the particle *ou*, as likewise other words ending in *on*: as, *Voilà ce que je crois*, & l'on *ne me persuadera jamais le contraire*, that's what I think, and nobody shall ever persuade me to the contrary; *C'est un lieu où* l'on *vit à bon marché*, it is a place very cheap to live in.

3*dly*, When the pronoun *on* comes after *que*, one must consider the other words that make up the sentence; for whenever the word coming before *que* ends also in *que*, or there are already, or upon the whole will be too many *que*'s in the sentence (this par-
C ticle being also of great use in French), one must then make use of *qu'on*, and not *que l'on*: as,

Il remarque qu'on *ne l'a jamais fait auparavant*, he observes that it has never been done before; *Il n'est que trop vrai que depuis le temps* qu'on *a commencé*, &c. and not *que l'on* because of the great number of *que*'s. It is too true that ever since they begun, &c.

4*thly*, For the same reason we make use of *que l'on*, and not *qu'on*, before verbs beginning with *com* or *con*: as *Que l'on commence*, let them begin; *Que l'on conduise Monsieur à*, &c. let them take the Gentleman to, &c. But we say, *Qu'on le conduise*, let them take him, &c. and not *que l'on le conduise*, because of the pronoun between *qu'on* and the verb, and *l'on* must never be used before a word beginning with *l*.

8°. *On* must always be repeated in the sentence before every
D verb of which it is the subject, and must continue the same without any variation, and notwithstanding the aforesaid observations concerning *on* and *l'on*: as,

On le loue, on le blâme, on le menace; on emploie avec lui la douceur & la rigueur; & malgré tout cela on n'en sauroit venir à bout.

They commend, they blame and threaten him; gentle and severe means are used, and for all that he cannot be reclaimed.

In this instance the first four *on*'s are conformable to the rules, but after *tout cela* we should say *l'on*, if it were not for the first *on*, which determines the others throughout the sentence.

Observe,

Observe, that it is usual with French Authors, when they mention themselves, to make use of *on* and *nous* instead of *je*, out of modesty, and not to name their ownselves with the pronoun of the first perf. sing. or not to repeat it too often. A

¶ *On* is sometimes used for *je* and *nous*: Speaking to a friend whom we have not seen for a long while, we say in a familiar style, *Il y a long-temps qu'on ne vous a vu*; we have not seen you for this great while.]

¶ *On*, though of itself a masculine singular, and always governing its verb in the singular number, yet admits of an adjective feminine, when it refers to a woman; as, *Quand* on *aime bien son mari*, on *souffre de se voir* séparée *de lui*; on *est* impatiente *de recevoir de ses nouvelles*: One who loves her husband really, suffers in being separated from him, and is impatient to hear of him.

When *on* refers to a plurality, it may be reputed a collective word, which requires the adjective or pronoun to be in the plural, though the verb remain in the singular number; as,

On *se battit en* désespérés; *they* fought like desperate men. B

On *se méfioit* les uns des autres; *they* mistrusted each other.

In the same manner as *vous*, a pronoun plural, being used for *tu*, requires the adjective and participle in the singular, though the verb be in the plural; as, *Vous êtes fort* obligeant; *you* are very obliging. *Vous êtes* venu; *you* are come.]

¶ For the same reason, there is no fault of concord in the following sentence: *Il est impossible de n'être pas émue, quand* on *voit son mari traité d'une manière si outrageante*; it is impossible not to be affected, when one sees her husband so contumeliously used.

But this is not the case with the supplying pronoun *le*, signifying *so*, as will be seen hereafter, page 245.]

9°. *On* has for its relations *soi*, *de soi*, *à soi*, *se*.

Soi is used in sentences, the subject whereof is a noun, taken in an universal indefinite sense, or a pronoun indeterminate: as,

L'homme n'aime que soi; Man loves himself only. C

Chacun agit pour soi; Every body acts for himself.

Qui n'est bon que pour soi, *n'est pas digne de vivre*;

He who minds nobody but himself, does not deserve to live.

Especially with inanimate objects; for the pronoun *lui* is used with animate objects only, except in some few cases: as,

Le vice est odieux de soi; Vice is hateful of itself.

La terre est de soi fertile; The earth is fruitful of itself.

Tho' we can as well use *elle* instead of *soi* with nouns feminine: as,

La terre renferme en soi, or *en elle*, *toutes les semences*; D

The earth contains in itself all seeds.

But if the noun is taken in a particular definite sense, *lui* is used instead of *soi*: as,

C'est un homme qui n'est bon que pour lui, *& qui parle de* lui *sans cesse*;

'Tis a man who minds himself only, and is constantly speaking of himself.

Except in some sentences like this, wherein *soi* refers to something out of us:

A *Il ne porte jamais d'argent sur* soi; He never has money about him.

Se, one's self (the 4th state of *en*) is chiefly used with verbs *reflected*, as we have seen in the second part: but it is besides used with verbs *impersonal*, which shall be considered, when we treat of those verbs.

Soi is sometimes subject, but then it is only the repetition of another indefinite subject, put in apposition, and it must come immediately after the verb, and be attended by the word *même*: as, *Chacun peut soi-même faire son bonheur*; every body can make his own happiness.

Soi-même can never be used in the plural, tho' *soi* can with a preposition: as, *Ces choses sont bonnes de soi*; These things are good of themselves. But we do not say *Ces choses sont bonnes de soi-mêmes*.

If the pronoun relates to animate things, we say *eux-mêmes*, or *elles-mêmes*; as, *Vos*
B *filles devroient prendre plus de soin d'elles-mêmes*; your daughters should take more care of themselves.

10°. *Même* is a sort of pronoun, tho' not of itself, but when it is joined to pronouns personal disjunctives, pronominal adnouns relative, and other nouns indeterminate; in which last case *même* denotes, in a more special manner, the person or thing spoken of: as,

moi-même,	myself.	*nous mêmes*,	ourselves.
toi-même,	thyself.	*vous-mêmes*,	yourselves.
lui-même,	himself.	*eux-mêmes*,	themselves.
elle-même,	herself.	*elles-mêmes*,	themselves.
C *soi même*,	one's self.	*la vertu même*,	virtue itself.
l'homme même,	man himself.		

¶ *Soi-même* widely differs from *lui même*; for instance: *Il se loue soi-même*, he praises his own person; *il se loue lui même*, he is his own trumpeter.]

110. *Même* is besides an adnoun signifying *the same*, with the article, thus: *le même*, *la même*, *les mêmes*, relating to some noun expressed or understood: as, *le même homme*, the same man.

Même is also an adverb, answering to either of these, *even*, *also*, *nay*: as, *Je crois même qu'on lui a fait son procès*; I even think, *or* nay I think that he has been tried.

D When *même* is adverb, it is sometimes spelt with an *s* at the end, but only in poetry; authors having then regard to the style, to make it more fluent and less harsh.

The adverb *de même* (so, likewise, after the same manner) is always spelt without *s*; as likewise the adverb *à même*; as, *Buvez à même le pot*; drink out of the mug.

The Use and Construction of the Pronoun Relative le.

§ V. 1°. This pronoun stands not only for nouns, as it is common to all pronouns personal, but also for whole sentences.

Le, *en*, *y*, are chiefly used instead of the pronouns, *lui*, *elle*, *eux*; which (as we shall see in the next section) cannot always be said

said of irrational creatures, and relates to the person, thing, or place spoken of. *Le* is rendered into English by *it* or *so*, or a whole sentence expressed or understood: *en* by *some*, *any*; *of him*, *of her*, *of it*, *of them*; *for him*, *for her*, *for it*, *for them*; *with him*, *with her*, *with it*, *with them*; *about him*, *about her*, *it*, *them*; *thence*, *from thence*; or a whole sentence: and *y*, by the same pronouns personal with other prepositions, as will appear in these following examples: A

¶ *En* implies the preposition *de*; *y*, the preposi ion *à*; and *le*, no preposition.]

Vous êtes le maître, & moi je ne le *suis pas*;
You are the master, and I am not, (*or*) I am not *so*.
Ils sont heureux, & nous ne le *sommes pas*;
They are happy, and we are not, (*or*) are not *so*.
le stands for *le maître* and *heureux*. B

Newton vous plaît, vous en *parlez toujours*;
You like Newton, you always speak *of him*.
*Ce sont des orgueilleuses, ne m'*en *parlez point*;
They are proud creatures, don't tell me *of them*.
en stands for *de* Newton, & *de ces orgueilleuses*.

Comme elle ne vouloit pas se taire, il prit un bâton & lui en *donna un coup*;
As she would not hold her tongue, he took a stick, and gave her a blow *with it*.

Quand un homme est mort, on n'y pense plus;
When a man is dead, *he* is no more thought *of*.
Ce sont des folies, ne vous y *fiez pas*;
These are foolish things, don't trust *to them*.
y stands for *à cet homme*, and *à ces folies*. C

In which instances, *le*, *en*, *y* stand for nouns of both genders and numbers. *en* in the fifth instance stands besides for a preposition and a noun (*with a stick*).

On ne me trompe point, je ne puis le *croire*, or *je n'*en *puis rien croire*.
They don't deceive me, I cannot believe *it*, or, I can believe nothing *of it*.

Nous fumes maltraitées, & nous le *sommes encore*.
We were ill used, and are *so* still (women speak). D

On a tout tenté pour faire passer le Bill, mais on n'y a pu réussir.
Every thing has been tried to make the Bill pass, but they could never succeed.

On le *dit, mais je n'y ajoute pas foi*.
They say *so*, but I give no credit *to it*.

In which instances *le*, *en*, *y* stand for
*Je ne puis croire qu'*on veuille me tromper;
Nous sommes encore maltraitées;

A I must beg the reader's pardon, for having expatiated so long upon this matter; but having been in some measure challenged, I thought it my duty to give all the elucidation in my power. The error of *Chambaud*, Madame *de Séoigné*, and Mr. *Satis*, proceeds from their having attended more to the subject than to the predicate or attribute of the sentence.]

2°. ¶ *En* is usually the second state of the pronoun relative *le*, that is to say, always implies the preposition *de*; therefore it generally stands for a noun construed with that preposition; for instance:

Whenever something is spoken of, that has been named in the first part of the sentence, or in the question which is an-
B swered to, instead of repeating the name of that thing, the particle *en* is used, if that name has already been construed with *de*: as,

Si vous voulez voir de *beaux tableaux, il* en *a*; if you wish to see fine pictures, he has some.

En stands for *de beaux tableaux*.

It is the same, if the words of the second phrase require *de* or imply it: as,

J'ai été voir le Panorama: Nous en *parlions dans le moment*;
I went to see the Panorama: We were just speaking of it.
Vous avez vu le Panorama; en *êtes-vous content?*
You have seen the Panorama; have you been pleased with it?

En is used, because we say, *parler de, être content de.*

C As also in this phrase wherein *de* is implied: *La patience est une grande vertu: Oui, c'en est une grande*; Patience is a great virtue; yes, it is a great one. *En* stands for *des vertus*, and the answering phrase is elliptical, viz. *c'est une grande vertu* des vertus.]

En refers also to the *place*: as *En venez-vous? Oui j'en viens*; Do you come from thence? (a place mentioned before.) Yes, I come from that place.

Moreover *en* is used through exaggeration, as in this phrase, *Je n'en puis plus*, I am quite gone; and others like, which are inserted in my Dialogues and Dictionary.

3°. The particle *y* relates to Places, Persons, and Things, con-
D sidered as a Condition, State, Disposition, Obligation or Necessity, under which one is; the Subject or Matter which one applies one's self to; and an End one aims at: in all which acceptations it is rendered into English, by *there*, *thither*, or *within* (when it has a reference to place), or by the pronouns *it* or *they*, with one of these prepositions, *at*, *by*, *for*, *in*, *of*, *to*, *with*: as,

C'est une belle charge, il y *aspiroit depuis long-temps*;
It is a fine place, he aimed *at it* a great while ago.
Il l'a fait, mais il n'y gagnera rien;
He has done it, but he will get nothing *by* it.

Il n'aime pas sa profession, il n'y est pas propre; A
He does not like his calling *or* business, he is not fit *for it.*
L' affaire dont vous parlez mérite bien qu'on y songe;
The affair you are speaking of is well worth thinking *of.*
Il aime son devoir, il s'y applique entièrement;
He loves his duty, he is entirely apply'd *to it.*
Il s'est engagé dans une étrange affaire, il n'y réussira pas;
He is engaged in an odd sort of affair, he will not succeed *in it.*

I have said that when *y* and *en* meet together, *y* goes first: but *en* is then a pronoun: for when it is a preposition (in which case it is never used with verbs, but before their gerunds) it goes before *y*: as, *En y allant*, by the way, *or* when I go by. B

¶ *En* may refer to persons; but *y* very seldom does, and never hardly, except in giving an answer: for instance, having spoken of a man, we may say very properly; *Je n'en fais point de cas*; I have no esteem for him:

But in this phrase: He is an honest man, court him; we should say; *c'est un honnête homme, attachez-vous à lui*: and by no means, *attachez-vous-y*; (which phrase would be very proper in speaking of any thing, as a science, an art, &c.) In this likewise; I know that man, I will not trust him; *je connois cet homme-là, je ne veux point me fier à lui.* (*Je ne m'y fie pas*, savours too much of a proverb.)

Whereas to this phrase; Mr. A. is your friend, you should think of him; *M. A. est votre ami, vous devriez penser à lui*; the answer may be given thus: *oui, j'y penserai*; yes, I will; or to this: *Pensez-vous à votre ami?* Are you thinking of your friend? *Oui, j'y pense*; Yes, I am.

However in this phrase: When a man is dead, he is no longer thought of; *quand un homme est mort, on n'y pense plus*: *y* may be used, because the phrase presents an indefinite sense; but it would be improper, if the sense were determinate; and you should say in this phrase: Mrs. B. is dead; *Madame B. est morte*; you no longer think of her; *vous ne pensez plus à elle*: or in this: My friend is dead, I think of him every day; *mon ami est mort, je pense* à lui *tous les jours*; the expression *j'y pense* would imply another meaning, viz. his *or* her death.] C

y is moreover used in some particular phrases, which it is difficult to reduce to rules, with respect to the Genius of the English tongue; but which are inserted in my Dialogues and Dictionary.

Particular Observations upon the Construction of the Pronouns Personal of the third Person il, lui, elle.

§ VI. 1°. The pronouns *il*, *ils*; *elle*, *elles*; *le*, *la*, *les*; either governing, or being governed of a verb, are indifferently used for all sorts of objects, rational and irrational, animate or inanimate. Therefore we say, D

speaking of	a Rock, a Mountain,	*Il est escarpé*; it is stiff.
		Elle est haute; it is high.
	Trees, and Meadows.	*Ils sont fleuris*; they are in blossom.
		Je la ferai couper; I will get it cut down.
		Il faut les couper; they must be cut down.

But

A But when the ſame pronouns attend the verb *to be*, the pronoun relative indeclinable *le* muſt be uſed, in ſpeaking of irrational and inanimate things. Thus, in anſwer to this queſtion,

Eſt ce-là la montagne dont vous parliez?
Is that the mountain that you were ſpeaking of?
We ſay *ce l'eſt*, it is it, (or) that's it; not *c'eſt elle.*
Eſt-ce-là votre livre? Oui ce l'eſt, and never *c'eſt lui.*
Is that your book? Yes it is.

2°. *Il, ils; elle, elles*, are uſed through all their ſtates, when objects are perſonified, and one attributes to them what is attri-
B buted to perſons: which the French frequently do in ſpeaking of virtues and vices: as,

L'amour-propre eſt captieux: c'eſt lui *qui nous ſéduit; de* lui *viennent la plupart de nos maux; & ce n'eſt qu' à* lui *qu'il faut s'en prendre.*	Self-love is deceitful: *It* ſeduces us; from *it* moſt of our evils proceed; and upon *it* only we muſt lay the blame of them.
*La vertu eſt précieuſe: d'*elle *ſeule nous devons attendre de véritables biens: c'eſt à* elle *que nous devons notre vraie gloire;* C *& c'eſt pour* elle *qu'il faut ſacrifier nos ſoins.*	Virtue is precious: from *it* alone true bleſſings ought to be expected: to *it* we owe our true glory; and for *it* our cares muſt be ſacrified.

But,

3°. Uſage, the only Maſter of the Rules in point of Languages, and the only rule of ſpeaking properly, has, as it were, conſecrated the other ſtates of that pronoun (*lui, leur, de lui, à elle*, &c.) to ſuch odd ways of conſtruction, as are impoſſible to be reduced to rules, and can be learnt only by uſe. Thus ſpeaking of inanimate things, we muſt ſometimes uſe *lui* and *leur*, and ſometimes we muſt not, tho' ſpeaking of the ſame things. Thus we ſay of a ſword, *Je* lui *dois la vie*; I owe my life *to it* (becauſe *épée*, ſword, is perſonified); but it is not ſo in the follow-
D ing phraſe, and we muſt ſay:

J'y ai fait mettre une nouvelle garde; I have got a new hilt put to it; not *je lui ai fait mettre.*

Again, we ſay of mineral waters,
Je leur *ſuis redevable de ma ſanté*;
I am indebted to them for my health (they are perſonified;) but we muſt ſay,
On y a fait de beaux réſervoirs;
Fine reſervoirs have been built *for them*; not *on leur a fait.*

The

The conjunctives *lui* and *leur* are generally said of animate things, as horses, birds, and other living creatures: as, A.

speaking of	a bird,	*Coupez*-lui *les ailes*,	cut his wings.
	chickens,	*Donnez* leur *à manger*,	give them to eat.

However, the Practice of these Constructions is so much the easier to learn, as they don't extend to a great many cases, which I have taken care to insert in my Exercises.

4°. The disjunctive pronouns *lui* and *elle*, *eux* and *elles*, governed by a preposition, can never be said at all of irrational and inanimate creatures. Therefore we don't say *D'abord on plaça le poteau* (or *la poutre*) *& après* lui (elle) *une barre de fer*; but

D'abord on plaça le poteau, or *la poutre*, *&* ensuite *une barre de fer*; B.
They first placed the post, or beam, and then (after it) an iron bar.

Therefore in those cases, to remove the difficulty, one must make use of an adverb, whose signification comprehends, and answers to that of both the preposition and pronoun. Thus we say,

Prenez ce cheval & montez dessus; not *sur lui*.
Take that horse and mount *or* ride him.
Ouvrez ce cabinet, *& mettez-vous* dedans; not *dans lui*.
Open that closet and get in.
Ils étoient à l'entour; not *autour de lui*. C.
They were round it (speaking of a tree, for instance).

5°. These following, being both prepositions and adverbs according as they are or are not followed by a noun or pronoun, when any of them meets with such a pronoun, which can't be said of inanimate things, one need only suppress the pronoun, and the word which was a preposition, becomes thereby an adverb.

à côté,	aside, by.	*dessous*,	underneath.
à couvert,	sheltered.	*au dessous*,	below.
à l'abri,	under shelter.	*par-dessous*,	under.
en deçà,	on this side.	*loin*,	far. D.
au de-là,	on that side, *or* beyond.	*proche*, for *près de*,	near.
auprès,	near, by.	*autravers*, for *à travers de*,	cross.
avec,	with.	*tout contre*,	hard by.
dessus,	upon.	*tout auprès*,	just by.
au dessus,	above, over.	*vis-à vis*,	over against.
par-dessus,	over and above.	*aux environs*,	round about.

Therefore as speaking of a brute or a tree, we say: *Mettez vous vis à-vis*; put yourself over-against it; not *vis-à-vis de lui*, or *d'elle*.

A *The Use and Construction of the Pronominal Adnouns.*

§ VII. We have seen that they are of two sorts, the Absolute and Relative.

1°. Pronominal adnouns absolute (or rather *possessive articles*, see p. 359.) *mon*, *ton*, *son*, &c. do not agree in French in gender with the noun of the Possessor, as in English, but with that of the thing possessed: as,

La mère aime son *fils*, & *le père* sa *fille*,
The mother loves *her* son, and the father *his* daughter.

2°. When a noun feminine (which should naturally take before it the feminine of these adnouns, *ma*, *ta*, *sa*) begins with
B a vowel, or *h* mute, it takes the masculine *mon*, *ton*, *son*, in order to avoid the meeting of two vowels; as,

mon âme,	my soul.	*son élévation*,	his *or* her rise.
son histoire,	his *or* her story.	*sa haute élévation*,	his great preferment.
son habileté,	his *or* her skill.	*sa honte*,	his *or* her shame.

3°. We always use these pronominal adnouns before nouns of relations and friends, when we address ourselves to them; whereas such particles are in general left out in English: as,

Venez-çà, *ma fille*, or *mon enfant*; Come hither, daughter, *or*
C child.

Tout à l'heure,	*ma mère*,	*mon père*;	*oui*,	*ma tante*, &c.
Presently,	mother,	father;	yes,	aunt, &c.

4°. Pronominal adnouns absolute, coming after a verb with a noun, are resolved in French by their primitive pronoun personal in the third state: as,

He has cut off *his* head;	*Il* lui *a coupé la tête*, and not *il a coupé* sa *tête*;
You cut *my* finger;	*Vous* me *coupez le doigt*; and never *vous coupez* mon *doigt*;
D Twist *his* neck;	*Tordez*-lui *le cou*, and never *tordez* son *cou*, &c.

5° When nouns are preceded by a personal pronoun, which sufficiently denotes whose is the thing you speak of, the pronominal adnouns are wholly left out, and supplied by the article: as,

Je lui dois la *vie*; I owe *my* life to him; *or* to it: and never *ma vie*.
Il grince les *dents*; he gnashes his teeth: and never *ses dents*; the pronouns *je* and *il*, specifying enough whose life and teeth are meant, and therefore making the possessive unnecessary.

For

For the same reason we say: *J'ai mal à* la *tête*; I have a pain in my head, I have the head-ach, *&c.*; *Elle a mal* aux *dents*; she has the tooth-ach: *Il a* le *pied foulé*; *his* foot is sprained, *&c.* not *j'ai mal à* ma *tête*: son *pied est foulé*. A

But we say: *Je vois que* ma *jambe s'enfle*; I see that my leg swells; because in saying only *Je vois que la jambe s'enfle*, the pronoun *je* cannot denote that I mean my own leg, since I can likewise see that another's leg swells.

Nevertheless, if the pain is become, as it were, habitual, we may say (in speaking to somebody who knows it) *Ma tête*, or *Ma jambe me fait mal*; my head, *or* leg pains me: *Ma migraine m'a fort tourmenté aujourd'hui*; my megrim has tormented me much to day: *Sa fièvre le consume*; his fever consumes him: because the adnoun denotes the particular habit which one has contracted with the aching part of the body, or the disease itself. B

It is for the same reason we say: *Il ne se tient pas ferme sur ses pieds*; he don't stand firm upon his feet: *Tenez-vous ferme sur vos jambes*; stand firm upon your legs; because this ought to be habitual and natural.

We say in a proverbial way of speaking *se trouver sur ses pieds*, to signify that one cannot be the worse for undertaking some particular things; and *retomber sur ses pieds*, to signify, that one always gets off clear and safe, whatever he attempts.

Pronominal adnouns are also very properly used with the names of the members of the body, in some few sentences like these: *Il lui donna sa main à baiser*; he gave him his hand to kiss: *Elle a donné hardiment son bras au Chirurgien*; she boldly gave her arm to the Surgeon; *Il perd tout son sang*; he loses all his blood, *&c.* But they must be learnt by practice, as well as when it is indifferent to use or not the adnoun: as *Elever la voix*, or *Elever sa voix*; to raise one's voice, *&c.* C

But observe here, *1st*, that *son*, *sa*, *ses*, are not always englished by *his*, *her*, *its*, nor the English pronoun *one's self* rendered into French by *soi*, or *soi-même*: but that one must consider the term of its relation: for if it relates to the pronoun indeterminate *on*, or some of its oblique relations, as in the instance *se trouver sur ses pieds*; or in other words, if considered with its substantive, it relates to nothing specified, as in the other instance, *retomber sur ses pieds*, then *son*, *sa*, *ses* cannot be rendered in English by *his*, *her*, &c. which has a reference to something specified, but by the pronoun indeterminate *one's self*, or only *one's* followed by a noun: as, on the other hand, *one's self* must be rendered into French by *se*, as *se blesser*, to hurt one's self, and *one's* followed by a noun, by a pronominal adnoun absolute agreeing with it, as in the said instances *se trouver sur ses pieds* (word for word), to be upon one's feet still; *retomber sur ses pieds*, to light upon one's feet again. D

2dly, As the pronouns personal of the third person, *il*, *elle*, *lui*, *leur*, &c. cannot be used in some particular cases, when we speak of irrational and inanimate things; so in like cases we do not use the adnouns *son*, *sa*, *ses*; *leurs*, *le sien*, &c. instead whereof we use the relative *(en)*: and we say, *Cette maladie est fort cachée*; *cependant* j'en *connois l'origine & les effets* (not *son origine*).

This illness is much hid, yet I know its origin and effects, *or* I know both the original and effects of it: tho' we say, *Je connois cette maladie*, *son origine*, *ses symptômes*, *& ses effets*, I know this illness, its origin, symptoms, and effects.

We say likewise,

Voilà de bonne eau; *j'en connois toutes les qualités* (not *ses qualités*);
That water is good; I know all its qualities.

A *Voyez-vous cette maison? la situation en est belle, les pavillons en sont grands* (not *sa situation*); Do you see that house? It is pleasantly situated; its pavilions are large. Tho' we say *Cette maison a ses commodités & ses inconvéniens*, That house has its conveniences and inconveniences.

Likewise, we say of a tree, *Les fruits en sont bons*, &c. *ils sont meilleurs que ceux d'un autre*, &c. Its fruit is good; it is better than another's.

The pronominal adnouns are safely used when the term of their relation is expressed before, in the same sentence, by a noun or pronoun; as.

Remettez ce livre à sa place;	Put this book in its place again.
Mettez-le en sa place;	Put it in its place.

6°. The Pronominal adnouns absolute must always be repeated in French before every noun, when there are many in the sentence, with which they are grammatically construed: as,

B *Son père & sa mère*, his father and mother (not *son père & mère*).

Nos amis & nos ennemis, our friends and foes (not *nos amis & ennemis*).

Elle lui fit voir ses plus beaux & ses plus vilains habits;
She showed him her best and worst clothes.

¶ Except when the two adnouns have almost the same signification: as, *Elle lui fit voir ses plus beaux & plus magnifiques habits*; She showed him her finest and most magnificent clothes.]

C 7°. The Pronominal adnouns relative, *le mien*, *le vôtre*, &c. are of the same use, and have the same construction as in English, being never put before a noun, but always relating to a foregoing one: as,

Est ce là votre livre?	~~*Oui, c'est*~~ le mien,	or *ce l'est*,
Is that your book?	Yes, it is mine.	*or* Yes, it is.

But when this adnoun (referring to its antecedent expressed in the same sentence) comes after *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*, it must be resolved in French by a pronoun personal disjunctive, in the third relation: as,

That book is *mine*;	That house is *his*, or *yours*;
D *Ce livre est* à moi.	*Cette maison est* à lui, *or* à vous.

8°. The noun in the 2*d* state that comes after *to be*, used in the same signification, must likewise be put in the third state: as,

This hat is *the Gentleman's*;	This fan is *the Lady's*;
Ce chapeau est à Monsieur.	*Cet éventail est* à Madame.

Moreover, we use the Pronominal adnoun absolute in the following case, when the English use the adnoun relative:

A friend of *mine*; *Un de* mes *amis* (not *un ami* des miens).

A book of *his*; *Un de* ses *livres* (not *un livre* des siens, &c.).

Of

Of the Construction of the Pronouns Relative qui, lequel, &c. *So called as always referring to some Noun or Pronoun which precedes, and then is styled* Antecedent. A

§ VIII. 1°. The Relative *qui* always comes next to the antecedent: as, *Ces* gens qui *demeuroient chez moi sont partis*; Those *people* are gone *who* lodged at my house.

Except when the antecedent is a pronoun personal, coming before its verb: as, *Il* la *trouva* qui *pleuroit à chaudes larmes*; He found her weeping most bitterly.

¶ The antecedent, when a pronoun demonstrative, is sometimes left out; as, *Qui répond, paye*; He who bails (*or* the security) must pay. (*Celui*, nominative to *paye*, is understood, and *qui* is said to be used absolutely. (See *quiconque*, p. 262. C) B
Sometimes the two verbs are elegantly inverted; as, *Travailloit* qui *pouvoit*; They worked, that could. *Joua* qui *voulut*; They that chose, played at cards.]

2°. The relative *qui* is used only in the first and fourth states for both genders and numbers, with respect to all sorts of objects; but in the other states, that is, after a preposition, it is said of personal objects only, or considered as such. When we speak of irrational and inanimate objects, we use the other pronouns *lequel* and *quoi*. Thus we say,

L'homme, (or) *la femme* qui *vous a parlé*, (or) que *vous voyez*;
The man, *(or)* woman *who* spoke to you, *(or) whom* you see.
Le Prince, (or) *la Princesse* de qui *il a reçu tant de faveurs*; The C
Prince, *(or)* Princess *of whom* he has received so many favours.
Le maître, (or) *la maîtresse à* qui *il appartient*;
The master, *(or)* mistress *whom* he belongs *to*. [most.
Les choses qui *lui plaisent le plus*; The things *that* please him
Le cheval que *vous montez*; The horse *that* you ride *upon*.
Les malheurs que *vous appréhendez*; The misfortunes *which* you fear.

But speaking of irrational and inanimate creatures, we say:
Le cheval duquel (or) dont *je me sers*; The horse *that* I use (or) use to ride (not *de qui*).
L'opinion à laquelle (or) à quoi *je m'attache*; The opinion D
which I adhere *to* (not *à qui*).
La chose sur laquelle (or) sur quoi *je fais fond*; The thing which I rely upon (not *sur qui*).

We say: *La Fortune*, de qui *j'attends tout*; Fortune, *from which* I expect all.

Le Ciel, de qui *j'espère*; Heaven, *from which* I hope, *&c.*—because *la Fortune* and *le Ciel* are there personified.

3°. *Dont* is used for both genders and numbers, instead of the second state of the three pronouns relative, *qui*, *lequel*, *quoi*. It

A *Voyez-vous cette maison? la situation en est belle, les pavillons en sont grands* (not *sa situation*); Do you see that house? It is pleasantly situated; its pavilions are large. Tho' we say *Cette maison a ses commodités & ses inconvéniens*, That house has its conveniences and inconveniences.

Likewise, we say of a tree, *Les fruits en sont bons*, &c. *ils sont meilleurs que ceux d'un autre*, &c. Its fruit is good; it is better than another's.

The pronominal adnouns are safely used when the term of their relation is expressed before, in the same sentence, by a noun or pronoun; as.

Remettez ce livre à sa place;	Put this book in its place again.
Mettez-le en sa place;	Put it in its place.

6°. The Pronominal adnouns absolute must always be repeated in French before every noun, when there are many in the sentence, with which they are grammatically construed: as,

B *Son père & sa mère*, his father and mother (not *son père & mère*).

Nos amis & nos ennemis, our friends and foes (not *nos amis & ennemis*).

Elle lui fit voir ses plus beaux & ses plus vilains habits;
She showed him her best and worst clothes.

¶ Except when the two adnouns have almost the same signification: as, *Elle lui fit voir ses plus beaux & plus magnifiques habits*; She showed him her finest and most magnificent clothes.]

C 7°. The Pronominal adnouns relative, *le mien*, *le vôtre*, &c. are of the same use, and have the same construction as in English, being never put before a noun, but always relating to a foregoing one: as,

Est ce là votre livre?	*Oui, c'est* le mien,	or *ce l'est*,
Is that your book?	Yes, it is mine.	*or* Yes, it is.

But when this adnoun (referring to its antecedent expressed in the same sentence) comes after *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*, it must be resolved in French by a pronoun personal disjunctive, in the third relation: as,

That book is *mine*;	That house is *his*, or *yours*;
D *Ce livre est* à moi.	*Cette maison est* à lui, *or* à vous.

8°. The noun in the 2*d* state that comes after *to be*, used in the same signification, must likewise be put in the third state: as,

This hat is *the Gentleman's*;	This fan is *the Lady's*;
Ce chapeau est à Monsieur.	*Cet éventail est* à Madame.

Moreover, we use the Pronominal adnoun absolute in the following case, when the English use the adnoun relative:

A friend of mine; *Un de* mes *amis* (not *un ami* des miens).
A book of his; *Un de* ses *livres* (not un livre des siens, &c.).

Of

Of the Construction of the Pronouns Relative qui, lequel, &c. *So called as always referring to some Noun or Pronoun which precedes, and then is styled* Antecedent. A

§ VIII. 1°. The Relative *qui* always comes next to the antecedent: as, *Ces* gens qui *demeuroient chez moi sont partis*; Those *people* are gone *who* lodged at my house.

Except when the antecedent is a pronoun personal, coming before its verb: as, *Il* la *trouva* qui *pleuroit à chaudes larmes*; He found her weeping most bitterly.

¶ The antecedent, when a pronoun demonstrative, is sometimes left out; as, *Qui répond, paye*; He who bails (*or* the security) must pay. (*Celui*, nominative to *paye*, is understood, and *qui* is said to be used absolutely. (See *quiconque*, p. 262. C) B
Sometimes the two verbs are elegantly inverted; as, *Travailloit* qui *pouvoit*; They worked, that could. *Joua* qui *voulut*; They that chose, played at cards.]

2°. The relative *qui* is used only in the first and fourth states for both genders and numbers, with respect to all sorts of objects; but in the other states, that is, after a preposition, it is said of personal objects only, or considered as such. When we speak of irrational and inanimate objects, we use the other pronouns *lequel* and *quoi*. Thus we say,

L'homme, (or) *la femme* qui *vous a parlé*, (or) que *vous voyez*;
The man, *(or)* woman *who* spoke to you, *(or) whom* you see.
Le Prince, (or) *la Princesse* de qui *il a reçu tant de faveurs*; The C
Prince, *(or)* Princess *of whom* he has received so many favours.
Le maître, (or) *la maîtresse à* qui *il appartient*;
The master, *(or)* mistress *whom* he belongs *to*. [most.
Les choses qui *lui plaisent le plus*; The things *that* please him
Le cheval que *vous montez*; The horse *that* you ride *upon*.
Les malheurs que *vous appréhendez*; The misfortunes *which* you fear.

But speaking of irrational and inanimate creatures, we say:
Le cheval duquel (or) dont *je me sers*; The horse *that* I use (or) use to ride (not *de qui*).
L'opinion à laquelle (or) à quoi *je m'attache*; The opinion D
which I adhere *to* (not *à qui*).
La chose sur laquelle (or) sur quoi *je fais fond*; The thing which I rely upon (not *sur qui*).

We say: *La Fortune*, de qui *j'attends tout*; Fortune, *from which* I expect all.
Le Ciel, de qui *j'espère*; Heaven, *from which* I hope, *&c.*—because *la Fortune* and *le Ciel* are there personified.

3°. *Dont* is used for both genders and numbers, instead of the second state of the three pronouns relative, qui, lequel, quoi. It

A always comes before the conjunctives *je*, *nous*; *tu*, *vous*; *il*, *ils*; *elle*, *elles*; and is said both of persons and things: as,

C'est l'homme dont *je parle*; He is the man *whom* I am speaking of.

C'est une charge dont *il ne se soucie pas*; It is a place *which* he does not care *for*.

Vous voyez les femmes dont *il parloit*; You see the women he [spoke *of*.

Except when questions are asked, for they cannot begin with *dont*: as, *De qui* (or) *de quoi parlez vous?* Whom (or) what are you speaking of?

De qui is used as well as *dont*, but with this difference, that B it expresses the *Ablative* of the Latins, and is denoted by *from* in English: as,

L'homme de qui *j'ai reçu une lettre*; The man from whom I have received a letter.

Whereas *of whom*, *of which*, *whose*, must always be rendered by *dont*, which expresses the *Genitive* of the Latins: as,

La personne dont *la réputation vous étonne*; The person whose reputation you wonder at.

But *dont* must have immediately before it the term which it refers to, and be followed by a subject, either noun or pronoun, and a verb, or by a verb impersonal followed by another verb: as,

C *Le Ciel*, *dont le secours est nécessaire*; Heaven, whose aid is necessary.

Le Ciel, *dont le secours ne manque jamais*; Heaven, whose assistance never fails.

Le Ciel, *dont il faut implorer le secours*; Heaven, whose aid must be implored.

However this phrase, and the like: Heaven, without whose assistance we cannot prosper, must be expressed with the pronoun *de qui* or *duquel*, thus: *Le Ciel*, *sans le secours* duquel *nous ne pouvons réussir*; not *dont sans* or *sans dont le secours*, because tho' *dont* would have immediately before it the noun which it relates to, yet D it would not be followed immediately by the subject of the verb.

4°. *Où* is likewise used for the third state of the three pronouns relative *to whom*, *to which*, *to what*; as also when they are governed by any of these prepositions *at*, *in*, *into*, *with*. It serves for both genders and numbers, and relates to things denoting Time, Place, Condition, Disposition, Design, End and Aim; but never to persons: as,

Voilà le but où *il tend*; That is the end *which* he aims *at*.

Le siècle où *nous vivons*; The age *wherein* we live.

Une

Une affaire où *je ne veux pas entrer*; A
A thing *in which* I won't be concerned.
Les malheurs où *il est plongé*: the misfortunes *into which* he is plunged.

Où in the first instance stands for *auquel*; in the 2d, for *dans lequel*; in the 3d, for *dans laquelle*; and in the 4th, for *dans lesquels*.

From *où* are formed the adverbs of place *d'où* from whence, and *par où* through where, through which place.

5°. *Que* is sometimes used instead of *de qui* and *à qui*; so that *que*, besides its being the fourth state of *qui*, is also used for the second and third, for both genders and numbers; whenever there comes immediately before it the second or third state of a noun or pronoun personal for which it is a substitute; but the sentence must begin with *ce* and the verb *être*; as, B

C'est de vous qu'*on parle* (instead of *de qui* or *dont*);
It is you they are speaking of.
C'est à vous qu'*on s'addresse* (instead of *à qui*);
It is you they make application to.
C'est à vous qu'*il appartient de*, . . . (not *à qui*);
It is to you that it belongs, to . . .

¶ In such phrases *que* is rather *conductive*, and answers to *ce*: the following verb is to determine what preposition must be employed after the verb *être*; hence the complement of that preposition is the virtual regimen of the following verb.]

6°. *Que*, among a great many other constructions, which shall C be mentioned in the *Appendix*, has a particular one, which may be called *Conductive*, being a Conjunction then used to bring the sense of the sentence to its perfection: *que* so used is englished by *that*, when expressed, for it is very often left out in English, even when it is relative; but it must be always expressed in French, where it always governs or is governed: as,

Je crois que *vous parlez*; I think you speak, or *that* you speak.
L'homme que *vous voyez*; The man you see, or *that*, or *whom* you see.

In the first instance, the verb *Je crois*, coming before *que*, requires another verb to make the whole sentence, the continuity D of the sense whereof is performed by *que*. In the other, *que* is governed of *vous voyez*, and relates to *l'homme*.

That *que* Conductive, is used in a very emphatical manner, before a noun terminating a sentence, or a verb, thus:

C'est une passion dangereuse que *le jeu*; Gaming is a dangerous passion.
C'est une sorte de honte que *d'être malheureux*; It is a sort of shame to be miserable.

But observe, *1st*, that those sentences wherein *que* is thus used, always begin with the impersonal *c'est* it is, or at least the pronoun primitive *ce*, and end with the noun which begins the sentence in English, and before which *que* is put.

2dly, That *que* always requires *de* after it, when it comes before the infinitive.

A Moreover, 1st, *Qui*, besides its being relative, is also interrogative and declarative, signifying *quelle personne?* what person? and then it takes *qui* and not *que* for its fourth state; as *Qui a fait cela?* or *Qui est-ce qui a fait cela?* Who has done that? *Je sais qui vous voulez dire*; I know whom you mean. *Qui verrez vous tantôt?* Whom are you to see this evening?

2dly, Sometimes *qui*, in asking a question, signifies *quelle chose* (what thing): as *Qui fait l'oiseau?* or *Qui est-ce qui fait l'oiseau?* What makes the bird?

3dly, Sometimes also *qui* between two verbs, and even in the beginning of a sentence, signifies *celui qui*, he who, he that; and *quicunque*, whosoever, any body who: when it meets between two verbs, it is governed of the first, at the same time that it governs the second; as in these phrases: *C'est l'excuse ordinaire de* qui *n'en a point de bonne*; It is the usual excuse of those who have not a good one. *Il le dit à* qui *veut l'entendre*; He says it to any body who is willing to hear it.

B ¶ Where it seems that at the same time *qui* is both governed and governing; but the truth is (see p. 253. B.), that its antecedent is understood.]

¶ This elliptical construction is an elegance, because it favours the brevity of diction; but it is allowed only when there is no clashing of regimen: the ellipsis may take place in the above phrases, or in this:

Voulez vous que je m'attache à qui *je n'ai jamais su plaire?* Do you wish me to pay my addresses to the person whom I never was able to please?

S'attacher and *plaire* have the same regimen, that is, both are construed with the preposition *à*.

But in this phrase,

Voulez vous que je m'éloigne de la personne *à qui j'ai toujours su plaire?* Do you want me to break off correspondence with the person whom I have always been able to please?

the ellipsis cannot take place, because *s'éloigner* requires the preposition *de*, and
C *plaire* the preposition *à*.

This phrase, *à qui mieux mieux*, (the meaning of which is, in emulation of one another,) may likewise be accounted for, by rectifying the ellipsis of *celui*.]

4thly, The relative *qui* and *lequel* can never agree with a noun that has no article before it. Therefore these English sentences,

He did that through avarice, which is capable of any thing;
I know that by experience, which is a great master;

must be rendered into French without the relative, and make two distinct sentences, one of which ends with the noun, and the other begins with *et* or *ma* with the noun repeated, instead of the relative, thus:

Il a fait cela par avarice; mais l'avarice est capable de tout.
Je sais cela par expérience; Et l'expérience est un grand maître; or
Et vous savez, or *Et l'on sait bien que l'expérience est un grand maître.*

D ¶ Because, in French, the relative cannot refer to a substantive, taken adverbially, and in an unlimited sense.]

Except from this rule; 1st, Proper names, which are sufficiently determined and specified by themselves, without taking the article: as, *Je lis Cicéron, qui est aussi bon Philosophe qu'Orateur*; I read Cicero, who is as good a Philosopher as Orator.

J'ai vu Paris, qui est une des plus belles villes du monde;
I have seen Paris, which is one of the finest cities in the world.

2dly, Such nouns as have *de* before them, on account of some previous word that requires it, and thereby sufficiently determines the next noun; as the adnouns *capable, coupable*, &c. the nouns *sorte, espèce*, &c. the adverbs *assez, point*, &c. as,

Il est coupable de crimes qui méritent la mort; He is guilty of crimes which deserve death.
Il n'y a point d'homme qui n'ait son foible; There is no man but has his weak side.
Une sorte de liqueur qui est bonne à boire; A sort of liquor that is good to drink.

3dly,

3*dly*, Such nouns of the things which are called to, and answer the vocative of the Latins, before which the particle exclamative *ô* may come: as, A

Hommes, qui vivez en bêtes! Men, who live like brutes!
Avarice, qui causes tant de maux! Oh Covetousness, that causest so many mischiefs!

4*thly*, Such other nouns that have before them any number, as *un, deux, trois, vingt*, &c. any of these pronouns, *ce, quelque, plusieurs, tout, nul, aucun* (which perform there the office of the article), or the particle *en* signifying *as* or *like*; as, *Il en vint un*, or *plusieurs qui n'étoient pas invités*; There came one, *or* many who were not invited.

Il parle en Philosophe qui sait la raison des choses;
He speaks like a Philosopher who knows the reason of things.

The reason both of this rule and exception is, that the Genius of the French language don't allow the relative qui *to be used after a noun, unless it is specified by the article, or by some other specifying word, or by its own signification.*

¶ For the same reason, *which* referring to a whole sentence cannot be translated into French by the mere relative *qui* or *que*, but by *ce qui* or *ce que*; the intervention of the pronoun *ce* being necessary to individualise, as it were, the whole phrase related to.] B

7°. The pronoun *lequel, laquelle*, is used for the sake of avoiding the too frequent repetitions of *qui*, and of removing the ambiguities that may arise from that pronoun, which is of both genders and numbers, and said, in the first state, both of persons and things; as in these sentences:

Alexandre fils de Philippe qui *régna le premier en Asie*,
Alexander, Philip's son, who reigned the first in Asia.

One cannot tell whether it was Alexander or Philip who reigned: whereas *lequel* used instead of *qui*, will denote that it was Alexander; because when two nouns of the same gender come together, the relative *lequel* refers to the former, and therefore removes the ambiguity that may be occasioned by *qui*. C

C'est la cause de cet effet dont *je vais traiter*, (or) que *je vais examiner*; It is the cause of that effect which I am going to treat of, (or) to examine.

One cannot see whether *dont* or *que*, which are used for both genders, relate to *effet* or *cause*; therefore *lequel*, or *laquelle*, must be used, according to the gender of its antecedent.

However, it is much better to repeat *qui*, tho' ever so often, when it causes no ambiguity, than to use *lequel*, which is quite appropriated to the style of proclamations, edicts, treaties, contracts, and other acts of that nature, wherein less regard is to be had to the purity, than to the perspicuity of the language. D

8°. *Qui* must be repeated before every verb of which it is the subject: as,

C'est un homme qui *est savant*, qui *danse bien*, qui *joue de plusieurs instrumens*, & qui *se fait aimer de tout le monde*; He is a

A learned man, who dances well, plays upon several instruments, and makes himself beloved by every body.

¶ *Qui* and *lequel* are sometimes used to imply indecision, choice, comparison between several persons or things: in which case the names of such persons or things are each pointed out by the preposition *de*; whereas, in English, they admit of no preposition; as,

1. *Je ne sais à* qui *m'adresser*, de *Pierre*, de *Paul* ou de *Jean*; I do not know *whom* I should apply to, Peter, Paul or John.

2. *Choisissez* laquelle *vous voudrez*, de *la montre ou de la bague*; choose *which* you like best, the watch or the ring.

Such phrases are elliptical. The 1st stands for, *Je ne sais à qui* des trois *m'adresser*, &c. which itself stands for, *Je ne sais* quel est celui des trois *à qui* je dois *m'adresser*, &c. As *celui* (see p. 259. A.) requires the preposition *de* before the next noun, and it is the genius of the French (see p. 345. B.) to repeat most prepositions before each noun governed, it may account for the prefixing of *de* to each subsequent noun.

B

The same may be said of the 2d phrase, which stands for, *choisissez laquelle* des deux *vous voudrez*, or *choisissez* celle des deux que *vous voudrez*, &c.

Sometimes the same preposition prefixed to the relative, may also be prefixed to the following nouns; but then the phrase will imply quite a different sense.

For instance, the 1st phrase construed with the preposition *de*, means that I should apply to one of the three persons, and *auquel* might be used instead of *à qui*. Whereas this phrase:

Je ne sais à *qui m'adresser*; à *Pierre*, à *Paul* ou à *Jean*: *non, je m'adresserai* à *Philippe*; means no intention, no obligation of applying to any of them, since I determine to apply to Philip; and *auquel* cannot be substituted to *à qui*. Again,

Avec qui *sortirez-vous*, de *Pierre ou* de *Paul*? With whom will you go out, Peter or Paul? *des deux*, of the two, is understood; therefore the phrase is very different from this:

C

Avec *qui sortirez-vous*; avec *Pierre ou* avec *Paul*? in which the ellipsis of *celui* may be rectified, but not that of *des deux*; and to which the answer may be: *Avec ni l'un ni l'autre*, with neither.]

9°. The pronoun *quoi* is also used for both genders and numbers. It is said of things only, and never of persons, and is sometimes used instead of *lequel*: as, *Le plus grand vice* à quoi *il soit sujet*, instead of *auquel il soit sujet*, The greatest vice which he is addicted to. *Ce sont des choses* à quoi *il faut penser*, instead of *auxquelles il faut*, &c. These are things which one must think of.

¶ *Quoi* has of itself an indeterminate signification, therefore though it may sometimes be used for *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c. yet there are cases wherein *lequel*, &c. cannot be employed instead of *quoi*. In such phrases for instance:

D

C'est à quoi *je vous exhorte*; That is what I exhort you to.

Il n'y a rien à quoi *je ne sois disposé*; There is not any thing I am not disposed for.

On account of the ellipsis of its antecedent, *quoi* sometimes appears to be used absolutely or rather substantively; as,

Je n'ai pas de quoi *vivre*; I have nothing wherewith to live upon.

En quoi *il est doublement coupable*; In that he is in a double manner culpable.]

¶ *As qui* sometimes signifies *quelle personne* (what person); so *quoi* sometimes signifies *quelle chose* (what thing); as, *De* quoi *parlez-vous*? What are you speaking of? *A* quoi *pensez-vous*? What are you thinking on? Il y a je ne sais quoi; There is I don't know what.]

Quoi makes *que* in its first and fourth state, and sometimes in its second state; it is then chiefly interrogatively: as,—*Qu'est-ce que c'est?* What is it? and never *Quoi-est-ce*, &c.—*Que dites-vous?* What d'you say?—*Que sert*, or *de quoi sert d'avoir du bien, si l'on n'en sait pas jouir?* What avail riches, if one knows not how to enjoy them? A

If somebody said, *Il m'est arrivé une étrange affaire*, An odd sort of affair has befallen me, one should ask *quoi?* what? or *quelle affaire?* what affair? But *quoi* is never used before a verb; and it is for that reason we say, *Que vous est-il arrivé?* What has happened to you? *Que dites-vous?* *Quoi* is never used in such phrases.

1°. The same pronouns relatives are used to ask questions, to which add *quel:* as, *Qui est cet homme-là*, or *Quel est cet homme-là?* Who is that man, or what is that man? *De qui ne médit on pas?* Who is not traduced? *A qui se fier?* Who can one trust to? (an ellipsis for *A qui peut-on se fier?*) *Quelle est cette femme-là?* Who is that woman? *Duquel, de laquelle, desquels parlez vous?* Which do you speak of? B

But *qui* is said of persons, and *quel* of things. Therefore to this proposition *Voilà des gens*, (or) *des femmes qui vous demandent*, There are people *or* women who ask for you, we answer *Qui sont-ils?* or *Qui sont-elles?* Who are they? But to these others, *Il court d'étranges bruits*, Strange reports are spread, we ask *Quels sont-ils?* What are they? and not *Qui sont ils?* C
J'ai appris de grandes nouvelles, I have heard great news. *Quelles sont-elles?* What are they? *Quelles sont ces nouvelles?*

The pronoun interrogative *quel* (without the article) answers to the *what* of the English; and *lequel* to their *which*; it being followed by the second state, when it comes before a noun: as, *Quel homme voulez-vous dire?* What man do you mean? *Lequel choisissez-vous?* Which do you choose? *Laquelle des deux souhaitez-vous?* Which of the two will you have? (See p. 257. B.)

Moreover observe a very remarkable Pleonasm most commonly, and sometimes necessarily, used in asking questions with the pronouns *qui* and *quoi*—The most natural (and the best) French for these questions and other like, is,—Who is there? *Qui est-là?*—Who has done that? *Qui a fait cela?*—What do you say? *Que dites-vous?*—What do you ask? *Que demandez-vous?* D

Yet the common idiom of the language is to express them thus: *Qui* est-ce qui *est-là?*—*Qui* est-ce qui *a fait cela?*—*Qu'* est-ce que *vous dites?*—*Qu'*est-ce que *vous demandez?* Nay we often say,—*Qu'*est-ce que c'est que *vous dites?*—*Qu'*est ce que c'est que *vous demandez?*

And to this Proposition, *J'ai quelque chose à vous dire*, I have something to say to you, the most natural and common answer is, *Qu'est-ce-que c'est?* What is it? And not *Qu'est-ce*, nor *Quoi est-ce*, nor *Quoi* what? which last would rather intimate that we did not hear what was said to us.

A *Of the Use and Construction of the Pron. Demonstrative*, ce, celui, ceci, cela, *&c.*

§ IX. 1°. The particles demonstrative, *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, *ces*, are mere adnouns: *celui-ci*, *celle-ci*; *celui-là*, *celle-là*, *ceux-ci*, *celles-ci*, *ceux-là*, *celles-là*, are used absolutely without any noun; and *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, *celles*, always require after them a noun in the second state, or the relative *qui* (in any of its states): as,

Ce tableau this or that picture, *cet ouvrage* that work, *cet homme* that man, *cette femme* that woman, *ces gens* those people, *ces filles* those girls.

B *Celui-ci est meilleur que celui-là*, This is better than that.

Celles-là ne sont pas si belles que celles-ci,
Those are not so good as these.

Votre cheval est aussi beau que celui du Maquignon,
Your horse is as fine as *that of* the Jockey (*or* as the Jockey's).

Celui qui aime la vertu, He that loves virtue.

Ci and *là* are sometimes added to the noun that comes after the demonstrative *ce*, *cet*, *cette*, in order to specify and particularise it still more; as *cet homme-ci* this man, *cette femme-là* that woman; *ci* denoting a near or present object, and *là* a distant and absent one; and *ce* thus followed by a noun attended by *ci* or *là*, answers to *this* or *that* before a noun.

C ¶ The same must be said of the pronouns *ceci* (this), and *cela* (that), which relate to things only, and are formed of the pronoun *ce* prefixed to the particles *ci* and *là*; as,

Ceci *est pour moi*, *&* cela *est pour vous*; This is for me, and that is for you.]

This and *that* are sometimes well rendered into French by *ce* or *cet* only; but one cannot in some cases leave out *ci* or *là*, and those cases must be determined by judgment only. Thus, if being at London I write a letter, and after mentioning Paris or Vienna, I add something that has happened there, I must necessarily say, *en cette ville là*, *là* added to *ville* specifying the distant city which I have been mentioning. For should I say only *en cette ville*, these words would intimate that it was at London, where the thing I am speaking of happened.

D 2°. The pronouns *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, which relate both to persons and things, being followed by the relative *qui*, are englished by *he who*, or *he that*, *she who* or *that*, *they who* or *that*, and *celui* is the subject of one verb, and *qui* that of another: as, *Celui qui aime la vertu est heureux*; *He who* loves virtue is happy.

Celle qui *refuse un mari n'est pas toujours sûre d'en retrouver un autre*;
She who refuses a husband is not always sure to get another again.

Ceux qui *méprisent la science n'en connoissent pas le prix*;
They who despise learning know not the value of it.

Obſerve, therefore, 1*ſt*, that *he who*, *he that*, *ſhe who*, *ſhe that*, A
&c. are never rendered into French by *il qui*, *elle qui*, *ils* or *eux qui*, but by *celui qui*, *celle qui*, *ceux qui*, &c.

2*dly*, That tho' theſe two words may be ſeparated in Engliſh, and come before their reſpective verb, yet they muſt always come together in French before the firſt verb, unleſs *là* is added to the firſt: as,

They know not the value of learning *who* deſpiſe it;

Ceux-là *ne connoiſſent pas le prix de la ſcience* qui *la méprisent* (or) Ceux qui *méprisent la ſcience n'en connoiſſent pas le prix.*

3*dly*, *He who* or *he that*, *they who* or *they that* (ſeparated in Engliſh) are alſo elegantly rendered into French by the impersonal B
c'eſt, with the infinitive followed by *que de* before a ſecond infinitive: as,

They know not the value of learning *who* deſpiſe it;

C'eſt *ne pas connoître le prix de la ſcience* que de *la mépriſer.*

C'eſt *ſe tromper* que de *croire*; He is miſtaken who thinks, *or* they, *or* thoſe are miſtaken who think, &c.

4*thly*, The pronominal adnouns abſolute, *his*, *her*, *their*, conſtrued in Engliſh with a noun followed by the pronoun relative *who* or *they* before a verb, is made into French by the ſecond ſtate of *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, followed by *qui*, and the poſſeſſive is left out: as, C

All men blame *his* manners *who* often ſays that which himſelf does not think;

Tout le monde blâme les mœurs de celui qui *dit ſouvent ce qu'il ne pense pas.*

Providence does not proſper their labours *that* ſlight their beſt friends;

La Providence ne bénit point les travaux de ceux qui *méprisent leurs meilleurs amis.*

5*thly*, The pronoun indeterminate *ſuch*, followed by *as* or *that* (but not governed of the verb ſubſtantive *to be*), is alſo rendered into French by *ceux qui*, or *celui qui*: as, D

Such as don't love virtue don't know it,

Ceux qui *n'aiment pas la vertu ne la connoiſſent pas.*

6*thly*, Theſe two words, *the former*, *the latter*, referring to nouns mentioned in the foregoing ſpeech, are made by *l'un* and *l'autre*, or *celui-ci* and *celui-là*, agreeing in gender with the noun; and *celui-ci* relates to the noun laſt mentioned, and *celui là* to the firſt mentioned; but *l'un* and *l'autre* may relate to either you pleaſe, according to its gender; as,

Virtue

Virtue is nothing else but an entire conformity to the eternal rule of things: *Vice* is the infringement of that rule. *This* causes the misery of men. *That* makes them happy. Therefore let us love the *former*, and detest *the latter*.

La vertu *n'est autre chose qu'une entière conformité à la règle éternelle des choses.* Le vice *est l'infraction de cette règle.* Celui-ci *fait le malheur des hommes.* Celle là *les rend heureux. Aimons donc* l'une, *& ayons* l'autre *en horreur.*

3°. The Primitive *ce* coming before *qui* or *que* is englished by *that which*, or *what*; these two words making a sort of pronoun
B that points and relates to something either spoken of before, or to be mentioned after: as,

Il dit ce qu'*il sait*, He says *what* he knows.
C'est ce qui *ne sera jamais*, It is *what* will never be.

4°. When *ce qui* or *ce que*, in the beginning of a sentence of two parts, is, jointly with the verb, the subject coming before the verb *est* in the second part of the sentence, *ce* must be repeated before *est*, and *est* followed by *de*, if it comes before an infinitive, or by *que* if it is another mood: as,

Ce que je crains, c'*est d'être surpris*, and not *est d'être surpris*,
C What I fear, is to be surprised.

¶ It is the same with the other tenses of *être*; as, *Ce que je craignois*, c'*étoit d'être surpris.*]

Ce qui l'afflige, c'*est* qu'*on le croit coupable*,
What concerns him, is that he is thought guilty.

But *ce* must not be repeated before *est*, when there comes next an adnoun: as, *Ce que vous dites* est *vrai*, what you say is true; and when it is a noun, it is indifferent to repeat it or to leave it out: as, *Ce que je dis est la vérité*, or *c'est la vérité*, what I say is the truth.

Except when the verb substantive is in the plural; for then *ce*
D must be repeated: as, *Ce que je ne puis souffrir*, ce *sont les insolences & les trahisons*, what I cannot bear are insolences and treacheries.

¶ *Ce*, both in asking and answering a question, signifies sometimes *cette personne*; sometimes *cette chose*.

Qui est-ce qui est venu? Who is come? stands for, *qui est* cette personne *qui*, &c. *Qu'est-ce que je vois là?* What do I see there? stands for, *quelle est* cette chose que, &c.

Qui est là? Who is there? *c'est Pierre*; *ce* stands for *cette personne*; viz. *Pierre est* cette personne *qui est là*. *Que vois-je là*, or *qu'est-ce que je vois là?* What do I see there? C'*est mon canif*; It is my penknife: that is, *mon canif est* cette chose *que je vois là*.

From which it appears that in such phrases the virtual nominative to the verb *être* is not *ce*, but the following substantive.]

The pron. primit. *ce* is besides of a very extensive use with *être*, as we shall see page [illegible]

Of

Of Pronouns Indeterminate. A

Quelqu'un, chacun, quiconque, personne, nul, pas un, aucun, l'un l'autre, l'un & l'autre, plusieurs, tout, &c.

§ X. 1°. ¶ *Quelqu'un* and *chacun* are formed of *quelque un*, *chaque un*; both take the mark of gender, and we say *quelqu'un quelqu'une*, *chacun chacune*; but *chacun* has no plural, whereas the plural of *quelqu'un quelqu'une*, is *quelques-uns quelques-unes*.

Both *quelqu'un* and *chacun* may be used either absolutely or relatively; *absolutely*, when there is no noun or pronoun to which they refer; *relatively*, when they refer to a noun or pronoun expressed before or after. B

When used relatively, they require the preposition *de* after them, before the noun or pronoun to which they refer. Sometimes *quelqu'un* is contented with being preceded by the particle *en* (which implies *de*); but *chacun* never admits of it for its antecedent, even it is often used by apposition, and sometimes without the preposition *de*.

Quelqu'un and *chacun*, used absolutely, are said of persons only; and relatively, they are both said of persons and things.

Quelqu'un always presents an indefinite sense; used absolutely, it signifies *somebody*, *any body*, has no plural, and is generally of the masculine gender: used relatively, it signifies *some* or *any*, and takes the mark of gender and number. C

Chacun, used absolutely, denotes sometimes a collective, sometimes a distributive sense; when collective, it signifies *every body*, and is of the masculine gender; when distributive, it signifies *every one*, *each*, and takes the mark of gender.

Chacun, used relatively, is always distributive, refers to a noun or pronoun plural which it is to distribute, takes the mark of gender, and is englished by *every one* and mostly by *each*.]

¶ Examples of *quelqu'un* and *chacun* used absolutely. D

Quelqu'un *m'a dit que*; *Somebody* told me that. . . . .
Si je vois quelqu'un; If I see *any body*.
J'ai ouï dire à quelqu'un; I heard *somebody* say.
Je parle de quelqu'un *que vous connoissez*; I speak of *somebody* you know.
Est-il venu quelqu'un? Did *any body* come?
Quelqu'un *est-il venu me demander?* Has *any body* called on me?

Chacun *veut être heureux*; *Every body* wishes to be happy.
Chacun *sent son mal*; Every one feels for himself.
Chacun *en parle*; *Every body* speaks of it.
Chacun *s'en plaint*; Every one complains of it.
Il faut rendre à chacun *ce qui lui appartient*: We must give to every one his due.
Chacun *se gouverne à sa mode*; Every one lives after his own manner.

Chacun

A ¶ When the object, to which *chacun* relates, is a pronoun of the first or second persons, the possessive, which comes after *chacun*, is generally of the same persons: The coachman may say, for instance, *Je vous prendrai tous dans ma voiture, & je vous descendrai* chacun *à* votre *porte*, or *je descendrai* chacun *de* vous *à* sa *porte*; because he speaks to the very persons he is to take.

Likewise many persons may bring offerings, and their spokesman will say: *Nous vous apportons des offrandes*, chacun *selon* nos *moyens*, or chacun *de nous selon* ses *moyens*; because he speaks collectively.

N. B *Chacun* relating to a collective noun of the feminine gender, remains of the masculine, when the collective refers to men; as, *Les communes se séparèrent tout irritées, & se retirèrent* chacun *chez* soi (*les membres* is understood); the Commons, quite enraged, parted and retired, each to his respective home.

But we say: *Les Provinces y envoyèrent* chacune *leur député*; The provinces sent thither each its deputy; because the provinces are many, whereas the commons is
B said of one single body, composed of men.

☞ This explanation of *quelqu'un* and *chacun* will perhaps appear pretty long; but it has been thought that in a professed Grammar matters could not be presented too clearly.]

2°. *Quiconque* signifies and is said of *any body whatever*, and is only of the singular number: as,

Quiconque méprise les belles-lettres se rend lui-même méprisable;
Whoever despises polite learning makes himself despicable.

In which phrase *quiconque* is the subject of, or nominative to the two verbs.

Quiconque de vous sera assez hardi (or *hardie*) *pour médire de*
C *moi, je l'en ferai repentir*,
If any of you is so bold as to slander me, I'll make him (or her) repent it.

Quiconque, as well as its substitute *qui* (see p. 253.), having the force of *toute personne qui*, contains in itself the relative with its antecedent; therefore it is sometimes the object of one verb, at the same time that it is the subject of another: as,

Il a ordre d'arrêter quiconque *passera par là*;
He has orders to arrest any body that shall go by.
En dépit de quiconque *y trouvera à redire*;
In spite *of any body that* will find it amiss.
D *Ce reproche s'adresse* à quiconque *se croit coupable*;
This reproach is addressed *to any body who* thinks he deserves it.

For the same reason we do not say *en dépit de quiconque*, to signify *in spite of any body whatever*; but *en dépit de tout le monde*, or *de qui que ce soit*.

3°. *Personne* (nobody) is directly opposite to *quiconque*, and is never used but with verbs attended by a negative, or in exclusive propositions: as,

Ne

Ne faire tort à personne, To wrong nobody. A
Vivre sans *faire tort à personne,* To live without wronging any body.

Personne is used without a negative in sentences of interrogation, or rather of admiration, wonder, and doubt; and where the adverb *trop* is used; wherein it does not signify *nobody*, but *any body*: as,

Y a-t-il personne au monde qui vous estime plus que moi?
Is there any body in the world that esteems you more than I do?
Je doute que personne ait jamais mieux connu les hommes que La Bruyere;
I doubt if ever any body knew men better than *La Bruyere.* B
Il est trop hardi pour craindre personne;
He is too bold to fear any body.
Personne a-t-il jamais pu trouver la pierre Philosophale?
Could *ever* any body find the Philosopher's stone?

In which instances one does not only inquire after the thing in question, but also shows one's doubt and wonder at it:

Whereas in this following, one only inquires after the thing in question:

Personne n'a-t-il jamais pu trouver la pierre Philosophale?
Could *never* any body find the Philosopher's stone?

Tho' *personne* is said of both genders, yet it requires the adnoun or pronoun which refers to it, in the masculine, even in speaking of a woman: as, C

Personne n'est venu, and not *venue*; nobody is come.
Il n'y a personne assez hardi pour oser; There is nobody so bold as to dare.
Personne n'est si malheureux qu'elle; Nobody is so unhappy as she is.

Nevertheless if the pronoun *personne* is applied to a woman, or to women, in such a manner that it ceases to be indefinite, and becomes specified, then it requires the adnoun in the feminine, as speaking to women.

Il n'y a personne de vous assez hardie pour, &c.
There is none among you so bold as to, *&c.* D

4°. *Nul, pas un, aucun,* are also pronouns negative requiring another negative before the verb, except in sentences of interrogation, or doubt: as,

Nul n'ose en approcher; No one dares come near him, *or* her.
Pas un ne *le croit*; No one believes it.
Y a-t-il aucun de vous qui le souffrît?
Is there any of you that would bear it?

A *Aucun* is hardly used but in sentences of interrogation, and is followed by the second state, as in the last instance.

N. B. ¶ *Aucun*, in the nominative case, is said of persons only: as, *Aucun ne l'a vu*; No one has seen it.

But in the oblique cases, it is said both of persons and things: as, *Il a beaucoup de livres, & il n'en lit aucun*; He has many books, and reads none of them.]

Any body, signifies *tout le monde*, and never *aucune personne*: which (if it were a French expression) would require a negative, and imply quite the contrary, to wit, *nobody*. Therefore this phrase,

Ask upon Change where he lives, *any body* will tell it you; must be translated thus: *Demandez à la Bourse où il demeure, tout*
B *le monde vous le dira*, or, *Il n'y a personne qui ne vous le dise*, (not by *aucune personne*).

5°. *Ni l'un ni l'autre* will have the verb in the singular, if it comes after it; and in the plural, if it comes before: but *l'un & l'autre* will always have it in the plural:

Ni l'un ni l'autre n'est venu, or *Ils ne sont venus ni l'un ni l'autre*, } Neither of them is come.

L'un & l'autre ont raison, or *Ils ont raison l'un & l'autre*, } Both are in the right, or They are both in the right.

C ¶ When there is a preposition used before *l'un*, the same must be repeated before *l'autre*: as, *Il est ami de l'un & de l'autre*; He is a friend to both.]

6°. The verb construed with *l'un l'autre* must be a reciprocal one, except it is the verb *être*: as *Il se font des grimaces l'un à l'autre*, They make faces to one another.

Ils sont ennemis l'un de l'autre; They are enemies to each other.

¶ The prepositions are placed between *l'un* and *l'autre*.

L'un l'autre are sometimes separated: as, *L'un est riche, l'autre est pauvre*; One is rich, the other is poor. Sometimes *l'un* signifies the former, and *l'autre* the latter.

After reflected verbs, to which the particle *entre* is prefixed to make them reciprocal, *l'un l'autre* must be omitted, as redundant, *ils s'entre-tuent*; They kill one another: *Ils s'entre-frappent*; They strike each other; has the same meaning as *ils se tuent l'un l'autre*, &c.]
D

Some, repeated in a sentence, is expressed in French by *les uns* in the first part of the sentence, and *les autres* in the other: as,

Les uns aiment une chose, & les autres une autre, or *& les autres en aiment une autre*; *some* like one thing and *some* another.

7°. *Plusieurs* is of both genders, and of the plural number only: as *plusieurs hommes* many men, *plusieurs femmes* many women;—*many a man*, is rendered into French by *plusieurs hommes*, or *plus d'un homme*.

8°. Tout

8°. *Tout* is construed several ways. 1*st*, It is an adnoun signi- A
fying *all* and *whole*, and always coming before the article of its noun, besides the preposition *de* and *à*, which it requires before itself: as *tout le monde*, all the world, *or* the whole world; *de tout le monde*, of the whole world; *à tout le monde*, to the whole world; *toute une ville*, a whole city.

It is to be observed, that when this adnoun is construed with the name of a city or town of the feminine, it does not agree with it in gender, and besides causes the other adnoun (if there is any) to be masculine: as *Tout Rome le sait*, not *toute Rome*, as you should say *toute la ville le sait*, all Rome, all the city knows it; *tout la Haye en est alarmé*, not *toute-alarmée*, all the Hague is frighted at it.

2*dly*, It signifies *any* or *every*, and its noun has no article: as, B
Toute verité n'est pas toujours bonne à dire,
All truth (*i. e.* any truth) is not to be told at all times.
Tout homme est mortel, Every man is mortal.

3*dly*, *Tout* construed with some verbs, especially with *être*, is taken substantively, and signifies most times *every thing*: as, *tout est vanité en ce monde*, every thing is vanity in this world. Sometimes it signifies *the whole*: as, *le tout est plus grand que sa partie*, the whole is bigger than its part. It signifies also *every* in these words, *tous les jours* every day, *toutes les semaines* every week, *tous les mois* every month, *tous les ans* every year, *à toute heure* every hour, *à tout moment* every moment; but we do not say *à* C
tout instant, or *à toute minute*, but *à chaque instant*, *à chaque minute*,

Tout, being adnoun, must be repeated before each noun of which it can be said, especially when they are of different genders: as,

Je suis, avec toute *l'ardeur* & tout *le respect possible*, &c.
I am, with all possible zeal and respect, &c.

Tout, besides its construction of noun, adnoun, and pronoun, has three others: 1*st*, It is used before an adnoun followed by *que*, and is rendered by *altho'*, or *however*, or by *as*, repeated with an adnoun between, or only coming after an adnoun. In this signification it is indeclinable, except (which is worth observing) when the adnoun femi- D
nine, before which it comes, begins with a consonant; for then it is used in the feminine gender and plural number: but when the adnoun, though feminine and plural, begins with a vowel, *tout* remains indeclinable: as,

Tout *Philosophe* qu'*il est*, *il juge souvent de travers*;
Tho' he is a Philosopher, he often judges very wrong.
Tout *ignorant* qu'*il est*, *il a beaucoup de jugement*;
As ignorant *as* he is, he has much judgement.
Toutes *laides* qu'*elles sont*, *elles sont bien fières*;
As ugly *as* they are, (or) for all they are ugly, they are very proud creatures.
Toute *petite* qu'*est son armée*, *il leur donnera bataille*;
Small *as* his army is, he will give them battle.
Tout *étonnantes* que *sont ces aventures*, on les *a* vu arriver;
However surprising those adventures are, they have been seen to happen.

A 2dly, *Tout* is also used before an adnoun, without being followed by *que*: but it is liable to the same rules and restrictions just mentioned, and is englished by the adverbs *quite*, *entirely*, &c. as,

Il est tout *autre*,	He is *quite* another man.
Elle est tout *abattue de sa disgrâce*,	She is *entirely* cast down by her disgrace.
Ils sont tout *transportés de joie*, / *Elles sont* toutes *transportées de joie*,	They are *quite* overjoyed, *or* transported with joy.
Elles sont tout *éperduës*,	They are *quite* affrighted.
Ce sont des nouvelles toutes *fraîches*,	These news are *quite* fresh.

But when the adnoun is preceded by *aussi*, *tout* is indeclinable: as,

Elles sont tout aussi *fraîches que si on ne faisoit que de les cueillir*,
They are *quite as* fresh *as* if they had been pick'd just now.

3dly, *Tout* is besides used before these adverbs, *bas* and *doucement*: as,

B *Parlez* tout *bas*, speak *quite* low: *Marchez* tout *doucement*, walk softly.

Tout is expletive, and only energetic in, *Tout comme vous voudrez*; Just as you please.

9°. To these pronouns is added *autrui*, which has neither gender nor number. It is used in the second and third state in these and such like expressions:

Désirer, or *Convoiter le bien d'autrui*,	To covet another man's property.
s'Affliger du mal d'autrui,	To be sorry for another's trouble *or* misfortune.
Dépendre d'autrui,	To depend upon others.
Nuire à autrui,	To wrong, hurt, *or* prejudice others.

Faire à autrui comme nous voudrions qu'on nous fît;
To do by others as we would be done by.

As to *quelconque*, *quelque*, and *chaque*, they are mere adnouns, inseparable from a noun ——*Quelconque* signifies *any whatever*, and always follows its noun, being used only in some law-phrases like this, *Nonobstant opposition*, or *appellation quelconque*, notwithstanding *any* opposition or appeal *whatever*: and such sentences like this,

C

Il n'y a raison quelconque *qui puisse le convaincre*, / There is no reason *whatever* can convince him.	N. B. *Aucun* is preferred to *quelconque*; as, *Il n'y a aucune raison*, . . .

10°. *Quelque*, in the singular, denotes an Object; in the plural, a Number indeterminate: it also incicates a Quality, or Quantity indeterminate. In the first signification, it answers to the word *some*; as, *Quelque fripon*, some knave; *quelques hommes*, some men; *quelques femmes*, some women.

In the other signification it answers to these expressions, *whatever*, *whatsoever*, *though* with *ever so*, or *ever so much*: as,

D *Quelque mérite qu'on ait, on ne réussit guères dans le monde sans protecteur*;
Whatever merit a man has, *or* though a man has ever so much merit, *or* though a man is ever so deserving, he very seldom meets with success in the world without a patron.

Quelque, signifying *some*, is always an adnoun: but when it signifies *whatever*, &c. it is sometimes an adverb, and therefore indeclinable; and sometimes a pronoun incomplete adjective, which agrees in gender and number with the following noun or adnoun.

Quelque

Quelque is only an adverb, when it comes before an adnoun and a noun governed of *être*; or only when it comes before an adnoun, which can never happen but with *être*, and it then signifies *however*: as, A

Quelque *riches qu'ils soient*;
However rich they be; *though* they are *ever so* rich.
Quelque *belles que soient ses actions*;
However fine his actions may be.
Quelque *grandes que soient les actions qu'il a faites*;
How great *soever* may be the actions that he has done.

But when *quelque* comes before a noun attended by an adnoun, or before a noun only, but with any other verb than *être*, it is an adnoun following the same rule as others; as, B

Quelques richesses qu'il possède;
Whatever riches he is possessed of.
Quelques *grandes actions qu'il ait faites*;
Whatever great actions he has done.

Note, 1*st*, That *quelque* signifying *whatever*, followed immediately by a noun or adnoun, always requires, if indeclinable, the particle *que*, and if declinable, the relative *qui*, before the next verb, which it governs in the subjunctive, and of which it is governed, as to its state. In the aforesaid sentences, and most of the same kind, the relative is in the fourth state (*que*), which has made our Grammarians lay it down as a rule, that *quelque* is always followed by *que*: but these following instances prove that it is by the relative *qui* that *quelque* is always followed, when it is declinable: as, C

Quelque chose qui *arrive*, Whatever happens.
Quelques évènemens qui *puissent arriver*, Whatever events may happen.

2*dly*, That in those sorts of sentences, *quelque* with its noun and adnoun, or with either, makes a sort of *nominative absolute*, *i. e.* a subject which goes for nothing in the grammatical order of the sentence, and that the verb must besides have another noun come before it for its subject, and another for its object, unless it be neuter. Which again evinces that it is not *que* (as it should be, were the rule of our Grammarians true), but *qui* that follows *quelque*, and is the subject coming before the verbs neuter in the last instances.

3*dly*, That as *whatsoever* is a pronoun compound, which is sometimes separated in two parts by a word between; as *in* what *condition* soever *I be (en quelque état que je me trouve)*, so is likewise *quelque* separated in two words, viz. *quel* and *que*, but without any word between as in English: and *quel que* must be immediately followed by a verb, or a pronoun personal in the first state; then *quel* must agree in gender and number with the following noun or pronoun, that comes before the verb. (*N. B.* If the word that expresses the subject is a noun, it comes after the verb; and the verb requires no other state of the relative *qui* before it, though it is still governed in the subjunctive by *que*): as, D

Quels que *puissent être vos desseins*, } which amounts to the same as { *Quelques desseins que vous puissiez avoir*,
Whatever your designs may be, *or* whatever designs you may have.

Quel que je sois, Whatever I am.
Quels que nous soyons, Whatever we are.
Quelles qu'elles puissent être, Whatever they may be (speaking of women).

A 4thly, *Whatever* and *whatsoever* cannot always be rendered by *quelque*. We have seen before that they express sometimes *quelconque*. They are moreover rendered by *quoi que, tout ce qu', tout ce que*: as,

Whatever it may be,	*Quoi que ce soit.*
Whatever happens,	*Quoi qu'il arrive.*
Whatever pleases,	*Tout ce qui plaît.*
Whatever you will,	*Tout ce que vous voudrez.*

Note, That quoi que *in the two first instances, is very different from the conjunction* quoique, *altho': the former being a pronoun composed of* quoi *and* que, *signifying* whatever.

Some repeated in the speech, is made in French by *les uns* before one sentence, and *les autres* before another: as,

Some love one thing, *some* another;
Les uns *aiment une chose*, les autres *en aiment une autre.*

B From *qui* and *quoi* are formed these two other pronouns indeterminate;

qui que ce soit,	*qui que ce fût;*
quoi que ce soit,	*quoi que ce fût;*

the two first are said of persons, the two others of things: *qui que ce soit* answers to *any body, whosoever*; and when its verb is attended by a negative, it signifies *no man in the world, no man living, no body at all*: as,

Qui que ce soit qui vous parle, pensez à ce qu'on vous dit;
Whosoever speaks to you, mind what is said to you.
Qui que ce soit ne m'en a parlé; Nobody at all spoke to me of it.
Je n'ai vu qui que ce soit; I have seen nobody in the world.

Qui que ce fût, is the same pronoun used with the other tense of the subjunctive, according as the construction requires it: as,

Qui que ce fût qui lui parlât, il ne répondoit rien;
Whosoever spoke to him, he answered nothing.
Il ne se défioit de qui que ce fût; He mistrusted nobody at all.

C These two pronouns, used without a negative, make a sort of *nominative absolute*, which must be followed by the pron. personal *ils* and when the sentence has two parts, *qui que ce soit, qui que ce fût*, must be immediately followed by the relative *qui*, before the verb of the first part, and *il* must come besides before that of the second: as,

Qui que ce soit qui *me trompe*, il *sera découvert;*
Whosoever cheats me shall be found out.
Qui que ce soit, il *s'en repentira;*
Whoever he be, *or* let him be who he will, he shall repent it.
} *qui que ce soit* is put in apposition, as also *quoi que ce soit*, hereafter.

Quoi que ce soit, quoi que ce fût, without a negative, signifies *any thing, whatever*; and with a negative, *nothing in the world*: as,

Quoi que ce soit qui arrive, faites-le moi savoir; Whatever happens, let me know it.
Quoi que ce soit n'est arrivé; Nothing in the world has happened.

D Those pronouns are used in their three states with *de* and *à*.

¶ 11°. *Chaque*, each, every, implies separation and distribution, is said both of persons and things, is of both genders, and has no plural.

Chaque citoyen doit contribuer au bien de l'état; Every citizen ought to contribute to the welfare of the state.
Chaque science a ses principes; Every science has its principles.]

¶ 12°. *Rien* nothing, *tel* such, and *certain* certain, may also pass for pronouns *indeterminate*, in sentences like these;

Il ne dit rien; He says nothing.
Je ne saurois vous rien donner; I cannot give you any thing.

Otherwise

Il n'a rien de *grand que la naissance*; There is *nothing* great in him but his birth. A
Il ne fait rien qui soit *digne de sa réputation*;
He does *not* do *any thing* worthy of his character.
Tel *sème*, qui *ne recueille pas*; *Such* sow *as* do not reap.
Otherwise *tel* is an adnoun, generally followed by *que*, and signifying *such as*; *such that*; *like*, &c; as,
Il est tel qu' *on le dit*; He is *such as* they say.
Il est tel que *son pere*, He is *like* his father.
Tel *maître*, tel *valet* (a prov.); *Like* master, *like* man.
N. B. There are many other ways of using *tel*, both with and without *que*, which may be seen in Chambaud's Dictionary.]

¶ *Tel . . . que* always implies comparison; therefore it must not be mistaken for *quelque . . . que* or *quel que*; for instance:
A quelque *degré d'honneur* qu'*on l'élève*, *il ne sera jamais content*; To whatever degree of honour he may be raised, he will never be content, (not *à* el *degré*.) B
Un titre quel qu'*il soit*, *n'est rien*, *si ceux qui le portent ne sont pas grands par eux-mêmes*; A title, whatever it may be, is nothing, unless they who bear it, be great of themselves; not *tel qu'il soit*.]

¶ *Certain*, certain, considered as a pronoun, is said both of persons and things, and has generally the force of *quelque*:
Certain philosophe, a certain philosopher.
Certaines qualités, certain qualities.
Certaine nouvelle, a certain piece of news.

Whereas in *une nouvelle certaine*, certain news, *certaine* is an adjective.

In *ne quittez jamais le certain pour l'incertain*, never quit a certainty for an uncertainty, *certain* is used substantively.]

C

CHAP. V.

Observations upon Nouns of Number.

1°. CARDINAL numbers are indeclinable, except *cent* and *million*, which take an *s* in the plural, as also *vingt*, but only when it comes after *quatre* and *six* before a noun: as *deux quatre*, *trois cinq*, *deux-cens guinées*, *trois millions*, *quatre-vingts livres*, *six vingts hommes*: but we say *quatre-vingt-dix hommes*, *quatre-vingt un*.

D

¶ *Cent* is indeclinable before another number; as, *Deux-cent cinquante guinées*, *two* hundred and fifty guineas.]

These numbers always come immediately before the things numbered, and cannot be preceded by any noun or adnoun, except the adnouns possessive *mon*, *ma*, *mes*, &c. as *ses deux amis* his two friends, *mes trois frères* my three brothers, *leurs six chevaux* their six horses.

The first number is the only one liable to gender, making *une* in the feminine.

A 2°. The conjunction *& (and)* is put before the *unity* only, as *vingt & un*, *trente & un*, *quarante & un*, and *le vingt & unième*, *le cinquante & unième*, &c. but it is not put before the other combined numbers, except those that follow *soixante:* we say *vingt-deux*, *vingt-trois*, *trente quatre*, *quarante-cinq cinquante-six*, &c. but it is put after all the numbers that follow *soixante*: as *soixante & un*, *soixante & deux*, *soixante & dix*, *soixante & quinze*, till you come to *quatre-vingts*. But after *quatre-vingts* there is no & put even before the unity *quatre-vingt-un*, *quatre-vingt-deux*, *quatre vingt-dix*, *cent-un*, *cent-deux*, *cent-unième*, *cent-deuxième*, &c. However, some good writers and speakers B never use the conjunction copulative in the aforesaid cases, except before the unity, and they say *vingt & un*, *trente & un*, *soixante & un*, *soixante-deux*, *soixante-dix*, &c. We don't say *six vingt-un*, but *cent vingt & un*. We don't say *sept-vingt*, *huit vingt*, &c. as the English do *seven-score*, *eight-score*, &c. but *cent-quarante*, *cent-soixante*. We say *mille*, and never *dix-cens*, nor *vingt-cens:* but we say *onze-cens* eleven hundred, *douze-cens* twelve hundred, and so on to *deux-mille*, *deux mille cent*, *deux-mille deux-cens*, &c. *un million*, and never *dix cens-mille*.

3°. We don't say *septante* for *soixante & dix*, seventy: *huitante* C for *quatre vingt*, eighty or four-score; and *nonante* for *quatre-vingt-dix*, ninety; as the Swiss, the Gascons, and others of the south of France say. Except in Geometry, where *nonante* is preserved.——We mean by *les Septante*, the Septuagint, or the seventy-two translators of the Bible.

4°. When we speak of Time, we say *huit jours*, a week, and not *une semaine*; *quinze jours*, a fortnight, and not *quatorze nuits*; *trois semaines*, three weeks; *quatre*, *cinq semaines*. *un mois*, a month; *six semaines*, six weeks; *deux mois*, *deux mois & demi*, and not *neuf* or *dix semaines*; *trois mois*, *six mois*, and never *un* D *quartier*, *un demi-an*; *sept*, *huit*, *neuf mois*, and not *trois quarts d'an*, nor *trois quartiers: un an*, *un an & demi*, *deux ans*; &c. We don't say *un an & un mois*, *un an & deux mois*, &c. but *treize mois*, *quatorze mois*, &c.

5°. When we speak of an indeterminate number, of which we are not sure, we say *un ou deux*, *deux ou trois*, down to *sept ou huit*, seven or eight; then we say *huit ou dix*, *dix ou douze*, *douze ou quinze*, *quinze ou vingt*, *vingt ou trente*, *trente ou quarante*, as far as *sixty*; then *soixante ou quatre-vingts*, quatre-vingts ou *cent*;

but

but we say *environ cent-vingt*, *environ cent-trente*, &c. and not *cent ou cent-vingt*, *cent-trente ou cent-quarante*. When we know the number very near, we say *dix ou onze*, *onze ou douze*, *douze ou treize*, &c. A

6°. We say *trente & un jours*, thirty-one days; *vingt & un ans*, one and-twenty years; *vingt & un écus*, twenty-one crowns; *vingt & un chevaux*, one-and-twenty horses, &c. but never *vingt & un cheval*, *vingt & un an*, &c.; and when the noun is attended by an adnoun, that adnoun is plural likewise: *Il a vingt & un ans accomplis*, He is full one and-twenty years old; *Il y a quarante & un jours passés*, It is about one-and forty days; B *Trente & un écus bien comptés*, One and-thirty crowns well told; *Vingt & une guinées bien comptées*, One-and-twenty guineas well told.

7°. The Cardinal numbers take not the article, except in a particular case mentioned already [Synt. Chap. II. No. 5.]; the other numbers always do. The Collective are commonly preceded by *un* or *une*, and must besides be followed by the preposition *de* before the next noun: as, *J'ai douze noix, ou une douzaine de noix, & vous en avez trente*, I have twelve walnuts, or a dozen of walnuts, and you have got thirty; *Donnez-m'en la moitié*, C ou *le tiers*, Give me half, *or* the third part of them: *Prenez en une douzaine*, Take a dozen.

8°. From the Cardinal numbers the Ordinal are formed, in adding *ième* to the last consonant of the Cardinal, and cutting off therefore the final *e* in those that have it: as from *deux*, *deuxième*; *dix*, *dixième*; *quatre*, *quatrième*. Except *premier* & *second*, that are formed from the Cardinal numbers. In *neuf*, the *f* is changed into *v* in *neuvième*, the ninth. Tho' we say *le premier* & *le second*, yet we don't say *le vingt & premier*, *le vingt second*, but *le vingt & unième*, *le vingt deuxième*. To the Ordinal numbers be- D long these three, *le dernier* the last, *le pénultième*, or *l'avant-dernier* before the last, the last but one, and *l'antépénultième* the last but two.

¶ We use the Ordinal number without the article in these cases:
Livre premier, Book the first; *Chapitre troisième*, Chapter the third. &c.
As also in such phrases:
J'y allai moi cinquième, I went thither with four others:
Il s'enfuit lui troisième, He fled with two others.
But a personal pronoun disjunctive must precede the number.]

A 9°. Ordinal numbers form also each an adverb, with the addition of *ment* to their feminine; as, *premièrement* firstly, *secondement*, or *deuxièmement*, secondly, *troisièmement* thirdly, and so on to *twenty*. We also say *en premier lieu, en second lieu, en troisième lieu*, in the first place, *&c.*

10°. We use the Cardinal number, not the Ordinal, in dating and speaking of the years of the world, and we do not write *mille* nor *cens*, but *mil* and *cent*, as *l'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt-neuf de l'Ere Chrétienne*, the year one thousand seven hundred and eighty-nine of the Christian Æra: but we say *la seconde, la quatrième année de la centième*, ou *de la dixième Olympiade*, the 2d or 4th year of the 100, *or* 10th Olympiad. We also use the Cardinal number, when we name the days of the month: as *le deux* the second,
B *le trois* the third, *le six* the sixth, *le onze* the eleventh, *le quinze* the fifteenth, *le vingt* the twentieth, *le vingt & un* the twenty-first, *&c.* and not *le deuxième, le vingtième du mois*, &c. but we do not say, *l'un du mois*, but *le premier*, the first day of the month. Observe besides, that we put no particle before *cent* and *mille*, as in English, except it be to denote unity in opposition to many: as *un cent de plumes*, a hundred pens; *J'en ai cent, J'en ai mille*, I have got a hundred, a thousand. We say *le onze, du onze, au onze*; and likewise *vers les onze heures*, about eleven o'clock. *sur*
C *les une heure*, about one o'clock; as if the first syllable of *onze* & *une* was aspirated, *&c.*

11°. When two Ordinal numbers come together, we make the first Cardinal, and say *le dix ou douzième*, the tenth or twelfth; *le sept ou huitième*, the seventh or eighth, instead of *dixième ou douzième*, &c.

12°. Speaking of Kings and Sovereigns, we use the Cardinal number without the article; instead of the Ordinal, with the article, as in English: as *Henri trois, Henri quatre*, Henry the third, the fourth; *Alexandre sept*, Alexander the seventh; *Charles*
D *neuf*, Charles the ninth; *Benoît treize*, Benedict the thirteenth; *Louis quinze*, Lewis the fifteenth. But we say *Henri premier, Henri second, François premier, George second*, George the second, and not *François un, Henri deux, George deux*. We say *Charles-quint*, Charles the fifth (Emperor of Germany), to distinguish him from the Kings of the same name. We also say *Sixte-quint*, Pope Sixtus the fifth.

13°. *Huitaine* and *neuvaine* are said of the interval of eight or nine days. *Octave* is said both of the interval of eight days during which

which a Church festival is kept, and of eight musical notes together. *Tercet*, *quatrain*, *sixain*, *huitain*, and *dixain*, are terms of Poetry, said of staves of three, four, six, eight, and ten verses. *Quinzain* and *trentain* are Tennis-terms, signifying fifteen or thirty all; as *quinte*, *tierce*, and *quarte*, are Card-terms, to denote a sequence of three, four, or five cards. *Tierce* and *quarte* are also said of a periodical fit of an ague, returning every third or fourth day, *la fièvre tierce ou quarte*, the tertian or quartan ague. *Tricon*, another card-term, signifies *a prial* or *pair royal*. A

14°. Besides the distributive numbers *la moitié*, *le tiers*, *le quart*, we also say *la troisième & la quatrième partie*, the third and fourth part; then we say *un cinquième*, a fifth, *un ou deux sixièmes*, a sixth or two, *un dixième*, a tenth, &c. *La dixme*, the tithe, is said only of the tenth part of the fruits of the earth. B

15°. *Demi* half, is a sort of adnoun indeclinable, when it comes before its noun, making together a compound word, as *une demi-heure*, half an hour, *Demi-Dieux*, Semi-Gods: but when the noun comes first, it agrees with it in gender, to which it is joined with the conjunction *&*, as *un muid & demi*, a hogshead and a half, *une livre & demie*, a pound and a half. *Demi* is said of things sold by the hundred, as *un demi-cent de plumes*, half an hundred of quills. C

16°. *Mi*, another distributive word, used only with the following nouns, of which it makes compound words, signifies also *moitié*, half, or rather *milieu*, middle: but (what is worth observing) it requires the article feminine, though the noun before which it comes be masculine; and is never construed without the article feminine; as *la mi-Août*, *la mi-May*, the middle of August or May, *la mi-Carême*, the middle of Lent: except in some adverbial expressions used without the article; as *à mi-jambe*, to the middle of the leg; *à mi-chemin*, in the middle of the way. D

17°. *Quartier*, the fourth part of a thing, is said of those that are cut into parts, and *quarteron* of those that are sold by the hundred or the pound; as *un quartier d'orange*, the fourth part of an orange, *un quarteron de thé*, a quarter of a pound of tea, *trois quarterons d'huîtres*, three quarters of a hundred of oysters.—*Quintal* is an hundred weight, *un quintal de poudre*, *deux quintaux*, one or two hundred weight of powder; and *millier* is said of things sold by the hundred, as *un millier d'épingles*, ten hundred of pins.

A We also say *un quartier, deux ou trois quartiers de loyer*, instead of *trois mois, six ou neuf mois de loyer*, a quarter, two or three quarters rent. We also say *quartier* and *semestre* of three or six months waiting at a prince's; as *être en quartier*, to be in waiting, *sortir de semestre*, to go or be out of waiting.

¶ N B. We say, figuratively, *Je m'en vais dans le quartier*; I am going in the neighbourhood: *quartier* signifying properly a part of a city.]

18°. We say *couple* and *paire* for two, but not promiscuously: *couple* is said of two natural things of the same kind that can be parted, as *une couple d'œufs*, a couple of eggs, *une couple de poulets*, a couple of chickens, *une couple de guinées*, a couple of guineas. We do not say *une couple de gens*, *une couple de personnes*, a couple of people: but speaking of two persons connected by marriage, for instance, we say, *un beau couple*, a fine couple; *un heureux couple*, a happy match; *voilà un beau couple d'amans*, there is a fine couple of lovers: in which case *couple* is of the masculine gender.

B

Paire is said of two artificial things that always go together, being fellows, and are in that respect inseparable, as *une paire de gants, de bas, de souliers*, a pair of gloves, stockings, shoes, *une paire de ciseaux, une paire de manches*, a pair of scissars, sleeves, &c. We do not say *une paire de culottes*, as the English do of a pair of breeches, but only *une culotte*.

C

¶ N. B. *Une paire de bœufs* is said of two oxen yoked, for instance, to the same plough; whereas a butcher who wants two oxen will express himself by *une couple de bœufs*.]

19°. *Les Vingt-quatre* is said of the four-and-twenty violins belonging to the chapel of the King of France; *les Quarante*, of the forty members of the French Academy; *les Septante*, the seventy-two translators of the Bible; and *les Quinze-vingt*, the three hundred blind people belonging to an hospital of that name founded by St. Louis at Paris.

D

20°. Moreover, we say *centenaire, millénaire*, and *millésime*; as also *sexagénaire, septuagénaire, octogénaire*, and *nonagénaire*.

Centenaire is always an adnoun, as *le nombre centenaire*, the centenary number, *prescription centenaire* ou *de cent ans*, a hundred years prescription.——*Millénaire* is sometimes an adnoun, as *le nombre millénaire*, the millenary number, and sometimes a noun, as *le premier, le second millénaire* (the ten first centuries, or the ten next). *Millésime*, said only of the date set on medals, is always a noun;

noun; as *le millésime de la médaille est effacé*, the date, *or* year of the medal is erased. *Sexagénaire*, *septuagénaire*, and the two others, are used both as nouns and adnouns; as *un bon vieillard nonagénaire*, a good old man of ninety; *On voit peu d'octogénaires: les nonagénaires sont encore plus rares*, We see few people eighty years old: those of ninety are still more uncommon. A

CHAP. VI.

Of VERBS.

B

§ I. 1°. THE verb always has a noun or pronoun before it, for its subject, with which it agrees in person and number: as,

Je vois, I see; *Il croit*, he thinks; *Vous faites*, you do; *Ils disent*, they say.

Le maître enseigne, & l'écolier apprend;
The master teaches, and the scholar learns.

And when the subject is a relative, it is of the same person with the pronoun personal, or noun, which it refers to: as,

C'est moi *qui* ai *fait cela*; *C'est* lui *qui a vu cela*; C
It is I who have done that. It is he who has seen that.
C'est nous *qui ne le* croyons *pas*; *Je vois un* homme *qui* boit;
It is we who do not believe it. I see a man who is drinking.

2°. Many nouns singular will have the verb in the plural: as,
Son esprit, sa douceur & sa patience l'abandonnèrent;
His understanding, good nature, and patience forsook him.
Ni la douceur ni la force ne l'y feront consentir;
Neither gentle nor forcible means will make him consent to it.

Except when the two nouns singular are joined by the conjunction disjunctive *ou*; for then the last noun is supposed to govern the verb: as, D

Ou la douceur ou la force le fera, and not *le feront*;
Either gentle or forcible means will do it.

¶ When of two substantives connected by *ni* repeated, one only is to do or receive the action, the verb must be in the singular: as, *Ce ne sera* ni *M. le Duc*, ni *M. le Comte qui sera nommé Ambassadeur*; Neither the Duke nor the Count is to be named Ambassador (because only one Ambassador is supposed to be appointed).

Whereas if two Ambassadors were to be appointed, the phrase should be worded thus: *Ni M. le Duc, ni M. le Comte ne seront nommés Ambassadeurs*; Neither, &c. without *ce ne sera*.

Likewise

A Likewise with regard to the conjunction *ou*, when the nominative consists of different persons, though in the singular number, the verb must be in the plural: as, *Ou* lui *ou* moi *nous irons*; Either he or I shall go. *Ou toi ou lui vous le ferez*; Either you or he will do it.]

If one of the nouns is in the plural, the verb must agree with it: as,

Le Prince autant que les peuples souhaitent la paix;
The Prince as much as the people wish for peace.

But if the last noun is preceded by *mais*, the verb must agree with it, though it be singular. and there be many plural before: as, *Non-seulement ses honneurs & ses richesses*, mais *sa vertu même*
B *s'évanouit*; Not only his honours and riches, but also his very virtue vanished away (because *mais* indicates the ellipsis of *s'évanouirent* after *richesses*.)

Some pretend that when the last noun is preceded by *tout*, the verb must agree with it too:

Ses biens, ses avantages, & tout son repos fut sacrifié:
His riches, advantages, and all his quiet were sacrificed.

But it is more correct to put the verb in the plural, and to say:

Ses honneurs, ses richesses, & toute sa vertu s'évanouirent, } besides the phrase is more harmonious.
His honours, riches, and all his virtue vanished away. }

¶ *Tout* or *rien*, completing and, as it were, summing up a phrase enumerative, even composed of many substantives plural, is the leader of the verb, and governs it in
C the singular: as,

Dignités, richesses, amis, tout *enfin l'abandonna*; Dignities, riches, friends, all in fine forsook him.

Ni les livres, ni les promenades, ni ma belle maison, rien *de tout cela ne m'occupe*; Neither books, nor walking, nor my handsome house, none of all these engage my attention.]

3°. When the verb has many pronouns of different persons for its subject, it must agree with the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third: as,

Vous & moi nous *sommes d'accord*; You and I agree.
Vous vous ferez des affaires vous *& lui*;
You and he will bring yourselves into trouble.

D Note, that in French the person who speaks, always names himself last: as, *Vous & moi nous sommes d'accord*, and never *moi & vous nous sommes d'accord*. (See p. 230.)

¶ *Of the Concord of Verbs with Collective Nouns.*

A Collective noun is a substantive which expresses a multitude, though itself be singular.

Collective nouns are either general or partitive: general, when they express a multitude, considered as a whole, a body; as, *le peuple*, the people; *l'armée*, the army; *le Parlement*, the Parliament; &c: partitive, when they express a multitude, but considered as making part of a whole; as, *un grand nombre de soldats*, a great

great number of soldiers; *la plupart des membres*, most of the members, &c. whereby a collection of soldiers is expressed, who all make but a part of the army; a collection of members, who all make but a part of the Parliament. A

N. B. The noun which follows a collective is always attended by the preposition *de*, of.

In English, collective nouns, both general and partitive, govern their verbs in the plural number; as, *the people* are, *the army* were; *the Parliament* have *met*, *a great number of soldiers* were, *most of the members* with, &c.

In French, a collective noun general, though followed by a noun plural, governs its verb in the singular, because it presents, of itself, a single idea independent on the following noun; and we say:

L'armée des infidèles fut *entièrement* défaite; the army of the infidels *was* entirely defeated.

Le peuple souhaite *la paix*; the people *wish* for a peace.

Le Parlement s'est assemblé; the Parliament *have* met. B

L'ennemi se présenta *aux portes de la ville*; the enemy presented *themselves* before the gates of the town.

N. B. What is said of verbs must be understood of adnouns, &c.; a reason why *défaite*, *assemblé*, agree likewise with the subject of their respective sentences.

But a collective noun partitive, followed by a noun plural, governs its verb in the plural, because it depends on the following noun, from which it borrows all its import, and with which it forms, as it were, a compound word; as,

Une infinité *de* gens *pensent*; an *infinite number* of *people* think.

Un grand nombre *de* savans, or *un* nombre *infini de* savans soutiennent *cette opinion*; a great *number* of learned *men maintain* that opinion.

Un petit nombre *d'*amis *lui* restèrent attachés; a small *number* of *friends remained attached* to him. C

The same may be said of adverbs of quantity used substantively (see p. 227.).

Tant *d'*années *d'habitude* étoient *des chaînes de fer, qui me liaient à ces deux hommes*; *so many years* of acquaintance *were* iron-chains which tied me to these two men.

Beaucoup *de* personnes sont capables *de faire une action sage*; *on* en *voit un plus grand* nombre capables *de faire une action d'esprit & d'adresse*; *mais bien* peu sont capables *de faire une action généreuse*; *many persons are* capable of doing a prudent action; a great *many more are* to be met with, capable of doing an ingenious and clever action; but very *few are* capable of doing a generous one.

Peu *de* jours *se* sont écoulés *depuis votre départ*; a *few days have* elapsed since your departure

Plus *d'*enfans *lui* seroient *à charge*; *more children* would be a charge to him *or* to her.

The verb is still in the plural, though it precede its nominative: as,

Ainsi furent accomplies tant *de* prédictions; thus *were so many predictions* accomplished. D

When the verb is impersonal, it must be singular: as,

Il parut *alors un grand nombre de soldats*; then a vast number of soldiers appeared.

But every other word depending on the collective must agree with it: as,

Il y a peu *de* personnes qui soient *de votre sentiment*; there are but few persons of your sentiment.

Many good writers use likewise the verb in the plural number after other collective partitive: as, *foule*, *troupe*, *multitude*, &c. which are always followed by a noun plural: as,

Une foule *de* lettres *en* font *mention*; a *vast number* of *letters make* mention of it.

Une troupe *d'*enfans *le* poursuivirent *à coups de pierre*; a *band* of *children* pelted him;

A *The Use and Construction of the Tenses.*

§ II. 1o. The *Present* tense of the indicative is used to denote the thing that is, or is a-doing, in the present period of time wherein we speak: as, *Je vois*, I see; *Je pense*, I think; that is, I, at this present time of speaking, do see, *or* think; *or* am seeing, *or* am thinking.

2o. The *Imperfect*, so called, because it partakes something both of the present and preterite, is used, 1*st*, to denote that the thing which we are speaking of was present in a time past specified: as, *J'écrivois quand il arriva*; I was writing when he
B arrived: that is, at the time when he arrived, which is a time past specified, my action of writing, which was also past, was then present.

2*dly*, To denote a thing that was, without any respect to the time; and therefore it is used to express in a narration, the inclinations and qualifications a person had: as, *Tite* étoit *les délices du genre humain*; Titus was the delight of mankind. *Mon père* étoit *bel homme*; My father was a handsome man.

But if we speak of people that are still living (for the last instances are said of persons supposed to be dead), we use the com-
C pound of the present: as, *Mon père* a été *bel homme*; or if we use the imperfect, we must mention a particular time: as,

Ma sœur étoit *belle*; My sister was handsome (supposing she is dead).
Ma sœur a été *belle*; My sister has been handsome (supposing she lives still).
Ma sœur étoit *belle dans sa jeunesse*, or *avant d'avoir eu la petite vérole*; My sister was handsome in her youth, (or) before she had the small-pox (whether she is dead or no).

3*dly*, The Imperfect is used to denote a thing uncertain, and doubtful, and even one that has something of a contingent future, that is, implying uncertainty; in which respect that tense is
D always attended, either before or after, by a conditional, and that thing, or action, is sometimes expressed in English by *should*: as, *S'il l'aimoit, il l'épouseroit*; If he loved her, *or* should he love her, he would marry her.—*S'il* venoit, *vous lui* diriez *que j'ai été obligé de sortir pour affaire*; If he should happen to come, you would tell him that I have been obliged to go out on account of business.

3o. The *Preterite* is used to denote a thing past in such a manner, that nothing remains of the time wherein it was a-doing,

and

and therefore is chiefly used in historical relations: as, *J'allai l'année passée en France*; I went to France last year. *J' appris la semaine dernière que*, &c. I heard last week that, &c. *Je fus hier à la Comédie*; I went to the Play last night. *Quand César vit*; When Cæsar saw. A.

4°. The *Future* denotes a thing which is to be in a time not yet come: as, *Nous aurons la paix*; We shall have peace. We have not peace yet, but it is to come.

5°. The *Conditional*, or uncertain, tense is used to denote a thing that would, should, *or* could be in an unspecified and uncertain time, because it depends upon another uncertain and conditional thing. It denotes the time to come, but conditionally: as, *S'il demandoit cette place, on la lui donneroit*; If he asked for that place, they would give it him. The action of giving would be in an uncertain time, because it depends on one's asking, which is also uncertain, at least conditional. B

The Conditional is also used in a sense that denotes the present, especially in sentences of Wish: as, *Je voudrois* (or) *Je souhaiterois qu'il fit beau Dimanche*; I wish it would be fair weather on Sunday. *Voudriez-vous me faire un plaisir?* Would you do me a kindness? *Pourriez-vous me prêter vingt guinées?* Could you *or* Can you lend me twenty guineas? (Which manner of asking carries with it an appearance of modesty and respect.) C

6°. The *Compound of the Present* denotes indeed, as the preterite, a thing that is past, but so that there is still actually remaining some part to slide away of the time wherein we declare the thing has been done: whereas the *Preterite* denotes the thing or action past in such a manner that nothing remains of that time wherein it was done: as, *J'ai lu cette semaine la déclaration de la guerre*; I have read this week the declaration of war. *J'ai appris ce matin de grandes nouvelles*; I have heard great news this morning. *I have read* and *heard* denote a thing past; but it is *this week* and *to-day*, and still there remains a part of this week, and day, wherein I speak. D

The English have, as the French, three tenses, to denote an action that is over, *I did write*, *I wrote*, *I have written*: but they often use them promiscuously to signify the same idea, without having any regard to the principal time when: whereas those three tenses, and even all compound tenses, which are really so many

A *tre*, or *Après que j'eus fini ma lettre, elle me pria de lui en écrire une*; When, *or* after I had finished my letter, she desired me to write one for her.

But if the action past before another was done in a time wherein we are still, and which is not quite over, then the super-compound tenses must be used: as, *Elle est venue me voir aujourd'hui*; *J'étois à écrire quand elle est entrée*; *Quand j'ai eu fini ma lettre, elle m'a prié de lui en écrire une*; She is come to see me to-day; I was writing when she came in; When I had finished my letter, she has desired me to write one for her.

B 9°. The *Compound of the Future* is used to denote a thing that is yet to be, with respect to itself, but that shall be over with respect to another future thing, which is to follow it: as, *J'aurai soupé quand il viendra*; I shall have supped when he will come, *or* *Quand j'aurai soupé il entrera*; When I have supped, he will come in. My supping, which is not yet come, but is to be, will be over, at the time of his coming, which is to be after my supping. The English very seldom express the sign of this future after *when*.

10°. The *Compound of the Conditional* is used to denote a thing that could, *or* would, *or* should have happened in an uncertain time, C had it not been for some other conditional thing: as, *Le Ministre lui auroit donné cette place, s'il l'avoit demandée*; The Minister would have given him that place, had he asked for it. (Observe this conditional way of speaking, which the French express by the conjunction conditional *si*, and the compound of the imperfect or preterite.)

Moreover the Indicative has three other tenses compound in a double manner: as,
Il a eu *bientôt* fait; He has had soon done; *or* He soon had done.
J'ai eu diné *en un instant*; I have had dined in a minute; *or* I have dined, &c.
Quand j'eus eu fini *ce que je faisois*; When I had finished what I was doing.
Elle n'auroit *pas* eu *sitôt* fait *sans lui*; She would not have done so soon without him.
D J'aurois eu diné *plutôt, si j'eusse su qu'il devoit venir à cette heure-là*;
I would have had dined sooner, if I had known that he was to come at that time.

These double compound *or* super-compound tenses are liable to the same rules of construction as the other compounds; that is, *Il a eu fait, J'ai eu diné*, &c. are said, as well as *J'ai eu, J'ai fait, J'ai diné*, only of that period of time wherein we are still; and *J'eus eu fini*, as well as *J'eus eu, J'eus fait, J'eus diné*, &c. of a time entirely past, so that there remains no part of it. They besides express the action past in a more emphatical manner.

As the *Subjunctive* represents the action or event in an indirect manner, and always subsequent to another event, the tenses of this mood are determined by that anterior event. Its practice will be established by sure rules in the following section. (p. 286.)

The

The Gerund and Participle are comprehended in the infinitive mood, for method's sake only; as these words represent the event under three different states or situations, and therefore constitute each its own mood. A

The *Infinitive* represents it in its simple production, without any circumstance, that is, without being adapted to any subject or time: as, *Il sait boire*; He can drink.

The *Gerund* represents the event as a circumstance connected with another event: as, *Il se fâche en parlant*: He is angry when he speaks.

The *Participle* represents it as complete and quite over; as, *Cela dit, il s'en alla*; Having said this, he went away. It is on that account it serves to form the compound tenses of the verb.

The auxiliary and participle are not always immediately joined together in compound tenses, but are sometimes separated by one or more words: as, *Nous avons, par la Grâce de Dieu, vaincu nos ennemis*; We have, by the Grace of God, overcome our enemies.

Correspondence of the Subjunctive to the Indicative Mood. B

N. B. This is intended as an elucidation of the 10th paragraph, *pag.* 286.

¶ A verb in the subjunctive *or* conjunctive mood, is chiefly subjoined to, and depending on another verb in the indicative, to which it is connected by the conjunction *que*, or the relative *qui*.

Now what tense of the subjunctive must be used, depends on the tense of the former verb in the indicative.

1°. When the former verb is in the present *or* future of the indicative, the latter must be in the present of the subjunctive, if you mean to express a thing present or future; as,

Il faut *que celui qui parle*, se mette *à la portée de ceux qui l'écoutent*; He who speaks must confine himself within the reach of the understanding of those who listen to him.

(N. B. *Se mettre à portée* would signify to place one's self within the hearing, &c.)

Je ne crois *pas qu'il* vienne *demain*; I do not think he will come to-morrow. C

Il faudra *qu'ils se* rendent *à la force de la vérité*; They will be obliged to yield to the force of truth.

But to express a thing past, the compound of the present must be used: as,

Il suffit *qu'un habile homme* n'ait *rien négligé pour faire réussir une entreprise*; *le mauvais succès ne doit pas diminuer son mérite*; It is enough that a skilful man *has* not neglected any thing to make an undertaking succeed; the bad success ought not to diminish his merit.

Speaking, for instance, of a skilful general who has betrayed his country, you will say: *Il* est *fâcheux que de si grands talens* aient été *ternis par le plus odieux de tous les vices*,—*la perfidie*; It is sorrowful that so great talents *have been* tarnished by the most odious of all vices,—perfidy.

However, when a conditional member is subjoined to the sentence, the tense of the subjunctive is determined by that of the conditional verb: as,

Je ne doute *pas qu'il ne* vienne, si *on l'en* prie, (the present *vienne* is used on account of the present *prie*); I do not doubt he will come, if he be asked. D

Il n'est *point d'homme, quelque mérite qu'il ait, qui ne* fût *très-mortifié, s'il* savoit *tout ce qu'on pense de lui* (the preterite *fût* is used on account of the imperfect *savoit*); There is not a man, whatever merit he may possess, who would not be concerned very much, if he knew all that is thought of him.

Je doute *qu'il* eût *réussi, sans votre secours*, that is *si vous ne l'*aviez *pas* secouru (the compound of the preterite, *eût reussi* is used, on account of the compound of the imperfect *aviez secouru*); I doubt whether he has succeeded without your assistance, *that is*, if you had not assisted him.

2°. When the former verb is in the compound of the present of the indicative, the latter must be in the preterite of the subjunctive, if you mean to express a thing present or future (with respect to the former verb): as,

A *On s'est servi d'écorces d'arbres ou de peaux pour écrire, avant que le papier fût en usage*; The bark of trees or pells *were* in use to write upon, before paper *were* invented.

But to express a thing past (with respect to the former verb), the compound of the present must be used: as,

Il a fallu, *pour gagner ce procès-là, qu'il* ait sollicité *ses juges de la manière la plus pressante, ou plutôt qu'il les* ait corrompus; To have carried such a cause, he must have solicited his judges in the most earnest manner, or rather corrupted them.

However, to express an action which is still done, and may be done at all times, the simple present of the subjunctive may be used: as,

Dieu a entouré *les yeux de tuniques fort minces, transparentes au-devant, afin que l'on puisse voir à travers*; God *has surrounded* the eyes with pellicles, very thin and transparent in front, that we *may be* able to see through them.

3° When the former verb is in the imperfect, the preterite, the compound of the imperfect, or either of the conditional tenses, the latter must be in the preterite of
B the subjunctive, if you mean to express a thing present or future (with respect to the former verb); as,

M. de Turenne ne voulut *jamais rien prendre à crédit chez les marchands, de peur*, disoit-*il, qu'ils n'en* perdissent *une bonne partie, s'il venoit à être tué*; Turenne *would* never take any thing upon trust from tradesmen, lest, he said, they *should lose* a great part of it, if he happened to be killed.

Tous les ouvriers qui travailloient pour sa maison, avoient *ordre d'apporter leurs mémoires, avant qu'on* partît *pour la campagne, & ils étoient payés régulièrement*; All the tradesmen, who worked for his house, *had* order to bring their bills before he *set* out for the campaign, and they were regularly paid off.

Il vaudroit *mieux pour un homme de qualité, qu'il* perdît *la vie, que de perdre l'honneur par quelque action honteuse & criminelle*; It *would be* better for a man of quality to lose his life, than to lose his honour for some shameful and criminal action.

Lycurgue, par une de ses lois, avoit défendu *qu'on éclairât ceux qui sortoient le soir d'un*
C *festin, afin que la crainte de ne pouvoir se rendre chez eux, les empêchât de s'enivrer*; Lycurgus, by one of his laws, *forbade* to light those who went out in the evening from a festival, that the fear of not finding their way home *might prevent* them from getting drunk.

But to mark a past event, the compound of the preterite must be used; as,

Tout gouvernement étoit *vicieux, avant que la suite des siècles, & en particulier le Christianisme*, eussent adouci & perfectionné *l'esprit humain*; Every government *was* vicious, before that a series of ages, and particularly Christianity, *had softened* and *improved* the human mind.]

Of MOODS.

§ III. The tenses of the Subjunctive Mood, whether simple or compound, have always before them the conjunction *que*, or the
D relative *qui*, except in some few sentences of *Wishing*, wherein the present is used without *que*; as, *Puissiez-vous vivre heureux avec elle*; May you be happy with her. *Fasse le Ciel que cela arrive*; Grant God that the thing may fall out. *Dieu m'en préserve, nous en préserve*, or *l'en préserve*; Which God avert from me, from us, from him, *or* her. *Ecrive qui voudra*; Let him write who will please. *Heureux l'homme qui peut, ne* fût-*ce que dans sa vieillesse, parvenir à être sage, & à penser sainement*; Happy is the man, who, *be* it only in his old age, may arrive at wisdom *and a rational* way of thinking.

The

The tenses of the subjunctive are used, 1°. after the conjunctions *afin que*, *avant que*, and others, that shall be taken notice of in the chapter of the Conjunctions; as likewise in some few sentences of *Reluctancy*, *Astonishment*, and *Imprecation*, expressed in English by *should*, *shall*, or *let*: as, A

*Que j'*aille *le voir après cet affront!*
Should *or* shall I go and see him after that affront!
Que je meure, *si cela n'est pas vrai*; Let me die, if that be not true.

2°. Verbs *Willing*, *Wishing*, *Commanding*, *Permitting*, *Prohibiting*, and *Hindering*; *Asking*, *Desiring*, *Beseeching*, and *Entreating*; *Fearing*, *Doubting*, *Suspecting*; *Admiring*, *Wondering*; *Being glad* and *Rejoicing*, *Sorry* and *Grudging*; Verbs *Denying*, and denoting *Ignorance*, *Doubt*, *Fear*, *Wish*, *Intention*; and, generally speaking, all verbs expressing some *Desire*, *Affection*, *Passion*, *Sentiment*, or *Motion* of the *Mind*, govern the subjunctive with the particle *que*: as, B

Je souhaite qu'*il* réussisse; I wish he may succeed *or* prosper.
Je veux que *vous* étudiez; I will have you study.
Je doute qu'*il le* fasse; I question whether he will do it.
Je suis surpris que *vous* osiez *le faire*; I wonder that you dare do it.
J'ignore qu'*il* soit arrivé; I do not know that he is arrived.
Plût à Dieu que *cela fût*; Would to God that it were so.
Il nie qu'*il l'*ait *pris*; He denies that he has taken it. C
Agissez de manière, or *faites en sorte* que *vous* réussissiez; Do in such a manner as you succeed.

In this last instance *agissez*, do, denotes the inclination and desire which I have that you may succeed, which is a passion of my soul: but when no such desire, passion or inclination is expressed by the verb, we use the indicative: as, *Vous agissez de manière* que *vous* réussissez; You do in such a manner that you succeed.

¶ Such is always the case, when the phrase implies no doubt, condition, or uncertainty.]

But when those verbs are attended by a noun, or pronoun, expressing either their object, or end, then they require the next verb in the infinitive with the preposition *de*, as does likewise *se repentir*, to repent; as, D

Je vous ordonne de faire *cela*, and not *que vous fassiez*;
I order you to do that.
Il vous demande seulement d'*y* aller, and not *qu'il y aille*;
He only asks you leave to go there.
Le Ministre se repentit d'*avoir proposé ce Bill*, and not *qu'il eût proposé*;
The Minister repented having moved for that Bill.

We also say *Je veux apprendre le François*; I am willing *or* desirous to learn French; for the verb *vouloir* cannot be construed with the subjunctive, when it is one and the same subject, expressed by the pronoun, which governs both verbs.

A 3°. Verbs denoting *Belief* or *Certainty* of something, as *Assurer*, to assure; *Etre sûr*, to be sure; *Affirmer*, to affirm; *Croire*, *Penser*, to think; *Gager*, *Parier*, to lay a wager; *Mettre en fait*, to take for granted; *Soutenir*, to maintain; *Prétendre*, in the sense of *to maintain* (for in the sense of *being willing*, it governs the subjunctive); *Jurer*, to swear; *Montrer*, *faire voir*, to show; *Prouver*, to prove; *Démontrer*, to demonstrate: or Verbs signifying only *Telling*, *Foretelling*, *Saying*, *Seeing*, *Foreseeing*, *Conjecturing*, *Presaging*, *Declaring*, *Certifying*, *Notifying*, *Signifying*, *Intimating*, *Setting forth*, *Supposing* (but not *Proposing* and *Voting*), *Presuming*, *Being sensible*, *Perceiving*, *Hearing*, *Apprehending* (in the sense of
B *Conceiving*, for in that of *Fearing* it governs the subjunctive), *Knowing*, *Understanding*, *Hoping* (though it signifies an affection of the soul), *Reckoning*, *Agreeing*, *Confessing*, *Owning*, *Reputing*, *Publishing*, *Remembering*, *Forgetting*, *Promising*, *Concluding*, *Fancying*, *Imagining*, *Judging*; all which (as well as any other like, if there be any forgotten) expressing the faculties of the *Understanding*, and not those of the mind or soul, govern the indicative with *que*: as,

Je sais qu'*il* est *venu*; I know that he is come.
J'ai appris qu'il est *guéri*; I have heard that he is cured.
Je vous assure que *cela* est, (or) *n'*est *pas ainsi*;
I assure you that it is, *or* is not so.

C But when the same verbs are used *interrogatively*, or with a *negative*, or with the particle *si*, there is a distinction to be made. If they signify merely *Knowing*, *Saying*, *Hearing*, in short, express only their natural import (especially the verbs *Saying*, *Telling*, *Declaring*, and *Affirming*), the next verb is put in the indicative: but they most commonly imply *Doubt* or *Ignorance* in those constructions, and therefore it is better to construe them with the subjunctive, if however the next verb be the present, preterite, future, or their compounds; for in any other tense it must be left in the indicative (save the exceptions comprehended in the next observation): as,

D *Croyez-vous que le Roi* fasse *la Campagne?*
Do you think that the King will make the Campaign?
Je n'apprends pas qu'il soit *guéri*; I do not hear that he is cured.
Si j'entends dire qu'il soit *arrivé*; If I hear that he is arrived.

But we say, *(qu'il aille?*
Avez-vous entendu dire, (or) *Savez-vous qu'il* va *voyager*, not
Have you heard, (or) Do you know that he goes a travelling?
Croyez-vous qu'il iroit *voyager*, *si*—and not *qu'il allât?*
Do you think that he would go a travelling, if?

Some

Some of the aforesaid verbs may sometimes be not improperly construed with the indicative; as, *Je n'apprends pas qu'il* est *guéri*: *Croyez-vous que le Roi* sera *la Campagne?* but sometimes also they cannot be construed but with the subjunctive: as, *Croyez-vous qu'il vienne*, and not *qu'il viendra?* Therefore in this uncertainty it is better, and more safe, to construe them with the subjunctive. A

Moreover it is to be observed, 1*st*, that after those verbs used interrogatively, the next verb is put in the indicative, when the person that asks the question, makes no doubt of the thing which is the object of the question. As if knowing that peace is made, I want to know if the people, whom I converse with, know of it too, I will express myself thus, *Savez-vous que la paix* est *faite?* Do you know that peace is made? But if I have it only by report, and doubt of it, and want to be informed of it, I must ask the question thus, *Savez-vous que la paix* soit *faite?* and by no means *Savez-vous que la paix* est *faite?*—Likewise when the second verb is in the future in English, it must be put in the present of the subjunctive in French: as,

Croyez-vous que la paix se fasse *cet hiver?* B
Do you think that peace will be made this winter? or with a negative,
Je ne crois pas que nous ayons *la paix sitôt*;
I do not think that we shall have a peace so soon.

2*dly*, *Dire*, *écrire*, *prétendre*, *entendre*, and perhaps some other verbs, whose most natural and common signification is that of *saying*, *writing*, *declaring*, are also used sometimes in the sense of *Advising*, *Commanding*, and *Willing*, and therefore govern the subjunctive: as,

Dites-qu'on vienne *de bonne heure*;	Bid them come in time.
*J'écris qu'on m'*envoye *de l'argent*;	I write to them to send me money.
*Je prétends qu'on m'*obéisse;	I pretend to be obeyed.

3*dly*, These verbs *Ignorer* not to know, *Nier* to deny, *Disconvenir* to disown, implying of themselves a negative sense, govern the subjunctive, tho' they do not meet with a particular negative: as, *J'ignore qu'il* ait *fait cela*, *Je nie qu'il* ait *fait cela*, *Je disconviens qu'il* ait *fait cela*; I do not know, *or* I deny, *or* I do not agree that he has done that. C

4*thly*, After *Douter* the particle *si* may be used in some cases, tho' very few, with the future: as, *Je doute s'il viendra*; I question whether he will come: But it is better to use the subjunctive with *que*, as *Je doute qu'il vienne*; I question whether he will come; and when *douter* is attended by a negative, it must, by all means, be construed with *que*, and the subjunctive preceded also by another negative: as, *Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne*; I do not doubt but he will come. (See the chap. of the Negatives, *pag.* 313.)

40. These following verbs Impersonal govern the Subjunctive with *que*:

Il faut, it must,
Il convient, it becomes,
il importe, it concerns,
il est important, *il est de conséquence*, it is of moment, *or* consequence,
il n'y a pas moyen, there is no possibility, *il y a de l'honneur*, or *du déshonneur*, there is honour, credit, *or* discredit and disgrace,
il y a de la gloire, or *il y a de la honte*, there is glory *or* shame, *&c.*
il est à propos, it is fit,
il est expédient, it is proper, meet,
il est nécessaire, it is needful,
d'une nécessité absolue, of an absolute necessity,
il est bienséant, it is fitting,
de la bienséance, seemly,
il est décent, it is decent, D
il est de la décence, it is comely,
il est indécent, it is unseemly,
il est convenable, it is expedient, suitable,
il est, with these other adnouns,
agréable, agreeable, plea-

A pleasant,
aisé, easy,
affligeant, afflicting,
beau, fine,
chagrinant, vexatious,
cruel, cruel,
dangereux, dangerous,
difficile, difficult,
divertissant, diverting,
doux, sweet, pleasant,
B *douloureux*, grievous,
dur, hard,
disgracieux, unpleasant
ennuyeux, tedious,
étonnant, astonishing,
facile, easy,
fâcheux, sorrowful,
glorieux, glorious,
gracieux, graceful, agreeable,
heureux, happy, lucky,
honteux, shameful,
impossible, impossible,
indifférent, indifferent,
malheureux, unlucky,
mal-aisé, difficult,
mortifiant, mortifying,
possible, possible,
plaisant, odd, droll,
sensible, sensible,
surprenant, surprising,
triste, sad,
vilain, ugly,
juste, just, fair,
injuste, unjust, unfair,

Examples. *It faut qu'il vienne*; He must come.
Il importe qu'elle y soit; It is of moment that she should be there.
Il est juste qu'il sache; It is just, *or* right for him to know it.
Il est à propos, expédient, bienséant, nécessaire, &c. *qu'il la* voie; It is fit, proper, meet, decent, necessary, *&c.* for him to see her, *&c.*

Observe, 1*st*, that *il est*, with these adnouns, may be turned
C into *c'est une chose*; as,
C'est une chose fâcheuse, triste, mortifiante, &c. *qu'il soit arrivé si tard*; It is sad, grievous, *&c.* that he should have come so late.

2*dly*, That the same verbs impersonal, except *il y a*, govern the infinitive with *de*, when they do not the subjunctive with *que*: which usually happens, when they are attended by a pronoun: as,
Il est indifférent qu'il soit en Angleterre ou en Irlande;
It is indifferent whether he is in England or Ireland.
Il lui *est indifférent de vivre en Angleterre ou en Irlande*;
It is indifferent for him to live in England or Ireland.

3° The following verbs impersonal govern the indicative
D with *que*:

Il semble, it seems,
il paroît, it appears,
il y a apparence, it is likely,
on dit, it is said,
on croit, it is thought,
on croiroit, one would think,
(and all impersonals formed with *on*)
il est, it is; with these adnouns,
avéré, averred, or evidenced,
clair, clear,
certain, certain,
évident, evident,
constant, constant,
indubitable, unquestionable,
manifeste, manifest,
notoire, notorious,
palpable, palpable,
sensible, plain, sensible,
sûr, sure,
vrai, true,
visible, obvious.
As likewise all verbs impersonal, denoting

denoting a positive certainty of something: A

Il est certain (or) *il est vrai que le Roi va à Hanovre*;
It is certain, *or* true, that the King goes to Hanover.
Il est clair (or) *il est évident que cela ne sauroit arriver*;
It is clear *or* evident that that cannot happen.
Il paroît (or) *il y a apparence qu'il dit vrai*;
It appears, *or* it is likely that he says true.

But when the same impersonals cease to denote a positive certainty of the thing (which happens when they are used *interrogatively*, or with a *negative*, or the particle conditional *si*, if, whether), they then govern the subjunctive: as, B

Est-il certain (or) *est-il vrai que le Roi* aille *à Hanovre?*
Is it certain (or) is it true that the King goes to Hanover?
Il n'est pas certain (or) *il n'est pas vrai que le Roi* aille *à Hanovre*;
It is not certain (or) it is not true that the King goes to Hanover.
S'il est certain (or) *s'il est vrai que le Roi* aille *à Hanovre*;
If it be true that the King goes to Hanover.

I have said, that it is sometimes but an elegance, not a necessity, to use the subjunctive after verbs denoting *Belief*, or *Certainty*, and others mentioned in the third paragraph, when they are used *interrogatively* or *negatively*, or with *si*: but the impersonals which are the object of the last observation, when used in these three C respects, require, by all means, the subjunctive after them.

Again, When the impersonal *il semble* meets with a noun governed by the preposition *à*, or a pronoun implying it, the following verb must not be in the subjunctive, but in the indicative with *que*, or the infinitive, without any particle at all: as,

Il me *semble que vous* avez *peur*; It seems to me that you are afraid.
Il me *semble la voir* (or) *que je la vois*; Methinks I see her.
Il semble à un Mahométan *que les Chrétiens* sont *dans l'erreur*;
It seems to a Mahometan that Christians are in error.

Whereas without a pronoun before the impersonal, or a noun D after it, the subjunctive mood must be used: as,

Il semble que vous ayez *peur*; It seems that you are afraid.
Il semble que les Turcs soient *dans l'erreur*;
The Turks seem to be in error.

Observe besides, that *semble* has two significations in French: when it signifies *plain*, *evident*, *obvious*, it governs the indicative; and when used in the sense of *grievous*, *painful*, it governs the subjunctive.

6°. The

A 6°. The subjunctive is used after *quelque*, *quel que*, and *quoi que* taken in the sense of *whatever* and *whatsoever*: as,

Quelques amis que j'aie,	Whatever friends I have.
Quels que soient *les hommes*,	Whatever men be.
Quoi que je fasse,	Whatever I do.

7°. After *que*, used instead of repeating *si* (as we shall see more particularly in the chapter of Conjunctions), as also after *que* following the comparative *si*: as,

Si vous y consentez, & que *vous* preniez *des mesures pour*, &c.
If you consent to it, and take measures to, &c.

B *Il n'est pas* si *fou* qu'*il ne* sache *bien ce qu'il fait*;
He is not *so* foolish *but* he *knows* well what he does.

8°. After the relative *qui*, when it comes after a *superlative* or *negative*: and generally after any relation of that relative, between two verbs, so it denote some *desire*, *wish*, *want*, or *necessity*: as,

Le meilleur ouvrage qui soit (or *qu'il y* ait); The best work extant, *or* that is.

Je ne connois personne qui fasse *plus de cas des habiles gens*;
I know nobody that has more regard for learned men.

C *Choisissez une femme* que *vous aimiez*, & qui *soit prudente*;
Chuse a wife whom you love, and who is prudent.

But when the relative *qui* denotes no *desire*, *wish*, &c. the next verb must be put in the indicative: as,

Je plains un homme qui a *une méchante femme*;
I pity a man who has a bad wife.

9°. The Present subjunctive of *savoir* is familiarly used, when it is attended by a negative, instead of the indicative, though without being governed by any thing before: as,

Je ne sache *rien de plus fâcheux que*, &c.

D I know nothing more grievous than, &c.

But this subjunctive, thus used, is confined only to the first person singular; for we do not say in the other persons, *Vous ne sachiez rien*, or *Il ne sache rien de plus fâcheux*, for *vous ne savez rien*, *il ne sait rien*, &c. *Pas* or *non pas que je sache*; Not that I know of. (Such phrases are only used in conversation.)

10°. The Present tense of the subjunctive mood is used, when the first verb governing the other, according to the aforesaid rules, is in the present, or future of the indicative; for when it is in

any

any other tense, either simple or compound, it is the preterite of the subjunctive it requires, unless there comes a third verb in the imperfect. As in the present and future we say, A

Je souhaite qu'il vienne; I wish he comes, *or* he would come.
Il souhaitera que nous ne venions *pas*;
He will wish that we may not come.

So with the imperfect, conditional, and other tenses, we say,

*Je souhait*ois *qu'il* vînt; I wished that he had come.
*Je voudr*ois *qu'il se dépê*châ; I would have him make haste.
*J'aurois craint que vous ne l'*eussiez *frappé*;
I would have feared that you would have struck him.

B

But if the tense that comes after the present be followed by an imperfect, or preterite in English, which is an imperfect in French, it (the second verb) must be put in the preterite. As when the first verb is in the present, we put the second in the present too, thus,

Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne, *si on l'en* prie;
I do not doubt but he will come if he be asked:

so when it is the imperfect, we put the second in the preterite, thus,

Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vînt *si on l'en* prioit;
I do not doubt he would come, if he were asked.

C

Notwithstanding what has been said of the construction of the tenses, some are nevertheless confounded sometimes, and used for others; and it is common to all languages, to use the present for the future; as,

Avez-vous bientôt fait? Have you almost done?
Dinez-vous aujourd'hui chez vous? Do you dine at home to-day?
J'irai demain, s'il fait beau? I will go to-morrow, if it is fine weather,

We use especially the present subjunctive for the future, as in these sentences, and others like,

Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne; I do not doubt but *he will* come. D
Croyez vous que le Roi aille *à Hanovre?*
Do you think that the King will go to Hanover?

Therefore avoid carefully those faults which Foreigners are so apt to make, in considering rather the tense which they want to turn into French, than the mood, which the genius of the language requires: and do not say, *Je ne crois pas qu'il* viendra; I do not believe that he will come: *Je doute qu'il le* fera; I doubt that, *or* whether he will do it: because the tense is

a future

A a future in English; but mind that *que* coming after a negative, and after *douter*, requires the subjunctive, thus:

Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne, *Je doute qu'il le* fasse.

As likewise that the conjunction *si* is hardly ever construed with the future, except with the verb *savoir* and *dire:* as,

Je ne sais s'il viendra; I do not know whether he will come.

Dites-moi si vous viendrez ou non: Tell me whether you will come or no.

The present is also used for the preterite in narrations: as,

L'Amour rassemble les Nymphes, & leur dit: Télémaque est encore en vos mains; hâtez-vous de brûler ce vaisseau que le téméraire Mentor a fait pour s'enfuir. Aussitôt elles allument des flambeaux, elles accourent sur le rivage, elles frémissent, elles poussent des burlemens, elles secouent leurs cheveux épars comme des Bacchantes. Déjà la flâme vole, elle dévore le vaisseau, qui est d'un bois sec et enduit de résine; des tourbillons de fumée & de flâme s'élèvent dans les nues;

B Cupid gathers the Nymphs together and tells them: Telemachus is still in your hands; haste, and let devouring flames consume the ship which the rash Mentor has built to favour his escape. Immediately they *light* torches, *run* towards the sea shore, they *quake*, *fill* the air with dreadful howlings, and *toss* about their dishevelled hair, like frantic Bacchanals. And now the greedy flames *devour* the ship, which *burns* the more fiercely, as she is made of dry wood, daub'd over with rosin; and rolling clouds of smoke, streak'd with flames, *ascend* the skies.

Moreover the compound of the preterite of the subjunctive is often used for, and in the same sense as the compound of the conditional; as, J'eusse été *bien fâché de ne vous pas voir*; I should have been very sorry not to have seen you: which is the same as, but more elegant than, *J'aurois été bien fâché de ne vous pas voir:* as likewise for the

C compound of the imperfect after *si*; as,

Si j'eusse *fait cela*, better than *si* j'avois *fait cela*; if I had done that.

The present of the infinitive has in many cases a sense merely passive: as,

Il n'y a rien à voir;	There is nothing to see, *or* to be seen.
Cela n'est bon qu' à jeter;	That is good only to throw away.

An infinitive may, as well as a substantive, be the subject coming before a verb: in which case it has no preposition, takes sometimes the article, and is properly englished by the gerund: as,

Manger & dormir sont les plus grandes nécessités de la vie;
Eating and *sleeping* are the greatest necessities of life.

Part of a sentence, nay a whole sentence, may also serve as a subject to a verb; then the adnoun referring to it (when an adnoun follows) is of the masculine gender.

Of the Government of Verbs.

D § IV. 1°. Verbs *active* are always attended by a noun, or pronoun, and sometimes by two. When they are attended by two, the one is the *Object* of the verb, and the other its *End*. The noun expressing the end is always preceded by the preposition *à*, the pronoun generally implies it; as,

Donner quelque chose à quelqu'un;
To give something to somebody.

quelque chose is the *Object* of the verb, *à quelqu'un* is the *End*.

Je le lui *donne*; I give it to him *or* to her: *le* is the Object, *lui* is the End.

2°. Verbs

2°. Verbs *passive*, or taken passively, require the preposition *de*, or *par*, before the next noun, used on the same occasions as the English prepositions *by*, *of*, *from*: as, A

La vertu est estimée de *tous*; Virtue is esteemed by all.

Il a été tué par *ses domestiques*; He has been killed *by* his servants. *Par* is used only with a verb that denotes action. Therefore we do not say

Je suis environné par *des gens ennuyeux*, but *de gens*, &c.
I am surrounded by tedious people.

However when the verb passive is followed in English by any other prepositions than *of*, *by*, and *from* (as *with*, &c.), it must be expressed in French by *de*. B

3°. The following verbs active require the preposition *de* before the next infinitive. Such of them as are marked with an Asterisk, require moreover the subjunctive with *que*, according to the observation of the fourth Paragraph of the third Section.

Achever, to make an end, finish,
affecter, to affect,
affliger, to afflict,
approuver, to approve of,
* *appréhender*, to apprehend,
arrêter, to decree,
arrêter, to stop,
attendrir, to soften, move to pity,
attrister, to grieve,
avertir, to warn, to tell,
blâmer, to blame,
censurer, to censure, check,
cesser, to cease, leave off, forbear,
chagriner, to vex,
charger, to charge,
choisir, to chuse,
* *commander*, to command,
* *conjurer*, to conjure, entreat,
conseiller, to advise,
contraindre, to constrain,
convaincre, to convince,
conclure, to conclude,
* *craindre*, to fear,
désoler, to make one mad,
détourner, to deter from,
* *défendre*, to prohibit, forbid,
décharger, to discharge,
décourager, to discourage, C
délibérer, to deliberate,
* *demander en grâce*, to beg it as a favour,
déterminer, to determine, purpose,
désespérer, to despair,
dégouter, to disgust, put out of conceit,
différer, to differ, delay, put off,
dire, to say, to tell,
dispenser, to dispense, excuse, D
divertir, to divert,
écrire, *mander*, to write, to write word,
édifier, to edify, give good example,
effrayer, to frighten,
embarrasser, to puzzle,
* *empêcher*, to hinder,
enjoindre, to enjoin,

entre-

A *se repentir* de, to repent,
se ressouvenir, to remember,
se rétracter, to recant,
se rebuter, to despond, be disheartened,
se retenir de, to keep one's self *from*,
se soucier de, to care *for*,
se saisir de, to seize *upon*,
se scandaliser (de *quelque chose*), to take an offence *at*, *or* to be scandalised *at* one thing,
tâcher and *s'efforcer*, to endeavour,
se vanter, to boast,
user and *se servir d'une chose*, to use *or* make use of a thing.

B Observe that most of those verbs (if not all) which require the preposition *de* before them, are commonly, and can always be, rendered into English by a gerund, either absolutely, or with any of these prepositions *of*, *from*, *with*, &c. as,

Il m'empêcha de *le faire*; He hinders me *from* doing it.

J'ai du moins le plaisir de *la voir*; I have at least the pleasure *of* seeing her.

Vous me reprochez de *vous aimer*; You upbraid me *with* loving you.

J'ai l'honneur de *le connoître*; I have the honour *to* be, *or of being* acquainted with him, &c.

C 5°. The following verbs require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive.

admettre (quelqu'un) à *se justifier*, to give one a fair hearing, and suffer him *to* justify himself,
aimer, to love, to like,
avoir, to have, and *être*, to be,
apprendre (à), to learn *to*,
apprêter (à *rire*), to afford matter of laughing,
assigner (à *comparoître*), to summon, *or* cite, *to* appear,
autoriser, to empower,
chercher (à), to seek *to*, to want *to*,
condamner, to condemn,
consister (à), to consist *in*,
contribuer, to contribute,
convier and *inviter*, to invite,
dépenser (à), to spend *in*,
demeurer (à), *tarder* (à), to stay, tarry, delay *to*,
destiner (à), to design *for*,
disposer, to dispose,
donner, to give,
dresser, to train up,
éclairer, to light,
employer (quelqu'un à), to employ, set one *to*,
encourager, to encourage,
engager, to engage,
enhardir, to embolden,
enseigner, to teach,
exciter, to excite,
exercer, to exercise,
exhorter, to exhort,

habituer, to use, accustom one,
inciter, to incite,
incliner, to incline,
montrer, to show,
perdre, to lose,
porter and *poussier quelqu'un à agir*, to induce, excite, put one to do,
présenter, to present, A

6°. The following verbs neuter require the preposition *à* before the next noun or infinitive:

s'abandonner, to indulge, abandon one's self,
aboutir (à), to come *to*, touch,
s'accoutumer, *s'habituer* (à), to accustom, or use one's self to,
s'adonner, to give one's self,
adhérer, to adhere,
* *aider*, to help,
s'appliquer, to apply one's self,
s'apprêter, *se préparer*, *se disposer* (à *faire quelque chose*), to prepare one's self for doing a thing,
applaudir (à *quelqu'un*), to applaud somebody,
s'arrêter, *s'amuser* (à *des bagatelles*), to stand upon trifles, to mind them,
s'attacher, *se livrer* à *une chose*, to give, apply, addict one's self, to a thing,
s'attendre (à *voir*), to expect to see,
compâtir, to compassionate,
condescendre, to condescend, to comply with,
contrevenir (aux *ordres*), to act contrary to orders,
déplaire, to displease,
désobéir, to disobey,
se déterminer, *se résoudre* (à), to resolve upon,
s'endurcir (à *la fatigue*), to inure one's self to hardships, B
s'engager, to take upon one's self to,
s'exposer, to expose one's self,
se fier (à *quelqu'un*), to trust one,
insulter (aux *miserables*), to insult the unfortunate,
jouer (à *tout perdre*), to venture all, to stake all at once,
nuire (à *autrui*), to hurt others,
obéir (à *quelqu'un*), to obey one,
obvier (à *des inconvéniens*), to obviate difficulties, C
s'obstiner, *s'opiniâtrer* (à *faire quelque chose*), to be obstinately bent, or resolved to do a thing,
s'occuper (à), *passer* (*son temps* (à), to be taken with, spend one's time in,
s'opposer, to oppose,
* *pardonner*, to forgive,
parvenir, to arrive to, to get,
penser and *songer* (à *faire une chose*), to think of doing a thing, D
persister (à *faire quelque chose*), to persist in doing something,
* *plaire* (à *quelqu'un*), to please one,

A *se plaire*, or *prendre plaisir* (à *faire quelque chose*), to delight *in* a thing, to take a pleasure *in* doing it,

* *pourvoir* (au *salut de l'Etat*), to provide *for* the safety of the state,

prétendre (à *une chose*), to aim *at*, to lay claim *to* a thing,

procéder (à *élire*, or *à l'élection*), to proceed to the election,

B *renoncer*, to give over,

ressembler, to resemble, be like,

résister, to resist, withstand,

rester (à *rien faire*), to stand idle,

se mettre (à *faire quelque chose*), to go, fall, set *about* one thing,

subvenir (aux *nécessiteux*), to relieve the needy,

* *suffire*, to suffice, be enough,

survivre, (à *quelqu'un*, to outlive one, to survive him,

tendre, *viser* (à *un but*), to aim *at* an end,

travailler, to work,

Observe that most of those verbs which require the preposition *à* before them, are commonly, and can always be rendered into English by a gerund, with the preposition *in*, or *for*: as,

Aidez-moi à *faire cela*; Help me *to* do that, or *in* doing that.

Apprêter à rire; To afford matter *for* laughing.

Elle prend plaisir à *le faire endêver*;

She takes a pleasure *in* teasing him.

C But * *aider* and *pourvoir* take indifferently the 3d and 4th state of pronouns: as,

Aidez-lui, Help him; *Aidez-le à faire cela*, Help him *to* do that.

* *Plaire*, * *pardonner*, and * *suffire*, require the preposition *de* and not *à*, before the infinitive: as,

Il me plaît de faire cela; I like *or* chuse *to* do that, *&c.*

Satisfaire (to satisfy) governs the 1st state of a person, and the 3d of a thing: as,

Il n'a pas encore satisfait ses créanciers;

D He has not as yet satisfied his creditors.

Satisfaire à ses passions, *à son ambition*, &c.

To gratify one's passions, ambition, *&c.*

7°. These nine verbs take indifferently *de* or *à* before the next infinitive. One must however, in some cases, have regard to the best sound.

commencer, to begin,

contraindre, to constrain,

continuer, to continue, go on,

discontinuer, to discontinue,

essayer, to try,

forcer, to force, compel, s'effor-

s'efforcer,	to endeavour, to exert one's self,	*couter*,	to coſt, A
		manquer,	to fail.

Contraindre (to conſtrain, force, oblige), when uſed actively, indifferently takes *à*, or *de*, before the next infinitive: but when it is uſed in the paſſive voice, it always requires *de*: as,

Contraignez-le à *faire cela*; Conſtrain him to do that.

Je l'ai contraint de *garder la maiſon*; I have obliged him to ſtay at home.

Il fut contraint de *ſe retirer*; He was obliged to withdraw.

Cette fière nation eſt à la fin contrainte de *ſe ſoumettre*; That proud nation is at laſt obliged to ſubmit.

B *Obliger*, ſignifying *to force*, requires *à*, and ſometimes *de*, before the next infinitive in the active ſtate: but in the paſſive ſtate it always requires *de*: as,

Vous m'obligerez à *vous abandonner*; You will force me *to* abandon you.

Je ſuis obligé de *vous abandonner*; I am forced *to* abandon you.

When it ſignifies to do a kindneſs, it is followed by no prepoſition, neither *à* nor *de*. *(French Academy)*.

Voulez-vous bien m'excuſer auprès d'elle, vous m'obligerez; Be pleaſed to excuſe me to her, you will oblige me.

C *Manquer* requires *de* before an infinitive, when it ſignifies *to fail*, and *à* when it ſignifies *to forget*: as,

Les malheureux ne manquent jamais de *ſe plaindre*; The miſerable never fail to complain.

J'ai manqué à *faire ce que je vous avois promis*; I forgot to do what I had promiſed you.

¶ It is not always indifferent to uſe either *de* or *à* after the ſame verb, and more regard muſt be had to the meaning than to the beſt ſound of the phraſes: moſt of the above examples countenance the remark. There is a material difference between the two prepoſitions: *à* denoting tendency, and *de* conſequence.

For inſtance, *Pour les forcer* à *ſe rendre*, To force them to ſurrender, marks the end one aims at; whereas *Pour les forcer* de *ſe rendre*, marks that one has ſucceeded, that they have been obliged to yield to a ſuperior force, that they have actually ſurrendered. D

Likewiſe, *S'efforcer à* means to employ all one's ſtrength; *Il s'eſt efforcé à courir*; He has exerted himſelf to run. *S'efforcer de* means to employ one's induſtry. *Il s'efforce d'être plaiſant*; He endeavours to be witty.]

8°. ¶ Theſe following verbs will have no prepoſition

before the next infinitive.		before the next noun.	
aller,	to go.	*affirmer*,	to affirm, to aſſert.
compter,	to expect, to rely upon.	*apperceveir*,	to perceive.
		aſſurer,	to aſſure.

A before the next infinitive.

daigner, to deign, to be pleased.
ouïr, to hear.
il faut, must.
oser, to dare.
paroître, to appear.
sembler, to seem.
* *il vaut mieux*, it is better.
† *venir*, to come.

before the next noun.

avouer, to own.
considérer, to consider, to behold.
écouter, to listen, to.
épier, to spy.
nier, to deny.
observer, to observe.
publier, to publish, to give out.
rapporter, to report.
regarder, to look at, to behold.
soutenir, to maintain.

B Before the next infinitive or noun.

* *aimer mieux*, to have rather. to choose rather.
confesser, to confess.
croire, to think, to believe.
déclarer, to tell, to declare.
déposer, to depose, to say, to tell.
† *désirer*, to desire.
entendre, *devoir*, to hear.
envoyer, to owe, to send.
† *dire*, to say.
† *espérer*, to hope.

faire, to make, to cause.
s'imaginer, to imagine, to fancy.
laisser, to let, to leave.
penser, to think, to be like or near.
prétendre, to pretend.
reconnoître, to acknowledge.
savoir, to know.
† *souhaiter*, to wish.
voir, to see.
C *vouloir*, to be willing.

* *Aimer mieux* and *valoir mieux* will have no preposition before the next infinitive; but when that infinitive is followed by *que* and another infinitive implying comparison, the second infinitive requires *de* before it. (See p. 226. D); as,

Il aimeroit mieux mourir, He would rather die, *Il vaudroit mieux mourir*, It would be better to die, } que de *faire une action honteuse*; than to commit a shameful action.

† *Dire*, in the sense of *to bid*, takes *de* before the next in-
D finitive; as,

Allez lui dire de *venir*; Go and bid him come.

† *Désirer*, *espérer*, *souhaiter*, used in the infinitive, are always construed with *de* before the next infinitive; as,

Pouvez-vous espérer de *réussir sans son secours?* Can you expect to succeed without his assistance?

In the other moods, *de* is generally left out; as,

Je desire le voir; I desire to see him.

J'espère gagner mon procès; I hope I shall carry the cause.

Je souhaiterois pouvoir vous servir; I wish I could serve you.

But

But *desirer* followed by an adverb, requires *de*; as, A
Je désire fort de *le voir*; I long to see him.]

Venir, in the sense of *to happen*, &c. takes *à*, especially when it is used impersonally: as,

Quand il vint à *ouvrir la bouche*; When he came *to* open his mouth.
S'il vient à *pleuvoir*; If it happens *to* rain.

Venez boire, Come *to* drink. *Il vient danser*, He comes *to* dance.

Venir, in the sense of *just*, takes *de*; as,
Il vient d'*arriver*; He is just arrived.
Avec deux mots qu'il daigna dire;
With two words he was pleased to speak.

Il croyoit pouvoir le faire; He thought he could have done it. B
Il a pensé mourir; He has been like to die. B
Il faut mourir tôt ou tard; We must die sooner or later.

9°. The following Adnouns, commonly construed with *être*, require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive, as likewise all nouns, and adnouns, signifying *Inclination*, *Aptness*, *Fitness*, and *Unfitness*; all which will have *à* (or *au* and *aux*) before a noun.

Etre, to be	*admirable*,	admirable,	à *faire quelque chose*, *to* do something.
	adroit,	dexterous, skilful,	
	affreux,	frightful,	C
	agile,	agile, nimble,	
	agréable,	agreeable,	
	aisé, *facile*,	easy,	
	ardent,	eager,	
	assidu,	assiduous,	
	beau,	handsome, fine,	
	bon,	good,	
	charmant,	charming,	
	civil,	civil,	
	le dernier,	the last of all *Numbers*,	
	diligent,	diligent,	D
	doux,	sweet,	
	effroyable,	dreadful,	
	enclin,	inclined, bent,	
	exact,	exact,	
	habile,	able, skilful,	
	hardi,	bold,	
	hideux,	hideous,	
	honnête,	honest,	
	horrible,	horrible,	

A But note, that the French use no negative after *prendre garde*, when the next verb is of the infinitive. (See p. 317.)

Persuader, to persuade, attended by one noun only, governs it in the first state; as, *persuader quelqu'un*, to persuade one. *Persuader quelque chose*, to persuade one thing. When it is attended by two nouns, it governs the first state of the thing, and the third of the person; as, *persuader une chose à quelqu'un*; to persuade one to something. And when it is followed by a verb, it requires it in the infinitive with *de*: as also does *dissuader*, to dissuade, and *détourner*, to deter; but these two always govern the first state of the person, and the second of the thing: as, *dissuader quelqu'un de quelque chose*; to dissuade one from a thing: *le détourner* de *la faire*; to deter him from doing it.

Instruire to instruct, governs the first state of the person, and the second of the thing: as, *instruire quelqu'un d'une chose*, to instruct one: but *enseigner*, *apprendre*, *montrer* (to teach, learn, show) govern the third state of the person: as, *enseigner la Grammaire à quelqu'un*, to teach one Grammar.

Lastly, Verbs and Adnouns, governing the *Genitive*, *Dative*, and *Ablative* in Latin, B commonly govern the second and third state of the noun in French: as, *Meminisse alicujus rei*, to remember a thing; *se souvenir* d'*une chose*. *Resistere alicui*, to resist one: *résister* à *quelqu'un*. *Vesci pane & aquâ*, to live upon bread and water, *vivre* de *pain & d'eau*.

15°. The Prepositions *de* and *à*, construed with the infinitive, answer to the English preposition *to*, used also before verbs; and it ought to have been observed, that it is the foregoing verb, or noun, that determines which of the two must be used. But there remains another preposition *(pour)*, likewise answering *to* and of the same use, before verbs, and which denotes the *Design* or *End* of, or *Reason* for doing something. Therefore

C Whenever the particle *to* coming before an infinitive, can as well be rendered by *for to*, *in order to*, *with a design to*, with the infinitive, or *to the end that*, or only *that*, with the indicative, or subjunctive, or *for* with the gerund, it must be rendered into French by *pour*: as likewise the French for these expressions, *for to*, *in order to*, *with a design to*, *to the end that*, and *for* with a gerund, is *pour*, or *afin de* with the infinitive, or *afin que* with the subj. as,

Il l'a fait pour *me faire de la peine*; He did it *to* make me uneasy.
Il a été pendu pour *avoir volé sur le grand chemin*;
He was hanged *for robbing* upon the highway.
Afin d'*obtenir cette grâce*; in order to obtain that favour.
D Afin que *je lui réponde*; that I may answer his letter.

16°. The verb coming after *trop*, *assez*, *suffisamment*, *suffisant*, and *suffire*, always requires the preposition *pour* before it: as,

Il est trop *sensé* pour *faire cela*; He has too much sense *to* do that.
Elle n'est pas assez *riche* pour *épouser un Duc*;
She is not rich enough *to* marry a Duke.
Le mérite ne suffit *pas* pour *réussir*; Merit is not enough to thrive.

Mind then well the relations which the English particles *of*, *from*, *with*, *in*, *by*, *for*, and *to*, have to these three French ones, *de*, *à*, *pour*.

The

The gerund *(ing)* with the prepositions *of, from, with* (or the infinitive, that can be resolved by any of these prepositions, and the gerund) is rendered by the infinitive with *de.*—The English gerund, with the prepositions *in* and *to* (or the infinitive, that can be resolved after that manner), is rendered by the infinitive with *à.*——And the preposition *for* with the gerund (or the infinitive so resolved), by the infinitive with *pour.* See the examples above.——The English gerund, with the prepositions *in* and *by*, is also rendered in French by the gerund, with the preposition *en*: as, by doing that, *or* in doing that, *en faisant cela.* A

Moreover observe, 1*st*, that *pour* is never used in French with a gerund as in English, but always with the infinitive.

2*dly*, That English gerunds, construed with *for*, are rendered in French by the compound of the present of the infinitive, or by a noun: as, *Il a été pendu pour avoir volé*, ou *pour vol*; He has been hanged for robbing: the noun denoting the action itself, and the compound tense the time of the action, which is past.

3*dly*, That these three prepositions, *de, à, pour*, are not always put so immediately before verbs, as in English, but some word or words may be put between, as pronouns and some adverbs, which must come immediately before the verb; as, B

Pour vous *donner*; To give you.
Pour mieux *répondre*: To answer better.

4*thly*, That they are also sometimes used before the infinitive, without any previous noun, or verb, that determine them, to wit, in the beginning of a sentence; as,

De vous dire comment cela est arrivé, c'est ce que je ne puis;
To tell you how that did happen, that I cannot, *or* it is what I cannot.

In which construction, *de* prepares the mind to a greater attention to what one is going to say.

à not only comes in the beginning of a sentence, but is also construed with verbs that require *de*: but then *à* falls under some of the relations of disposition or inclination, which (as we shall see in the chapter of the prepositions) are denoted by that particle: and *à* thus used, can be resolved in English by *by*, or *with*, and a gerund; or *if*, and the indicative: as,

A en juger par les apparences; If we may judge by appearances *or* probabilities. C
A vivre comme il fait, il n'ira pas loin; If he lives at that rate, he will not live long.
A l'entendre, on diroit que, or *On diroit*, à *l'entendre, que*, &c.
To hear him speak, *or* by hearing him speak, one would say that, &c.

As for *pour*, before an infinitive, in the beginning of a sentence, it always keeps its property of denoting the *Design, End*, or *Cause* of doing something: as,

Pour *avoir pris tant de peines, il n'en est pas mieux récompensé*;
For taking so much pains, he is not the better rewarded for it.

The infinitive can also begin the sentence, without any preposition at all before it, which happens, when one speaks sententiously, or is laying down general maxims: as,

Pouvoir vivre avec soi-même, & savoir vivre avec les autres, c'est la grande science de la vie; To be able to live with one's self, and to know how to live with others, is the great science of life.

Lastly, Whenever in a sentence two verbs come together, joined by the enclitick, *&*, great care must be taken (especially if they govern different relations, and particles), to give to each of them the respective relation or particle which it requires: as in placing a noun after the first verb, and before the second a pronoun in that state which it requires; or in repeating the pronoun before each verb. D

¶ Therefore this English phrase,

That pleased and charmed the Prince, is translated thus in French:

Cela plut au Prince & le charma, not *Cela plut & charma*, &c. because we say, *Charmer quelqu'un & plaire à quelqu'un.* It is the same with these phrases:

I will and bind myself to fulfil my promise; Je veux accomplir ma promesse, & Je promets de le faire, not *Je veux & promets*, &c. because *vouloir* requires no preposition, and *promettre* requires *de.*

He made much of his son, and gave him his blessing;

Il fit des caresses à son fils, & lui donna sa bénédiction; not *il fit... & donna à son fils*; because, though the two verbs have the same regimen, yet each must be attended by its relation.

A It is the same with two prepositions; each must have its separate regimen, expressed or understood; and the understood regimen is always that of the latter preposition; as, *The one sat above, and the other below me*; L'un s'assit au dessus du moi, & l'autre au-dessous: so regular and nice the French language is in its construction.]

N. B. In a collection of Phrases and Dialogues lately published by Mr. *Des Carrieres*, the verbs mentioned pag. 289 to 302, are instanced with their respective regimens.]

170. The Gerund is always indeclinable: therefore we say in both genders and numbers,

Un homme craignant Dieu; a man fearing God.
Une femme craignant Dieu; a woman fearing God.
Des gens craignant Dieu; people fearing God.

Except only in some expressions of the Law-style, as *la rendante compte* (a woman giving an account at law of the money which she was accountable for). *Nos gens tenants nos Cours de Parlement* (style of Proclamation, to say only *Our Parliaments*).

B It is a great *Quære* among French Grammarians, whether the expressions of these sentences are gerunds, or only *verbal* adnouns.

Une requête tendante à ce que, &c. A petition tending to what, &c.
Une fille majeure-usante & jouissante de ses droits;
A young woman of age enjoying her rights.
Ces étoffes ne sont pas approchantes de celles que je vis hier;
These stuffs are not like those I saw yesterday.
Son humeur est tellement répugnante à la mienne, que, &c.
His or her temper is so repugnant to mine, that, &c.

La campagne est pleine de troupeaux qui paissent errans à leur gré, & bondissans sur l'herbe; The country is full of grazing cattle, wandering up and down, and skipping in the grass.

C It is very indifferent what appellation to give to these derivatives (and others from verbs neuter), so they are known, and the learner is informed, that use will have them govern the same relation as the verbs which they are derived from, and besides agree, in gender and number, with the term which they refer to. I will insert a list of them in the Appendix: but the means to know whether they are gerunds, or adnouns, is to see if they can be construed with the verb subst. *to be*: in which case they are adnouns, otherwise they are gerunds.

Likewise there are in French a great many words, which are both nouns and gerunds; as *appelant, assiégeant, conquérant, étudiant, savant, ignorant, habitant, négotiant, suppliant*, &c. but their construction has no difficulty; they are used like nouns, and they govern no state, as they do when used as gerunds.

A great many participles are also used substantively, as *allié, blessé, convié, damné*, &c. &c. You will find complete lists of them in the Appendix.

D We often express with a conjunction and a tense of the indicative what is expressed with a gerund in other languages, in order to avoid the ambiguity that may arise from the gerund being indeclinable. Thus instead of saying, *Je les ai rencontrés courant la poste*, I met them riding post, we say

Je les ai rencontrés qui couroient *la poste*,

because *courant* may as well refer to the subject *je*, as to the object *les*. *Il a été chez elles, & il les a trouvées* qui buvoient & mangeoient, instead of *buvant & mangeant*; He has been to their house, and found them eating and drinking.

The

The gerund sometimes takes the preposition *en* before it, as in English *in* and *by*, and can be resolved by the conjunctions *when*, *whilst*, and *as*, with a tense of the indicative: as, A

Je l'ai vu en passant; I saw him by the way, *or* as I passed by.

When the pronoun *en* meets with a gerund, it is put after it, and not before, as it should, if the gerund was resolved by a tense of the indicative, in order to avoid the equivocation, that may be occasioned by *en* pronoun, and *en* preposition: as,

Il le pria d'instruire son fils, voulant en *faire un savant*, or *comme il* en vouloit *faire un savant*; He desired him to instruct his son, as he would make a learned man of him.

The English gerund *(ing)* so much used with the particles *a*, *an*, *the*, or nothing before it, or with *of* after, is rendered into French by a noun, or by a pronoun and a verb, or an infinitive when it comes after a verb with *a* or *an*: as, B

The *impoverishing* of the body is the *enriching* of the soul;

L'apauvrissement *du corps est* ce qui enrichit *l'âme*.

He is gone *a walking*; *Il est allé* se promener.

A virtuous man don't leave off *doing* good, but when he gives over *living*;

L'homme vertueux ne cesse de faire *du bien qu'en cessant* de vivre.

His perfect knowledge of the French Tongue is the reason of his *being chosen* for that embassy;

La connoissance parfaite qu'il a de la langue Françoise est la raison pourquoi on l'a choisi *pour cette ambassade*. C

Observe besides, that the gerund with the verb substantive *to be*, is rendered into French by the verb of the gerund, in the tense of the verb substantive: as,

He is dancing, Il danse; *I was reading*, Je lisois, *&c.*

¶ Mr. *Holder*, in his illustration of *Chambaud's* Grammar, has taxed him with error, for not having distinguished the Participle present from the Gerund.

Without meaning the least offence to Mr. H. whose merit is readily acknowledged, as his corrections are altogether highly commendable, it may be observed, that he has espoused the wrong side of the question. His principal authority is *Restaut*, one of those grammarians, who, fettered with the prejudices of school, dare not soar higher, and are anxious to chalk the syntax of all languages after that of the Latin, without any regard to the peculiar genius of each. D

This vindication of *Chambaud*, who himself has followed *Girard*, is grounded upon the opinion of *Wailly*, who is himself a professional man in Latin, and whose French Grammar has superseded that of *Restaut* in Paris, near thirty years, after receiving the sanction of the University of Paris; a class of men conversant in Latin, who have adopted the book, though the Participle present is missing in it.

It remains to prove that the opinion of *Chambaud* and *Wailly* is justifiable.

The Participle is so called, because it partakes of the nature of both the verb and the adjective; that is, verb-like, it governs; and adjective-like, it is declinable, and may be the predicate of a sentence; but the French Gerund, though possessing the first of these properties, *viz.* that of governing, does not now enjoy the others, as it did formerly; it therefore cannot be styled a Participle.

The Gerund is so called, because it is the vice-gerent of a verb, always subordinate to the principal verb of the sentence, having the same regimen with its principal

A mitive verb, and ſtanding, as it were, for a ſubject together with its attribute.

The Gerund ſerves to expreſs, 1°. The ſtate, chiefly of the ſubject, ſometimes of the object of an action.

2°. The motive or ground of a ſubject for acting.

3°. The circumſtance, manner, or means of an action.

N. B. The ſubject of an action is always a noun or pronoun governing a verb; as the object is a noun or pronoun governed by a verb. The object to which a Gerund may refer, muſt be governed without the aſſiſtance of any prepoſition.

In its two firſt capacities, the Gerund anſwers to the queſtions *why? how?* and may be reſolved, either by the relative conjunctive *qui*, or the conjunctions *comme, parce que*, &c. prefixed to a verb in the indicative mood.

In its third capacity, it anſwers to the queſtions *when? how?* and may be re-
B ſolved by the conjunctions *lorſque, pendant que*, prefixed to a verb in the indicative mood.

1°. EXAMPLES *of Gerunds expreſſing the ſtate of a ſubject and object.*

Albert Valſtein fut *naturellement fort ſobre*; *ne* dormant *preſque point*, travaillant *toujours*, ſupportant *patiemment le froid & la faim*, &c. "Albert Valſtein *was* naturally very ſober; *taking* almoſt no ſleep, *being* always at work, patiently *enduring* cold and hunger, &c." Here the ſtate of Valſtein is deſcribed; the gerunds *dormant*, &c. may be reſolved by *comme il dormoit*, &c. or *qui dormoit*, &c. the imperfect of their reſpective verbs, becauſe *fut*, the principal verb of the ſentence, denotes a time paſt.

Cette Dame eſt *d'un excellent caractère*; ſoignant *les malades*, faiſant *des aumônes*, obligeant *toujours quand elle le peut*. "This Lady *is* of an excellent temper; *attending* the ſick, *giving* alms, always *obliging* when ſhe has it in her power." Here the
C diſpoſition of the Lady is deſcribed; the gerunds may be reſolved by *comme elle ſoigne*, &c. the preſent tenſe of their reſpective verbs, becauſe *eſt*, the principal verb, denotes the preſent time.

Combien voyons-*nous de gens, qui* connoiſſant *le prix du temps, le perdent mal à propos!* "How many people we *ſee*, who *knowing* the value of time, yet waſte it to no purpoſe!" Here *connoiſſant* may be reſolved by *quoiqu'ils connoiſſent*; or the ſecond verb *perdent* may be accompanied with the conjunction *cependant*.

On les trouve *toujours* buvant & mangeant; "We always *find* them *eating* and *drinking*." *Je les* ai trouvés buvant & mangeant; "I *found* them *eating* and *drinking*." Here the gerunds *buvant* and *mangeant* deſcribe the ſtate of the object, and may be reſolved by *qui boivent & mangent*, or *qui buvoient & mangeoient*, according to the tenſe of the principal verb to which they are ſubordinate.

2°. EXAMPLES *of Gerunds expreſſing the motive or ground for acting.*

D In that capacity the Gerund always refers to the ſubject of the ſentence.

Il envoie *Il a envoyé* (ſuppoſing he is ſtill there) *Il envera*	*ſon fils à Cambridge*, voulant *en faire un bon mathematicien*; "He *ſends*, or *has ſent*, or *will ſend* his ſon to Cambridge; *wiſhing* to make a good mathematician of him." The Gerund *voulant* expreſſes the motive of his ſending, &c. it may be reſolved by *parce qu'il veut*, the preſent tenſe, becauſe the principal verb denotes a time preſent or future.

"But in this phraſe,

Il a envoyé (ſuppoſing he is no longer there) *Il envoya* *Il avoit envoyé*	*ſon fils à Cambridge*, voulant *en faire*, &c. "He *ſent* or *had ſent* his ſon to Cambridge, *wiſhing* to make," &c. The Gerund *voulant* may be reſolved by *parce qu'il vouloit*, the imperfect tenſe, becauſe the principal verb denotes a time paſt.

Two or more gerunds employed together, must be joined with a conjunction before the last; as, Craignant *d'un côté d'être abandonné, & de l'autre s'ennuyant d'entretenir tant de troupes à ses dépens, il se sauva dans les montagnes*: "*Fearing*, on one hand, to be deserted, *and being tired*, on the other, to keep so many men in his pay, he fled to the mountains." A

The gerunds past are formed with the assistance of the helping gerunds *ayant* and *étant*; as,

La ville ayant été *prise & abandonnée au pillage, le soldat y fit un immense butin*: "The town *having been* taken and delivered up to plunder, the soldiers made an immense booty." Here *ayant été* does for the two participles *prise* and *abandonnée*, because both are used affirmatively; but when one is used affirmatively and the other negatively, or *vice versâ*, the gerund must be repeated; as, *La ville n'ayant pas voulu se rendre, mais* ayant été *prise d'assaut*, &c.

In the two capacities above mentioned, the French gerund, it is true, performs the same office as the participle present of the Latin; but, for the reasons already stated, it does not follow that it should go by the same name; no more than the French participle has a right to assume the denomination of the Latin supine, though it perform its part, when taken actively. B

3o. EXAMPLES *of Gerunds expressing the circumstance, manner, or means of an action.*

In that capacity the gerund always refers to the subject of the sentence, performing the same office as the gerund in *do* of the Latin, and having the import of a substantive, since it is, or may always be, preceded by the preposition *en*, with which it forms an adverbial phrase (N. B. The other gerunds of the Latin, viz. in *di* and *dum*, have their offices performed by the French infinitive preceded by *de* or *pour*.)

Je l'ai rencontré en allant *à la campagne*; "I met him *in going* into the country." *Je lirai sa lettre* en *me* promenant; "I shall read his letter *when I take* a walk." In these phrases the gerund expresses the circumstance of the action: *En allant* may be resolved by *Comme j'allois*, or *lorsque j'allois*: *En me promenant* may be resolved by *quand je me promenerai*, or *pendant que je me promenerai*.

Vous l'avez fait en courant; "You have done it *running*." *Il vous a dit la vérité*, tout en riant; "He spoke the truth to you, though *in a pleasant manner*." In these phrases the gerund expresses the manner of the action: *En courant* may be resolved by *comme* or *lorsque vous couriez*: *Tout en riant* may be resolved by *quoiqu'il rît*. C

On l'a guéri d'un vomissement invétéré, en *lui* faisant *prendre tous les jours deux cuillerées de vin d'Espagne*; "He has been cured of an inveterate vomiting, by *taking* two spoonfuls of Spanish wine every day." Here the gerund *en faisant* expresses the means employed to cure him, and may be resolved by *parce qu'on lui a fait prendre*, &c.

If the principal verb were in the future tense, *on le guérira*; or in the conditional, *on le guériroit*, the gerund would be resolved by *si on lui fait*, or *si on lui faisoit prendre*, on account of the condition implied.

From the examples above stated, it plainly appears that the gerund, in any capacity, may be resolved nearly in the same manner, *viz.* by a conjunction and a verb: Now the difference of the conjunction is not a plea to give the gerund different denominations; therefore there is no impropriety in giving it but one name, provided it may equally well answer the purpose. D

Some grammarians who reckon two sorts of participles in French, the active and the passive, do not seem more successful. They call our gerund the participle active, which, it is true, expresses an action; but, as has just been shown, cannot be denominated a participle. As to their participle passive, they confess that it is mostly used actively; why then should its denomination be confined to one voice only?

It may therefore be fairly inferred, that in French there is but one participle, both nominally and really; which serves for the past as well as present time, in both the active and passive voice. This perhaps may be ascribed to a poverty of our language, which, however, does not militate against its clearness and perspicuity. Its deficiency is easily made up with the assistance of some words, and the language is not injured by it, since a multiplicity of beings is saved, which in the end would prove useless, and be deemed merely a luxury of expression.

A 18°. Participles are mere adnouns, sometimes construed with a subject, to make short accidental sentences, as, *Cela dit, il s'en alla*; After saying this, he went away; but most times serving to form the compound tenses of verbs. When they meet with nouns, they always agree with them in number and gender: as,

un homme estimé,	a man esteemed.	*une femme estimée*,	a woman esteemed.
des gens estimés,	people esteemed.	*des nations estimées*,	nations esteemed.

B When they are part of a tense compound, they are sometimes declinable, and sometimes indeclinable, according to the following observations.

1*st*, The participle is declinable, when it comes after the verb *être*, considered only as a verb substantive, or (what is the same) when the participle is a predicate, that is, an adnoun affirmed of the subject: as,

Il est perdu, *Elle est perdue*; He *or* She, *or* It is lost.
Ils sont perdus, *Elles sont perdues*; They are lost.
Il est ravi, *Elle est ravie de danser*; He, *or* She is overjoy'd to (dance.
¶ *Elle a été* ravie *de vous voir*; She has been charmed to see you.

C *N. B.* The participle *été* is always indeclinable, as also *pu* and *fallu*; *voulu* is very seldom declined.]

2*dly*, When the tense compound, either of *avoir* or *être*, is preceded by a pronoun relative in the fourth state, governed as an object, such as *que*, *le*, *la*, *les*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, *vous*, or by a noun with a pronoun interrogative: as,

Les peines que *mes amis ont* prises;
The trouble which my friends have taken.
Les peines qu'*ils se sont* données;
The trouble which they gave themselves.
Quelles *peines a-t-il* prises (or) *s'est-il* données?
D What trouble did he take, or give himself?
Ses sœurs ont bien du mérite, je les *ai toujours estimées*;
His sisters are very deserving, I have always esteemed them.
Nous nous *sommes trompés*; We were mistaken (Men speak).
Elles s'étoient trompées; They were mistaken (said of Women).

But the participle is indeclinable, 1*st*, when the pronoun is governed of a verb coming after the tense compound, and not of the tense compound: as,

Les montres qu'*il a fait* faire, *il ne* les *a pas voulu* payer;
The watches which he ordered to be made, he would not pay for them.

Fait and *voulu* do not agree with the pronouns *que* and *les*, relating to *les montres*, because these pronouns are not governed of the compound tenses *il a fait*, *il a voulu*; but by the following verbs *faire* and *payer*. A

2*dly*, When it is governed in the third state expressing the end of the verb, and not in the fourth, expressing its object, we say:

Elle s'est tuée; She has killed her'elf;

making the participle agree with the pronoun *se*, governed of the tense compound, as its object. But we say:

Elle s'est donné *la mort*, not *s'est donnée*; She put herself to death; because the tense compound does not govern *se* as its object, but *la mort*; and *se* is only the *end*, in the third state (*sibi*). B

The pronoun is not governed of the tense compound in these four cases, 1*st*, When the verb *faire*, serving to form the compound tense, signifies *to cause*, *to bespeak*, *to order*, as in the aforesaid example:

Les montres qu'il a fait *faire*; The watches which he ordered to be made.

2*dly*, With verbs impersonal: as,

Les tumultes qu'*il* a fallu *apaiser*; The riots which it was necessary to quell; wherein *que* is governed of *apaiser*, not of *il a fallu*.

3*dly*, With the participle *pu* from *pouvoir*, *du* from *devoir*, *voulu* from *vouloir*, and perhaps some others, after which there is an infinitive understood: as,

Il a dit toutes les raisons qu'*il a* voulu; He has said all the reasons that he would; *dire* being understood after *voulu*. C

Ménage, *Corneille*, and *l'Abbé Desmarais* (the Grammar of the French Academy) make three more exceptions to the general rule; pretending, that when the subject of the verb comes after it, or when the pronoun *cela* is the subject, whether it comes before or after the verb, or when the compound tense is followed by either a noun or adnoun, which it governs, together with the pronoun, the participle is indeclinable, and therefore will have writers say,

*Les peines qu'*ont pris *mes amis*, or *que se sont* donné *mes amis*.
Les peines que m'a donné *cette affaire*, or *que cela m'a* causé.
Le commerce l'a rendu *puissante*; Trade made it powerful.
Les Anglois se sont rendu *maîtres de la mer*; The English have made themselves masters of the sea.

But good writers now keep to the general rule, of making the participle agree with the foregoing pronoun, except only when it is not governed of the compound tense, or is in the third state.

Therefore we should say:—*Les peines qu'ont prises.*—*Les peines que m'a données.*—*L'a rendue puissante.*—*Se sont rendus maîtres de la mer.* D

CHAP. VI.

Of VERBS *Impersonal.*

¶ STRICTLY speaking there is no such thing as a Verb Impersonal, except in the Infinitive mood; however, according to the trite language of grammarians, such may be so called, in the indicative and subjunctive (see p 130.), as are not conjugated with the personal pronouns *je*, I; *tu*, thou; *il*, he, it; *elle*, she, it, &c.

A but only with this pronoun *il*, it, impersonal, that is, referring to no antecedent; as in these phrases:

Il *tonne*, *it* thunders; il *neigeoit*, *it* snowed; il *pleuvra*, *it* will rain, (see pag. 187.) wherein no antecedent appears, unless you suppose that such words *le ciel*, the sky; *le temps*, the weather, may be understood. Therefore a verb is known to be impersonal, when no substantive can be prefixed to it instead of *il*.

Il is also impersonal in phrases like this: Il *s'est passé bien des choses*, which has the same import as, *Bien des choses se sont passées*; Many things have happened. The virtual subject of the verb impersonal *s'est passé*, is *bien des choses*; hence may be inferred that the impersonal pronoun *il*, far from referring to an antecedent, rather refers to a consequent term.

Even *il* has been reputed by judicious authors a mere article, belonging to a substantive expressed or understood, and following the verb when it is expressed, as in *il est jour* (*il jour est*, or *le jour est*).

B These phrases, *il pleut*, *il tonnes*, may be resolved in the same manner, viz. *il pluie est*, or *la pluie est*; (*il pleut* comprehending in itself the subject, with the affirmative and attribute). (*Gram. de* P. R.)

Verbs *Impersonal*, in all their tenses, are used in the third person singular; hence they are of the same tribe as those used with the pronoun indeterminate *on*; the only difference is that they present something more general and indeterminate; as,

Il *se trouve des gens*, or On *trouve des gens*; People are found. (See the latter end of this Chapter.)

§ I. *Of the Impersonal* Il est, il étoit, *&c.*

This impersonal, and the demonstrative *c'est*, are of very extensive use in French, but cannot be used indiscriminately the one for the other; thus, in order to know how to employ C them properly, make the following observations.

¶ The English Impersonal, *it is*, is used in sentences, the signification of which is sometimes absolute and indeterminate, sometimes relative and determinate. In the latter case, *c'est* must always be used; in the former, *il est* is more proper, unless you introduce a noun, which then determines the sense, and requires the use of *c'est*. Instances will elucidate the matter.

This English phrase, *It is in vain you endeavour to corrupt him*; may be rendered into French two ways:

1°. C'est *en vain* que *vous cherchez à le corrompre*, (means something positive, an actual endeavour; and for this reason, the verb *cherchez* is in the indicative.)

2°. Il est *inutile* que *vous cherchiez à le corrompre*, (means something uncertain, an intended endeavour; and for this reason, the verb *cherchiez* is in the subjunctive.) D This latter phrase rather signifies, It is in vain you would endeavour, *&c.*

From the above examples it appears that *il est* cannot be used for *c'est*, without altering the sense of the phrase.

On the contrary, *c'est* accompanied with a noun, may perform the office of *il est*, still preserving its full import.

For instance, this phrase; *Il est fâcheux que son projet n'ait pas réussi*; It is grievous that his project did not succeed;

May be equally well, and still better rendered by this: *C'est une chose fâcheuse que son projet n'ait pas réussi*. Both phrases have the same import, since *que* in either governs the same mood; but the latter, as will be seen hereafter, is more agreeable to the genius of the French, and receives from the Gallicism *c'est que* a degree of energy.

Therefore in the doubt which way the English Impersonal *it is*, followed by an adnoun, must be rendered into French, there can be no impropriety in using *c'est*, provided you introduce a noun, with which the adnoun will be construed, as in the last instance.] A

¶ *Il est* is construed 1° with nouns denoting time; as,

Quelle heure est-il? What o'clock is it? Il est *deux heures*; *It is* two o'clock.

*Quelle heure croyez-vous qu'*il soit? What o'clock do you think *it is?* Il est *minuit*; *It is* twelve (at night). Est-il *si tard que cela?* Is it so late? *Je ne croyois pas qu'*il fût *si tard*; I did not think it was so late.

Quelle heure étoit-il *quand vous êtes parti?* At what o'clock did you set off? Il étoit *neuf heures*; *It was* nine. B

Il est *jour*; It is day-light.—*Il est nuit*; It is dark.

Il est *heure de dîner*; It is dinner time.—Il est *heure de se retirer*; It is time to go home.

Il est *temps de partir*; *It is* time to set out. Il sera *tard quand nous arriverons à Douvres*; *It will be* late when we reach Dover.

N. B. In the above application of *il est*, the noun takes no article; the reason is obvious: *il* is itself an article, as has been said.]

¶ 2°. *Il est* is also construed with an adnoun, unaccompanied with a noun, but followed by either *de* or *que*, and a subsequent sentence explicative of the adnoun; as, C

Il est *bien* fâcheux d'*être malade, & de n'avoir point d'argent*; *It is* a very sad thing to be sick, and have no money.

Il est bon de *se tenir sur ses gardes*; *It is* prudent to stand upon one's guard.

The above phrases present something general and sententious; but when particularized, they must be construed with *que* instead of *de*: as,

Il est *fâcheux* que *cela soit arrivé*; It is sorrowful that such a thing has happened. D

Il est bon que *vous vous teniez sur vos gardes*; It is prudent for you to stand upon your guard.

Il est *bien* fâcheux que *vous soyez malade*, & que *vous n'ayez point d'argent*; *It is* a very sad thing *for you* to be sick, and have no money. (Sometimes you may say, as in English, *Il est bien fâcheux pour vous d'être*, &c. See the Impersonals, *pag.* 283 *and* 299.]

A ¶ 3°. *Il est*, in all its tenses, is also construed with prepositions: For instance,

With *à*, to express probability; as,

Il est à *croire que cela arrivera*; It may be thought that this will happen.

Il étoit à *présumer que cela seroit ainsi*; It was presumable that it would be so.

In this acceptation *il est* is elegantly used for *il y a*, (See pag. 310.)

With *de*, to express duty, obligation; as,

Il est de *la générosité de pardonner*; It behoves a generous soul
B to forgive.

Il est du devoir d'*un bon citoyen de défendre sa patrie*; A good citizen ought to defend his native country.

With *en*, to express ability, character; as,

Il n'est pas en *moi de chercher à nuire*; It is not in my character to be hurtful.

Il n'étoit pas en *lui de le faire*; He had not it in his power to do so.

S'il est en *votre pouvoir*; If you have it in your power.

Il est en *son pouvoir de vous obliger*; He has it in his power to
C oblige you.]

¶ 4°. *Il est* construed with the particle, or rather the supplying pronoun *en*, prefixed to the verb, implies sometimes contingency; as,

*On lui a intenté un procès, & il n'*en *a rien été*; An action has been brought against him, which had no fatal consequence.

Quand il l'auroit maltraité, or *S'il l'avoit maltraité, qu'*en *seroit-il? il n'*en *seroit rien*; Though *or* if he had ill-treated him, what would be the consequence? nothing at all.

Il en *sera ce qu'il plaira à Dieu*; It will happen as it pleases
D God.

Il en *sera de cette affaire ce qu'il plaira aux ministres*; It will be with this affair as the ministers please.

Sometimes *il en est* implies comparison, then the preposition *de* (in English *with*) must be prefixed both to the noun compared and the noun of similitude; as,

Il en *est* de *la Poësie comme* de *la* Peinture; It is *with* Poetry as *with* Painting.

Il en *sera du vôtre comme du mien*; It will be *with* yours as *with* mine.]

Of the pretended Impersonal, or rather the Verb Demonstrative c'est, c'étoit, *&c.* A

¶ Mr. *Holder* has censured *Chambaud* pretty severely, for "having," said he, "very incautiously joined the personal applications of *c'est*, to its impersonal ones." This gentleman's animadversion seems rather incautious. With a little more attention to the nature of *ce*, and to the double acceptation of the English impersonal *it is*, he might, perhaps, have come nearer the point, by giving a general verdict against the impersonality of *c'est*. In this respect he would have agreed with the French Academy and our best grammarians, who do not reckon *c'est* a verb impersonal.

In effect, there is a material difference between *il est* and *c'est*. The former is mostly construed with an adnoun, or with a substantive taken adjectively, and is generally followed by an explicative sentence; the latter is generally construed with a noun, or with a verb in the infinitive, that is used substantively, and may make a complete sentence. (See the following pages.)

If, therefore, there be already difficulty enough in defending the impersonality of *il est*, since in most of the examples above-stated it has a great similarity to *on*, being in some measure its vice-gerent; there is still less possibility to attribute impersonality to a verb depending on a true pronoun, and such is the case with *c'est*. B

What may have caused the mistake, is perhaps the verb *être* being used in the third person singular; but a pronoun singular cannot govern a verb in another person.

Sometimes, it is true, the third person plural is used with *ce* (as will be seen hereafter); but the first and second persons plural cannot; because *the law* of harmony may sometimes authorize to alter the number, but never to change the person.]

¶ It has been seen in the above examples, that the English Impersonal *it is*, presents something indeterminate, and for this reason is rendered into French by *il est*. But when *it is* presents something determinate, the French, as has been said, to point it out more precisely, make use of their convenient verb demonstrative *c'est*, which serves to give their sentences sometimes more elegance, at other times more energy. C

For the same reason, of elegance or energy, *c'est* is also used in some cases wherein instead of the English impersonal *it*, a pronoun personal, or even a noun, is construed with the verb *to be*. Hence, perhaps, Mr. Holder's distinction of *c'est* impersonal from *c'est* personal, which may hold good, but with respect to the English only.]

¶ N. B. *Ce* is sometimes an article, sometimes a pronoun demonstrative; in this latter capacity, it may be called pronoun primitive, being, in effect, the root of *celui*, *celle*; *ceux*, *celles*; *ceci*, *cela*. (See p. 259.]

¶ 1°. *C'est* in all its tenses both of the indicative and subjunctive moods, is idiomatically used in French, to point out more precisely an object determinate; as, D

C'est *là mon livre*; This is my book.
C'est *aujourd'hui Dimanche*; To day is Sunday.
C'étoit *hier Samedi*; Yesterday was Saturday.
C'est *demain Lundi*; To-morrow is Monday.
C'est *Mardi fête*; Tuesday is a holiday.
C'est *demain congé*; To morrow is a holiday.
Ce sera *demain congé*; To-morrow will be a holiday.

N. B. There

A N. B. Observe that *elle, nous, vous, elles,* being both disjunctive and conjunctive, are in such phrases used in their disjunctive capacity.

Observe also, that it is only in its simple tenses the verb may be plural; for in its compound we say,

Ç'avoit été *eux* or *elles*; It had been they.]

¶ 4°. *C'est* is sometimes followed by a relative member, which serves either to describe the very substantive announced by *c'est*, or to account for a preceding sentence; as,

C'est *un médecin* qui *a fait des cures étonnantes*; He is a physician who has done wonderful cures.

C'est *un ministre en* qui *le public a la plus grande confiance*; He is a minister in whom the public place an unbounded con-
B fidence.

C'est *un bonheur* que *tout le monde* envie; It is a happiness which every one envies.

C'est *la loi* qui *l'ordonne*; It is the law that prescribes it.

C'est *le laquais* qui *a dit cela*; It is the footman who said that.

C'est *moi* qui *le crois*; It is I who believe it.

C'est *vous, Messieurs,* qu'*il faut remercier*; It is you, Gentlemen, who must be thanked.

C'est *eux* (or) Ce sont *eux* qui *l'ont fait*; It is they who have done it, *or* It was they that did that.

C'étoit (or) C'étoient *les dragons* qui *ne vouloient pas obéir*;
C It was the dragoons that would not obey.

Ce fut *lui* qui *le fit*; It was he that did it.

Ce furent *les François* qui *assiégèrent la place*; It was the French that besieged the place.

Ce seront *les grenadiers* qui *feront cette attaque*; The grenadiers are to make that attack.

Ce sont *vos ancêtres*, qui, *par leurs vertus & leurs belles actions, vous ont mérité la qualité de nobles*; ce sont *eux* qui *vous rendent illustres*; *imitez-les, si vous ne voulez pas dégénérer*; It is your ancestors, who, by their virtues and great actions, have obtained for you the quality of noblemen; it is they that render you
D illustrious; imitate them, if you wish not to degenerate.

But the verb *c'est* must remain singular, when the next substantive or pronoun is preceded by a preposition, and followed by the conjunction *que*; as will be seen presently.]

N. B. When the verb of the relative member is used in its simple tenses, similar tenses must be used for the verb demonstrative; as,

C'est moi qui le *fais*; It is I that do it. *C'étoit* moi qui le *faisois*; It was I that did it. *Ce fut* moi qui le *fis*; It was I that did it. *Ce sera* moi qui le *ferai*; I shall do it. *Ce seroit* moi qui le *ferois*; I would do it. *Que ce soit* moi qui le *fasse*.

We may also say, *C'est* moi qui l'*ai fait*—*C'est* moi qui le *fis*.—*C'est* moi qui le *ferai*.

But

But with the compound of the imperfect, we must say, *C'étoit* moi qui l'*avois fait*; It was I that had done it.] A

¶ 5°. *C'est*, in all its tenses, may also refer to a person or thing yet to be spoken of, and not previously mentioned, then it is followed by the conductive *que* (see p. 255 and 260.); as,

C'étoit *un grand capitaine* que *César*; Cæsar was a great captain.

C'est *une vertu bien estimable* que *la patience*; Patience is a very estimable virtue.

C'est *beaucoup* que *de savoir commander*; It is a great deal to know how to command.

C'est *peu de chose* que *cet homme-là*; That man is of very little consequence. B

C'est *peu* qu'*elle le méprise, elle veut encore le ruiner*; It is not enough if she despises him, she wishes to ruin him besides.

C'est *de cette chose-là* que *je parle*; It is of that thing I am speaking.

Ce n'est *pas un mal* que *d'avoir des envieux*; There is no harm in exciting envy.

C'est *une sorte de honte* que *d'être malheureux*; It is a kind of shame to be unfortunate.

N. B The noun which follows *c'est*, at present is always attended by an article; however, in old proverbial phrases the article is still left out; as, C

C'est *pain bénit* que *d'escroquer un avare*; It is nuts to cheat a covetous man.]

C'est *ne pas connoître les courtisans*, que *de compter sur leurs promesses*; He who relies on the promises of courtiers, does not know them.

C'est *de la bonne ou de la mauvaise éducation* que *dépend le bonheur ou le malheur de la vie*; It is on a good or bad education the happiness or unhappiness of life depends.

C'est *de peur d'être injuste ou ingrat, disoit un juge*, que *je refuse vos présens*; It is, *said a judge*, for fear of being either unjust or ungrateful, I refuse your presents. D

Ce sera *donc le mois prochain* que *nous aurons le plaisir de le voir*; At last we shall have the pleasure of seeing him the next month.

Ce sont *de bons marins* que *les Anglois*; The English are very good sailors.

But *c'est* cannot be made plural in such phrases construed with a preposition; as,

C'est à *eux* que *je l'ai promis*; It is to them I have promised it.

C'étoit d'*elles* que *je parlois*; It was of them I was speaking.

Ce

A Ce sera pour *vos frères* que *j'en enverrai*; It will be for your brothers I will send some.

C'est à *vous* qu'*il convenoit de faire cette démarche*; It was you it became to take this step.

C'est *ainsi* qu'*il parla*; He spoke thus.

C'est *alors* que *je vis*; Then I saw.

In such conductive phrases, as above, *c'est* and *que*, strictly speaking, are redundant; they form a Gallicism, which serves to give the speech more force and energy. The phrases might be worded thus: *Il parla ainsi.—Alors je vis.—Je refuse vos présens, de peur*, &c.—*César étoit un grand capitaine.* They would B have the same meaning, but not so much energy.]

¶ 6°. *C'est*, in all its tenses, followed by *à* and a personal noun or pronoun, is sometimes construed with a verb in the infinitive, and then preceded by the prepositions *de* or *à*, instead of *que*; as,

C'est à *vous* à *faire*; You are to deal.

C'étoit à *vous* à *parler*; You were to speak.

C'étoit à *vous* de *parler*; You should have spoken.

Quand ce sera à *votre frère* à *jouer*; When your brother is to C play . . . .

N. B. *C'est*, in such cases, can be used but for persons, not for things.]

¶ 7°. To the above ways of using the demonstrative *c'est*, the following must be added.

C'est, in all its tenses, may be immediately followed by *de* or *que* governing a verb, and forming an explicative sentence; as,

Il y a une chose que j'exige de vous, c'est de *l'aller voir*, (or) c'est que *vous alliez la voir*; There is a thing I require of you, which is to go and see her.

In such phrases the tense of *c'est* is regulated by that of the preceding verb; for instance we say, *Il y a une chose que j'aurois exigée de vous*, c'auroit été de *l'aller voir*, D (or) que *vous fussiez allé la voir.*]

¶ *C'est que* sometimes forms an elliptical phrase, in which *que* stands for *parce que*, because; as,

C'est que *ne je savois pas qu'il fût arrivé*; It is because I did not know that he was arrived.

In this phrase, *c'est* is mostly used in the present; sometimes in the imperfect, *c'étoit*, it was; but never in the other tenses.]

¶ *C'est*, in its conditional tenses, is also used with *que* in the sense of *quand*, though; as,

Donnez-

Donnez-lui quelque chose; ne seroit-ce que, *or* ne fût-ce que *cinq schellings*; Give him something; were it but five shillings. A

Vous auriez du lui donner quelque chose; n'auroit-ce été que, *or* n'eût-ce été que *cinq schellings*; You should have given him something; had it been only five shillings.

Which phrases may be resolved by *Quand ce ne seroit que*, though it would only be, *Quand ce n'auroit été que*, though it would have only been.]

¶ Nor ought this conjunctive phrase, *Si ce n'est*, to remain unnoticed, in which the verb is never made plural; as,

Tous les jeux y sont défendus, si ce n'est *ceux d'exercice & d'adresse*; All games are forbidden there, except those of exercise and address.]

¶ This is also the proper place to mention an old elliptical phrase, now obsolete, or confined to the very familiar style only. B

N'étoit *sa bonne conduite*; Were it not for his good conduct (instead of *si ce n'étoit sa bonne conduite*).

N'étoit que, *or* n'eût été que *je suis de vos amis*; Were I not, *or* Had I not been one of your friends (instead of *si ce n'étoit que je suis*, &c. or *Si je n'étoit pas de vos amis*.]

¶ *C'est pourquoi*, another conjunctive phrase, is used with all the tenses of verbs in the indicative, but *c'est* always remains in the present; as,

C'est *pourquoi les Romains immolèrent des victimes*; Wherefore the Romans sacrificed victims.]

¶ 8°. *C'est*, like *il est*, is used in interrogations, but still preserving its relative and determinate character; as,

Est-ce *là votre livre?* Is that your book? C

Sera-ce *demain congé?* Shall we have a holiday to-morrow?

Est-ce *bon?* Is it good? Est-ce *vrai?* Is it true?

Est-ce *un évêque* qui *fera la cérémonie?* Is a bishop to perform the ceremony?

Est-ce *un médecin* qui *vous l'a ordonné?* Has a physician prescribed it to you?

Est-ce *la loi* qui *l'ordonne?* Is it the law that prescribes it?

Est-ce *moi* qui *l'ai dit?* Did I say so?

Est-ce *toi* qui *l'as cru?* Did you believe it?

Est-ce *lui*, (or) Est-ce *elle* qui l'a fait? Is it he, *or* Is it she who has done it? D

Est-ce nous qui *parlons?* Is it we who speak.

Est-ce *vous*, *Messieurs*, qu'*il faut remercier?* Is it you, Gentlemen, we must thank?

Est-ce *eux*, (or) Est-ce *elles* qui s'*engagent?* Is it they who engage themselves?

Est-ce *les dragons* qui *font l'attaque?* Do the dragoons make the attack?

Etoit-ce *les dragons* qui *ne vouloient pas obéir?* Was it the dragoons who would not obey?

Est-

A Fut-ce *les dragons* qui *ne veulurent pas obéir?* Was it, &c.

Sera-ce *les dragons* qui *feront cette attaque?* Are the dragoons to make that attack?

Seroit-ce *les richesses* qui *pourroient vous rendre heureux, si vous n'en faisiez pas un digne usage?* Could riches render you happy, if you did not know how to make a worthy use of them?

¶ However, good authors use the demonstrative verb interrogatively in the plural, and say,

Sont-ce *là vos ouvrages?* Are these your works?

Sont-ce *les honneurs* qui *vous flattent?* Is it honours that flatter you?

Etoient-ce *là vos affaires?* Was this your business?

Seront-ce *les richesses* qui *feront votre bonheur?* Will riches make you happy?

B Seroient-ce *les Anglois* qui pourroient *commettre une telle injustice?* Would Englishmen commit such an injustice?

But *furent-ce* is never used; nor are the compound tenses.

Est-ce *à eux* que *vous l'avez promis?* Have you promised it to them?

Étoit-ce *d'elles* que *vous parliez?* Were you speaking of them?

Sera-ce *le mois prochain* que *le Parlement s'assemblera?* Will the Parliament meet next month?

Est-ce *ainsi* qu'*il parla?* Did he speak thus?

Étoit-ce *ainsi* qu'*il parloit?* Was he speaking so?

Est-ce *à vous à faire?* Are you to deal?

C Étoit-ce *à votre frère a jouer?* Was your brother to play?

(It is needless to say that all the above phrases may be used negatively.)

N. B. As for the manner of interrogating with *est-ce que*, see pag. 237.

Est-ce is sometimes preceded by the relative *qui*, who; and *lequel*, which; or by *que* (in the sense of *quel*), what; or by *quel* and a noun; as,

Qui est-ce? Who is that? *Qui* étoit-ce? Who was there? *A qui* est-ce *à jouer?* Who is to play? *De qui* est-ce *le tour?* Whose turn is it? *Pour qui* est-ce? For whom is it?

D We say, in the same manner, *A qui* étoit-ce? *De qui* étoit-ce? *Pour qui* étoit-ce? and sometimes, *A qui* sera-ce? *Pour qui* seroit-ce? But the other tenses are very seldom, if ever, used.

Lequel, or *Laquelle* est-ce? Which is it? *Lequel*, or *Laquelle* étoit-ce? Which was it? *Lequel*, or *Laquelle* sera-ce? Which will it be? The plural is never used.

*Qu'*est-ce? What is that? *Qu'*étoit-ce? What was that?

Que sera-ce, *si* .... *Que* seroit-ce, *si* .... *Qu'*auroit-ce été, *si* .... What will it be, if .... What would be, if .... What would have been, if ....

Quel

Quel homme eſt-ce? What man is he? *Quel homme* étoit-ce? What man was it? *Quel miniſtre* ce ſeroit, *ſi*... What a miniſter it would be, if... A

Quel livre eſt-ce? What book is it? *Quel livre* étoit-ce? What book was it?

But ſuch phraſes are more generally followed by the relative *qui* or the conductive *que* with another phraſe; and, what is worth obſerving, *eſt-ce* remains in the preſent tenſe; as,

Qui eſt-ce qui *vient?* Who is coming?
Qui eſt-ce qui *venoit?* Who was coming?
Qui eſt-ce qui *eſt venu?* Who is come?
Qui eſt-ce qui *viendra?* Who is to come?
Qui eſt-ce qui *viendroit?* Who would come?

In theſe phraſes *ce* ſtands for *cette perſonne.* B

The anſwer may be, *Pierre*, Peter; or more properly, *C'eſt Pierre*, becauſe the queſtion is aſked with the pronoun *ce*; and the French politeneſs does not allow a ſhort, rough, and raw anſwer, conſiſting of a ſingle word. This anſwer, *C'eſt Pierre*, may be reſolved in this manner: *Pierre eſt cette perſonne qui vient.*

Other inſtances with ſubſtantives preceded by articles. *Qui* eſt ce qui *frappe?* Who knocks there? *C'eſt le facteur*; It is the poſt. viz. *Le facteur eſt cette perſonne qui frappe.* Again. *Vous faites tel remède: qui* eſt-ce qui *vous l'a ordonné?* You uſe ſuch a remedy: who preſcribed it to you? *C'eſt un médecin*; It is a phyſician. viz. *Un médecin eſt celui qui me l'a ordonné.*]

Qui eſt-ce que *vous demandez?* Whom do you want? (*que* is a relative.) C

A qui eſt-ce que *vous parlez?*
Whom do you ſpeak to?
De qui eſt-ce que *vous parlez?*
Whom are you ſpeaking of?
Pour qui eſt-ce que *vous parlez?*
Whom are you ſpeaking for?

In theſe phraſes *que* is conductive, (ſee p. 255.)

*Qu'*eſt-ce que *vous faites?*
What are you doing?
*Qu'*eſt-ce que *vous faiſiez?*
What were you doing?
*Qu'*eſt-ce que *vous avez fait?*
What have you done?
*Qu'*eſt-ce que *vous ferez?*
What will you do?
*Qu'*eſt-ce que *vous feriez?*
What would you do?

In theſe phraſes *ce* ſtands for *cette choſe*; the firſt *que* ſtands for *quoi*; the ſecond is a relative governed by the next verb. D

¶ To ſuch phraſes the anſwer may be, for inſtance; *Mon thème*, my exerciſe; or more politely, *Je fais mon thème*: an anſwer with *c'eſt* would border upon crofſneſs.

To

A To find out a reason for this difference, it may not be improper to observe that this question, *Qui est-ce qui vient?* respects the subject; whereas this, *Qu'est-ce que vous faites?* respects the object of an action.]

A quoi est-ce que *vous vous appliquez?*
What do you apply to?
De quoi est-ce que *vous vous servez?*
What do you make use of?
Avec quoi est-ce que *vous le ferez?*
With what will you make it?

} In these phrases *que* is conductive as above.

¶ There is another manner of using *c'est* interrogatively, viz. *qu'est-ce que c'est que vous demandez* (see pag. 258.); in which the first *que* stands for *quoi*, the second is conductive, and the third is the regimen of *demandez*. That idiomatical reduplication of *c'est* is, perhaps, to show eagerness, impatience, &c. It seems tolerated only when speaking of things, and seldom, if ever, allowed when speaking of persons: for such a phrase, *Qui est-ce que c'est que vous demandez?* would be very barbarous French.]

B

Quelle heure est-ce qui *sonne?* What is the clock striking? *Deux heures*, two; or better, C'est *deux heures*; It strikes two.

Quel livre est-ce que *vous lisez?* What book do you read? *Gil-Blas*; or rather, *Je lis Gil-Blas*; I read Gil-Blas.

§ II. *Of the Impersonal* Il y a, *there is, there are.*

1°. Most ways of speaking, beginning with *some* and the verb *to be*, are expressed in French by the impersonal *il y a:* as,

C *Some* friends are false; Il y a *de faux amis.*
Some pains are wholesome; Il y a *des douleurs salutaires.*

Sometimes also the adnoun is joined to its noun, with the pronoun *qui* and the verb *être:* as,

Il y a *des douleurs* qui sont *salutaires.*
Il y a *des Chrétiens* qui sont *indignes de ce nom*;
Some Christians are unworthy of that name.

Observe, that *il y a* comes before a noun even of the plural number.

2°. The impersonal *il y a* is besides used to denote a quantity
D of Time, Space, and Number.

To denote the quantity of time past since an event, the English begin the sentence with a preterite, simple or compound, followed by the noun of time, attended by a pronoun *demonstrative* before it, or the preposition *ago* after: as,

He has been dead these thirty years, or *He died thirty years ago.*

The French begin with the impersonal *il y a*; then comes the noun of time, with no pronoun demonstrative, but followed by *que*; then a noun, or pronoun, expressing the subject, with its verb in the present, unless the sense requires another tense: as,

B

Il y a trente ans qu'il est mort; but in transposing the impersonal, we leave out *que*, and we say: *Il est mort il y a trente ans.* A

3°. Neither, in asking such questions, do we begin with *comment*, or *comment long*, or *comment long-temps*, but *Combien y a-t-il que*, then the noun, or pronoun of the subject, with its verb in the present, thus,

Combien y a-t-il qu'il est mort? How long has he been dead?

Combien y a-t-il que vous demeurez à Londres?

How long have you lived at London? How long is it since you lived at London?

The answer must likewise be made with the impersonal, and the noun of time, thus, B

Il y a dix ans, or simply, *dix ans*; these ten years.

Il y a dix ans qu'il est mort, ou *qu'il demeure à Londres*;

He has been dead, *or* He has lived at London these ten years.

Il y a vingt ans qu'il a fait la même chose;

He has done the same thing these twenty years.

Il y a vingt ans qu'il a fait, or *qu'il fit la même chose*;

He has done, *or* He did the same thing twenty years ago.

These two last instances, very different in the sense which each of them implies, make me think, that tho' the English always begin these sorts of sentences with a preterite, yet they denote an action past, in a far remote time, by the preposition *ago* after the noun of time, without a pronoun demonstrative (which the French express only by a preterite, simple or compound). Whereas they express the same action, by the pronoun demonstrative before the noun of time, sometimes also preceded by the preposition *for*, when the same action continues still (which the French express by a present tense): as again, C

Il y a vingt ans qu'il voyage *par toute l'Europe*;

He has been travelling *for* these twenty years all over Europe.

Il y a vingt ans qu'il a voyagé *par toute l'Europe*;

He has travelled all over Europe twenty years ago. D

Examples of Number, and Space.

Il y a trente millions d'âmes en France, il n'y en a que neuf ou dix millions en Angleterre;

There are thirty millions of souls in France, there are but nine or ten in England.

Il y a cent-vingt lieues, ou trois cent soixante milles de Londres à Paris;

Paris is 120 leagues, or 360 miles distant from London; *or*

There are 120 leagues or 360 miles from London to Paris.

A The Question of Space is asked thus, *Combien y a-t-il de Londres à Paris?* How far is Paris from London? naming first the place where one is, or is supposed to come from, which is quite the reverse in English.

The impersonal *il est* is elegantly used instead of, and in the same sense as *il y a*: as, *Il est des amitiés véritables*, or *Il y a des amitiés véritables*; There are true friendships.

Il est à craindre, or *Il y a à craindre que*; It is to be feared that, &c.

Observe, that the noun coming after *il y a*, and *il est*, must have one of these particles *un, du, de, des*, before it, and be followed by the relative *qui*, if the sentence is compound.

§ III. *Of the Impersonal* il fait, *it is.*

B 1°. The impersonal *il fait* is used with adnouns, and some few nouns, denoting the disposition of the air and weather, and is englished by *it is*: as,

	beau, or *beau temps*,		fair, *or* fine weather,
	chaud,		hot weather,
	froid,		cold,
	vilain,		ugly,
	crotté,		dirty,
Il fait	*jour*,	It is	day-light,
	nuit,		night,
	obscur, sombre,		dark,
C	*du vent*,		windy, the wind blows,
	soleil,		the sun-shine,
	clair de lune,		the moon shine.

2°. The English impersonal *it is*, construed with an adnoun, and a gerund, or with one of these adnouns, *good, bad, better, dangerous*, followed by a noun of place, is also rendered into French by *il fait*, followed by an adnoun, with a verb in the infinitive: as,

It is dear living at London; *Il fait cher vivre à Londres.*

Sometimes the verb is left out in French:

D *Il fait bon ici*; It is good *being* here.

§ IV. *Of the Impersonal* il faut.

1°. The impersonal *il faut*, always requires after it either the subjunctive with *que*, or the infinitive without any preposition. It denotes the necessity of doing something, and is englished by *must*, for the present tenses *il faut*, and *qu'il faille*, the imperfect *il falloit*, and the preterite *il fallut*; by *shall* for the future, and *should* for the *conditional*: and sometimes by the verb *to be*, thro' all its tenses, with one of these words, *necessary, requisite, needful.*

In

In order therefore to put into French any English, expressed by *must*, *shall*, or *should*, or by *it is*, or *it was necessary*, *requisite*, *needful*, one must begin the sentence with a tense of the impersonal *il faut que*; then the pronoun or noun coming before *must*, or *should*, must become the subject of the French verb that comes after *il faut que*, and is governed in the subjunctive: A

The officers *must* do their duty;
Il faut que *les officiers* fassent *leur devoir*.
They *must* be courageous: Il faut qu'*ils* soient *courageux*.
Children *should* learn every day something by heart;
Il faudroit que *les enfans* apprissent *tous les jours quelque chose par cœur*. B

2°. *Il faut* before an infinitive denotes the necessity of doing something in general, without specifying *who must*: then the subject coming before *must*, may be either *I* or *we*, *he* or *she*, or *any body*, according to the sense of the speech: as
Il faut faire cela; One, *or* we, *or* you, he, somebody, must do that.
Il faut y aller; I, *or* you, *or* we, *or* somebody must go there, *or* thither.

3°. Sometimes also the verb coming after the impersonal is englished by the passive voice, and (as in sentences expressed with the particle *on*) the noun that follows the verb in French, comes before the particle *must* in English; and the French infinitive active is made by the passive: as, C

Il faut instruire les enfans; Children must be instructed.
All which sentences may equally well be expressed with the subjunctive: as,
Il faut que les enfans soient instruits, *Il faut que cela se fasse*; or *Il faut qu'il*, or *qu'elle*, or *qu'on fasse cela*, or *que nous fassions cela*.

4°. Again. The necessity of having something is also denoted by *il faut*, before the noun of the thing only, without any verb: and *il faut* thus construed, is englished by *one must have*, or *something must be had*: as, D
Il faut de l'argent pour plaider; One must have money to go to law.
Pour se pousser dans le monde, *il faut des amis*;
To push one's fortune in the world, one must have friends:
And *il faut*, thus construed, as also with a pronoun personal between *il* and *faut*, denotes one's present want, that must be supplied, and the pronoun personal becomes the subject of *must* in English: as,

A *Il* me *faut de l'argent*, I must have, *or* I want money.
Il me *faut un chapeau*, I must buy a hat.
Il vous *faut des livres*, You must have, *or* buy, *or* get books.
Il lui *faut un mari*, She wants a husband, she must have one.

5o. The impersonal *il faut* is used absolutely at the end of a sentence, with the pronoun *ce qui*, or the conjunction *comme* before it; in which case it denotes *Duty* and *Decency*, and is englished by *should*, and sometimes *should do*, and *should be:* as, *Il ne se conduit pas comme il faut*; He don't behave as he should. *Faites cela comme il faut*; Do that as it should be.
B *Cela n'est pas comme il faut*; That is not as it should be.
Il fait ce qu'il faut; He does what he must, *or* what is requisite.

There is an impersonal, which may be called *Reflected*, composed of the double pronoun *il se*, with the third person of any verb active, followed by a noun, with one of the particles *de*, *du*, *des*, before. This impersonal is englished by *there is*, before a noun, followed by a participle: as,

Il se boit de bon vin en France; There is good wine drank in France.
Il se mange de bonne viande en Angleterre; There is good meat eat in England.

The impersonal Reflected is also construed with the pronoun demonstrative *ceci*, *cela*, as,

Cela ne se fait pas ainsi; That is not done so, *or* in this manner.
Cela se fait par tout le monde; That is done all over the world.

But observe, that these ways of speaking may as well be rendered by the particle *on*;
C as, *On boit de bon vin en France*, *On fait cela par tout le monde*, &c.

I have sufficiently spoken of the other Impersonals in the second part.

CHAP. VII.

Of the FRENCH NEGATIVES.

§ I. I Have already said something of the negatives *ne* and *pas*, in treating of pronouns, but have considered them only with respect to the right placing of them with the pronouns con-
D junctive. I shall in this place consider their construction, as also that of several other negatives used in the French language.

1°. *Ne* comes (as has been said) after the subject, and immediately before the verb, and *pas* or *point*, after the verb, if the tense is simple: as, *Je ne sais pas*, I know not; and between the auxiliary and the participle, if the tense is compound: as, *Je n'ai point su cela*, I did not know that.

2°. When the verb is at the present of the infinitive, the two negatives come together before it, after the preposition: as,

Je vous dis de ne pas *vous mêler de cela*; A
I bid you *not* to meddle with that.
Pour ne point *répéter ce que nous avons déjà dit*;
Not to repeat what we have already said.

3°. *No* is *non*, used at the end of a sentence, or absolutely, as in answer to questions, and *not* is *non pas*, used also absolutely, in the beginning of a sentence, and followed by *que*, with the subjunctive: as,

Croyez-vous cela? Non. Do you believe that? No.

Je ne crois point cette nouvelle-là; non pas que *la chose soit impossible, mais parce qu'elle ne me paroît pas vraisemblable*; I don't B believe that piece of news; not that the thing is impossible, but because it does not appear probable to me.

4°. Although *pas* or *point* may be sometimes indifferently used, yet *point* has a more negative force, it implies *not at all.* But note,

1*st*, That *point* always requires the particle *de* before nouns: as, *Il n'y a point* de *raison pour cela*; There is no reason for that: *Il n'en a point* de soin; He has no care of it: and *pas*, sometimes takes the preposition *de* without an article; and sometimes an article before the noun that comes after it: as, *Il n'en a pas* le *soin qu'il faut*; He don't take care of it as he should:—and sometimes not: C as, *Il n'en a pas soin*; He has no care of it:—and never *Il n'en a point soin*, or *point le soin qu'il faut.* (See p. 217, C.)

¶ *Pas* implies something actual and accidental; *point*, something habitual and permanent.

Il ne lit pas; He does not read, *viz.* now.

Il ne lit point; He does not read, *viz.* ever.

Pas expresses a mere negation; *point* inforces it. *Pas* sometimes denies partly, and admits of a modification; *point* always denies absolutely and without reserve.

Il n'est pas bien *riche*; He is not very rich. *Il n'est* point *riche*; He is not at all rich.] D

2*dly*, That *pas*, for the reasons just given, is to be used before these modifying words, whereas *point* cannot be used with them:

beaucoup,	much,	*moins*,	less,	*tant*,	so much,
peu,	little,	*souvent*,	often,	*autant*,	as much,
mieux,	better,	*toujours*,	always,	*trop*,	too much,
plus,	more,	*si*,	so,	*fort*, *très*,	very,

extrêmement, extremely, *infiniment*, infinitely; and all adverbs: as, Il

A *Il n'y a* pas *beaucoup de monde aujourd'hui au Parc*;
There is not much company to-day in the Park.
Il n'est pas *peu difficile de lui plaire*;
It is not a little difficult to please him.
Il ne la voit pas *souvent*; He does not see her often, *&c.*

3*dly*, That when a question is asked, *pas* intimates that one supposes the thing concerning which the question is asked; whereas *point* intimates a mere doubt, and ignorance of the same thing. For instance, by this question,

N'est-il point *Membre de la Société Royale?*
B Is he not a fellow of the Royal Society?

I want to be informed whether he is a fellow of the Royal Society or no, being quite ignorant of it; but by this other,

N'est-il pas *Membre de la Société Royale?*

I intimate that I think that he is a fellow of that Society, and wonder that the others do not think so too.

5°. Besides these negatives (to which add *ni* repeated, *neither*, and *nor*) the following words, which are of themselves negative terms, require moreover the particle *ne* before their verb, which is then alone, without *pas* or *point*.

C

1*st personne*, no body.	*nullement*, no means.	*mot*, word, and *goutte*: but these two last require a negative only with *dire* and *voir*;
pas un, not one.	*guères*, but little.	
aucun, no, not any.	*jamais*, never.	
nul, none.	*rien*, nothing	

as *Je* ne *vois personne*; I see nobody. *Vous* ne *dites rien*; You say nothing. *Elle* n'*a aucun amant*; She has no sweetheart. *Il* ne *dit mot*; He does not say a word. *On* ne *voit goutte*; One cannot see at all, *&c.*

Observe, that *rien* signifies also sometimes *something* or *any thing*; and in that sense, it is construed without a negative, and in sentences of interrogation and doubt only; as,

Avez-vous jamais rien vu de si beau? Have you ever seen any thing so fine?

D *Jamais* signifies also *ever*, and is construed without a negative: as,
Si jamais j'y retourne, &c. If ever I go there again, *&c.*

¶ *Rien* and *jamais* are also used without the particle *ne*, when they are preceded by the preposition *sans*, which implies exclusion and negation: as,
Sans rien *faire*; without doing any thing.—*Sans* jamais *se plaindre*; without ever complaining.]

2*dly*, The conjunction *à moins que*, unless; *de peur que*, *de crainte que*, lest, or for fear that (but not *de peur de*, *de crainte de*, which govern the infinitive), will have after them *ne*, before the next verb; as likewise these four verbs, *empêcher*, to hinder,

to prevent; *craindre*, to fear; *appréhender*, to apprehend; *avoir* A
peur, to be afraid; when they are not used in the infinitive: as,
A moins que vous ne *le vouliez ainsi*; Unless you will have it so.
J'empêcherai qu'il ne *vous nuise*; I will hinder him to hurt you, *&c.*

¶ In such phrases, this word *ne* is the *ne* or *quin* of the Latin, which has been introduced in our language. *French Academy.*]

But it is to be observed, with respect to the verbs of *fearing* and *apprehending*, that it is only when one speaks of an effect that is not wished for, that the second negative *pas*, or *point*, is left out after the next verb; for if one wishes that the thing spoken of should happen, then the verb that follows *craindre* and *appréhen-* B
der, must be attended with the two negatives: as,

Il craint que sa femme ne *meure*; He fears that *or* lest his wife should die.

Il craint que sa femme ne *meure pas*; He fears lest his wife should not die.

The first instance is of an effect not wished for, the last of one wished for, denoted in English by the negative *not*, whereas the other way of speaking is without negative.

Observe also, that *empêcher* takes no negative, when the [illegible]s in the infinitive: as,

[illegible]*pêcherai de vous nuire*; I will hinder him to hurt you. C

[illegible]ny, requires also elegantly *ne*, before the next verb [illegible]tences: as,

[illegible]*ue je n'aie dit cela*; I don't deny that I have said that.

[illegible]t may not be amiss to observe that there is a ma-[illegible]nce between *de crainte de* and *de crainte que.*

[illegible]tive phrases, formed with *de*, serve to connect sen-[illegible]e verbs of which are depending on, and governed by, [illegible]ubject; whereas conjunctive phrases, formed with *que*, [illegible]rve to connect sentences, the verbs of which are go-[illegible]y different subjects: for instance, D

[illegible] *le ferai pas*, de crainte de *vous déplaire*; I will not do it, [illegible]ould displease you. The two verbs *ferai* and *déplaire* de-[illegible]on the same subject *je*.

[illegible]*e ne le ferai pas*, de crainte que *vous ne le trouviez mauvais*; I [illegible] not do it, *lest* you should think it amiss. The two subjects are different; *ferai* is governed by *je*, and *trouviez* by *vous*.

Conjunctive phrases with *que* may sometimes be used to connect sentences governed by the same subject; they then serve to give more energy; for instance,

A *Je ne le ferai pas*, de crainte que *je ne m'en trouve plus mal* (I will not do it, *left* I should be the worse for it); implies the same sense as *de m'en trouver plus mal*, but has more energy.

Conjunctive phrases with *de* cannot be used when the subjects are different.

This observation may account for not using *de* or *que* indifferently after *craindre*, *appréhender*, *avoir peur*; as also after *prendre garde*, which, in the sense of *to beware*, belongs to the same tribe; as,

Prenez garde de *tomber*; Beware of falling. (The subject is the same.)

B *Prenez garde* qu'*il ne tombe*; Take care *left* he should fall. (The subjects are different.)

Prenez garde que *vous ne tombiez dans le piége*; take care *left* you should fall into the snare, (the subject is the same; but the phrase is more energetic than *Prenez garde* de *tomber dans le piége*.]

3*dly*, We use the negative *ne* before the verb that comes after these five words, *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, *autre*, and *autrement*: as,

Il est plus *sincère qu'il* ne *faudroit*; He is more sincere than he should.

Elle est moins *âgée que je* ne *croyois*; She is less old than I thought.

Il, or *Elle est tout* autre *que je* ne *pensois*; (See p. 226, D.)

C He, *or* She is quite another than I thought.

Vous avez fait tout autrement *que je* n'*aurois fait*; You have acted quite *differently* from what *I would* have done.

¶ To the above words may be added these sentences: *peu s'en faut*, *il s'en faut peu*, *il s'en faut tant*, &c. which always announce a negation: as,

Peu s'en faut *que je* ne *me fasse un scrupule de prêter au denier cinq*; I can *hardly without* a scruple lend at five per cent.

Il s'en est peu fallu *qu'il* n'*ait été tué*; He was very near being killed.

Il s'en faut tant *que la somme entière* n'*y soit*; There is so much

D wanting to the whole sum.

Such phrases may be resolved thus: *Je* ne *me fais* point *de scrupule*, &c. *mais* peu s'en faut.]

4*thly*, After *que* and *si*, signifying *before* or *unless*, or *but* in the middle of a compound sentence, the former part whereof is a negative sentence: as,

Je ne la reverrai point, que *sa mère* ne *m'envoie querir*;
I will not see her again, *before* her mother sends for me.

Je n'y irai pas s'il ne *m'en prie*; or qu'*il* ne *m'en prie*;
I will not go thither *if* he don't desire, (or) *unless* he desires me.

Il

Il ne fauroit ouvrir la bouche qu'*il* ne *dise quelque impertinence*; A
He cannot open his mouth *but* he says some foolish thing or other.

5*thly*, Before the verb that precedes *ni*, repeated in the sentence; which answers to *neither* and *nor*: as,

Je n'aime ni à boire ni *à fumer*; I love neither drinking nor smoking.

And if no verb comes before *neither*, this English particle is *ne* only, and *nor* is *ni ne*: as,

Je ne *bois* ni ne *fume*; I neither drink nor smoke.

When two adnouns meet together in a negative sentence, they are not joined with the particle *ni*, if they are synonymous, or express both the same thing in different words; but only when they signify two different things, or quite contrary. When they are synonymous only, they are joined by the enclitick *et*: as,

Je ne me ressouviens point d'hiver plus rude & plus froid que celui de 1740; I do not B
remember a more severe and colder winter than that of 1740. *Rude* and *froid*, being synonymous, are coupled with *&*: but in this other, the two adnouns express very different things, and therefore are coupled by *ni*.

Jamais on ne vit de saison plus pluvieuse ni *plus froide*;
One never saw a more rainy, or colder season.

¶ For the reason mentioned before, two or more nouns or infinitives governed by the preposition *sans*, must be joined with the conjunction *ni*: as,

Une mer sans *fond* ni *rive*; A sea *without either* bottom *or* shore.

Sans *boire* ni *manger*; Without eating or drinking: which is the same as, *n'ayant ni* bu *ni* mangé; *sans* having of itself the force both of *ne* and the first *ni*.

§ II. On the other hand, the French use the particle *ne* only, in some particular cases, when the analogy of speech requires a negative in all languages, and wherein therefore it seems that C
they should not leave out *pas*.

1*st*, With these five verbs used negatively; *oser* to dare, *cesser* to cease, *pouvoir* to be able, *savoir* to know, and *prendre garde* to take care: as,

Il n'*ose me contredire*; He dares not contradict me.

Elle ne *cesse de babiller*; She does not cease prattling.

Il ne peut, or *ne fauroit marcher*; He cannot walk.

But note, 1*st*, that it is an elegance only to use but one negative with *pouvoir*, it being not improper to say, *Il* ne *peut* pas *marcher*: and that when a question is asked, regard must be had to the ear, to express, or let alone the second negative, according as it reads, and sounds best, tho' it is then most commonly expressed, *Ne peut-il* pas *faire* D
cela? which is better than *Ne peut-il faire cela?* Can't he do that?

2*ndly*, When *savoir* is used for *pouvoir*, it requires only one negative, and can never be used with two: as, *Il ne fauroit marcher*; He cannot walk. *Ne fauroit-il faire cela?* Can't he do that? and never *Il* ne *fauroit* pas—Ne *fauroit-il* pas?

¶ There is this difference between *on ne peut* and *on ne fauroit*; the latter implies inability; the former, impossibility.

*Ce qu'*on ne fauroit *faire, est trop difficile*; What *one is not able* to do, is too difficult:

*Ce qu'*on ne peut pas *faire, est impossible*; What *one cannot* do, is impossible:

And for that reason, *on ne peut*, in that sense, is always accompanied with *pas*; whereas *on ne fauroit* never admits of it.]

When *savoir* is used in its proper signification of *knowing*, there is another distinction to be made; for if it implies only an *uncertainty* of the mind, it requires but one negative;

A *Il ne sait ce qu'il doit espérer de son procès*; He does not know what he ought to expect of his lawsuit; that is, He is uncertain of the event of his cause; he hopes, but *knows not* how far to hope. But if *savoir* preserves its full energy, that is, if it implies a *full and entire ignorance* of the thing, it will have two negatives; as,

Il ne sait pas que le Juge, or *les Juges l'ont condamné*;
He does not know that the Judge, *or* Judges, have cast him.

Again, *savoir* requires but one negative, when it meets with any of these particles *où, comment, combien, quand, quel, quoi, si*: which, by their nature, modify its energy; as,

Il est je ne sais où; He, *or* it is I do not know where.
Cela s'est fait je ne sais comment; That was done I do not know how.
Là-dessus est entré je ne sais quel homme; Thereupon entered I do not know what man.
Je ne sais s'il dit vrai; I do not know whether he tells the truth, &c.

3*dly*, *Prendre garde* signifies either *to take care*, or *to take notice, to mind, consider*: and it is in the first signification only, it requires but one negative before the next verb;
B for in the other signification, it requires the two: as,

Prenez garde qu'on ne *vous trompe*; Take care lest they cheat you.
Il prit garde qu'on ne *le recevoit* pas si *bien que de coutume*;
He took notice that he was not so cordially received as usual.

¶ After *prendre garde*, in the sense of to take care, *que* governs the subjunctive; and in the other sense, the indicative mood: the reason for both is obvious.]
As for the first signification, viz. *to take care*, see above pag. 300, B.

¶ *Pas* or *point* may also be elegantly suppressed in such interrogative phrases: *Avez-vous un ami qui* ne *soit des miens?* Have you a friend who is *not* mine?

2*dly*, The French use the negative *ne* only, after the impersonal *il y a* followed by a compound of the present tense: as,
Il y a dix ans que je ne *l'ai vu*; I have not seen him these ten years.
C But if any other tense comes after the impersonal, they use the two negatives:
Il y a un mois que je ne *lui parle* point; I have not spoken to him this month.
Il y avoit un an que je ne *la voyois* point; I had not seen her for a year.

¶ It does not result from the above rules, that the sentence following the impersonal *il y a* should always be a negative one; for we say:
Il y a dix ans que je le connois; I have known him these ten years.
Il y a dix ans que j'en ai entendu parler; I heard speak of it ten years ago.]

3*dly*, When the verb meets with the particle *de*, denoting a space of Time: as,
D *Je* ne *lui parlerai* de *ma vie*; I won't speak to him as long as I live.

4*thly*, When a question is asked with *que*, signifying *pourquoi*; as *Que* ne *faites-vous cela?* Why don't you do that?

5*thly*, With the adverb *plus* used absolutely: as,
Je ne *veux plus le voir*; I will see him no more.

But when *plus* is used comparatively, that is, before an adnoun with, or without *que*, the two negatives are requisite before *plus*: as,
Je ne *le veux* pas *plus grand que l'autre*;
I won't have it larger than the other.

¶ 5*thly*,

¶ 5*thly**, As also with the adverb *non plus*, signifying *pas* A
davantage, no more: as,

On n'*en parle* non plus *que s'il n'avoit jamais été*; He is no more spoken of, than if he had never existed.

Non plus is sometimes used in the sense of *pareillement*; then it is preceded by the two negatives, *ne pas*, or by the particle *ni* only: as,

Vous ne *voulez* pas *le dire*, *je* ne *le dirai* pas non plus (*that is*, non plus *que vous*); You will not tell it, *nor* will I tell it *any more* (than you). Ni *moi* non plus; *nor I neither*.

Ceux-ci n'*en sont* pas, ni *ceux-là* non plus; These are *not* among the number, *nor* those *neither*.] B

6*thly*, After *si* and *que*, in the sense of *unless*, or *but*: as,

Je ne saurois boire si je ne *mange*; I cannot drink if I don't eat.
Je n'y irai pas qu'elle ne *m'y invite*; I will not go thither unless she invites me.

It is indifferent in some few cases to use the two negatives, or one only, but they must be learnt by practice. Thus we say,

S'il ne me fait ce plaisir-là, or *S'il ne me fait pas ce plaisir-là, je ne me mêlerai plus de ses affaires*; If he don't do me that kindness, I will not meddle with his affairs any more.

S'il ne me paye cette semaine, or *S'il ne me paye pas cette semaine, je le ferai arrêter*; If he don't pay me this week, I will arrest him. The ear must be the judge in those cases, whether it is better to express *pas* or no. C

7*thly*, *Ne*, followed in the same sentence by *que*, but separated by one or more words, expresses, and is englished by *but* or *nothing but*, also in the middle of the sentence, or by *only*: as,

Je ne *ferai* que *ce qu'il vous plaira*; I will *only* do what you please.
Il ne *fait* que *jouer*; He does *nothing but* play.
Je ne *fais* qu'*un repas par jour*; I eat *but* one meal a-day.

8*thly*, *But*, likewise in the middle of a sentence, is rendered into French by *que* and *ne*, or the relative *qui* and *ne*, but without *pas* or *point*, and the second verb is in the subjunctive (conformable to our former rules): as, D

Je ne doute point qu'*il* ne *vienne*; I don't doubt *but* he will come.
Y a-t-il quelqu'un qui ne *le sache*? Is there any body *but knows it*?

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

§ I. *Of the Formation of Adverbs.*

1°. GENERALLY speaking, one can make as many adverbs of *quality* and *manner* in French, as there are adnouns, by adding the termination *ment* to the adnoun; but with this previous distinction, that with adnouns ending in *é* acute, or in *i* or *u*, it is to the masculine; and with the other adnouns, it is to the feminine that *ment* is added. Thus,

from *aisé*,	easy,	is formed	*aisément*,	easily.
—— *assuré*,	assured,	——	*assurément*,	assuredly.
—— *sensé*,	sensible,	——	*sensément*,	sensibly.
—— *poli*,	polite,	——	*poliment*,	politely.
—— *hardi*,	bold,	——	*hardiment*,	boldly.
—— *gentil* (*l* is silent)	genteel,	——	*gentiment*,	genteely.
—— *absolu*,	absolute,	——	*absolument*,	absolutely.
—— *éperdu*,	desperate,	——	*éperdument*,	desperately.
—— *ingénu*,	ingenuous,	——	*ingénument*,	ingenuously.
—— *assidu*,	assiduous,	——	*assidument*,	assiduously.
—— *dû*,	due,	——	*dûment*,	duly.

—— *grand*,	fem.	*grande*,	great,	—	*grandement*,	greatly.
—— *bon*,	fem.	*bonne*,	good,	—	*bonnement*,	plainly.
—— *doux*,	fem.	*douce*,	sweet,	—	*doucement*,	sweetly.
—— *seul*,	fem.	*seule*,	only,	—	*seulement*,	only.
—— *vif*,	fem.	*vive*,	quick,	—	*vivement*,	quickly.
—— *certain*,	fem.	*certaine*,	certain,	—	*certainement*,	certainly.
—— *lent*,	fem.	*lente*,	slow,	—	*lentement*,	slowly.
—— *présent*,	fem.	*présente*,	present,	—	*présentement*,	presently.
—— *sage*,	(masc. & fem.)		wise,	—	*sagement*,	wisely.
—— *autre*,		——	other,	—	*autrement*,	otherways.
—— *digne*,		——	worthy,	—	*dignement*,	worthily.
—— *honnête*,		——	honest,	—	*honnêtement*,	honestly.

2°. Observe that the adnoun masculine retains the sound of its final vowel in the adverb derived from it; and that the adnoun feminine keeps also its final *e* mute, except in the following adverbs, wherein that *e* mute is transformed into *é*, and protracted a little.

aveuglément,	blindly,	from	*aveugle*,	(m. & f.),	blind.
commodément.	commodiously,	——	*commode*,	(m. & f.),	commodious.
incommodément,	inconveniently,	——	*incommode*,	(m. & f.),	inconvenient.
conformément,	conformably,	——	*conforme*,	(m. & f.),	conform.
énormément,	hugely,	——	*énorme*,	(m. & f.),	huge.
uniformément,	uniformly,	——	*uniforme*,	(m. & f.),	uniform.

expressément

expressément,	expressedly,	from	*exprès*,	fem.	*expresse*,	express.
confusément,	confusedly,	—	*confus*,	—	*confuse*,	confused.
précisément,	precisely,	—	*précis*,	—	*précise*,	precise.
communément,	commonly,	—	*commun*,	—	*commune*,	common.
importunément,	importunately,	—	*importun*,	—	*importune*,	importunate.
obscurément,	obscurely,	—	*obscur*,	—	*obscure*,	obscure.
profondément,	deeply,	—	*profond*,	—	*profonde*,	deep.
profusément,	profusely,	—	*profus*,	—	*profuse*,	profuse.
impunément,	with impunity,	though derived from	*impuni*,		*impunie*,	unpunished.

3°. From adnouns ending in *ant* and *ent*, (*lent* and *présent*, excepted), adverbs are formed, by changing that termination into *amment* and *emment* (pronounced alike). Thus from *constant* constant, is formed *constamment* constantly; from *évident* evident, *évidemment* evidently, &c.

Six adverbs in *ment* are excepted; *diablement* devilishly, from the noun *Diable* devil; *comment* how, from the conjunction *comme*; *incessamment* incessantly, from the verb *cesser* preceded by *in*, a negative particle; *notamment* notedly, from *notér* to note; *nuitamment* by night, from *nuit*, night; and *sciemment* wittingly, from *savoir* (derived from *scio*) to know.

4°. These following adnouns are also used adverbially with some verbs.

haut,	*parler haut*,	to speak aloud.
bas,	*parler bas*,	to speak low.
clair,	*voir clair*,	to see plain, be clear sighted.
double,	*voir double*,	to see double (not clear and plain).
trouble,	*voir trouble*,	to be dim sighted.
franc, net,	*dire franc & net*,	to say or speak freely and plainly.
juste,	*penser, parler, chanter juste*,	to think, sing, &c. right.
forte,	*frapper fort*,	to strike hard.
dur,	*entendre dur*,	to be thick, *or* dull of hearing.
doux,	*filer doux*,	to give fair words, to be submissive.
sec,	*répondre sec*,	to make a sharp rough answer.
bon	*sentir bon, ou mauvais*,	to have a good or bad smell.
mauvais,	*trouver bon, ou mauvais*,	to like or dislike.
ferme,	*tenir ferme*,	to hold fast.
droit,	*marcher droit*,	to keep to the behaviour.
frais,	*boire frais*,	to drink cold.
chaud,	*boire chaud*,	to drink warm.
gras,	*parler gras*,	to lisp.
gros, *menu*,	*écrire gros, ou menu*,	to write a large or small hand.
cher,	*vendre cher*,	to sell dear.
vîte,	*aller vîte*,	to go fast.

belle,

belle, *l'échapper belle*, to escape narrowly.
fin, *couper fin*, to cut small.

As likewise *nouveau* and *nouvelle* new, *fraîche* (the feminine of *frais* fresh), and even the noun *goutte*: as,

un enfant nouveau *né*, a new-born child. } for *nouvellement*.
un nouvel *arrivé*, } one newly arrived.
une nouvelle *arrivée*, }
des herbes toutes fraîches *cueillies*; herbs fresh, *or* just gathered.
ne voir, or *n'entendre* goutte; to see, *or* hear nothing at all.

Moreover observe, that from the prepositions *à*, *de*, *en*, *dans*, *du*, *avec*, &c. joined with nouns and adnouns, are formed as many adverbs compound, almost, as there are nouns and adnouns in the language. See the lists of adverbs in the second part of this work.

§ II. *Of the Construction of Adverbs.*

1°. When adverbs meet with a verb, they are commonly put after it, if the tense is simple, and between the auxiliary and the participle, if it is compound: as,

Elle parle beaucoup, She speaks much.
Je suis fort *porté à le faire*, I am very much inclined to do it.
Il n'a pas encore *appris sa leçon*, He has not learnt his lesson yet.

2°. Monosyllables *bien*, *mal*, *mieux*, *pis*, &c. may indifferently come either before or after an infinitive: as,

Bien chanter, } or { *chanter bien*, to sing well.
Se mieux porter, } or { *se porter mieux*, to be better.
Se mal conduire, } or { *se conduire mal*, to behave ill.

3°. When adverbs meet with an adnoun, they must be placed first; as *bien fait* well made, *extrêmement heureux*, mighty happy.

4°. The adverbs *jamais*, *toujours*, *souvent*, meeting with another, are also placed first; as,

Nous sommes souvent *ensemble*; We are often together.
J'ai toujours *mûrement considéré*; I've always considered maturely.
Je ne bois jamais *trop*; I never drink too much.

5°. Adverbs compound always come after the verbs or nouns: as,

Il tomba à la renverse; He fell backwards.
Un homme à la mode; A fashionable man.
Méchant de gaieté de cœur; Wilfully wicked.

6°. *Rien* and *tout* meeting with a verb, are construed like adverbs, even after all the pronouns conjunctive: as,

J'ai

J'ai tout vu;	I have seen all.
Il ne m'a rien *dit*;	He has told me nothing.
Je ne veux rien *manger*;	I will eat nothing.

7°. These three adverbs of place, *céans* within, *alentour* about, *deçà* on this side, come after nouns, with the preposition *de*: as,

Le maître de *céans*;	The master of this place.
Les échos d'*alentour*;	The neighbouring echoes.
La partie de *deçà*;	The part on this side.

8°. These seven become true nouns, being used with the article, and requiring the preposition *de* (or the particles *du*, *des*) before the next nouns:

le *dehors*,	the outside.	as *Le devant est tout usé*;
le *dedans*,	the inside.	The fore part is quite worn out.
le *dessus*,	the upper part.	*Cela tient au dedans de la boîte*;
le *dessous*,	the under part.	That sticks to the inside of the box.
le *devant*,	the fore part.	
le *derrière*,	the hinder part.	*Les environs d'une place*;
les *environs*,	the adjacent places.	The adjacent *places of a town*.

Observe that adverbs derived from verbs, or adnouns, govern nouns in the same states as the verb, or adnoun, which they are derived from, governs: as *différemment de ce que je vous montre*; differently from what I show you: *indépendamment des lois*; without any dependence upon the laws: *relativement à l'acte du Parlement*; relatively to the act: *préférablement à toute autre chose*; preferably, before any thing, &c.

CHAP. IX.

Of PREPOSITIONS.

PREPOSITIONS are words invented to express the relations which things bear to one another. It was not possible for men to make themselves fully understood, without denoting those relations: therefore such words must needs have been invented in all languages. But (as the author of the *Grammaire raisonnée* observes) men in no language have had any regard, concerning prepositions, to what reason would have desired; to wit, that one relation had been denoted by one preposition, and one preposition should have denoted one relation only: whereas in all languages, one and the same relation is signified by many prepositions, and one and the same preposition denotes several relations, as we shall see in this chapter. It is in that, nevertheless, chiefly consist the different idioms of languages; and it is absolutely impossible

possible ever to attain to the knowledge of any language whatever, without thoroughly understanding the divers relations denoted by the prepositions, with their respective regimens and constructions, of the several states of nouns which they govern: both which relations and states being arbitrary, vary and differ much in all languages. This only instance will evince it. The English say, *to think* of *a thing*; the French, *to think* to *a thing*; the Germans and Dutch, *to think* on, *or* upon *a thing*; the Spaniards, *to think* in *a thing*, &c. Now it will avail an Englishman but little to know, that *of* is expressed in French by *de*, if he don't know which relations of things the prepositions, *à* and *de* denote in that language: since the French say, *to think to a thing*, and not *of a thing*. Therefore we shall minutely consider here all the French prepositions, except only such as are of the same signification, and denote the same relation of things, and require the same construction as in English.

A, AU, AUX.

à denotes,—1*st*, (whether alone or in composition) the end of the action of the verb, what person or thing it tends to (which relation answers to the dative case of the Latins), as likewise the end one aims at, and is englished by *to*: as *Donner une chose* à *quelqu'un*; To give a thing to somebody: A *qui est ce livre?* Whose book is this? *Il est* à *moi*; It is mine, it belongs to me: *Parvenir* à *son but*; To obtain one's end.

2*dly*, *à* denotes the place where one is, and that whither one is going (in English *at*, *to*, *into*, *on*, *within*, &c.), as *Demeurer* à *Londres*; To live *at* London: *Aller* à *Paris*; To go *to* Paris: *Vivre* à *la campagne*; To live *in* the country: *Aller* à *la campagne*; To go *into* the country: *Il demeure* à *vingt milles d'ici*; He lives twenty miles off: *Détournez* à *droite*; Turn *on* the right hand: *C'est* à *deux doigts de terre*; It is *within* two inches of the ground.

3*dly*, *à* denotes time, and succession of time and action, in English *at*, *in*, *by*, &c. as *Se lever* à *six heures*, & *déjeuner* à *neuf*; To rise *at* six o'clock, and breakfast *at* nine: *Arriver* à *temps*; To arrive *in* time: A *demain*; *Against* to-morrow: *Parler* à *son tour*: To speak *in* one's turn; *Se remettre peu* à *peu*; To recover *by* degrees; *Arracher brin* à *brin*; To pluck out slip *by* slip.

4*thly*, *à* denotes the part of the body that is affected, and is englished by *in*: as *Avoir mal* à *l'épaule*; To have a pain *in* one's shoulder: *Être blessé* au *bras*; To be wounded in the arm.

5*thly*,

5*thly*, *à* denotes the way of being or of doing of people, as alſo their poſture, and geſture, or action; in Engliſh *at*, *after*, *with*, &c. as *Etre* à *ſon aiſe*; To be at one's eaſe; *Vivre* à *ſa fantaiſie*; To live *as* one likes: *Faire tout* à *ſa tête*; To do every thing *of* one's own head: *S'habiller à la Françoiſe*; To dreſs *after* the French way: *Aller* à *pied ou* à *cheval*; To go *on* foot or *on* horſeback: *Se mettre* à *genoux*; To kneel down *on* one's knees: *Recevoir* à *bras ouverts*; To receive *with* open arms.

6*thly*, *à* denotes the quality, price, weight, and meaſure of things; in Engliſh *at*, *by*, *with*, &c. as *Des bas* à *trois fils*; Stockings *with* three threads: *De l'or* à *vingt-quatre carats*; Gold *at* four-and-twenty carats: *Du drap* à *dix-huit ſchellings la verge*; Eighteen ſhillings cloth: *Vendre de la viande* à *la livre*; To ſell meat *by* the pound; *Meſurer* au *compas*, *ou* au *cordeau*; To meaſure *with* the compaſs, or the line.

7*thly*, *à* denotes the matter, inſtrument, and tools uſed in working; in Engliſh *in*, *with*, *at*: as, *Travailler* à *de la dentelle*; To work *in* lace: *Bâtir* à *chaux & à ciment*; To build *with* lime and cement: *Peindre* à *l'huile*; To paint *in* oil; *Aller* à *voiles & à rames*; To go *with* ſails and oars: *Elle travaille* à *l'aiguille*; She works *at* her needle.

8*thly*, *à* denotes the things which one applies one's ſelf to, and the games one plays at; in Engliſh *to*, *at*: as *S'appliquer à l'étude*, aux *Mathématiques*; To apply one's ſelf *to* ſtudy, or *to* the Mathematics; *Jouer* aux *cartes*, To play *at* cards; *Jouer* au *piquet*, à *la bête*, à *la paume*, au *volant*, aux *échecs*, &c. To play *at* piquet, *at* loo, *at* tennis, *at* ſhittle-cock, *at* cheſs, &c.

9*thly*, *à* is uſed in reckoning games; in Engliſh *to*, &c. as *Deux* à *trois*, Two *to* three; *Trois* à *quatre*, Three *to* four; *Quatre* à *quatre*, Four all; *Cinq* à *cinq*, Five all; *Six* à *point*, Six to none; *Sept* à *point*, Seven love.

10*thly*, *à* ſignifies ſometimes *according to*, ſometimes *for*, ſometimes *with*, ſometimes *on*, ſometimes *till* or *until*: as *Cela n'eſt pas* à *ſon goût*; That is not *according* to his taſte: *Je vous prends* à *témoin*; I take you *for* witneſs: *Se battre* à *l'épée & au piſtolet*; To fight *with* ſword and piſtol: *Monter* à *cheval*; To ride *on* horſeback: *Mettre pied* à *terre*; To alight: A *l'honneur*, au *revoir*; Till our next meeting, till we meet again.

11*thly*, *à* ſometimes is a redundancy: as, *Il faut voir* à *qui l'aura*; We muſt ſee who ſhall have it: *C'eſt* à *qui l'attrapera*; It is who ſhall catch it.

12*thly*, *à* between two nouns appellative, denotes the manner, or *form*, of the thing ſignified by the firſt noun; as likewiſe the

 uſe

use which it is designed for: as *Un Chandelier à bras*, A branched candlestick: *Un chapeau à grands bords*, A broad brimmed hat; *Un clou à crochet*, A tenter-hook; *Une boîte à mouches*, A patch-box; *De l'huile à brûler*, Lamp-oil; *Une salle à manger*, A dining-room; *Un moulin à vent, ou à eau*, a wind, or water mill; *Une arme à feu*, A fire-arm.

This relation is commonly expressed in English by two nouns making a compound word, the first of which signifies the *Manner, Form*, and *Use* denoted by the French preposition.

13*thly*, *à*, between two nouns of number, signifies *between*, and sometimes *about*: as *Un homme de quarante à cinquante ans*; A man *between* forty and fifty: *Il y a quatre à cinq lieues*; It is *about* four or five leagues distant.

14*thly*, *à*, before an infinitive, most commonly denotes what is proper to be done, the merit or demerit of persons and things, their seeming capacity, aptitude, fitness, and disposition, turn or duty: as *Un avis à suivre*; An advice worth following: *Des fruits bons à garder*; Fruit good *or* fit for keeping: *Une occasion à ne pas laisser échapper*; An opportunity worth seizing (which one must not let slip); *Une homme à récompenser, ou à pendre*; A man that deserves to be rewarded, or hanged: *C'est une affaire à le perdre*; It is an affair that will ruin him: *C'est à vous à jouer*; You are *to* play: *C'est à lui à parler*, He is to speak (It is his business, duty, or turn to speak).

15*thly*, *à* coming before an infinitive, signifies sometimes *wherewith*, and sometimes the verb may be resolved by the indicative with *if*, or by a gerund: as *Verser à boire*; To fill some drink: *Il n'a pas à manger*; He has nothing to eat: A *en juger par les apparences*; *If* we may judge by appearances: A *vivre comme il fait, il n'ira pas loin*; *If* he lives at that rate he will not live long: *On croiroit, à l'entendre, qu'il ne sait rien*; One would think, *by hearing* him speak, that he knows nothing.

Etre à l'abri; To be sheltered: *Se tenir à couvert*; To keep under cover, *or* shelter: *Tenir à honneur*; To reckon it an honour: *Réputer à injure*; To deem it an affront: *Mettre un Officier aux arrêts*; To put an Officer under an arrest: A *votre avis*; In your opinion: A *son compte*; As he reckons: A *ce qu'il me semble*; As far as I apprehend: A *ce qu'elle dit*; As she says: *Parler à tort & à travers*; To speak *at* random: *Marcher à tâtons*; To go groping along in the dark: *Il est homme à s'en fâcher*; He is one who will take it ill: *Je suis ici à l'attendre depuis deux heures, et il est encore à revenir*; I have been waiting for him here these two hours, and he is not yet come back: A *cela près, nous sommes d'accord*; Excepting that, we are agreed, *&c.*

This preposition serves to make up a great many more adverbial ways of speaking, each of which is set down in its proper place in my Dictionary.

DE, DU, DES.

De (whether alone or in composition) denotes, 1st, a relation of union or separation, effect, cause, dependence, &c. and is eng-

lished by *of*, *from*, *by*: as *L'amour* de *Dieu*; The love of God: *Un membre* du *corps*; A member *of* the body: *Etre retranché* de *la société*; To be cut *off* from the society: *Etre estimé* de *tout le monde*; To be esteemed *by* every body.

2*ndly*, *De* denotes the quality of a person or thing, the matter of which that thing is made, which is expressed by the first of the two nouns, whereof this preposition shews the relation, and is englished by *of*: as *Un homme* d'*honneur*, A man *of* honour; *Un plat* d'*argent*, A silver-dish; *Un pont* de *pierre*, A stone-bridge.

Observe that these two nouns so joined with either *de* or *à*, are commonly englished by two nouns likewise, but without a preposition, or rather by a compound word, whose first noun (whether substantive or adjective) expresses the *Matter* and *Quality*, *Manner*, *Form*, and *Use* of the other, as a stone-bridge; *un pont de pierre*: a dancing-master; *un maître à danser*.

3*dly*, *De* denotes the limited sense of nouns, and distinguishes it from the universal and individual sense; which limited sense is expressed in English by *some*: as De *l'argent*; *Some* money: *Donnez-moi* du *pain*, de *la viande*, des *habits*; Give me *some* bread, *some* meat, cloaths: *J'ai affaire à* des *gens fort honnêtes*, or *à* de *fort honnêtes gens*; I have to do with very honest people.

4*thly*, *De* denotes the place from which one comes, and the term from which one begins to act, in English *from*: as *Sortir* de *Londres*; To go *out* of London: *Revenir* de *France*, de *la campagne*, du *Palais*, des *Indes*; To return *from* France, *from* the country, *from* the Palace, *from* the Indies: *Tomber* de *haut*; To fall *from* a high place: *Mesurer* d'*un bout à l'autre*; To measure *from* one end to the other.

5*thly*, *De* denotes the manner of acting or being, the means or cause, in English *with*, *in*, *upon*, *for*, *after*: as *faire* de *son mieux*; To do one's best, as well as one can: *Danser* de *bonne grâce*; To dance genteelly: *Couper* de *biais*; To cut slopingly, in a sloping manner: *S'y prendre* de *la bonne façon*; To go to work *after* the right way: *Mourir* de *froid*; To starve *with* cold: *Vivre* de *fruits* & de *légumes*; To live *on* vegetables, on fruits and greens: *Sauter* de *joie*; To leap for joy: *Il se conduit* de *cette manière-là*; He behaves *in* or *after* this manner: *Ils peuvent nous nuire* de *mille manières différentes*; They may hurt us a thousand different ways.

6*thly*, *De* is used before the noun of the thing made use of, and the instrument upon which one plays, in English *upon*: as *Se servir* d'*une épée*, d'*un bâton*, d'*un pistolet*: To use a sword, to make use of a stick, of a pistol: *Jouer* de *la flûte*, du violon, des *instrumens*; To play *upon* the flute, the fiddle, upon instruments.

7*thly*, *De* is governed of several other verbs neuter attended by a noun, in English *at*, *about*, *for*, *to*, &c. as *se moquer* de *quelqu'un*; To laugh *at* one: *Jouir* d'*une chose*; To enjoy a thing: *Se repentir* de *sa faute*; To repent one's fault, or *for* one's fault: *Mêlez-vous* de *vos affaires*; Trouble yourself *about* your business, Meddle with your own concerns.

8*thly*, *De* before a noun of time, signifies the duration of the time specified, in English *during*, *for*, *by*: as *Il partit* de *nuit*, de *jour*, de *grand matin*; He set out *by* night, *by* day, early: *Je ne l'ai point vu* d'*aujourd'hui*; I have not seen him to-day: *Je ne le verrai* de *ma vie*; I will not see him as long as I live.

9*thly*, *De* is used before nouns denoting dimension, and after nouns preceded by a number, and followed by a participle: as, *Il croît tous les jours* d'*un pouce*; It grows an inch every day: *Il y a trente vaisseaux* d'*achevés*; There are thirty ships finished.

10*thly*, *De* is used after pronouns indeterminate, adverbs of quantity, and these words *point*, *jamais*, *rien*, *quelque chose*, and *que* of admiration or exclamation, followed by a noun or adnoun: as, *Il n'y a personne* de *blessé*; There is nobody wounded: *Y en avoit-il quelqu'un* d'*ivre?* Was any of them drunk? *Assez* de *provisions*; Provisions enough: *Plus* d'*effets & moins* de *paroles*; More deeds and less words: *Point* de *sens commun*; No common sense: *Quelque chose* de *bon*; Something good.

11*thly*, *De* is used before an infinitive after adnouns signifying *Fulness*, *Emptiness*, *Plenty* or *Want*; as likewise after some verbs, and almost all nouns, so they do not signify or imply *Inclination*, *Reluctance*, *Aptness*, *Fitness*, or *Unfitness*, in English *to*: as *Indigne* de *vivre*; Unworthy *to* live: *Il est capable* de *faire cela*; He is capable of doing that: *Je m'abstiendrai* d'*y aller*; I will refrain *from* going thither: *Il m'a détournée* de *le faire*; He has deterred me *from* doing it: *Le désir* d'*apprendre*; The desire *of* learning: *Il a le bonheur* de *plaire*: He has the good fortune to please.

Si j'étois de *vous*, *Si j'étois que* de *vous*; Were I in your place: *Son habit est comme* de *cire*; His coat fits well: De *grâce n'en faites rien*; Pray don't do it, I beg you would not do it: *Vous êtes fort* de *son goût*; You are very much *to* her taste: *Il vient* de *sortir*; He is just gone out: *De vous dire comment cela est arrivé, c'est ce que je ne sais pas*; As for telling you what happened, it is more than I am able to do: *Les Magistrats doivent rendre la justice* de *citoyen à citoyen*; *chaque peuple la doit rendre lui-même* de *lui à un autre peuple*; The magistrates ought to do justice *between* citizen and citizen; every nation ought to do the same the one to the other: *Qu'est ce que* de *nous!* What wretched creatures we are!

This preposition serves to make up a great many more adverbial ways of speaking, *each of which* is set down in its proper place in my dictionary.

12*thly*,

12*thly*, *De*, *des*, an inseparable preposition, giving the words composed of it a signification contrary to that which they have when simple, in English, *un*, *dis*: as, *Défaire*, To *un*do: *Désavantage*, *dis*advantage.

13*thly*, *De par*, a form, made in English by *from*, *in the name of*: as, *De par le Roi*, In the King's name.

14*thly*, *De ce que*, a conjunction governing the indicative, in English, *because*, *though*: as, *De ce qu'un homme est plus adroit, ou plus fort qu'un autre, il ne s'ensuit pas qu'il ait de meilleures raisons*; Because one man is stronger or more dexterous than another, it does not follow that he has the better cause.

AVANT.

1*st*, *Avant* shows a relation of time, of which it denotes priority, as also of order and rank, and is always opposite to *après*, in English *before*: as, *J'ai vu cela* avant *vous*; I have seen that *before* you: *Il faut mettre ce mot-ci* avant *l'autre*; This word must be placed *before* the other: *Il arriva* avant *moi*; He arrived *before* me.

2*dly*, *Avant* is also an adverb of place and time, commonly used with these adverbial particles, *si*, *bien*, *trop*, *plus*, *assez*, *fort*, and englished by *far*, *deep*: as, *N'allez pas* si avant, Don't go *so far*; *Creuser* fort avant *or* trop avant *dans la terre*; To dig *very deep* or *too deep* in the ground: *Plus avant*, further, deeper: *L'épée lui est entrée* bien avant *dans le corps*; The sword went *deep* into his body: *Bien avant dans la nuit*; When the night was far gone.

Vous poussez les choses trop avant; You carry things too far: *La chose alla si avant que*; Matters went so far that, &c. *Jamais Philosophe ne pénétra plus avant dans la connoissance de la nature*; Never did any Philosopher make greater progress in the knowledge of nature: *Nous étions bien avant en mer*; We were got a great way to sea: *Gravez cela bien avant dans votre mémoire*; Let that be deeply engraved on your memory.

avant que before, is a conjunction governing the subjunctive, as, *avant qu'il* soit *un an*; Before twelve months are gone.

avant de before, is another conjunction governing the infinitive, as *Parlez-lui avant de le faire*; Speak to him before you do it. (*Avant que de*, before an infinitive, is now grown obsolete.)

en avant forward, is another adverb of place and time, as *Aller en avant*; To go forward: *De ce jour là en avant*; From that day forward: *Mettre en avant*; To advance, to assert; *Vous mettez en avant un principe fort dangereux*; You advance *or* assert a very dangerous principle.

APRES.

1*st*, *après* denotes posteriority both of time, place, and order, and is used in opposition to *avant*, with respect to time, and to *devant*, with respect to place and order, in English *after*, next to: as,

as, *Après le déluge*; after the deluge; *Sa maison est après la vôtre*; His house is after *or* next to yours: *Il marchoit après moi*; He walked after me.

2*ndly*, *après* is construed with the infinitive of the auxiliary verb: as, *Il mourut après avoir bien diné*; He died after eating (having eat) a hearty dinner: *Après diner*, or *après le diner*, after dinner: *Après boire* (Hudibrastic style) after drinking.

Il est toujours après moi; He ever hangs about me; He is always at my elbow; He is always dangling after me: *Etre après quelque chose*; To be actually about something: *Je suis après votre montre*; I am about your watch: *On est après*; It is a doing: *Je vais me mettre après*; I will set about it presently: *Il y avoit long-temps qu'il étoit après cet emploi, qu'il couroit après ce bénéfice, il l'a enfin obtenu*; He has been a long time about that place; He has solicited a long time for this living, at last he has got it: *Soupirer après quelque chose*; To wish a thing eagerly: *Se mettre après quelqu'un*; To fall upon one: *On a long-temps attendu après lui*; He has made us wait for him a long while: *On n'attend plus qu' après cela pour partir*; That's the only thing which hinders us to set out: *N' attendre pas après une chose*; To be in a condition to do or to live without a thing: *C'est un homme riche, & qui n'attend pas après cela*; He is a rich man, who can do *or* live without that: *Jeter le manche après la cognée*; To throw the handle after the hatchet; To venture the saddle after the horse: *Après lui il faut tirer l'échelle*; He is never to be undone.

3*dly*, *après* signifies *excepté*, in English *except*, *next to*: as, *Nous n'avons rien de plus cher après l'honneur*; Next to our honour, nothing can be dearer to us: *C'est la plus laide bête après le loup* (is said of a very ugly person), He *or* She isenough to frighten a horse.

4*thly*, *après* signifies *contre*, in English *at*: as, *Crier après quelqu'un*; To scold at one: *Cette femme-là crie toujours après ses servantes*; That woman is constantly scolding at her maids: *Tout le monde crie après lui*; Every body complains of him.

Après, is also an adverb of time, in English *after*, *after that*, *afterwards*, *then*: as, *Commencez par déjeuner, & vous étudierez après*; Begin with breakfasting, and after that you will study.

après que, is a conjunction signifying *lorsque*, in English *after*, *when*: as, *Après que vous aurez fait*; After you have done: *Après que les troupes furent parties*; When the troops were gone.

après quoi, is a form of speech signifying *après laquelle chose*, in English *after that*, *then afterwards*: as, *On signa la capitulation, après quoi la place se rendit*; They signed the capitulation, and afterwards the place surrendered.

après tout, another form of speech of the same signification, as in English, *after all*.

5*thly*, *d'après* is another preposition, in English *from*, *by*, *after*: as, *Ce portrait est fait d'après nature*; That picture is drawn after life: *Tableau d'après Raphaël*; A picture copied from the original of Raphael.

Ci-après, is an adverb, signifying *dans la suite*, in English *hereafter*, *afterwards*, *in the sequel*: as, *Comme on verra ci-après*; As will be seen in the sequel.

DEVANT.

1*st*, *devant* is used in opposition to *derrière*, and is construed with *de*, *au*, and *par*, in English *before*, *against*, *over-against*: as, *Mettez cela devant le feu*; Put that before the fire: *Il demeure tout devant l'église*; He lives quite over-against the church: *Otez-vous de devant mon jour*; Get out of my light: *Otez-vous de devant moi*; Stand out of my sight, Get out of my sight, Avoid my presence: *Ils passent par devant chez nous*; They pass before our door: *Un acte par devant notaire*; A deed drawn by a lawyer.

Sens devant derrière; Preposterously, the wrong way, in the wrong situation. *Il met sa chemise sens devant derrière*; He puts on his shirt the wrong way. *Aller, Venir, Envoyer ou devant de que'qu'un*; To go, to come, to send to meet one. *Aller ou devant d'une chose*; To obviate a thing, to prevent it.

2*dly*, *devant* is used in opposition to *après*: as, *Il marchoit devant moi*; He walked before me: *Avoir le pas devant quelqu'un*; To have the precedency of one.

3*dly*, *devant* signifies in the presence of, in English *before*, *in the presence of*: as, *Prêcher devant le Roi*; To preach before the King: *Quand il fut devant ses Juges*; When he was in the presence of his Judges: *Il est devant Dieu*, *Son âme est devant Dieu*; He is before God, He is dead and gone.

devant, is also an adverb, and serves to make some phrases, as *Passez devant*; Go before: *Si vous êtes pressé, courez devant* (a proverb); If you are in a hurry set forward, or you may set off when you please: *Les premiers vont devant* (another proverb); Those that are most diligent get the start of others: *Comme nous avons dit ci-devant*; As we said before: *Il est blessé par devant*; He is wounded in the fore-part of his body.

Le chapitre de devant; The chapter before. *Le train de devant d'un carrosse*; The fore wheels of a coach. *Les jambes de devant d'un cheval*; The fore-legs of a horse.

devant, is also a noun signifying the *fore-part* of a thing: as, *Un devant de chemise*; The fore-flap of a shirt. *Un devant d'estomac*; A stomacher. *Le devant d'une perruque*; The fore-top of a perriwig. *Le devant d'une cuirasse*; The breast of an armour. *Un devant d'autel*; The antependium of an Altar. *Prendre le devant*, *Gagner le devant*; To go or set out before. *La cavalerie tenoit le devant*; The cavalry marched first. *Il sera ici dans un instant, j'ai pris les devants pour vous en avertir*; He will be here presently, I came before to give you notice of his coming. *Prendre le devant* (in a figurative sense); To prevent, to be before-hand with one, to get the start of him. *Bâtir sur le devant* (another metaphorical phrase); To grow lusty or bulky, to get a big belly.

DERRIERE.

1*st*, *derrière* denotes place, and is opposite to *devant*, in English *behind*: as, *Regardez derrière vous*, Look behind you.

2*dly*, *derrière* is also an adverb construed with *de* and *par*, in English *back*, *behind*: as, *Qu'importe que cela soit devant ou derrière*; What matters it, whether it is before or behind? *Par derrière*;

as, *Après le déluge*; after the deluge; *Sa maison est après la vôtre*; His house is after *or* next to yours: *Il marchoit après moi*; He walked after me.

2*ndly*, *après* is construed with the infinitive of the auxiliary verb: as, *Il mourut après avoir bien diné*; He died after eating (having eat) a hearty dinner: *Après diner*, or *après le diner*, after dinner: *Après boire* (Hudibrastic style) after drinking.

Il est toujours après moi; He ever hangs about me; He is always at my elbow; He is always dangling after me: *Etre après quelque chose*; To be actually about something: *Je suis après votre montre*; I am about your watch: *On est après*; It is a doing: *Je vais me mettre après*; I will set about it presently: *Il y avoit long-temps qu'il étoit après cet emploi, qu'il couroit après ce bénéfice, il l'a enfin obtenu*; He has been a long time about that place; He has solicited a long time for this living, at last he has got it: *Soupirer après quelque chose*; To wish a thing eagerly: *Se mettre après quelqu'un*; To fall upon one: *On a long-temps attendu après lui*; He has made us wait for him a long while: *On n'attend plus qu'après cela pour partir*; That's the only thing which hinders us to set out: *N'attendre pas après une chose*; To be in a condition to die or to live without a thing: *C'est un homme riche, & qui n'attend pas après cela*; He is a rich man, who can do *or* live without that: *Jeter le manche après la cognée*; To throw the handle after the hatchet; To venture the saddle after the horse: *Après lui il faut tirer l'échelle*; He is never to be undone.

3*dly*, *après* signifies *excepté*, in English *except*, *next to*: as, *Nous n'avons rien de plus cher après l'honneur*; Next to our honour, nothing can be dearer to us: *C'est la plus laide bête après le loup* (is said of a very ugly person), He *or* She is enough to frighten a horse.

4*thly*, *après* signifies *contre*, in English *at*: as, *Crier après quelqu'un*; To scold at one: *Cette femme-là crie toujours après ses servantes*; That woman is constantly scolding at her maids: *Tout le monde crie après lui*; Every body complains of him.

Après, is also an adverb of time, in English *after*, *after that*, *afterwards*, *then*: as, *Commencez par déjeuner, & vous étudierez après*; Begin with breakfasting, and after that you will study.

après que, is a conjunction signifying *lorsque*, in English *after*, *when*: as, *Après que vous aurez fait*; After you have done: *Après que les troupes furent parties*; When the troops were gone.

après quoi, is a form of speech signifying *après laquelle chose*, in English *after that*, *then afterwards*: as, *On signa la capitulation, après quoi la place se rendit*; They signed the capitulation, and afterwards the place surrendered.

après tout, another form of speech of the same signification, as in English, *after all*.

5*thly*, *d'après* is another preposition, in English *from*, *by*, *after*: as, *Ce portrait est fait d'après nature*; That picture is drawn after life: *Tableau d'après Raphaël*; A picture copied from the original of Raphael.

Ci-après, is an adverb, signifying *dans la suite*, in English *hereafter*, *afterwards*, *in the sequel*: as, *Comme on verra ci-après*; As will be seen in the sequel.

DEVANT.

1*st*, *devant* is used in opposition to *derrière*, and is construed with *de*, *au*, and *par*, in English *before*, *against*, *over-against*: as, *Mettez cela devant le feu*; Put that before the fire: *Il demeure tout devant l'église*; He lives quite over-against the church: *Otez-vous de devant mon jour*; Get out of my light: *Otez-vous de devant moi*; Stand out of my sight, Get out of my sight, Avoid my presence: *Ils passent par devant chez nous*; They pass before our door: *Un acte par devant notaire*; A deed drawn by a lawyer.

Sens devant derrière; Preposterously, the wrong way, in the wrong situation. *Il met sa chemise sens devant derrière*; He puts on his shirt the wrong way. *Aller, Venir, Envoyer ou devant de quelqu'un*; To go, to come, to send to meet one. *Aller ou devant d'une chose*; To obviate a thing, to prevent it.

2*dly*, *devant* is used in opposition to *après*: as, *Il marchoit devant moi*; He walked before me: *Avoir le pas devant quelqu'un*; To have the precedency of one.

3*dly*, *devant* signifies in the presence of, in English *before*, *in the presence of*: as, *Prêcher devant le Roi*; To preach before the King: *Quand il fut devant ses Juges*; When he was in the presence of his Judges: *Il est devant Dieu*, *Son âme est devant Dieu*; He is before God, He is dead and gone.

devant, is also an adverb, and serves to make some phrases, as *Passez devant*; Go before: *Si vous êtes pressé, courez devant* (a proverb); If you are in a hurry set forward, or you may set off when you please: *Les premiers vont devant* (another proverb); Those that are most diligent get the start of others: *Comme nous avons dit ci-devant*; As we said before: *Il est blessé par devant*; He is wounded in the fore-part of his body.

Le chapitre de devant; The chapter before. *Le train de devant d'un carrosse*; The fore wheels of a coach. *Les jambes de devant d'un cheval*; The fore-legs of a horse.

devant, is also a noun signifying the *fore-part* of a thing: as, *Un devant de chemise*; The fore-flap of a shirt. *Un devant d'estomac*; A stomacher. *Le devant d'une perruque*; The fore-top of a perriwig. *Le devant d'une cuirasse*; The breast of an armour. *Un devant d'autel*; The antependium of an Altar. *Prendre le devant*, *Gagner le devant*; To go or set out before. *La cavalerie tenoit le devant*; The cavalry marched first. *Il sera ici dans un instant, j'ai pris les devants pour vous en avertir*; He will be here presently, I came before to give you notice of his coming. *Prendre le devant* (in a figurative sense); To prevent, to be before-hand with one, to get the start of him. *Bâtir sur le devant* (another metaphorical phrase); To grow lusty or bulky, to get a big belly.

DERRIERE.

1*st*, *derrière* denotes place, and is opposite to *devant*, in English *behind*: as, *Regardez derrière vous*, Look behind you.

2*dly*, *derrière* is also an adverb construed with *de* and *par*, in English *back*, *behind*: as, *Qu'importe que cela soit devant ou derrière*; What matters it, whether it is before or behind? *Par derrière*; Back-

Backwards: *Porte de derrière*; A back-door, (and figuratively) evasion, shift: *Mettre une chose sens devant derrière*; To put a thing preposterously, to put backward what should be forward.

derrière, is also a noun said of the posterior part of a thing or person, in English, *the back side, the hind parts*: as, *Les jambes de derrière d'un cheval*; The hind legs of a horse. *Etre logé sur le derrière*; To lodge backwards.

Faire rage des pieds de derrière (a proverbial phrase); To work with might and main, *Montrer le derrière* (another metaphorical phrase): To fail in one's promise.

CHEZ.

1*st*, *chez* denotes, and is englished by, *at* or *to somebody's house*, and is construed with *de* and *par*; as, *Il est chez moi*; He is at my house *or* home: *Je vais chez vous*; I am going to your house: *Je viens de chez Madame le Blank*: I come from Mistress White's: *J'ai passé par chez lui*; I have called at his house: *Chacun est maître chez soi*; Every body is master in his own house: *Avoir un chez soi*; To have a house of one's own.

2*dly*, *chez* signifies also *among*, *with*: as, *Il y avoit une coutume chez Athéniens, chez les Romains*; There was a custom among the Athenians *or* Romans.

CONTRE.

1*st*, *contre* denotes opposition, signifying *against*, *contrary to*, and is englished by *with* or *at* after verbs signifying being angry, incensed, irritated, provoked, and exasperated, as, *Aller contre vent & marée*; To go, to sail against wind and tide: *Se fâcher contre quelqu'un*; To be angry with one: *Se battre contre quelqu'un*; To fight one.

Quand on fit cette proposition, tout le monde s'éleva contre; When this was moved, every body expressed his dislike to the motion. *Pour moi, je suis contre*; For my part, I am against it. *Je ne suis ni pour ni contre*; I am neither pro nor con, *or* neither for nor against it.

2*dly*, *contre* denotes also proximity of situation, and signifies *near*, *by*: as, *J'étois assis contre lui*; I sat by him: *Sa maison est contre la mienne*; His house is by mine: *Contre le bois*; Near the wood: *Tout contre*; Hard by.

contre, is also a noun signifying *con* (the opposite of *pro*) and *against*; as, *On parle diversement de cette affaire, il faut savoir le pour & le contre*; They talk variously of this affair, one must hear what is said pro and con, *or* hear both sides. *La chose n'est pas sans difficulté, il y a du pour & du contre*; the matter is not without difficulty, much may be said on both sides. (See in my Dictionary another signification of *le contre*.)

DANS and EN.

1*st*, *dans* denotes a relation of time and place, and is englished by *in*, *into*, *to*, *within*: as, *Etre dans la boîte*, *dans la maison*, *dans la ville*; To be in the box, in the house, in the town: *Quand il entra dans la chambre*; When he got into the room: *Dans la même année*; In the same year: *Dans un mois*; Within a month.

2*dly*, *dans* denotes the state and disposition of the body, the mind, manners and fortune: as, *Etre dans une posture contrainte*; To be in an uneasy posture: *Dans la colére où il étoit*; In the passion he was in.

3*dly*, *dans* denotes the motive and view of one's acting, which is usually expressed in English by *with*: as, *Il fait sa cour dans le dessein de s'avancer*; He makes his court with a design to be preferred.

4*thly*, *dans* signifies also *according to*: as, *Cela est vrai dans les principes d'Aristote*; That is true according to Aristotle's principles.

5*thly*, *dans* is used, and never *en*, before proper names of towns and authors: as, *Il est dans Londres*; He is in London: *Nous lisons dans Cicéron*; We read in Cicero: *J'ai vu cela dans Ovide*; I have read that in Ovid.

6*thly*, *en* denotes a place, and the things considered as relating to place; and is never used with the articles *le*, *la*, *les*, and is englished by *in*: as, *Etre en Angleterre*; To be in England; *Vivre en sa maison*; To live in one's own house.

7*thly*, *en* denotes the country whither one is going, and is englished by *to*: as *Aller* en *France*; To go to France: *Venir* or *Passer* en *Angleterre*; To come *or* pass over *to* England.

8*thly*, *en* denotes time, and things considered as relating to time, and is rendered by *at* and *in*: as, *En tout temps*, At all times; *En plein jour*, In open day-light; *En hiver*, In winter; *Tant en paix qu'en guerre*, Both in peace and war.

9*thly*, *en*, before a noun of time, denotes the space of time that slides away in doing something; and *dans* the space of time after which something is to be done; as, *Le Roi va à Hanovre en trois jours*; the King goes to Hanover in three days; that is, he is no longer than three days in going: *Le Roi va à Hanovre dans trois jours*; The King will go to Hanover three days hence; that is, after three days are gone, he will set out.

10*thly*, *en*, denotes the state and disposition of persons and things, and is englished by *in* and *at*: as, Etre en vie; To be alive

Etre en bonne santé; To be in good health: *Un enfant en nourrice*; A child at nurse: *Une femme en couche*; A woman lying in: *Etre en bonheur*; To be lucky, to have good luck, to play with good luck.

11*thly*, *en*, denotes what one is employed in, and is englished by *at* and *in*: as, *Etre en oraison, en prières*; To be at one's devotions, *or* prayers.

12*thly*, *en*, denotes the manner of being, of behaving, of acting, and is englished by *like* and *in*: as, *Etre en robe de chambre, en bonnet de nuit & en pantoufles*; To be in one's night-gown, night-cap and slippers: *Vivre* en *Roi*; To live *like* a King: *Se conduire* en *étourdi*; To behave *like* a blunderer.

13*thly*, *en*, denotes the motive and end of acting, and is englished by *through*, *out of*, *in*; as, *Il fit cela en haine de ce que*, &c. He did it through hatred of, &c. *En considération de ses services*; In consideration of his services: *En dépit de lui*; In spite of him.

14*thly*, *en*, denotes the passage from one place to another, the progress of things, the change of condition both of persons and things, and is englished by *to* and *into*: as, *Courir de rue en rue*; To run from street to street: *Narcisse fut métamorphosé en fleur*; Narcissus was metamorphosed into a flower: *L'affaire va de mal en pis*; The case is worse and worse: *De mieux en mieux*; Better and better.

15*thly*, *dans*, and *en*, must be repeated before each noun governed; as, *Il étoit* en *robe de chambre*, en *bonnet de nuit*, & en *pantoufles*; He was in a morning-gown, night-cap, and slippers: *On ne voit que des brochures* dans *sa salle*, dans *sa chambre*, & dans *son cabinet*; One sees nothing but pamphlets in his parlour, his room and study.

Tho' it is sometimes indifferent to use either of these two prepositions, yet that must continue the same before each noun, which was used before the first, when it is the same sense all along the sentence, and the same thread of speech: as, *Séville, capitale de l'Andalousie, surpasse toutes les villes d'Espagne en grandeur, en commerce, en richesses & en beauté*; Seville, the capital of Andalusia, exceeds in largeness, trade, riches and beauty, all the cities in Spain. *Il est fidelle dans ses promesses, inépuisable dans ses bienfaits, juste dans ses jugemens*; He is faithful in his promises, inexhaustible in his favours, just in his judgments.

But if it is not the same thread of speech, and the same sense all along the sentence, both prepositions must be used for variety sake: as, *Il passa un jour & une nuit entière* en *une si profonde méditation, qu'il se tint toujours* dans *une même posture*; He spent a whole day and night in so deep a meditation, that he always remained in the same posture.

16*thly*, *en*, when it is construed with a gerund, denotes either time or manner, and may be resolved by the conjunctions *when*, *whilst*, or *as*, with a tense of the indicative: as, *Parler en tremblant*; To speak trembling: *Il laissa ordre en partant*; He left order

when

when he went away: *Il l'aborda en riant*; He came up to her with a smile: *En passant*; By the way.

en tant que, is a conjunction signifying *as, considered as*: as, *Jésus-Christ en tant qu'homme*; Christ as a man. It is also a law-expression, signifying *as far as, as much as*: as, *En tant que je puis*; As far as lies in my power: *En tant que besoin sera*; As far as need will require.

We say both *été* and *dans l'été*; in summer: *en hiver* and *dans l'hiver*; in winter: *en automne* and *dans l'automne*; in autumn: but we do not say *en printemps*, in the spring; but *dans le printemps* or *au printemps*.

Observe further, that *in* and *into* must be rendered into French by *entre*, and never by *dans* or *en*, in these following expressions: To hold a child in one's arms: *Tenir un enfant* entre *ses bras*: To deliver a thing *into* somebody's hands; *Remettre quelque chose* entre *les mains de quelqu'un*, or *Remettre* en *main*: To get it again from his hands; *Le retirer d'*entre *ses mains*.

Etre en butte à tout le monde; To be exposed to all the world: *s'en aller, s'en revenir*; to go away, or come back again: *En avant*, Forward: *En dedans*, Within: *Etre en train*; To begin, to be at it: *Mettre en train*; To set on, to set a going: *Se mettre en train*; To begin doing a thing, &c. &c. &c.

The other significations of *en* must be looked for in my Dictionary.

DEPUIS.

1*st*, *depuis*, denotes both time, place and order, or enumeration of things, and is englished by *since* and *from*; and is commonly followed in the sentence by *jusqu'à* (to); then *depuis* denotes the term *from whence*, and *jusqu'à*, that of *hitherto*, as, *Depuis ce temps-là*; Since that time: *Je ne l'ai pas vu depuis son retour*; I have not seen him since his return: *Je vous attendrai depuis cinq jusqu'à six*; I'll wait for you from five to six: *Vous êtes venu depuis moi*; You came after me: *Elle est arrivée depuis lui*; She is arrived since he did: *Depuis le commencement jusqu'à la fin*; From the beginning to the end: *Il m'a suivi depuis la Bourse jusqu'au Palais*: He has followed me from the Royal Exchange to the Palace: *Je les ai tous vus depuis le premier jusqu'au dernier*; I have seen them all from the first to the last.

Observe the difference between *depuis* and *jusqu' à*, *de* and *à*, and *de* and *en*, all which prepositions are englished by *from* and *to*.

de and *à*, before nouns of places, denotes simply the distance that is between the two places; as, *On compte vingt deux milles* de *Windsor à Londres*; They reckon twenty-two miles *from* Windsor *to* London.

depuis and *jusqu' à*, denote, besides the quality of the distance, its being great or little, as,

Il marcha depuis *Windsor* jusqu'à *Londres*; He walked *from* Windsor *to* London.

de and *en*, with the same noun repeated, denotes succession of place: as,

Il va de *cabaret* en *cabaret*; He goes *from* alehouse *to* alehouse.

Depuis peu; lately, not long since *or* ago: *Depuis quand?* How long? How long since? *Depuis deux ans*; These two years: *Depuis long-temps*; This great while.

2*dly*, *depuis*, is also an adverb signifying *since*, *since that time*: as, *Je n'en ai point ouï parler depuis*; I have not heard of it since.

3*dly*,

3*dly*, *depuis que*, is a conjunction governing the indicative, and is also englished by *since*: as, *Depuis que vous êtes parti*; Since you went away.

JUSQUE or JUSQUES.

1*st*, *jusque* (*to*, *even to*, *as far as*, *till*, *until*), denotes both place and time, to a degree that cannot be exceeded, and requires besides the preposition *à* before a noun. It is indifferent to spell it with or without an *s* at the end, but when it is construed with a word beginning with a vowel, it loses its final *s*: as, *Depuis Paris jusqu'à Londres*; From Paris to London: *Depuis la St. Jean jusqu'à Noël*; From Midsummer to Christmas: *Il alla jusqu'au Grand-Caire*; He went as far as Grand-Cairo: *Le vice règne jusques sur le trône*; Vice rides triumphant even to the throne: *Jusqu'à present*; Till now, until now: *Jusqu'où?* To what place? How far? *Jusqu'ici*; To this place, hither, so far: *Jusques-là*; To that place, thither, so far: *Ils en vinrent jusques là qu'on crut qu'ils s'alloient battre*; They went so far, *or* to such extremities, that people thought they were going to fight.

Crier jusqu'à s'enrouer; To bawl one's self hoarse: *Brûler du vin jusqu'au déchet de deux tiers*; To burn two thirds of wine away. *Jusqu'au revoir* (a phrase at parting); Till our next meeting, Till we meet again: *Ami jusqu'aux autels*; A friend as far as conscience permits. *Brave jusqu'au dégaîner* (is said of a bully); Courageous till the question is to draw.

2*ndly*, *jusqu'à*, *jusqu'aux* (*even*, *every*), denotes also excess, but is used instead of the article: as, *Il aime jusqu'à ses ennemis*; He loves even his enemies: *Jusqu'aux plus abjects des hommes se donnoient la licence de*, &c. (which may also be expressed thus) *Il n'y avoit pas jusqu'aux plus abjects des hommes qui ne se donnassent la licence de*, &c. The very worst of men took such a liberty as to, &c.

jusqu'à and *jusqu'aux* taken in this sense, are also used in the third state, but with such verbs only as require after them nothing but the third state, or govern both the absolute and respective state together (or are attended with an object and term). Thus we say, *Il étendit sa libéralité jusqu'aux valets*, He extended his generosity even to the servants; because *étendre* requires here both the absolute and respective state after it. But we do not say, *Il donna jusqu'aux valets*, to mean that, He gave to every body, and even to the servants, because as *Il donne jusqu'à son carrosse*, signifies that He gave every thing he had, and even *his very coach* (in which sentence, *jusqu'à son carrosse* expresses the word of the object coming after the verb); so *Il donna jusqu'aux valets*, would signify that he gave every thing he had, and even his servants: Which causes an ambiguity, that ought to be carefully avoided in French.

3*dly*, *Jusqu'à ce que*, is a conjunction which governs the subjunctive, *till*, *until*: as, *Jusqu'à ce qu'il vienne*; Until he comes.

And

And *Jusqu'à quand*, (pronounced in declamation *Jusques à quand*) governs the indicative, *How long*.

HORS, HORMIS, EXCEPTE, &c.

1*st*, *hors* (*out*, *except*, *but*) denotes exclusion and exception. When it comes before a noun of time and place, it requires the preposition *de* before it, as also before the infinitive; or it governs the indicative with *que*: as, *Vous les verrez quand ils seront* hors de *table*; You shall see them when they have left table: *Hors* du *royaume*; Out of the kingdom: *Hors* de *saison*; Out of season: *Il ne pouvoit faire pis* hors de *se pendre*; He could not do worse, except *or* but to hang himself: *Il lui a fait toutes sortes de mauvais traitemens*, hors qu'*il ne l'a pas battu*; He has used him as ill as he possibly could, except that he has not beat him: *Hors cela nous sommes d'accord*; Except that we agree.

2*ndly*, *hormis* and *excepté* (*but*, *except*, *save*, *saving*) denote also exception and exclusion, but they govern the noun immediately, without *de*, tho' they require this preposition before the infinitive; they also govern the indicative with *que*: as, *Ils sortirent tous* hormis *or* excepté *deux ou trois*; They all went out, except *or* but two or three: *Il lui permet tout* excepté d'*aller aux assemblées*; He indulges her in every thing, but in going to assemblies: *Je me porte assez bien*, excepté que *mon bras* est *toujours enflé*, or *excepté* or *hormis mon bras qui*, &c. I am pretty well, but my arm is still swell'd.

3*dly*, *à la réserve*, is used in the same sense, and englished after the same manner, but is attended with *de* before the next noun and infinitive: as, *Il a donné tout son bien à ses enfans*, *à la réserve* de *ses rentes viagères*; He has given all his substance to his children, except his annuities for life: *Il a tout pouvoir à la réserve* de *conclure*; He has full powers, except of concluding.

LOIN.

loin (*far*, *at a distance*, *a great way off*) requires the preposition *de* before the next noun and infinitive, or *que* before the subjunctive: as, *Loin* du *chemin*, de *la rue*, de *chez nous*; Far from the road, the street, from home: *Loin d'ici*; Far from hence: *Loin* de *secourir ses alliés*, *il se déclare contre eux*; Far from assisting his allies, he declares himself against them: *Loin* qu'*il* soit *disposé à vous faire satisfaction*, *il est homme à vous quereller*; Far from being disposed to offer you satisfaction, it is likely he will pick a quarrel

quarrel with you: *Bien loin* que *cela* soit; It is so far from being so.

MALGRÉ, EN DEPIT.

malgré and *en dépit (maugre, in spite of, notwithstanding)* govern, *malgré*, the first state of the noun, and *en dépit*, the second; they also form with *que* a conjunction governing the subjunctive: as, *Il l'a fait malgré moi*; He did it in spite of me: *En dépit* de *lui & de tout le monde*; In spite of him and of all the world: *Il le fera malgré* qu'*il en ait*: He shall do it in spite of his teeth: *Bon gré, malgré, je l'aurai*; Will he, n'ill he, I shall get it.

PAR.

1*st*, *par*, denotes the cause, motive, means, instrument and manner, and is englished thus, *by*, *through*, *out of*, *for*, *at*, *with*: as, *Par ordre du Roi*; By the king's order: *Je lui ai fait dire par un tel*; I sent him word by such a one: *Il l'a obtenu par mon moyen*; He got it through my means: *Vous n'en parlez que par envie*; It is out of envy only you speak of it: *Je l'ai fait par cette raison*; I did it for that very reason: *Il entra par la porte, mais il sortit par la fenêtre*; He got in at the door, but he got out at the window: *Je le lui ferai tenir par la première occasion*; I will send it to him by the first opportunity: *Je compris par là*; By that *or* thereby I understood.

2*ndly*, *par*, denotes the place, being englished by *in*, and is construed with several prepositions and adverbs of place: as, *Cela se fait par tout pays*; That's done in all countries: *Par-tout*; Every where: *Par tout le Royaume*; All over the Kingdom: *Par-tout où*; Wherever: *Par où?* Which way? *Par ici*; This way: *Par là*; That way: *Par deçà*; This side, on this side: *Par delà*; That side, t'other side, on the other side; *Par dedans*, Within; *Par dehors*, Without; *Par après*, By; *Par devers*, By; *Par dessus*, Upon, over, above, over and above; *Par dessous*, Under, underneath; *Par devant*, Before, forwards; *Par derrière*, Behind, backwards; *Par à côté*, By; *Par le haut*, *Par en haut*, Towards the top, upwards; *Par le bas*, *Par en bas*, Downwards; *Par haut & par bas*, Upwards and downwards; *Par le passé*, Formerly, in time past, heretofore; *Par ci par là*, Here and there, now and then, at several times; *Par ainsi*, Therefore.

3*dly*, *par* denotes motion and going through, being englished *by through*, *about*, *by*, *out of*: as, Il a passé par Paris; He went

through

through Paris: *Se promener par les rues*; To walk about the streets: *Jeter par la fenêtre*; To throw out of the window.

Passer par l'examen; To submit to the examination: *Il en faut passer par-là, Il faut passer par là ou par la fenêtre* (a proverb), One, You, They, &c. must submit to that.

4*thly*, *par* is construed with nouns denoting the accidents of the weather, and is englished by *in*: as, *Où allez-vous* par *cette pluie là!* Where are you going *in* such a rain as this? *Nous partimes* par *un beau temps*; We set out *in* fair weather.

5*thly*, *par* is construed with the infinitive after verbs signifying *beginning* and *ending*, and is englished by *with*, *by*, *in*: as, *Il commença* par *se plaindre*, & *finit* par *demander de l'argent*; He began *with* complaining, and concluded *with* asking money: *Elle conclut par le supplier de*—She concluded *in* beseeching him to—

6*thly*, *par*, construed with nouns, *without* the article, denotes distribution and division of people, time, place, or any thing signified by the noun, and is sometimes englished by *by*, *in*, *into*, *for*, *per*; but that distribution is commonly expressed by *a*, *each*, or *every*, before the noun, but without a preposition (at least expressed, for *for* is grammatically understood): as, *Distribuer* par *chapitres*; To divide into chapters: *Aller* par *bandes*; To go *in* companies: *Donner tant* par *tête*; To give so much *a* head: *Cent pièces* par *an*; An hundred pounds *a* year, *or per annum*; *Une Guinée* par *soldat*; A Guinea a soldier *or every* soldier.

POUR.

1*st*, *pour* denotes the same relations as in English, to wit, of the end or final cause, motive and reason of action, and the use which a thing is designed for, and is englished by *for*, *upon the account of*: as, *Cela est pour vous*, & *ceci pour moi*; That is for you, and this for me: *J'ai eu tant pour ma part*; I have had so much for my share: *Pour l'amour de vous*; For your sake: *Il fera cela pour vous*; He will do that upon your account, *or* for your sake.

2*dly*, *pour* is commonly englished by *considering*, or *with respect to*, when it denotes the suitableness or unsuitableness of a thing: as, *Cet enfant est bien avancé pour son âge*, or *pour le peu de temps qu'il a appris*; That child is very forward for his age, *or* considering the little time he has learnt.

Pour toujours, *pour jamais*; For ever: *Pour le moins*; At least: *Pour lors*; Then, that time: *Pour cet effet*; Therefore, and therefore: *Je compte son témoignage pour dix autres*; I reckon his testimony as good as ten others: *Je le tient pour mon ami*;

him to be my friend: *Je ne'en dis pas davantage, & pour cause*; I say no more, and good reason why, *or* because of something: *Ne laissons pas pour cela de nous divertir*; Let us divert ourselves nevertheless, Let us be merry for all that: *Pour ainsi dire*; As one may say, If I *or* We may say so, *or* If I may use the expression.

3*dly*, *pour* is construed with the infinitive (and never *de* or *à*) after *trop*, *assez*, *suffisant*, and *suffire*; and whenever we express the design, cause, and reason of doing something; it is englished by *to*, *in order to*, *with a design to*: as, *Il est trop sensé pour faire cela*; He has too much sense to do that: *Le mérite ne suffit pas pour réussir*; Merit is not enough to thrive: *Il l'a fait pour me faire de la peine*; He did it to make me uneasy: *Il a été pendu pour avoir volé sur le grand chemin*; He was hanged for robbing upon the highway.

4*thly*, *pour*, before an infinitive followed by *moins*, and a negative in the latter part of the sentence, or by *ne laisser pas de*, *ne laisser pas que de*, signifies *although* or *though*; and *moins* with the negative, or *ne laisser pas de*, *ne laisser pas que de*, signifies and is englished by *nevertheless* or *yet*: as, *Pour avoir de la Religion, elle n'en est pas moins femme*; *Although* she is a religious woman, *yet* she is still a woman: *Pour n'avoir point de bien, elle ne laisse pas d'être extrêmement fière*; Though she has no fortune, she is nevertheless, *or* for all that, very proud.

5*thly*, *pour*, between two nouns without the article, or between two infinitives without a preposition, denotes the choice which one makes between two things alike in their nature, but different in their circumstances. The two nouns or verbs thus construed are rendered into English with a periphrase; as, *Chambre pour chambre, j'aime mieux celle-ci que l'autre*; Since I must have one of these two rooms, I like this better than the other: *Mourir pour mourir, il vaut mieux mourir en combattant qu'en fuyant*; When a man must die, it is better to die in fighting than in running away.

6*thly*, *pour*, followed by *que*, but coming after *assez* and *trop*, makes a conjunction governing the subjunctive, and may be englished by *that*: as, *Je ne suis pas assez heureux pour que cela m'arrive*; I am not so lucky as that should happen to me: *C'est trop outrageant pour que je ne m'en venge pas*; It is too outrageous for me not to resent it.

Pour peu que, is another conjunction governing the subjunctive, and is englished by *If ever* or *never so little*, *let ever so little*: as *Pour peu que vous en preniez soin*; If you take ever so little care of it: *Pour peu qu'ils soient jolis*; If they are at all pretty.

Pour, before nouns and pronouns personal, signifies sometimes *as for*: as, *Il a beaucoup d'esprit, mais pour du jugement, il n'en a guères*; He has much wit, but as for sense, he has but little: *Pour moi, je crois*; As for me, *or* for my part, I believe, *&c.* *Pour ce qui est de moi*; As for me.

For,

For, before a noun of time, is made in French by *pendant*, before the noun of time; or *durant* after it: as, He has drank the water *for* six weeks; *Il a pris les eaux* pendant *six semaines*, or *six semaines* durant.

PRÈS.

1*st*, *près* denotes proximity of place, and is always attended by *de* (or the particles *du*, *des*), except in some few instances of common discourse; and is englished by *by*, *near*, *nigh*, *close to*: as, *S'asseoir près de quelqu'un*; To sit by *or* near one: *Il demeure* près du palais; He lives by the palace.

Près is usually construed with *trop*, *si*, *assez*, *plus*, *bien*;—and these adverbs are never construed with *auprès*.

2*dly*, *près* denotes proximity of time, and is construed with the infinitive: as, *Il est bien près de midi*; It is very near twelve, *or* upon twelve: *Cela n'est pas près* d'*être fait*; That is not near being done: *Elle est près* d'*accoucher*; She is near her time.

3*dly*, *près* signifies also *almost*: *Il a été près de trois heures à dîner*; he was almost three hours at dinner: *Son armée est de près de cinquante mille hommes*; His army is almost fifty thousand strong.

4*thly*, *près* is also used in the sense of *save*, *excepting*, but it always comes after its regimen, and therefore is not attended by *de*: as, *C'est un galant homme, à son humeur* près; He is a clever man, *save* his temper: *J'ai été payé à cent Louis près*; I have been paid all to an hundred Louis d'ors: *A cent pistoles* près, *nous sommes d'accord*; There is but one hundred pistoles difference between us: *A cela près*, *A telle chose près*; Save that, That being excepted, Nevertheless, For all that: *Ne laissez pas de conclure votre marché, à cela près*; Strike up the bargain for all that, *or* nevertheless: *Il n'est pas à cent guinées près*, *Il n'en est pas à cela près*; He can afford to lose, to give, *or* to throw away an hundred guineas.

Près, *de près*, adverbs, signifying *near*, *hard by*, *close*; *Plus près*, Nearer; *Près à près*, Close, close together, quite near each other; *Plus près à près*, Closer; *A peu près*, Pretty near, near about, nearly, within compass, within a little matter; *Il reconnoît une Divinité, mais à peu près de la trempe des Dieux d' Epicure*, He believes a God, but it is one much of the same kind with the Gods of Epicurus. (See in my Dictionary for the phrases made of that preposition.)

AUPRÈS.

1*st*, *auprès* denotes also proximity of place, and is attended by *de*, and englished likewise by *near*, *nigh*, *by*, but signifies particularly

larly *next to*: as, *Sa maison est auprès de la mienne*; His house is next to mine.

2*dly*, *auprès* denotes a relation of domestic or servile attachment, and is rendered by *to*, *with*, *by*, *near*: as, *Etre auprès d'un Seigneur*; To live with a nobleman: *L'Ambassadeur de sa Majesté Britannique auprès du Roi très-Chrétien*; The ambassador of his Britannic Majesty to the most Christian King: *Il me demanda pour être auprès de son fils unique, qui avoit à peu près mon âge*; He asked me as a companion to his only son, who was pretty much of my age.

Etre bien auprès de quelqu'un; To be in somebody's favour and benevolence: *N'être pas bien auprès de quelqu'un*; To be under somebody's disgrace: *Pouvoir beaucoup auprès de quelqu'un*, *Avoir du pouvoir auprès de lui*; To have a great influence *or* power over somebody's mind: *Elle peut tout auprès de lui*; She can do any thing with him.

3*dly*, *auprès* denotes a relation of comparison, and signifies *to*, *in comparison*: as, *La terre n'est qu'un point auprès du reste de l'univers*; The earth is but one point to the universe.

Auprès is also an adverb of place, of the same signification as the preposition: as *Je ne puis voir cela, si je ne suis auprès, tout auprès*; I cannot see that, except I am near it, hard by: *Par auprès*; By, near, a little aside.

PROCHE.

Proche, near by, hard by, is also attended by *de*, and is likewise an adverb, as, *Proche de la ville*, *du Palais*; Near the town, *or* the Palace: *Il demeure ici proche*; He lives hard by.

De proche en proche, another adverb, signifying *contiguous to one another*: as *Couper les bois de proche en proche*; To cut the woods gradually one after another: *Faire des conquêtes de proche en proche*; To make one's conquests contiguous to one another.

VIS-A-VIS, À L'OPPOSITE.

vis-à-vis, *à l'opposite*, over-against, opposite, are also attended by *de*, and are likewise adverbs; but when they are adverbs, they are not attended by the preposition *de*: as, *Je me plaçai vis à-vis de lui*; I sat over-against him: *Il est vis-à-vis*; He is over the way: *A l'opposite de sa maison est une colline*; Over-against his house is a hill.

The preposition *de* is sometimes left out, in common conversation, after *près*, *proche*, and *vis-à-vis*: as *Près l'Eglise St. Paul*; Near St. Paul's Church: *Proche le pont de Londres*; Near London-bridge: *Vis-à-vis la Bourse*; opposite the Royal-Exchange.

Vis-à-vis is said of both persons and things, and signifies properly two persons or things facing one another: but *à l'opposite*, tho' of the same signification, is said of places and things only, not of persons.

A côté de (by) denotes also proximity of place: as *S' asseoir à côté de quelqu'un*; To sit by one: *Passer à côté du village*; To pass by the village.

SANS.

Sans, without, denotes exclusion; is construed with the infinitive (which is rendered into English by the gerund); and is besides, with *que*, a conjunction governing the subjunctive: as, *Sans argent*, Without money; *Sans amis*, Friendless; *Un homme sans morale*, An immoral man; *Sans parler*, Without speaking; *Sans y penser*, Unaware, unwittingly; *Vous ferez bien cela, sans* que *j'y* aille, You'll do that well enough, without my going thither; *Sans faire semblant de rien*, As though he did not.

SELON, SUIVANT.

Selon and *suivant*, according to, agreeably, conformably *or* pursuant to, govern the noun immediately, never taking *à* before it as in English *to*, and form also an adverb, and along with *que*, a conjunction governing the indicative: *selon* is said of an opinion, and *suivant* of practice: as, *On l'a traité selon son mérite*; He was treated according to his deserts: *Il sera payé selon qu'il travaillera*; He shall be paid according to his work: *Selon moi*; In my judgment *or* opinion: *C'est selon*; It is as it happens, May be yes, May be not, That's according: *Je me conduirai en tout suivant vos avis*; I will conduct myself, *or* behave, in every thing, according to *or* conformably to your advice.

SUR.

1*st*, *Sur*, denoting place and matter, is *upon*, *on*, *over*, both in the proper and figurative sense: as, *Sur la table*, Upon the table; *Sur la rivière*, Upon the river; *Sur un vaisseau*, On board a ship; *Se reposer sur quelqu'un*, To rely *or* depend upon one.

2*dly*, *Sur*, denoting time, is *about*, *against*, *towards*, *by*: as, *Je partirai sur les trois heures*; I shall set out about *or* by three: *Sur le soir*; Towards the evening: *Sur la brune*; In the dusk of the evening: *Il est sur son départ*; He is upon his departure.

3*dly*, *Sur*, denoting the superiority of power or excellence, is rendered by *over*: as, *Un Prince qui règne sur plusieurs peuples*; A Prince that reigns over many nations: *Les François ont de grands avantages sur les autres nations*; The French have great advantages over the other nations.

prepoſition with *de:* as, *Vergeter du drap à rebours*; To bruſh cloth againſt the grain: *Il fait tout à rebours, au rebours de ce qu'on lui dit*; He does every thing the wrong way, quite the reverſe of what he is bid.

A TRAVERS, AU TRAVERS.

A travers (through, thorough, croſs), comes immediately before its regimen, and *au travers* requires *de:* as, *A travers le corps*, or *Au travers du corps*; Through the body: *Il ſe fit jour au travers des ennemis*, or *à travers les ennemis*; He made his way thro' the enemies: *à travers champs*; Croſs the fields: *Regarder au travers d'une jalouſie*; To look through a lattice-window: *Parler à tort & à travers*; To talk at random.

In ſome occaſions two prepoſitions come together before a noun, as in this inſtance, *Il peint* d'après *nature*; He draws *by* the life.

Theſe ſix prepoſitions have the right of governing others before the noun: *de, pour, excepté, hors, juſque, par.*

De governs theſe eight; *entre, après, chez, avec, par, en, deſſus, deſſous*: as,

Pluſieurs d'entre *eux y allèrent*; Many *of* them went thither: *Je viens* de chez *vous*; I come from your houſe; *Je ſors* d'avec *lui*; I have juſt left him: *La partie* d'en *haut*; The upper part: De par *le Roi* (ſtyle of proclamation, &c.)

Pour governs theſe five, *après, dans, devant, à, derrière.*

Ce ſera pour après *le diner*; It will be for after dinner.

C'eſt pour dans *quinze jours*; It is for a fortnight hence.

Ce morceau-ci eſt deſtiné pour devant *la porte, celui-là* pour *à côté*, & *l'autre* pour derrière *le lit*; This piece is deſigned for before the door, that for the ſide, and this other for behind the bed.

Juſque governs theſe ſix, *à* (or *au* or *aux*), *par, en, dans, ſur, ſous*: as,

Juſqu' au *plancher*, as high, *or* as far as the ceiling: *Juſques dans le lit*; Even in bed: *Juſques par de à la rivière*; Even beyond the river, &c.

Par governs theſe eight; *chez, à côté, deſſus, deſſous, devant, derrière, deçà, delà*: as, *Paſſez* par *chez nous*; Call at our houſe: *Par deſſus la tête*; Above one's head; *Par delà la mer*; Beyond the ſea, &c.

Excepté and *hors* govern theſe nineteen; *chez, dans, ſous, ſur, devant, derrière, parmi, vers, avant, après, entre, depuis, avec, par, durant, pendant, à, de*, and *en.* Examples may be found every where.

Prepoſitions always come before the noun which they govern, never after, as they do ſometimes in Engliſh; as *Avec qui*, or *à qui voulez-vous que je parle?* Whom will you have me ſpeak with, *or* to? Except theſe three, *après, durant, près*: as,

Quelque temps après, or *après quelque temps*; Some time after. *Sa vie durant*, or *durant ſa vie*; During, *or* for his life.

A ſon humeur près; Save his humour.

Thus it is not neceſſary for *après* and *durant* to come after the noun, but only for *près*.

From a great many nouns, prepoſitions are formed, by putting before them ſome particle, eſpecially *à, au, aux, en*: which compound prepoſitions are always attended by *de, du, des*, before the noun: as,

Au milieu de *la compagnie*; In the middle of the company.

En préſence de *ſes amis*; In the preſence of his friends.

A l'inſçu de *ſon père*; Unknown to his father.

A raiſon de *vingt pour cent*; At the rate of twenty per cent.

Theſe

The ſeprepoſitions, *de*, *contre*, *ſur*, *ſous*, *ſans*, which are ſeldom, if ever, repeated in Engliſh, muſt always be repeated in French before each noun governed: as,

Beaucoup d'*amour pour le plaiſir*, & de *haîne pour le travail*;

Much love for pleaſure, and averſion for work.

Je ſuis ſans *amis*, ſans *protection*, ſans *ſecours*, & *je meurs de faim*;

I am friendleſs, without protection, without help, and ſtarving.

Theſe others muſt be alſo repeated when the following noun, or nouns, are not ſynonymous, or pretty near of the ſame ſignification, *à*, *par*, *pour*, *avec*: as,

Il eſt venu à bout de ſes deſſeins par *les ruſes* & par *les armes de mes ennemis*;

He has compaſſed his ends by the devices and arms of my enemies.

Devices and *arms* not ſignifying the ſame thing, *par* is repeated: but if there were *par l'aſſiſtance* & *les armes*, as *aſſiſtance* and *arms* ſignify pretty near the ſame, *par* ſhould not be repeated.

Il n'y a rien qui porte tant les hommes à *aimer ou* à *haïr leurs ſemblables*, *que*, &c.

Nothing induces men ſo much to love or hate their equals, as, &c.

To love and *hate* are the two contraries, and therefore *à* is repeated.

Il n'y a rien qui porte tant les hommes à *louer* & à *imiter leurs ſemblables*, *que*, &c.

Nothing induces men ſo much to commend and imitate their equals, as, &c.

To commend and *to imitate* are not contraries indeed, but they are different, therefore *à* is repeated.

Il n'y a rien qui porte tant les hommes à *aimer* & *eſtimer leurs ſemblables*, *que*, &c.

Nothing induces men ſo much to love and eſteem their equals, as, &c.

To love and *eſteem* are near the ſame ſignification, therefore *à* is not repeated.

On les envoya pour *avitailler les vaiſſeaux*, & pour *ſonder le port*;

They were ſent to victual the ſhips, and ſound the haven.

To victual and *ſound* are very different, therefore *pour* is repeated.

On les envoya au port pour *radouber les vaiſſeaux*, & *en conſtruire de nouveaux*;

They were ſent to harbour to refit the ſhips, and build new ones.

To refit and *build* are pretty near alike, therefore *pour* is not repeated.

Further observations upon some English *prepositions.*

These particles, *again, back, away, up, down, in, out of, over, forth,* &c. oftentimes make part of the signification of the verbs which they attend, and are not particularly expressed in French: as, to keep back *retenir*, to take away *emporter*, to come up *monter*, to take up arms *prendre les armes*, to lay them down *les quitter*, *les mettre bas*, to pull off *arracher*, to go, or set forth, *partir*, &c.

Aboard a ship, is *à bord d'un vaisseau*; but *to embark on board a ship*, is *s'embarquer sur un vaisseau, monter sur un vaisseau.*

about answers to these different French prepositions:

sur,	*about* the year's end; *sur la fin de l'année.*
touchant,	I come to you *about* that business; *Je viens vous voir touchant cette affaire.*
vers,	*about* the latter end of the book; *vers la fin du livre.*
dans,	What do they cry *about* the streets? *Qu'est-ce qu'on crie dans les rues?*
par,	He took him *about* the middle? *Il le prit par le milieu du corps.*

against, which signifies *contre* in its general sense, denotes also *Time*, and is rendered sometimes by *sur*: as, *Against the end of the week*; *Sur la fin de la semaine*: Sometimes without any preposition at all; as *Your shoes will be made* against *after to-morrow*; *Vos souliers seront faits après demain.*—*against* is also a conjunction, several ways expressed in French: as *Against it comes*; *En attendant qu'il vienne*: Let all things be ready against we come; *Que tout soit prêt à notre retour.*

both, before two nouns copulated with *and*, is rendered in French, either by *et* before each noun, or by *tant* before the first noun, and *que* before the second, or is not expressed at all: *Both* young and rich; Et *jeune & riche*, tant *jeune* que *riche*: Both by sea and land; *Par mer & par terre*, Tant *par mer* que *par terre*: Both at home and abroad; *Au dedans & au dehors, & au dedans & au dehors*, Tant *au dedans* qu'*au dehors.*

away, another particle, so variously used, and elegantly used, cannot be rendered in French without a verb, which is also performed several ways, conformably to the genius of the language: as, Away with this; *Otez tout ceci*: Away with him to the University; *Qu'on l'envoie à l'Université*: I cannot away with it; *Je ne saurois souffrir*, or *digérer cela*: Away with these fopperies; *Défaites-vous de ces sottises*: To eat a bit and away; *Manger un morceau à la hâte, avant de partir*: To scold one away; *Obliger quelqu'un de s'en aller, à force de le gronder*: He shall not go away with it so; *Il n'en sera pas quitte à si bon marché.*

CHAP. X.

Of CONJUNCTIONS.

OF Conjunctions, some govern, that is, will have the next verb in the indicative mood, some in the subjunctive, and some in the infinitive.

1°. These following conjunctions govern the indicative:

ainsi que,	as.	*de même que,*	even as.
tout ainsi que,	just as.	*si,*	if.

si

si bien que, / *de sorte que,*	so that.	*après que,*	after that, when.
de manière que, / *de façon que,*	in such a manner that.	*depuis que,* / *puisque,*	since.
tellement que,	so that.	*vû que,*	seeing, being that.
comme, / *en tant que,*	as.	*attendu que,*	considering that.
à ce que,	according to.	*au lieu que,*	whereas.
comme si,	as if, as tho'.	*à mesure que,*	in proportion as.
lorsque, / *quand,*	when.	*tant que,*	as long as.
pendant que, / *tandis que,*	whilst.	*autant que,*	as much as.
à cause que, / *parce que,*	because.	*outre que,*	besides that.
à peine,	scarcely, hardly *.	*joint que,*	add to that.
aussitôt que, / *si tôt que,* / *dès que,*	as soon as.	*selon que,* / *suivant que,*	as, according to.
pourquoi,	why.	*peut-être que,*	perhaps.
d'où vient que?	How comes it to pass?	*d'autant que,*	whereas, forasmuch as.
		or est il que,	now is it that.
		aussi long-temps que,	as long as.
		bien entendu que,	with a proviso that.

and the others not included in the next list.

2°. These Conjunctions govern the subjunctive:

afin que, / *pour que,*	that, to the end that.	*au cas que,* / *en cas que,*	in case that, *or* if.
avant que,	before.	*non que,*	not that.
sans que,	without that.	*non pas que,*	not but.
bien que, / *quoique,* / *encore que,*	tho', although.	*ce n'est pas que,*	it is not but that.
soit que,	whether *and* or.	*pourvû que,* / *moyennant que,*	so, if, provided that.
supposez que,	suppose that.	*à moins que,* / *si ce n'est que,*	unless.
supposons que,	let us suppose that.	*pour peu que,*	if, ever so little.
posez le cas que,	put the case that.	*à condition que* †,	upon condition that.
à la bonne heure que,	I grant that, &c.		

* *à peine* is followed by *que* in the second part of the sentence, and that *que* is englished by *than*, or *but*.

† *à condition que*, is also construed with the future and conditional.

si bien que, / *de sorte que,*	so that.	*après que,*	after that, when.
de manière que, / *de façon que,*	in such a manner that.	*depuis que,* / *puisque,*	since.
tellement que,	so that.	*vû que,*	seeing, being that.
comme, / *en tant que,*	as.	*attendu que,*	considering that.
à ce que,	according to.	*au lieu que,*	whereas.
comme si,	as if, as tho'.	*à mesure que,*	in proportion as.
lorsque, / *quand,*	when.	*tant que,*	as long as.
pendant que, / *tandis que,*	whilst.	*autant que,*	as much as.
à cause que, / *parce que,*	because.	*outre que,*	besides that.
à peine,	scarcely, hardly *.	*joint que,*	add to that.
aussitôt que, / *si tôt que,* / *dès que,*	as soon as.	*selon que,* / *suivant que,*	as, according to.
pourquoi,	why.	*peut-être que,*	perhaps.
d'où vient que?	How comes it to pass?	*d'autant que,*	whereas, forasmuch as.
		or est il que,	now is it that.
		aussi long-temps que,	as long as.
		bien entendu que,	with a proviso that.

and the others not included in the next list.

2°. These Conjunctions govern the subjunctive:

afin que, / *pour que,*	that, to the end that.	*au cas que,* / *en cas que,*	in case that, *or* if.
avant que,	before.	*non que,*	not that.
sans que,	without that.	*non pas que,*	not but.
bien que, / *quoique,* / *encore que,*	tho', although.	*ce n'est pas que,*	it is not but that.
soit que,	whether *and* or.	*pourvû que,* / *moyennant que,*	so, if, provided that.
supposez que,	suppose that.	*à moins que,* / *si ce n'est que,*	unless.
supposons que,	let us suppose that.	*pour peu que,*	if, ever so little.
posez le cas que,	put the case that.	*à condition que* †,	upon condition that.
à la bonne heure que,	I grant that, &c.		

* *à peine* is followed by *que* in the second part of the sentence, and that *que* is englished by *than*, or *but*.

† *à condition que*, is also construed with the future and conditional.

excepté

excepté que,	except that.	*tant s'en faut que,* / *bien loin que,*	we, he, they, people, &c. are so far from.
hormis que, / *hors que,*	save that.	*Malgré que,*	for all that.
sinon que,	but that.	*nonobstant que,*	notwithstanding that.
de peur que,	for fear that.	*Dieu veuille que,*	God grant.
de crainte que,	lest.	*Plaise,* or *Plût* / *à Dieu que,*	would to God.
loin que *,	far.	*A Dieu ne* / *plaise que,*	God forbid.
bien loin que *,	very far from.		
jusqu'à ce que,	till, until.		
tant s'en faut que, / *bien loin que* *,	it is so far from.		

3°. These govern the infinitive:

à and *de,*	to.	*au lieu de,*	instead of.
par,	by.	*loin de,*	far from.
pour,	to, in order to.	*bien loin de,*	very far from.
après,	after.	*excepté de,*	except to.
sans,	without.	*avant de,* / *avant que de,*	before.
jusqu'à,	to that degree, till.	*à moins de,* / *à moins que de,*	unless.
sauf à,	save.	*plutôt que* / *de,*	rather than to; and all conjunctions ending *in de.*
faute de,	for want of.		
afin de,	in order to.		
de peur de, / *de crainte de,*	for fear of.		

for *de crainte que* and *de crainte de,* see page 315, C.

4°. The French use the conjunction *que* in the second part of a compound sentence, instead of repeating the following conjunctions, expressed in the first.

si,	if.	*pourquoi,*	why.	*parce que,*	because.
quand, / *lorsque,*	when.	*comme,*	as.	*quoique,*	although,
		peut-être,	perhaps.	*afin que,*	that; and

others composed of *que*; which particle always govern the subjunctive, when it stands for *si*, *quoique*, and *afin que*; and therefore causes the verb, governed in the indicative in the first part of the sentence, to be changed into the subjunctive in the second part; but the verb continues in the same mood, when *que* stands for *quand*, *lorsque*, *comme*, &c. as,

*Si vous m'*aimez, & que *vous* vouliez *me le persuader*, for *& si vous voulez me le persuader*; If you love me, and want to persuade me of it.

* *These* three are used in compound sentences, and require *que* before the second *part of the sentence*: but *Il s'en faut bien que* is used in simple sentences.

Afin

Afin que vous en soyez *sûr*, & que *vous ne* croyiez *pas qu'on vous trompe*; That you may be sure of it, and don't think that one cheats you.

La raison pourquoi il ne pouvoit *venir alors*, & que *les autres ne se* soucioient *guères de l'attendre*, &c. The reason why he could not come at that time, and the others did not care to wait for him.

Peut-être l'aime-t-il, mais qu'*il ne* veut *pas l'avouer, de peur*, &c. Perhaps he loves her, but is unwilling to own it, lest, &c.

afin, may be attended in the same sentence, both by *que* and *de*, governing each its respective mood, viz. *que* the subjunctive, and *de* the infinitive: as,

Afin de *vous* convaincre, & que *vous n'en* doutiez *plus*;
In order to convince you, and that you doubt no more of it.

5°. *When*, is both *lorsque*, and *quand*, indifferently used for one another, except that *quand* de. es time in a more positive and determinate manner, and *lorsque* denotes occasion: as,

Ne manquez pas de venir, quand *je vous appellerai*;
Be sure to come, when I shall call for you.

On ne fait jamais tant de folies, que quand *on aime*; We never commit so many extravagancies, as *when* we are in love.

On se fait aimer lorsqu'*on aime*; It is *by* loving we make ourselves be beloved.

Les chanoines vont à l'office, quand *la cloche sonne*; Canons go to divine service, *when* the bell rings.

et lorsqu'*ils assistent à l'office, ils font leur devoir*; And *when* they assist, *or*, *by* assisting in the service, they do their duty.

When a question is asked, we always do it with *quand*, and never *lorsque*: as, *Quand viendrez vous?* When will you come?

Quand, being construed with the conditional, has the signification of *tho'* or *although*, and *même*, or *bien même*, is sometimes added to *quand*, to give more weight to what one says; as,

Quand il y consentiroit, or *Quand même*, *Quand bien même il y consentiroit, cela ne pourroit pas se faire*; Although he would consent to it, that could not be done.

Sometimes also *tho'* may be left out in French (the French conjunctions *quand* or *quand même* may be suppressed in the sentence), and the pronoun expressing the subject of the verb, comes after the verb, which is made by the subjunctive; as,

Fût-elle *riche à millions, je n'en voudrois point*;
Tho' she *were* worth several millions, I would not have her.

6°. *si*, is never construed with the conditional as in English. Therefore that tense with *if* is made by the imperfect in French: as, If he should come, *S'il venoit.*

si after *et*, signifies *yet*, or *altho'*: as,

Il travaille toujours, & si *il meurt de faim*;

He is always at work, *and yet* is starving.

But this is of the low style.

7°. *d'où vient que* (conjunction interrogative) requires immediately after it the pronoun, or noun, that expresses the subject of the verb of the question: whereas with the other conjunctions interrogative, it comes after the verb: as,

D'où vient que vous *ne voulez pas faire cela?* or,

Pourquoi ne voulez-vous *pas faire cela?* Why won't you do that?

8°. *Pourtant*, *cependant*, and *toutefois* (yet, however); *toutefois* begins to be obsolete.——*pourtant* always comes after the verb, or between the auxiliary and the participle, if the tense is compound, and assures more positively, than *cependant*.——*cependant* may indifferently begin the sentence, or come after the verb; and they both make a contrast with these two other conjunctions *quoique* and *bien que*: as,

Quoiqu'*il ait tant étudié*, *il ne sait* pourtant *pas cela* (or) cependant *il ne sait pas cela*, *Altho'* he has learnt so much, *yet* he don't know that.

9°. *donc*, *c'est pourquoi* (therefore, then), *c'est pourquoi* always begins the sentence, and *donc* never does, but always comes the second, or third word; except however when the case is to draw a consequence of premises: as,

C'est pourquoi vous m'obligerez de faire cela, or

Vous m'obligerez donc *de faire cela*;

Therefore you will oblige (*that is* compel) me to do that.

Il rougit; donc *il est coupable*;

He blushes; therefore he is guilty.

Encore, being an adverb, signifies *again*, *yet*, *still*: being a conjunction copulative, it signifies *even*, *also*; and *else* and *besides* in such expressions as these: *Qui encore*, Who else? *Quoi encore*, What else, what besides? But *encore* is besides a conjunction adversative, especially when & *si* comes before it, which signifies, and is englished by *besides* and *nevertheless*: as,

Il est extrêmement riche, encore *n'est il pas content* (or), & si encore *il se plaint*;

He is extremely rich, *yet* he is not contented, *or nevertheless* he complains.

Encore has a sense of restriction, in some ways of speaking rendered into English thus:

Encore *s'il ne faisoit pas l'entendu, on lui passeroit son ignorance*;

Should he not pretend to great matters, one would not mind his ignorance.

Encore

Encore *s'il savoit quelque chose, mais il ne sait rien du tout*;
If he knew something, well and good: but he knows nothing at all.

Au moins, du moins, and *pour le moins*, are three conjunctions of restriction, signifying *at least*, but which must not be confounded: *au moins* being used to say something to one by way of advice, as also to clear one's self of something, and englished thus:

Si vous ne voulez pas prendre son parti, du moins *ne vous déclarez pas contre lui*;
If you won't take his part, at least do not declare against him.

Prenez garde au moins *à vous retirer de bonne heure*;
Take care to come home betimes, *I must desire you*, or, Be sure to keep good hours, *I beg of you*.

Au moins *ce n'est pas moi qui en suis cause*;
I am not the cause of it, however, *or*, I can tell you.

Sometimes also *tout* is put before these conjunctions, and *tout au moins, tout du moins*, denote still a greater restriction of what one says.

This particle conjunctive *tout* is likewise sometimes put before these comparative terms, *comme, de même que, aussi bien que*, as well as; *autant que*, as much as; and *aussi peu que*, as little as: which may be properly englished by *just* or *full*: as,

Vous faites tout *comme il vous plaît*; You do *just* as you please.

Je vis tout *aussi bien en Angleterre qu'en France*;
I live *full* as well in England as in France.

From the abuse oftentimes made of the conjunction transitive *à propos*, very much used in conversation, is come this proverbial phrase, *A propos de bottes, comment se porte Mr. votre père?* (word for word) Now we are speaking of boots, how does your father do? The meaning of which is, *Now we don't speak*, or *think of your father*, How does he do?

10°. These conjunctions *either* and *or*, used in the same sentence before nouns, and verbs, are rendered into French, *either* by *soit*, before the first noun, or verb, and *or* by *ou*, before the other, or others: or by *soit*, before each noun, or verb; which last way is more emphatical: as,

Either through gratitude, *or* clemency, *or* policy, he pardoned him.

Soit *par reconnoissance*, ou *par clémence*, ou *par politique, il lui pardonna*, or Soit *par reconnoissance*, soit *par clémence*, soit *par politique, il lui pardonna*.

When the same conjunctions disjunctive serve to distinguish two things, or two parts of a sentence, they are also rendered into French, by *soit* repeated, or by *ou*, likewise repeated; or by *soit* before the first noun, and *ou* before the second: as,

An exercise *either* of the body, *or* the mind,
Un exercice soit *du corps* soit *de l'esprit*, or
Un exercice soit *du corps* ou *de l'esprit*.

Either he is a wise man, *or* a fool; *Ou il est sage*, ou *il est fou*.

11°. These conjunctions, *whether*, and *or*, are rendered into French, either by *soit que* repeated, or by *soit que* before the first part of the sentence, and *ou que* before the other: as,

Whether you have done that *or* no.

Soit que *vous ayez fait cela*, soit que *vous ne l'ayez pas fait*: or

Soit

Soit que *vous ayez fait cela*, ou que *vous ne l'ayez pas fait:* or only Soit que *vous ayez fait cela ou non*; but *soit que* repeated, is much better.

12. *or else* is rendered into French by *ou bien*, or *ou* only, or *sinon:* as,

The case is so, *or else* I should have been deceived;
La chose est ainsi, ou bien, *(or)* ou *l'on m'auroit trompé.*

Moreover, observe that some words answer to divers parts of speech together, according to the grammatical use which they are put to: as, *après*, which is an adverb in the first following example, a preposition in the second, and a conjunction in the third.

Il parla après;	He spoke afterwards.
Il parla après moi;	He spoke after me.
Après qu'il eut parlé;	After he had spoken.

APPENDIX.

SECTION I.

The ANALOGY *of* SPEECH;

Or, the Grounds *and* Principles *of the Art of Speaking continued.*

WE have ſeen in the Introduction to this work, that the words which ſpeech is compoſed of, and the letters which compoſe thoſe words, are ſigns, invented by men, to repreſent their thoughts. Now theſe ſigns have been found out in a quite natural manner. For as the mouth is the organ that forms them, it has been obſerved, that ſome ſounds are formed with a larger, ſome with a leſs degree of opening the mouth, others through the throat, and others through the noſe. And likewiſe according to the differences obſerved in the forming of the articulations, that is, as the breath emitted from the lungs is, in its way through the throat and mouth, more or leſs forcibly compreſſed by the palate, the lips, or the teeth, or any where intercepted, the conſonants have been diſtinguiſhed into Labial, Hiſſing, Palatal, Guttural, Liquid, and Aſpirative.

Our acute ſounds were called by the Ancients *narrow* or *cloſe* vowels; and they called *broad* and *open* vowels our grave ſounds; they had neither guttural nor naſal vowels. They called *mute* our weak conſonants: but our diſtinction of them into weak and ſtrong has a better foundation in nature.

And indeed B, and P, have ſo great an affinity the one to the other, that ſome nations often pronounce one for the other. The Germans pronounce *penum finum* for *bonum vinum*. The Latins, as Quintilian reports, pronounced the *b* in *obtinere* exactly like *p*: The French do it too in *obtenir*, and perhaps the Engliſh in to *obtain*.

There are many English and Dutch words that differ only in one of these two letters F and V. *Father*, for example, being pronounced *Vather*: and the German Swisses pronounce French V's like F's, and B's like P's, and D's like T's, saying *Foulez-fous foir une pelle tame*, instead of *Voulez-vous voir une belle dame?* Will you see a fine lady? *Foulez-fous poire tu fin?* or in English, *Fwill you trink fome fwine?* instead of *Voulez-vous boire du vin?*

The relation there is between C, Q, and K, is so obvious, that there is perhaps no language, but these three letters have the same power and articulation before *a*, *o*, *u*.

It is the same with G and J before some vowels, as in *George*, that might as well be spelt *Jorje*. Moreover G is only a lessening or decreasing of C, as D is of T: nay *d* final is articulated in French with all the power and force of *t*, when the next word begins with a vowel, as *gran tami* for *grand ami*, great friend.

The Ancients called L, M, N, R liquid; or flowing, as consonants of a very agreeable and easy articulation; tho' strictly speaking, L alone deserves that appellation. The Romans found the articulation of M so swelling in the ear, and so disagreeable, that, most times, they did not pronounce it even in prose, saying *die' hanc* for *diem*; *restitutu'iri*, for *restitutum* (in their law), which made Quintilian call it *mugientem litteram*. For the same reason the Greeks never used it in the end of words. The same, after the Chaldeans, often changed *ν* into λ, saying πλεύμων for πνεύμων, from whence *pulmo* is derived: and Μαλλιος for *Manlius*, &c.——As to R, we daily see many people who cannot pronounce it.

Again. L and R, Z and J, or G, are so near a kin to one another, that those who cannot pronounce R, on account of its roaring articulation, naturally fall into the pronunciation of L; as likewise those who cannot pronounce J, or G, before a vowel, express of course the articulation of Z, saying *King Zorze and the Loyal Family*, for *King George and the Royal Family*.

S had no other articulation in Latin but its hissing one; but in our modern languages it takes the articulation of z, when it comes between two vowels; as in the French word *misère*, from the Latins, which they pronounce *misseria*.

H serves only to denote aspiration. The oriental languages had three or four guttural letters, serving to that purpose only. The Romans have only preserved that letter, with which they supplied in their language, what the Greeks used to denote by their *esprits rudes*, and aspirate consonants. It keeps still some-

thing

thing of that use in many English words spelt with *th*, which answers the θ of the Greeks. Besides, it does not always denote aspiration, in our modern languages, but most times serves only to show the Etymology of words.

The Ancients called X and Z double, because they were, the first, as much as *cs* and *gs*, and the other as *ds*. The Greeks had, besides, their Ψ, which was as much as *ps*.

X keeps still the same power and articulation with us. Z has another more simple and less harsh. But the English have some other double consonants, especially G and J, which are as much as *dg* or *dj*, and *c* before *h*, followed by a vowel, which is as much as *tch*, as in the word *chin*, which is pronounced *tshin*.

It is still a great difficulty to resolve, among Grammarians, whether the Latins had our J and V, and therefore whether or not they had Triphthongs in their language (that is, the meeting of three vowels in one syllable, each expressed by its peculiar and usual sound). One may see what learned Grammarians have written thereupon. It is to be observed here, that although the English gave the name of vowels to the five or six first figures, yet when they pronounce I, U, and Y, by themselves, they express the natural and peculiar sound of Diphthongs, expressing in the sound of U by itself, the very same that is heard in pronouncing the pronoun *you*; and in the sound of Y, the very same that is heard in *why*.

However it be, as to the invention of those sounds and articulations, and of the figures that represent them, as also the different distinctions Grammarians have made of them, it is certain, that in every language, reason has been left unregarded, which prescribed, in the first place, to make as many vowels as the mouth can naturally form simple sounds, and mark them with so many simple figures or letters. Thus, although five vowels only are usually reckoned, yet the Greeks have seven or eight, marked with so many simple figures. And since they thought the difference in pronouncing one and the same sound, as *e* and *o*, sufficient to make two several and distinct sounds of each of these two vowels, according as it is formed with a larger or less degree of opening the mouth, and have likewise marked them with very different figures, ε, η, ο, ω; had they done the same thing with respect to the other vowels, and considered the difference that may be found in each of them, according to the various opening of the mouth, and as the breath which forms them, is affected in its passage by the

the ſeveral parts of that organ, they ſhould have diſcovered at leaſt ſixteen or ſeventeen, all which are found in the French language; *a*, *â*, *é* or *ai*, *è* or *ait*, *ê* or *ais*, *e* or *eu*, *i*, *o*, *ô* or *aux*, *u*, *an*, *en*, *in*, *on*, *un*, *eux*, *ou*: all ſounds as ſimple as *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and which could have been repreſented by ſimple figures thus:

a, â, e, é, è, ê, i, o, ω, u, ā, ē, ī, ō, ū, ε.

Again: It is certain, that it would have been more natural, and more convenient for the mutual correſpondence of nations, to have marked with ſimple figures the articulations which we mark with two figures, though we only intend to expreſs and repreſent a conſonant. Such are the articulations of *gn* and *il* before vowels, which could have been marked, the firſt called *n liquid*, with ν; and the ſecond called *l liquid* with λ. Such is alſo the articulation of *ch*, or the Engliſh *ſh*, marked in Hebrew with the ſimple letter ש (*ſchin*). So that the French language ſhould have had about forty figures or letters, inſtead of its five-and-twenty, to mark its ſounds and articulations in the moſt natural manner, as appears by the tables prefixed to the Treatiſe of the Pronunciation: without taking notice here of other figures, that might have been invented for the perfection of writing, as the Greeks did their Ξ or ξ, Ψ, ϛ, and χ, which are only abbreviations for *cs*, *ps*, *ſt*, and *ſk*, of which we have preſerved only X.

Another thing, that reaſon preſcribed in the invention of figures or letters, is, that one and the ſame ſound ſhould not be marked with more figures than one, or with different figures; as the ſound of *ea* in *read*, which is marked with *ee* in *feed*; or *ea* in *bread*, denoted by *e* in *bred*, and *bed*, &c. nor that the ſame figures ſhould have marked different ſounds, as *ea*, that denotes in *earth* the ſound of French *a*, in *bread* that of French *e*, in *meat* that of French *i*, &c.

For the like reaſon, one and the ſame articulation ſhould not have been marked with theſe three different figures, C, K, Q: nor ſhould C have taken the power of *s* before *e* and *i*; nor *g* before the ſame vowels, have been pronounced otherwiſe than before *a*, *o*, *u*; nor *t* have been articulated like *s* before *i*, followed by another vowel.

Laſtly, Reaſon required that every figure ſhould mark ſome ſound or articulation, that is, that no letter ſhould be ſet down in any word, but what is pronounced. For although the ſuperfluous letters in words often denote their Etymology, modern languages being all derived from the ancient ones; as *p* in the French

word *champs* denotes its being derived from the Latin *campus*, and *t* in *chants* from *cantus*; yet it seems that the inconvenience would have been less to pronounce these words *champs* and *chants*, conformable to the whole import and force of the letters, even without excepting the characteristic letter of the plural number, than to mark with these so many different figures (*amps* and *ants*) the simple sound of *a* (nasal), or *an*.

Upon the whole, there are abuses common to all languages, and there is no possibility of remedying them, since the Emperor *Claudius* could not get one new letter only introduced into the Roman language. (It was the Digamma of the *Æolians*, very likely to serve as a V.) But there is no nation that has less reason to complain that the French write otherwise than they pronounce, than the English; there being perhaps no language in the world, wherein the sounds are marked with more different letters, and the same letters mark more various sounds, than in the English Tongue, which, besides, wants the foundations essential to all languages, I mean a Grammar, to promote the learning of it, and make it easy to foreigners.

¶ This was written in 1750.]

From these observations upon letters it follows,

1*st*, That in all languages there are more simple sounds or vowels, than are used to be marked with simple figures, or letters.

2*dly*, That of these three compound sounds, C, K, Q, two of them are useless; they all three expressing but one and the same articulation: as likewise the power and use of G, before *e* and *i*, in some languages, which marks no other articulation but that of J, and therefore might have kept before these two vowels the same power and use that it has in all languages before *a*, *o*, *u*.

3*dly*, That those three consonants might, nay should, have been supplied by three or more others, essential in some languages, to mark the liquid articulations denoted by *gn*, and *ill*, as also the articulations of *ch*, *sh*, &c.

4*thly*, That the Hebrews and Greeks, from whom the Latins took their Letters, always began with a consonant to name the letters of that appellation, calling, the Greeks their B *Beta*, and the Hebrews, their ב *Beth*, &c. But that the Latins, from whom our modern languages have taken their consonants, with their appellations, most arbitrarily, and injudiciously too, changed that natural order, calling *el*, *em*, *en*, &c. the λ *Lambda*, μ, *Mu*, ν *Nu*, of the Greeks, and the ל *Lamed*, מ *Mem*, נ *Nun* of the Hebrews. They had indeed some reason to shorten the appellation of consonants,

nants, calling only *bee* and *ell* what the others called *beta*, *lambda*, &c. But it was contrary to all reason they began the appellation of some of them with the vowel *e*: although they, at the same time, abstained, either through caprice or reason, to put *e* before some others, and rather chose to say, *bee*, *cee*, *dee*, than *eb*, *ec*, *ed*, as they said *el*, *em*, *en*, &c.

5*thly*, That double letters, though ever so useful for the perfection of writing, yet are not necessary in the language; they expressing and denoting no peculiar articulation, but what may be, and is, in effect, denoted by other letters: and therefore we could as well be without *x*, as without ψ, ς, and χ, instead of which we use the two letters *ps*, *ſt*, *ſc*. So that even omitting K, Q, and G, which we have seen to be useless in speech, having no other power than C and J; and reducing therefore the letters to the number of twenty-one, or even twenty (for H is no letter, and denotes only aspiration); these twenty letters not only serve as much as the forty, which I have said the French language should have had, if regard had been had to reason in the invention of sounds and figures; but also they are sufficient for all languages that ever were, or ever can be, to distinguish every modification of the voice, and by their various combinations to form that infinite number of words, which represent our thoughts.

"There are indeed but twenty-six in our tongue (says the author of an English Grammar), and yet they may be so variously disposed as to make more than five hundred and seventy-six several words of two letters, and twenty-six times as many words may be formed of three letters; that is to say, fifteen thousand and six; and twenty-six times as many more may be made of four several letters, that is, nine hundred thousand thirty-six; and so on in proportion. From this manifold generation of Words, from the various combinations of letters, we may judge of their vast variety, as being indeed not much less than infinite." *Eng. Gram. N.* 2. p. 61.

These characters or letters, were called in Greek γραμμάτα, from whence the word *Grammar* is derived: not that Grammar treats of sounds and letters only, but because they are the foundation and basis of speech. And the set of letters, used in any language, is called *Alphabet*, from the two first Greek letters Αλφα Βητα.

A syllable, which we have said to be part of words, either spoken or written, is derived from the Greek word συλλαβη, which is, Comprehension, to wit, of letters in one sound, though a single

ſingle vowel can make a ſyllable. Thus much for ſounds and letters.

The ſeveral ſpecies of words which ſpeech is compoſed of, is alſo a natural conſequence of what paſſes in our mind: and the order in which they have been invented, for repreſenting our thoughts, has neceſſarily its ground in the nature of things.

The firſt thing men did, was to give names to the various beings of the univerſe, in the middle of which they lived, and of which they wanted to ſpeak. Conſidering therefore every being as a thing ſubſiſting, as well as themſelves, in nature, they called *Nouns* and *Subſtantives* the words of this ſpecies.

As they found it diſagreeable to repeat the ſame name, when they wanted to ſpeak of its ſubject ſeveral times together; in order to remedy that inconvenience, they invented a ſpecies of words, whoſe part is to denote what other words are to name. They have been well named *Pronouns*, as if one ſaid, which is uſed inſtead of nouns. And this proves evidently, that theſe words commonly ranged among pronouns, *mon*, *ma*, *mes*, my; *ton*, *ta*, *tes*, thy; *ſon*, *ſa*, *ſes*, his; *notre*, *nos*, our; *votre*, *vos*, your; *le mien*, mine, *&c.* *quelque* ſome, *quel* what, *chaque* every, *&c.* do not belong to this ſpecies of words, being only adnouns qualifying and reſtraining, inſtead of articles, the ſenſe of the nouns before which they come.

As men cannot ſpeak of things but in ſaying what they are, or do, or what happens to them, that is, in giving them qualities, or ſhewing their action by events, it was neceſſary to eſtabliſh words for theſe two ends. Thoſe uſed to denote the Qualities are called *Adnouns*, or *Adjectives*, becauſe they are added and joined to the nouns, or ſubſtantives, to qualify the things named by them. Such is the third ſpecies of words.

The words deſigned to denote the actions and events, cauſed by the perpetual motion of all the parts of the univerſe, make the fourth ſpecies called *Verbs*; which ſignifies *ſpeech* in an eminent ſenſe, becauſe there can be no ſpeech without verbs.

In conſidering the Qualifications and Actions, it appeared that they were ſuſceptible of different modifications. From thence aroſe the *Adverbs*, which are only modifications of actions and qualifications, and ſignify what is added to the verb.

The number of the ſame objects, or the repeating of the ſame actions, cauſed of courſe the invention of another ſpecies of words, proper to denote *Calculation* or *Reckoning*: and theſe are the *Numerals*, or nouns of number, which cannot be ranged in any

other clafs, being as different from the other words by their accidents, as by the origin and caufe of their inftitution.

Afterwards men faw that they wanted words proper to denote the relations that are put between things, in order to fix the idea of the one by that of the other. For which purpofe they invented the *Prepofitions*, which (as their fignification is) being put before a noun, denote the relation which it has with the noun or verb that comes before.

They likewife perceived that, things being often connected together, it was neceffary to exprefs thofe connexions, in order to make a coherent and well-connected fpeech; which occafioned the fpecies of words called *Conjunctions*, whofe name fhows plain enough the part which they act in fpeech.

Laftly, After providing for the words fit to exprefs the name, denotation, qualification, action, modification, calculation, as likewife the relations and connections of things, they wanted moreover to exprefs the paffions and emotions of their mind; and to that end they invented *Particles*; which are more or lefs in number, according to the genius of languages.

Thus the Art of Speech turns upon nine fpecies of words, vulgarly called by Grammarians *Parts of Speech*. Some add to them the Article; but I think it is only an accident in the noun, its power being to extend or reftrain the fignification of it: nouns being as often ufed without the article as with it; and therefore I have ranged the article among the Particles. Others make a particular fpecies of words of the Participle, which is nothing but a mode of the verb, and will not allow the adjectives to be one, but confound them with the fubftantives, though effentially different: fo that Grammarians are not agreed as yet concerning the number of the parts of fpeech, nor what they are.

I have kept in my Grammar to the number and divifions of the parts of fpeech which feem to be more natural; though, upon the whole, it is very indifferent how many I admit, and how I divide them, fo I thoroughly explain the proper ufe and conftruction of the words of the French language: which I think I have done in the moft accurate and intelligible manner, in the third part of this Grammar. The narrow compafs of this work does not permit me to enlarge more upon the relations that the parts of fpeech have to each other, and to the nature of things; nor to treat of the fubdiftinctions of the fame parts of fpeech, and the reafons of them. (One may confult thereupon the learned Authors of *la Grammaire raifonnée*, *Port-Royal's Latin Grammar*, and the notes upon the Englifh Grammar, which contains an abridgment

ment of the said works.) I shall only set down here the chief divisions, with the significations of such Grammatical Terms as most occur, and which one must not be quite ignorant of.

Words are considered both with respect to their Figure or Frame, and with respect to their Species or Origin.

Words, considered with respect to their figure, are either Simple, as, *juste* just, *dire* to say; or Compound, that is, made up of one or more words, or that take some syllabical adjection; as, *injuste* unjust, *redire* to say again.

Words, considered with respect to their species, are either Primitive, which come from no other word, as *mort* death, *babil* prattling; or Derivative, which come from another word, as, *mortel* mortal, *babiller* to prattle.

Nouns are divided into Substantive and Adjective by most Grammarians. Nouns substantive are again divided into Proper and Appellative, or Common: and this last into Abstract, Patrial, Equivocal, Synonyma's, Verbal, Augmentative, and Diminutive.

A Proper noun is the particular name of any singular person or thing, or place: as, *George*, *Londres* London, *la Tamise* the Thames.

An Appellative or Common noun, is that which is applicable to all things of the same kind: as, *Animal*, *homme* a man, *Roi* a king, *ville* a city, *rivière* a river.

Men have besides joined two accessary Ideas to that of the noun. The one is a respect to the sex, called *Gender*; the other a respect to unity, or plurality, which is called *Number*; and both together are called *Accidence*.

An Abstract noun is a substantive derived from an adjective, expressing the quality of that adjective in general, without regard to the thing in which the quality is: as, *bonté* goodness, from *bon* good; *douceur* sweetness, from *doux* sweet.

A Patrial or Gentile noun is derived from a Substantive Proper, signifying one's country: as, *François*, a Frenchman, *Parisien*, of Paris, *Bourguignon*, *Gascon*, &c. of Burgundy, Gascogne, &c.

An *Equivocal* noun is that which has a double meaning; as, *un livre* a book, *une livre* a pound.

Synonyma's are words of the same import, or which express the same thing several ways; as, *chemin* way, *route* road, &c.

Verbal nouns are substantives or adjectives derived from a verb; as, *amour* love, *aimable* lovely, from *aimer* to love; *parleur* talker, from *parler* to talk, &c.

Augmentative and Diminutive nouns are substantives importing an increase or lessening of the signification of their primitive: as, *lourdaut* a loggerhead, from *lourd* heavy; *fillette* a little girl, from *fille* a girl; *arbrisseau* a shrub, from *arbre* a tree; *lapereau* a young rabbit, from *lapin* a rabbit, *&c.*——Some diminutives have no resemblance at all to the substantives of which they lessen the signification: as, *bidet* a poney, being the diminutive of *cheval* a horse; *marcassin* a young wild boar, of *sanglier* a wild boar.

§ II. *Observations on the Construction, Use, and Signification of certain Words, which most frequently occur in Speech, wherein chiefly consists the*

IDIOM *of* FRENCH.

Grammar should, if it were possible, treat of all the words of a language, and take notice of the signification of each singly; for it is not the art of making one's self understood and how, but of exhibiting one's thoughts with propriety and perspicuity: which cannot be done without a thorough knowledge of all the various significations, and constructions of the words of which it is composed. The Genius of a language consists in the latter, the other relates to its Idiom. Grammar hardly treats of the significations of words. It suffices for it to consider such constructions wherein the Genius of the language consists, and leaves it to Dictionaries to treat of the Words and Idioms. I shall nevertheless consider here under the common Idioms of the French with respect to English; and have reserved for a particular book such Idioms as cannot be treated of methodically.

I. AMITIÉ (*friendship*) is often used in the singular for *faveur*, *kindness*, &c.

Faites-moi cette amitié; Do me that kindness, or favour.

Amitiés (in the plural) is said of *caresses*, and *making much of*: as,

Il m'a fait mille amitiés; He made very much of me.

II. AMOURS (in the plural) is feminine, except when it signifies *Cupid*: as, *Il n'est point de* laides *amours*; Never seemed a mistress foul. *Il y a autour d'elle mille* petits *amours*; A thousand Cupids stand round her.

III. AN, ANNÉE (a year) are not used promiscuously; *an* is used,

1°. After

1°. After nouns of the cardinal number: as, *J'ai trente ans*; I am thirty years old. *C'est une fille de quinze ans*; She is a girl of fifteen. *Il y a vingt-cinq ans passés*; It was five and twenty years ago.

2°. Before nouns of the ordinal number: as, *L'an quinzième de l'empire*, the fifteenth year of the empire: *L'an mil sept cent quarante-neuf*, the year one thousand seven hundred and forty-nine, (wherein the cardinal number is used for the ordinal.) We say, *le jour de l'an*; New year's day: *le premier jour de l'an*; the first day of the year.

Année is used, 1°. After nouns of the ordinal number: as, *Elle est dans sa vingtième année*, or *Elle a vingt ans*; She is in her twentieth year, *or* she is twenty.

2°. After the article: as, *l'année passée* or *dernière*; last year: *l'année qui vient* or *l'année prochaine*; next year: although we say *l'an de grâce*; the year of grace: *l'an du monde* or *de notre Seigneur* the year of the world, *or* of our Lord.

3°. With an epithet, or adnoun, signifying any thing but measure of time: as, *Une bonne & heureuse année*; a happy new year: *Nos belles années passent bien vîte*; Our prime goes away very quick, *or* is soon over.

4°. We almost always use *année* before and after nouns: as, *Un grand nombre d'années*; a great number of years: *Il reste encore trois mois de l'année*; We have three months yet to come of this year.

IV. ACCOUTUMER *(to use)*, and S'ACCOUTUMER *(to use* or *accustom one's self)*. ÊTRE ACCOUTUMÉ *(to be used)*, require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive; and AVOIR COUTUME, AVOIR ACCOUTUMÉ (this last begins to be obsolete) require *de*: as,

Il l'accoutume à *le suivre*;	He uses him to follow him.
Il s'accoutume à *lire*;	He uses himself to read.
Je suis accoutumé à *souffrir*;	I am used to bear.
J'ai coutume de *perdre*;	I use to lose.

V. AGIR *(to act)*, preceded by the particle *en*, and followed by an adverb, signifies *to do by*, *to deal with*, or *use one*: as, *En agir bien avec*, or *envers quelqu'un*, or *à son égard*; To do well by one, to deal well with him. *Il en agit mal envers elle* or *à son égard*; He uses her ill.

And when *agir* is used impersonally with the reflected pronoun *(il s'agit, il s'agissoit)* it is englished as follows:

De quoi s'agit-il? What is the matter? *Il s'agit de faire cela*; This is the business in question. *Il ne s'agissoit pas de cela*; That

was not the business in hand. *Il ne s'agit pas de peu de choses*; It is not a trifling concern.

VI. AIDER *(to help)* governs both the first and third state, as *Aidez-lui à faire cela*; Help him to do that. *Aidez-lui à porter sa charge*; Help him to carry his burthen. It governs the third state, when it signifies more properly, *to share and divide the trouble with one.*

VII. AIMER is *to love:* but AIMER MIEUX denotes commonly the choice which one makes of one thing before another, and is expressed by *to have rather, to chuse rather*, &c. as, *J'aime mieux celui-ci que l'autre*; I like this better than the other: *J'aime mieux rester au logis que d'aller promener*; I rather chuse to stay at home than go a walking.

VIII. The Present and Imperfect of ALLER *(to go)*, coming before an infinitive without a preposition, denote a thing which one is, or was about to do, or which is, or was about to fall out, and is rendered with *to be going, to be ready, to be about*, or *upon the point*, and sometimes with a future only: as,

Je vais étudier; I am going to study. *Elle alloit chanter*; She was going to sing. *Je vais*, or *Je m'en vais partir tout à l'heure*; I'll set out presently. Nay, these two tenses are even construed with the verb *aller* in that sense: as,

Je vais m'en aller; I am going away. *Il alloit y aller*; He was going thither. *Nous allions aller chez vous*; We were upon the point of going to your house.

IX. The Present and Imperfect of VENIR *(to come)*, coming before an infinitive with the preposition *de*, denotes a thing *just now* done, which is most times too expressed with these two particles: as, *Je viens de diner*; I have *just* dined. *Elle venoit de lui écrire quand*, &c.; She had *just* written to him when——*Le Roi vient de le nommer à cet Evêché*; The King has *lately* named him to that Bishoprick.

Venir, before the infinitive with *à*, denotes, and is englished by, *setting*, or *going about something*, or *to begin:* as, *Quand il vint à danser*; When he began to dance.——*Se mettre à*, is another verb of the same signification: as, *Pour peu que vous lui parliez, elle se met à pleurer*; If you speak to her ever so little, she *falls a* crying.

Again, *Aller*, as well as *venir*, sometimes serves only to denote the possibility there is for the action of the verb following to happen, and is englished sometimes by *to happen, to chance*, and sometimes

times by a Conditional tense only: as, *Il seroit perdu si sa femme venoit à savoir cela*; He would be undone if his wife should happen to know that. *Voyez où j'en serois, si elle alloit croire cela*; Mind what case I should be in, if she should chance to believe that.

Aller, is also said, as well as *faire*, of things that fit, or do not fit one well: as, *Cet habit vous va bien*; This coat fits you well. *Cette grande perruque ne lui va*, or *ne lui fait pas bien du tout*; That great wig does not fit him well at all.

Aller, *venir*, and *revenir*, are said of ships bound from one place to another: as, *Ce vaisseau vient de la Havanne & va à Cadix*. That ship is *bound* from the Havannah *to* Cadiz. *Nous allions à la Chine*; We were sailing to China. *Un vaisseau qui revient de l'Amérique*; A ship *homeward bound* from the West-Indies.

Aller, used impersonally with the particle *y* before, and a noun in the second state after it, is englished thus, *Il y va de l'honneur*; Honour is at stake. *Il y alloit de la vie*; Life was concerned in it, or life was at stake.

X. Apparoitre and Paroitre *(to appear)*. The first is said only of *spirits* and *ghosts*: as, *Un ange lui apparut*; An angel appeared to him. *Les spectres n'apparoissent que dans la nuit*; Ghosts, or spirits, appear only in the night-time. The other is said of whatever falls under the eyes; as, *Le soleil paroît*; The sun appears, or shows itself. *Il paroît une Comète*; A Comet appears.

XI. Avoir *(to have)* is used instead of *être*, when we speak of *being old*, *hungry*, *thirsty*, *cold* and *hot* (relating to the weather, as it affects men); as, *Il a six ans*; He is six years old. *J'ai faim*; I am hungry. *Je n'ai pas soif*; I am not thirsty. *Elle a chaud*; She is warm.

Observe that *chaud* and *froid* are indeclinable in these sentences; these words being then used adverbially: Therefore let not a woman say *J'ai chaude*, and still less *Je suis chaude*.

But with respect to being hot and cold, the English Pronouns possessive, construed with the nouns of the parts said to be hot, or cold, are made moreover by the pronoun personal, expressing the subject before *avoir*, in French, and the noun of the part is put in the 3d state; as, *J'ai froid* aux *pieds*; *My* feet *are* cold. *Il a chaud aux mains*; *His* hands *are* warm.

It is the same when we speak of any *pain*, *wound*, or *sore*, which we have got in any part of the body. We use avoir without a pronoun

pronoun possessive before the noun of the sick or wounded part, which is always put in the third state, and the words *pain* and *sore* are rendered by *mal:* as, *J'ai mal à la tête*; I have a pain in my head. *Il a mal aux yeux*; He has sore eyes.

AVOIR BEAU, used to denote that one does a thing in vain, is englished several ways, as follows:

J'ai beau l'attendre, il ne viendra pas; I may stay long enough for him, he will not come. *Il a beau faire, il n'en viendra jamais à bout*; Let him do what he will, *or* what he can, *or* for all that he may do, he will never bring it about. *Vous avez beau lui donner des avis, elle ne veut suivre que sa tête*; It signifies nothing to advise her ever so much, or ever so well, she will follow her own head nevertheless. *Vous avez beau faire & beau dire, il n'en sera ni plus ni moins*; You may do and say what you please, *or* whatsoever you may do and say, *or* for all you may do and say, it will be so nevertheless. *Il aura beau dire & beau faire, je n'en rabattrai rien*; He may do and say whatever he pleases, I will not abate an inch on it. *Le pauvre homme eut beau appeler du secours*; It was to little purpose the poor man called for assistance.

XII. N'AVOIR GARDE, signifies *to have not the inclination* or *power* to do a thing, and is englished thus: *Il n'a garde de tromper, il est trop honnête homme*; He is too honest a man to think of cheating. *Il n'a garde de s'enfuir, il a la jambe cassée*; How can he run away since his leg is broken?

XIII. *To do nothing but*, is NE FAIRE QUE, with an infinitive without a preposition: as, *Il ne fait que boire & manger*; He does nothing but eat and drink.

XIV. *To want none of, to have no occasion for*, or *no need of*, is N'AVOIR QUE FAIRE DE: as AVOIR AFFAIRE DE is *to want, to have occasion for:* as,

Je n'ai que faire de votre argent; I want none of your money.

Elle n'a que faire de parler; She has no occasion to speak, she needs not speak.

XV. AU RESTE, DU RESTE *(as for the rest, besides)*, must not be confounded. *Au reste* is used, when, to what comes before, something is added of the same kind, and is the sequel of it: as, *Cette poursuite ne se peut faire qu' à grands frais. Au reste elle a peu de bien, huit enfans, et elle est endettée.* This prosecution cannot be but very expensive. As for the rest, *or* besides, her fortune is but small, she has eight children, and is in debt.

Du reste is used, when what follows is not of the same kind as that which comes before, or is not essentially related to it: as, *Il étoit colère, bizarre, prodigue; du reste, homme d'honneur & bon ami*; He was passionate, whimsical, and extravagant; but in other respects, a man of honour and a good friend.

Au reste outdoes most commonly what has been said. *Du reste* always implies opposition, and signifies almost the same thing, as, *for all that, that being excepted.*

Au reste sometimes elegantly comes after the first word or words of the sentence: *Du reste* always comes the first.

XVI. AÏEUX (plur. numb. of *aïeul*, Grandfather) is generally used to signify *ancestors* and *forefathers*: as, *Ses aïeux ont possédé de grandes charges*; His ancestors have enjoyed great places: *ancestors* signifying no more *Grandfathers* than *Great grandfathers*, or *Great-great-grandfathers*, &c. But *aïeux* may be (though seldom) restrained to its first signification of the plural of *aïeul*: as, *Ses deux aïeux ont été honorés des plus belles charges du Royaume*; Both his grandfathers have been honoured with the handsomest places in the kingdom.

XVII. *To know*, is both SAVOIR, and CONNOÎTRE, with the difference, that the former is said of Sciences, and things that are properly the object of the intellectual faculties, and have been studied or got by heart: as, *Savez-vous votre leçon?* Can you say your lesson? *Il sait le Latin*; He understands Latin. *Je sais ce que vous dites*; I know what you say. *Il sait mieux qu'il ne dit*; He knows better than he says.

The latter is said of things that are the object of our senses, and import properly *being acquainted with*: as, *Je connois cet homme-là*; I know that man. *Il connoît ce pays-là*; He knows that country.

Again. Whenever *to know* can be resolved by *to understand*, it is *savoir*, otherwise it is *connaître*.

Savoir bon gré à quelqu'un d'une chose; To take it well, or kindly of one.

Lui en savoir mauvais gré; To take it amiss, or unkindly of him.

Faire savoir une chose à quelqu'un; To let one know a thing, to acquaint him with it.

XVIII. DEVOIR *(to owe, to be bound)*, when it comes before an infinitive without a preposition, denotes only futurity in the action of the verb following, and is made by the future of the second

second verb in *English*, or by the verb *to be*, before an infinitive: as,

Il doit venir; He is to come. *Elle doit partir demain*; She will set out to-morrow. *Je dois parler sur cette affaire*; I am to speak about that affair.

Sometimes *devoir* signifies *must needs*: as, *Il est tout nu, il doit avoir bien froid*; He is all naked, he *must needs* be very cold.

XIX. ECOUTER sometimes signifies *to hearken* and *to listen to*: as, *Ecoutez*, Hark'ye; *Il écoute ce que nous disons*, He listens to what we say: and sometimes *to mind*, *to attend*; as, *Ecoutez ce qu'on dit*; Mind what is said.

ENTENDRE signifies *to hear* and *to overhear*: *Il nous a entendus tout le temps*; He has overheard us all the while.

XX. EMPLIR (*to fill up*) is said of liquids only: as, *Emplir un tonneau, une bouteille*, &c. to fill a cask, a bottle, *&c.*

REMPLIR is said of any thing but liquids, besides its signification of reduplification: as, *Remplir ses coffres d'or & d'argent*; To fill up one's trunk with gold and silver. *Remplissez le verre*; Fill up the glass again.

XXI. ENFERMER is said of what is locked or shut in a box, trunk, chamber, *&c.* and RENFERMER, of what nature produces, and is contained, or included in the earth or sea: as, *Je l'ai enfermé dans mon bureau*; I have locked it up in my bureau. *Que de trésors la Nature ne renferme-t-elle pas dans son sein!* What treasure does not Nature inclose in her bosom!

XXII. ENFER, with the Christians is not used in the plural, except in the article of the Creed. *Il est descendu aux enfers*: He descended into Hell.

But we say *les peines de l'enfer*; the torments of hell.

With the Heathens it is not used in the singular: as, *Mercure conduisoit les âmes aux enfers*; Mercury carried the souls to hell.

XXIII. ENTENDRE is both *to hear* and *to understand*, according as the thing is the object of the sense of *hearing*, or that of the *understanding*: as, *Je vous entends*; I hear you, I understand you.

Il entend cela mieux que vous; He understands that better than you.

Faire entendre, is *to intimate*.

To understand, signifies also *savoir*, when the thing spoken of is a science or an art: as, *Elle sait le Latin*; She understands Latin.

And

And when the thing meant, or the object of the verb, is any quality of things, *to understand* is made in *French* by *se connoître en*, or *à*, as, *Il se connoît en toile*; He understands linen-cloth.

Vous y connoissez-vous? Do you understand these things?

XXIV. ESPÉRER *(to hope)* is never said in *French* of what is present or past: because hope is the expectation of things to come, though not certain or sure. Therefore do not say *J'espère que vous vouz portez bien*; I hope that you are well: *J'espère qu'il s'est bien porté à la campagne*; I hope that he has been well in the country: But say *Il paroît, il me semble*, or *Je présume que vous vous portez bien*; *Je me flatte*, or *J'ai lieu de croire*, or *Je m'imagine qu'il s'est bien porté à la campagne:* or else take another turn, as an interrogation, saying simply, *Vous portez-vous bien? Comment s'est-il porté à la campagne?*

XXV. EVEILLER and RÉVEILLER *(to awake, to call up:)* *éveiller* is said of a regular time, and intimates something natural and usual: as, *On m'éveille tous les matins à cinq heures*; I am awaked every morning at five: *Ne m'éveillez demain qu' à sept*; Do not awake me to-morrow till seven.

Réveiller, implies something irregular and sudden, and is said with respect to an extraordinary, unusual time: as,

Un grand bruit m'a réveillé; A great noise has awaked me.

Le Ministre veut qu'on le réveille, toutes les fois qu'il arrive un courier; The Minister will be awaked, whenever an express or messenger comes.

XXVI. FAIRE, in its most general signification, is *to do*, or *to make:* but it has a great many more particular significations much in use.

1°. *Faire*, before an infinitive, without any preposition, signifies generally *to get, to bid, to cause, to order*, with the noun expressing the object after the verb in the infinitive, and not before, as in *English:* and when it signifies *to cause*, or *order*, the *French* infinitive is turned from its active state into the passive: as,

Faites lire cet enfant; Make that child read.

Faites venir cet homme; Bid that man come.

Il le fit mettre à mort; He ordered him to be put to death.

Elle fit assassiner son amant; She caused her lover to be murdered.

2°. Before the infinitive of *faire*, it signifies *to bespeak, to get made:* as,

Il a fait faire une montre d'or à répétition;

He has bespoke a gold repeating watch.

3°. It signifies *to see, to do in such a manner that:* as,

Faites qu'il soit content, or, } See that he is contented.
Faites en sorte qu'il soit content, }

4° *To counterfeit:* as,

Ceux qui font les fous à propos ne le sont guères;

Those who counterfeit themselves mad seasonably, are hardly so.

5°. *To pretend, set up, personate,* or *act:* as,

Il fait le Philosophe; He sets up for a Philosopher.

Elle fait la belle; She pretends to be handsome.

Vous ferez l'avare; You will act *or* personate the miser.

6°. *To dress, clean,* or *make up:* as,

Faire la chambre; To clean the room.

Faire la cuisine; To cook, to dress victuals.

Faire le lit; To make the bed.

7°. *Se faire,* is *to use one's self to:* as,

Se faire à la fatigue; To use *or* inure one's self to hardships.

8°. *Faire,* used impersonally with an adnoun, expresses the qualities of the weather: as,

Il fait beau, or *beau temps;* It is fine weather: *Il fait froid;* It is cold.

9°. *Avoir,* with the word *affaire,* signifies *to want:* and with *faire,* but preceded by *ne* and *que,* it signifies *not to want, to need not, to have no occasion for:* as,

J'ai affaire de cela, & vous n'en avez que faire;

I want that and you do not, *or* you have no occasion for it.

10°. *Faire* is used, as in English, instead of repeating a verb that has just been expressed in the sentence, especially after a comparative; but it is not so frequently used in this sense as it is in English: as,

Il apprend mieux qu'il ne faisoit; He learns better than he did.

XXVII. Faire Grace signifies *to forgive,* or *excuse:* as,

Je vous fais grâce de la moitié des dépens; } I forgive you half of the charges.

Le Roi lui a fait grâce; } The King has forgiven him, *or* granted him his pardon. And

Faire une grâce, is *to do a favour:* as,

Faites-moi une grâce; Do me a favour. We also say,

Il lui fait grâce; He favours him, he befriends him.

Dieu lui en fasse la grâce; God grant he may.

XXVIII. Fleurir, signifies in its proper sense *to blossom,* and in its figurative *to flourish, to be in repute;* the French having but *one* expression for these two English words. But in order to distinguish more particularly between the proper sense and the figura-

figurative, an irregularity has been introduced in some of the inflexions of this verb.—The regular gerund of *fleurir* is *fleurissant*, as *les arbres fleurissant*, the trees being in blossom: but in the figurative sense we say *florissant*; as *un état, un empire florissant*, a flourishing state, or empire.

The same irregularity takes place in the imperfect: we say, in the proper sense, *Cet arbre fleurissoit tous les ans deux fois*, That tree was in blossom twice every year: and in the figurative sense; *Un tel florissoit sous son règne*, Such a one flourished, *or* was in repute under his reign: *Les Arts & les Sciences florissoient alors*, Arts and Sciences flourished at that time, *or* were in high esteem.

We also say figuratively *un style fleuri*, a florid style; *un teint fleuri*, a blooming complexion.

XXIX. Se fier *(to trust)* has a threefold construction. *Se fier à son mérite, se fier en son mérite, se fier sur son mérite*, to trust to one's merit.

XXX. Fournir *(to afford, to supply with)* is construed with both the first and third state: as,

La rivière le *fournit de sel, La rivière* lui *fournit du sel*,
The river affords him salt, *or* supplies him with salt.

The former way signifies properly, that the river supplies him with as much salt as he can consume in his family. The latter may signify besides, that the river affords him so great a quantity of salt as to sell, and trade therewith.

XXXI. Gens *(people)*. There is not one word in the French language liable to more several and odd constructions than this.

Gens is a plural noun, which is never said of a determinate number of people, unless it is attended by an adnoun. Therefore we do not say *trois ou quatre gens, six gens*, &c. as the *English* do, three or four people, six people, &c. but we say *trois honnêtes gens*, three honest people (meaning gentlemen); *dix jeunes gens*, ten young people, and *trois ou quatre personnes*.

Gens is masculine when it comes before its adnoun, and feminine when the adnoun comes first: as,

Ce sont des gens résolus, They are resolute people.
Ce sont de bonnes gens, They are good people.

But though the adnoun coming before *gens* is feminine, yet if there follows another adnoun, or a participle, this last must be masculine: as,

Il y a de certaines gens qui sont bien sots, and not *sottes*,
Some people are very foolish.

Ce sont les meilleures *gens que j'aie jamais* vus, and not *ouïs*;
They are the best sort of people I have ever seen.

The word *tout*, coming before *gens*, is put in the masculine when it is attended by no other adnouns, or the adnoun, coming before it, is of the common gender: as,

Tous les gens qui, &c. All people that, &c.
Tous les honnêtes gens sont cela; All gentlefolks do that.
Tous les jeunes gens sont volages; All young people are fickle.

But when the adnoun attending *gens* is feminine, the word *tout* agrees with it too: as,

Toutes les vieilles gens; All old people.
Toutes les bonnes gens; All good people.

Gens signifies also *domestics*, and is used with a determinate number; as, *Il arriva avec quatre de ses gens*;
He arrived with four of his men, *or* servants.

XXXII. Bonne grace, in the singular, signifies *genteelness, agreeableness*: as, *Elle a bonne grâce*; She is genteel.
Il salue de bonne grâce; He bows in a genteel manner.

In the plural, *bonnes grâces*, signifies *favour* and *benevolence*: as,
Il est dans ses bonnes grâces; He is in his *or* her favour.
Conservez-moi l'honneur de vos bonnes grâces;
Do me the honour to keep me a place in your favour.

XXXIII. Jouer *(to play)* is both neuter and active in French; though it is but in very few cases active in English: as,

Jouer quelque chose; To play for something.
Jouons un écu; Let us play for a crown.

The particle *at*, used after the word *playing*, before the names of *Games* and *Exercises*, is expressed in French by the particles *à*, *au*, *à la*, *aux*: and the particle *upon*, used before the names of *Instruments*, by *du*, *de la*, *des*: as,

Jouer aux cartes; To play *at* cards.
Jouons au *Piquet*, à la *Bête*, aux *Echecs*, à la *Paume*, aux *Barres*, &c.
Let us play *at* Piquet, *at* Loo, *at* Chess, *at* Tennis, *at* Running-Bars, &c.

Jouer des *instrumens*; du *violon*; de la *flûte*, &c.
To play *upon* the instruments; *upon* the fiddle; the flute, &c.
Jouer un *pièce de Théâtre*; To act a play.
Jouer gros jeu; To play high, *or* deep.
Jouer quelqu'un; To make a fool of one, to play upon him.
Jouer au plus fin avec quelqu'un; To vie in cunning with one.
Jouer de la prunelle; To ogle, *or* leer.
Jouer à quitte ou double; To run all hazards.

Jouer une pièce, or *un tour à quelqu'un*, or *lui en jouer d'une*; To serve one a trick, *or* put a trick upon one.

Jouer before an infinitive, with *à*, signifies *to hazard, to venture*: as, *Vous jouez à vous faire tuer*; You venture your life.

Il joue à perdre sa place; He runs the hazard of losing his place.

Se jouer is *to sport*, and *se jouer de quelqu'un*; to make a fool of one.—*Jouer* is besides used in some phrases like these:

Ne vous jouez pas à lui; Do not meddle *or* make with him.

Ne vous y jouez pas; Do not fool with it; do not be such a fool as to do it.

XXXIV. JOUR and JOURNÉE (*a day*). *Journée* is usually understood, and said of what is done during one day: as,

Payer la journée aux ouvriers; To pay the workmen for their day's labour.

Marcher à grandes journées; To make great marches.

Il y a huit journées de chemin; It is eight days journey.

We say likewise, in that sense, *la journée d'Actium*, *la journée de Fontenoy*, the day *or* battle of *Actium*, or *Fontenoy*, &c.

We use *jour* when we speak of time only, and absolutely: as, *Les jours sont courts*; The days are short,

Il y a plus de huit jours que cela est passé; It is above a week ago.

We say indifferently *Voilà un beau jour*, or *une belle journée*; This is a fine day: *J'ai travaillé tout le jour*, or *toute la journée*; I have been at work, *or* have studied all the day.

Vivre au jour la journée, To live from hand to mouth.

There is the same difference with *matin* and *matinée* (morning), and *soir* and *soirée* (evening).

XXXV. LAISSER, *to leave*, *to let*, and sometimes *to forget*: as,

Laissez ici votre manteau; Leave your cloak here.

Il ne veut pas me laisser parler; He will not let me speak.

J'ai laissé ma bourse sur la table; { I have left, *or* forgot my purse upon the table.

Laisser, being construed with *ne* and *pas*, attended by *de*, denotes only affirmation in the next verb, which is rendered in English several ways, importing generally *still*, *nevertheless*, *for all that*, &c. as,

Cela ne laisse pas d'être vrai, quoique vous en doutiez;

Although you doubt of it, it is true nevertheless, *or* for all that.

Malgré tout ce que je lui ai dit, elle ne laisse pas de le faire;

For all that I told her, she still does it, *or* does not forbear doing it.

Vous ne savez que faire de ces bagatelles, elles ne laissent pas d'avoir leur usage; } You do not know what to do with these trifles, yet they are not without their use.

XXXVI. LIVRES and FRANCS (*Livres*). These two words, signifying the same thing, are liable to several various and odd constructions ——We say *Il a quatre mille livres de pension, dix mille livres de pension, vingt mille livres de rente, cent mille livres de rente*, &c. and never *quatre mille francs de pension, cent mille francs de rente*, &c. He has a pension of four, *or* ten thousand livres, twenty thousand, *or* an hundred thousand livres *per annum*.

We on the contrary say, *Sa maison lui a coûté vingt mille francs*; His house has cost him twenty thousand livres; *Sa charge vaut cent mille francs*; His place is worth an hundred thousand livres, &c. and never *vingt mille livres, cent mille livres*.

When *mille* and *cent* meet together, we always use the word *livres*; as likewise with the addition of these words *de rente, de pension* (when the words *a pension, a year*, or *per annum*, meet with livres); as, *Une somme de deux mille trois cens livres*; A sum of two thousand three hundred livres: *Six mille neuf cens livres*; Six thousand nine hundred livres.

We never say *un franc*, neither absolutely, nor with another number: as, *vingt & un francs, trente & un francs*, &c. we say *vingt & une livres, trente & une livres*, &c. one-and-twenty, or thirty livres.

Neither do we say *deux francs, trois francs, cinq francs* (two, three, five livres), though we say *quatre francs, six francs, sept francs, huit francs*, down to *vingt francs*. We say neither *trente francs* nor *trente livres*, nor *soixante francs*, nor *soixante livres*, but *dix écus, vingt écus* (ten, or twenty half-crowns). We say *quarante francs, cinquante francs, quatre-vingts francs*, and *cent francs*.

Neither do we say *une livre, deux livres, trois livres*, &c. though we write it in Bank-notes, Letters of Exchange, Bills and Accompts. We say *vingt sous* for one livre, *quarante sous* for two, *un écu* for three. Instead of *cinq livres*, we say *cent sous*. But when pence (*des sous*) make part of the sum, we then always use the word *livre*: as, *quatre livres dix sous*, four livres and ten-pence; *six livres huit sous*, six livres and eight-pence; not *quatre francs dix sous, six francs huit sous*.

When the sum exceeds an hundred, we, speaking of a debt, use indifferently *livres* or *francs*: as, *Il me doit deux cens francs*, or *deux cens livres*; He owes me two hundred livres: *Je dois quinze ou seize cens livres* or *francs*; I owe fifteen or sixteen hundred livres.

However, we say *un sac de mille francs*, and not *un sac de mille livres*; a bag of a thousand livres.

When people distinguish, as in foreign countries, between *Tournois* and *Sterling* (the pound *Sterling* and the pound *Tournois*), they must always use the word *livre*: as, *Il a apporté de France dix mille livres Tournois, c'est-à-dire, près de cinq cens livres Sterling*; He has brought over from France ten thousand livres, *or* pounds *Tournois*; that is, near five hundred pounds *Sterling*.— A livre, or *livre Tournois*, is twenty-pence (*Tournois*). A pound *Sterling*, is two-and-twenty livres, *or* pounds *Tournois*.

XXXVII. UN COUP DE MAIN, signifies *a bold action*, and UN HOMME DE MAIN, *a man fit for a bold and hazardous enterprise*; DES COUPS DE MAIN, *handy blows*; MAIN FORTE, *assistance*; A PLEINES MAINS, *largely, plentifully*; SOUS MAIN, *underhand, secretly*.

Donner, or *Prêter la main à quelqu'un*; To help one.

Donner les mains à quelque chose; To consent to a thing.

Etre en main, or *à main pour faire une chose*; To be in a convenient posture, *or* situation for one to use his [hand easily.

En venir aux mains; To come to blows, to engage.

Prêter main forte à quelqu'un; { To succour one, to come to his assistance with main strength.

Donner de main en main; To hand about.

Cela est fait à la main; That is done with concert.

Lever la main; { To take one's oath before a judge, to swear, to lay one's hand upon the Bible.

To have a good hand at doing something. } is { *S'entendre à faire quelque chose.*

XXXVIII. *To walk* (a verb neuter) is both MARCHER and SE PROMENER, with this difference, that *marcher* is said of going out for business, and imports going from one place to another: and *se promener* is said of taking a walk, walking for pleasure-sake: as,

J'ai beaucoup marché aujourd'hui; I have walked much to-day.

Je me suis promené aujourd'hui une heure dans le jardin; I have walked an hour to day in the garden.

We say *Se promener à cheval*, ou *en carrosse*; To take a ride, *or* airing on horseback, *or* in a coach.

Se promener sur l'eau, sur la rivière, sur la Tamise. To go upon the water, upon the river, &c.

Marcher sur quelqu'un, ou *sur quelque chose*; To tread upon one, *or* upon a thing.

Marcher sur les traces de quelqu'un; To follow one's steps.

Promener is also used actively: as,

Promener quelqu'un; To lead one, to make him walk.
Promener sa vue sur plusieurs objets; To carry one's sight to many different objects.
Envoyer quelqu'un se promener; To send one packing to the Devil.
Marcher droit; To keep to one's behaviour.
Je le ferai marcher droit; I will keep him to his behaviour.

XXXIX. MARIER, EPOUSER, SE MARIER (*to marry*). The two first are active, and the last a reflected verb; but *marier* is said only of the Parson or Priest who performs the ceremony; and *épouser* of the person who is married: as,

Monsieur A. doit épouser Mademoiselle B. & c'est Monsieur le Curé qui les marira, } Mr. A. is to marry Miss B. and it is the Rector of the Parish, *or* the Parson who will marry them.

Elle ne veut point se marier; She will not marry.

XL. MENER and PORTER (*to carry*), AMENER and APPORTER (*to bring*), must be very accurately distinguished, and fitted to the speech.

Mener is said of such creatures, either rational or irrational, that have by nature the capacity of walking, and are not disabled, either through accident or illness: and *Porter* is said of things that cannot walk by their nature, and of persons and dumb creatures that are disabled from walking, on account of lameness or illness, and other infirmities: as,

Menez Monsieur chez cette Dame, and not *Portez Monsieur*, &c.
Carry the Gentleman to that Lady's house.
Portez-y vos chansons nouvelles, and not *Menez y*;
Carry there your new songs.
Menez le cheval à l'écurie. or *chez le Maréchal*;
Carry the horse to the stable, *or* to the farrier's, and not *Portez*, because horses, dogs, &c. have legs to walk.
Portez cette étoffe chez le tailleur; Carry that stuff to the taylor's.
Cet enfant est las, portez-le à la maison;
That child is tired, carry him home (because he cannot walk).

Again, *Mener* and *amener*, *porter* and *apporter*, import a relation of place, answering to the question, *where*, *whither*: *amener* and *apporter*, are used with reference to the local adverbs *here*, *hither*: and *mener* and *porter* to *there*, *thither*: as,

Amenez-moi votre ami; Bring your friend to me.
Apportez-moi votre ouvrage; Bring your work to me.
Il les a amenés, or *apportés ici*; He has brought them here, *or* hither.

All which instances are said with respect to the place where one is: but these following are said with reference to a place at any distance from that where one is.

Il les y a menés, or *portés*; He carried them there, *or* thither.

Portez votre ouvrage à votre sœur; Carry your work to your sister.

Menez-le chez le Commissaire; Carry him *or* take him to the Justice's.

Observe that expression *to take one to a place*, rendered in French by *Mener quelqu'un à un endroit.*

XLI. MOURIR *(to die)*, SE MOURIR *(to be dying)*. We say

Mourir	*de faim*,	to starve with hunger.
	de soif,	to be choaked with thirst.
	de froid,	to starve with cold.
	de chaud,	to be extremely hot.
	de peur,	to be affrighted to death.
	d'envie,	to long mightily for a thing.
	d'impatience,	
	de chagrin,	to grieve one's self to death.
	de deplaisir,	to be vexed to death.
	de douleur,	to have one's heart broken.

XLII. NEUF and NOUVEAU *(new)*. The construction of these two words is worth observing. *Neuf* must always come after the noun, and *nouveau* may come either before or after. But there is this difference between *neuf* and *nouveau*, that *neuf* is used only when one speaks of material things that are the object of Mechanic Arts; and *nouveau* of things that are the object of Liberal Arts, and relate to the mind, or else are produced by nature: as, *un habit neuf*, a new suit of clothes; *un nouvel ouvrage*, or *un ouvrage nouveau*, a new performance.

Of these two expressions in use, *un livre neuf*, and *un livre nouveau*, the former is said of its first coming out of the bookseller's shop, and having not been used or worn. The latter is said of, and imports, its not being extant before, and considers it only as being the work of the mind.

Neuf is also said with respect to what is newly done, and *nouveau*, to what surprises one, and was unexpected. Thus *une maison neuve* signifies a house new built: and *une maison nouvelle*, one that we had not seen before, and is therefore the object of our surprise.

XLIII. PARENS, is said of all those that belong to us, or we belong to, by the ties of blood, or of those of the same consanguinity; as, *Nos parens ne sont pas toujours nos meilleurs amis*; Our kindred and relations are not always our best friends. Therefore *kindred*, *kin*, *kinsman*, *relation*, signify in French *Pa-*

Promener quelqu'un; To lead one, to make him walk.
Promener sa vue sur plusieurs objets; To carry one's sight to many different objects.
Envoyer quelqu'un se promener; To send one packing to the Devil.
Marcher droit; To keep to one's behaviour.
Je le ferai marcher droit; I will keep him to his behaviour.

XXXIX. MARIER, EPOUSER, SE MARIER (*to marry*). The two first are active, and the last a reflected verb; but *marier* is said only of the Parson or Priest who performs the ceremony; and *épouser* of the person who is married: as,

Monsieur A. doit épouser Mademoiselle B. & c'est Monsieur le Curé qui les marierа, } Mr. A. is to marry Miss B. and it is the Rector of the Parish, or the Parson who will marry them.

Elle ne veut point se marier; She will not marry.

XL. MENER and PORTER (*to carry*), AMENER and APPORTER (*to bring*), must be very accurately distinguished, and fitted to the speech.

Mener is said of such creatures, either rational or irrational, that have by nature the capacity of walking, and are not disabled, either through accident or illness: and *Porter* is said of things that cannot walk by their nature, and of persons and dumb creatures that are disabled from walking, on account of lameness or illness, and other infirmities: as,

Menez Monsieur chez cette Dame, and not *Portez Monsieur*, &c.
Carry the Gentleman to that Lady's house.
Portez-y vos chansons nouvelles, and not *Menez-y*;
Carry there your new songs.
Menez le cheval à l'écurie. or *chez le Maréchal*;
Carry the horse to the stable, *or* to the farrier's, and not *Portez*, because horses, dogs, &c. have legs to walk.
Portez cette étoffe chez le tailleur; Carry that stuff to the taylor's.
Cet enfant est las, portez-le à la maison;
That child is tired, carry him home (because he cannot walk).

Again, *Mener* and *amener*, *porter* and *apporter*, import a relation of place, answering to the question, *where*, *whither*: *amener* and *apporter*, are used with reference to the local adverbs *here*, *hither*: and *mener* and *porter* to *there*, *thither*: as,

Amenez-moi votre ami; Bring your friend to me.
Apportez-moi votre ouvrage; Bring your work to me.
Il les a amenés, or *apportés ici*; He has brought them here, *or* hither.

All which instances are said with respect to the place where one is: but these following are said with reference to a place at any distance from that where one is.

Il les y à menés, or *portés*; He carried them there, *or* thither.
Portez votre ouvrage à votre sœur; Carry your work to your sister.
Menez-le chez le Commissaire; Carry him *or* take him to the Justice's.
Observe that expression *to take one to a place*, rendered in French by *Mener quelqu'un à un endroit.*

XLI. MOURIR (*to die*), SE MOURIR (*to be dying*). We say

Mourir	*de faim*,	to starve with hunger.
	de soif,	to be choaked with thirst.
	de froid,	to starve with cold.
	de chaud,	to be extremely hot.
	de peur,	to be affrighted to death.
	d'envie,	to long mightily for a thing.
	d'impatience,	
	de chagrin,	to grieve one's self to death.
	de deplaisir,	to be vexed to death.
	de douleur,	to have one's heart broken.

XLII. NEUF and NOUVEAU (*new*). The construction of these two words is worth observing. *Neuf* must always come after the noun, and *nouveau* may come either before or after. But there is this difference between *neuf* and *nouveau*, that *neuf* is used only when one speaks of material things that are the object of Mechanic Arts; and *nouveau* of things that are the object of Liberal Arts, and relate to the mind, or else are produced by nature: as, *un habit neuf*, a new suit of clothes; *un nouvel ouvrage*, or *un ouvrage nouveau*, a new performance.

Of these two expressions in use, *un livre neuf*, and *un livre nouveau*, the former is said of its first coming out of the bookseller's shop, and having not been used or worn. The latter is said of, and imports, its not being extant before, and considers it only as being the work of the mind.

Neuf is also said with respect to what is newly done, and *nouveau*, to what surprises one, and was unexpected. Thus *une maison neuve* signifies a house new built: and *une maison nouvelle*, one that we had not seen before, and is therefore the object of our surprise.

XLIII. PARENS, is said of all those that belong to us, or we belong to, by the ties of blood, or of those of the same consanguinity; as, *Nos parens ne sont pas toujours nos meilleurs amis*; Our kindred and relations are not always our best friends.
Therefore *kindred*, *kin*, *kinsman*, *relation*, signify in French *Pa-*

rens. His *or* her parent, is, *son père* ou *sa mère*, and his parents, *son père & sa mère.*

XLIV. PERSONNE, has been considered in the Syntax with respect to its being a pronoun: but it is besides a noun feminine of a very extensive use, answering in its singular, sometimes to this word *person*, but most commonly to these, *man* and *woman*, *gentleman* and *gentlewoman:* as, *Je vis hier la personne dont vous pariez*; I saw yesterday the person, *or* the man, *or* woman, you speak of (*L'homme* and *la femme* seldom being used, but out of scorn and contempt; and *le Monsieur* or *la Dame* in a banter, and through derision, or speaking of people of a station eminently superior to one's own). In the Plural, it answers to the word *people:* as,

Des personnes honnêtes & civiles; Honest and civil people.

Although the noun *personne*, when used in the plural, requires an adnoun feminine, yet if two adnouns, or some pronoun referring to it, meet in the same sentence, the pronouns and the second adnoun must be masculine; regard being then had to the thing signified by the word, viz. *men* in general, and not to the grammatical gender of the word: as,

Les personnes consommées *dans la vertu ont en toutes choses une droiture d'esprit & une attention judicieuse qui les empêche d'être* médisans.

Such persons as are perfect in virtue, have in every thing an uprightness of mind and a judicious attention, which hinders them from being slanderers.

Wherein the adnoun *médisans* referring to *personnes* is masculine, though the first adnoun *consommées* is feminine.—Whereupon it is to be observed, that in order to make an adnoun masculine that has a reference to *personnes*, 1°. There must be, between the noun and the adnoun, a sufficient number of words, to make one forget that the adnoun masculine refers to the noun feminine *personnes;* so that the hearer, or reader, minds no longer the word, but only what is signified by it, as in the aforesaid instance.

2°. That the adnoun must not be governed by the verb that has *personnes* for its subject: otherwise it must be feminine, whatever number of words there may be between *personnes* and the adnouns. Thus we say

Les personnes qui ont le cœur bon, & les sentimens de l'âme élevés, sont ordinairement généreuses;

Good natured people, who have elevated sentiments, are commonly generous;

and not *généreux*, because it is governed of *sont*, before which comes the subject *personnes*. For the same reason, we do not use

the

the relative masculine *ils*, though ever so far from *personnes*, when it is near the adnoun feminine, referring also to *personnes*: as,

Les personnes qui ont l'esprit pénétrant, & une expérience de beaucoup d'années, sont presque toujours si judicieuses *qu'*elles *se trompent rarement.*

People of a sagacious mind, that have the experience of many years, are almost always so judicious, that they are seldom mistaken.

We do not say *qu'ils se trompent*, on account of *ils* being too near the adnoun feminine, which determines it likewise to agree with the noun feminine.—Again, we say

Les personnes *qui ont l'âme belle sont si* ravies *quand* elles *trouvent l'occasion de reconnoître un bienfait, qu'elles ne la laissent jamais échapper* (not *qu'*ils).

People of a noble soul are so delighted when they find an opportunity of being grateful for a good turn, that they never let it slip.

The first relative feminine *elles* determining the second in the same gender, though there is a pretty good number of words between the Antecedent and the Relative. But we say

Il y a à Paris une société de personnes *très*-savantes, *auxquelles l'Europe est redevable d'un nombre infini de connoissances.* Ils *n'ont en vue que la perfection des Arts & des Sciences: & c'est dans ce motif qu'*ils *font tous les jours d'utiles découvertes.*

There is at Paris a society of very learned men, to whom Europe is beholden for a vast deal of knowledge. They have nothing in view but the improvement of Arts and Sciences: and it is with that motive only they every day make new and useful discoveries.

In which instance the pronoun *ils* refers to the thing signified by the word *personnes*, that is, *men*, and therefore agrees with the masculine; and the adnoun *savantes* agrees with the feminine, because it is next to the noun feminine *personnes*: as does likewise the relative *auxquelles*, which is next to the adnoun.

Here follows another instance with respect to number, wherein less regard is had to the noun, than to the thing signified by it.

*De deux mille hommes qu'ils étoient, six cens demeurèrent sur la place, & le reste se sauva par la connaissance qu'*ils avoient *du pays.*

Out of two thousand men that were there, six hundred fell upon the spot, and the rest escaped by their being acquainted with the country.

One should say, to speak conformably to the Grammar, *par la connoissance qu'il avoit du pays*, since the pronoun *il* refers to *le reste*, which governs *sauva* in the singular.

XLV. PÂQUE, and more commonly PÂQUES, is masculine, when it signifies *Easter-day*: as, Pâques est bien reculé & bien chaud

cette

cette année; Easter is very late and very hot this year: *quand Pâques sera venu*; when Easter is come.

But *Pâque* is feminine, and spelt without *s*, when it signifies the Jewish *Passover*: as, *Manger la Pâque*; To eat the Passover: *Préparer la Pâque*; To make ready the Passover.

Pâques, signifying the christian devotion at that season, is feminine, and in the plural number: as, *Mes Pâques sont faites*; I have received the Sacrament this Easter.

We say ironically of immoral people who receive the Sacrament at that time, *Faire de belles Pâques*.

XLVI. Se Passer *de quelque chose* (to do, *or* to go without a thing). *Si vous ne voulez pas me donner cela, il faudra bien que je m'en passe*; If you will not give me that, I must needs go without it.

XLVII. *To think*, is both Penser and Songer, with the preposition *à* before its regimen: as, *Penser à quelque chose*; To think of a thing, to consider it. *Vous ne songez pas à ce que vous faites*, better than *Vous ne pensez pas*, &c. You do not think of what you are doing. But when *to think* is used as a verb active, and not neuter, it is *penser* and not *songer*. Therefore do not say, *On songe de vous*, but *On pense de vous cent choses désavantageuses*; People think an hundred things to your disadvantage.

Penser à mal; To have some ill design.
Il ne pense pas à mal; He means no harm.

Penser, in the preterite, either simple or compound, before an infinitive, without a preposition, signifies any thing that *was like* or *near to have been done*, but has not been done; and is englished by *to be like*, *to be near*, or *ready*: as, *Il pensa se noyer*; He was like to be drowned.

J'ai pensé mourir; I had like to die, *or* to have died.
Nous pensames nous couper la gorge;
We were very near cutting one another's throat.

XLVIII. *More*, is Plus, Davantage, Encore. *Plus* is never used at the end of an affirmative sentence. Therefore say *Donnez m'en davantage*; Give me some more, *or* more on it. *En voulez vous davantage*, or *En voulez-vous encore*? Will you have any more? *Encore un peu*; a little more: and never *Donnez m'en plus*, *En voulez-vous plus*? *Un peu encore*.

Davantage, can likewise be used at the end of negative sentences, but with the two negative particles, whereas *plus* requires but *ne*: as,

Je n'*en veux plus*, or *Je* n'*en veux* pas *davantage*; I will have no more, *or* I do not chuse any more of it.

Neither

Neither does *davantage* govern a noun after it, as *plus*. Therefore don't say, *Mangez davantage de pain avec votre viande*, but *Mangez avec votre viande plus de pain que vous ne faites*; Eat more bread with your meat than you do.

Encore, at the end of negative sentences, does not signify *more*, but *as yet*, or *again*: as, *Je n'en veux pas encore*; I will not have any yet.

XLIX. PLAIRE *(to please)* must be attended by the preposition *à*: as, *plaire à quelqu'un*; to please one. But the construction of this verb, used impersonally in these, and other like sentences, is very remarkable, with respect to the English.

S'il vous plaît; If you please: *S'il plaît à Dieu*; If God pleases: *Cela lui plaît à dire*; He is pleased to say so: *Il a plu au Roi d'ordonner*; The King has been pleased to order: *Il me plaît de faire cela*; I am pleased to do so.

Se plaire à quelque chose; To take a pleasure, *or* delight in a thing.

L *Picture*, is in French PEINTURE, PORTRAIT, and TABLEAU; but these three words do not signify the same thing, when they are taken in the proper sense.

Peinture signifies, 1°. the art of painting, *or* drawing: as, *Il excelle dans la peinture*; He excells in painting, *or* drawing.

2°. The colour in general: as, *La peinture de ce tableau n'est pas encore sèche*; The colour of that picture is not yet dry.

3°. What is painted upon a wall, or wainscot: as, *On ne peut rien distinguer aux peintures du dôme de St. Paul. Les peintures du dôme des Invalides sont des chefs-d'œuvre de l'art*; One can distinguish nothing in the paintings of the Cupola of St. Paul's. The painting of the Cupola of the *Invalids* are master-pieces of art.

Portrait, signifies a picture representing any body drawn after life: *Voilà mon portrait*; That is my picture. *Le portrait du Roi ne lui ressemble pas*; The King's picture is not like him.

Tableau, signifies, and is said of any picture upon cloth, wood, or brass, representing an history, a landscape, building, in short any thing that can be thought of. Even what is drawn out of fancy, or after a statue, bust, or even after a picture drawn after life, is not called *portrait*, but *tableau*.

Therefore *Tableau* is equally said of *Portraits* or *Tableaux*; and *Portrait* is said only of the representation of one drawn after life.

But these three words signify the same thing, when they are used in the figurative sense:

Il a fait { *une agréable peinture* / *un agréable portrait* / *un agréable tableau* } *de toutes les personnes de la Cour*;

He has drawn a charming character of every one at Court.

LI.

LI. PRENDRE *(to take, seize, lay hold of)* is besides used in several other senses, as in these instances,

Le feu a pris à sa maison; A fire broke out in his house.

Prendre les devans; To get the start of one, to be before-hand with him.

Se bien prendre à faire une chose, s'y prendre de la bonne manière; To go the right way to work, to take a right method, *or* course.

Il s'y prend mal; He goes the wrong way to work.

De la manière dont il s'y prend; As he goes to work, as he manages matters.

S'en prendre à quelqu'un, or *à quelque chose*; To tax one; To lay the fault, *or* lay it upon one, *or* upon a thing.

Se prendre à quelque chose; To take hold of something.

Les gens qui se noyent se prennent à tout ce qu'ils trouvent; People who are drowning take hold of any thing they meet with.

Si l'affaire ne réussit pas, je m'en prendrai à vous; If the affair does not succeed, I will come upon you, I will lay the blame upon you.

S'il y a du mal, prenez-vous-en à vous même; If any thing be amiss, you may thank yourself for it.

Prendre parti, To enlist one's self.

Prendre son parti, To take one's resolution.

LII. PRENDRE GARDE, SE DONNER DE GARDE *(to take heed*, or *care)*. *Prendre garde* à *quelque chose*; To take care *of* a thing, to mind a thing, to take notice of it.

Se donner de garde de quelqu'un; To beware of one.

N'avoir garde de, To be far from, to take care not to, is besides used in some particular phrases, englished as follows:

Il n'a garde de courir, il a une jambe de cassée? How can he, *or* how could he run, when one of his legs is broken?

Je n'ai garde d'y aller; I am not such a fool as to go thither, *or* I will be sure not to go thither.

Se bien garder de faire une chose; To be sure not to do a thing.

Prenez garde de tomber, See pag. 300, D. and 317, B.

LIII. ROMPRE, BRISER, CASSER *(to break)*. *Rompre*, is said of a thing broken asunder; and when it is broken in pieces, we use *briser*: as,

Un des pieds de la table est rompu; One of the feet of the table is broken.

La table est brisée; The table is broken to pieces.

Rompre, is said of metals, stones, and wood; and *Casser*, of frail things, as glass, earthen ware, &c. as, *La colonne est rompue or brisée*, the post, *or* pillar is broken asunder, or broke in pieces.

La

Le pot est cassé; The pot is broken. *Les verres sont cassés*; The glasses are broken. But we never say *rompre un pot*, *rompre un verre*, *de la porcelaine*, &c.

To bruise, is *bossuer*, *faire une bosse*; and to split, *fendre*.

In a figurative sense we say, *Casser un testament*, *un contrat*, *une sentence*, *des vœux*, and never *briser*, or *rompre un contrat*, &c. to reverse, or annul a will, to make void a contract, a sentence, vows, &c.

Casser un Parlement;	To dissolve a Parliament.
Casser un Officier;	To Cashier an Officer.
Casser des troupes;	To disband troops.
Casser quelqu'un;	To turn one out of his place.

Rompre la glace, To break the ice; signifies to take the first steps in an affair, and overcome the first difficulties.

LIV. SEULEMENT, signifies sometimes *so much as*: as, *J'ai salué une personne qui n'a pas seulement daigné me regarder*; I have bowed to one who has not *so much* as vouchsafed to look at me.

LV. SUPPLEER (*to supply, to make up*) is sometimes indifferently used either with the 1st or the 3d state: *Je suppléerai le reste*, or *Je suppléerai au reste*; I shall make up the rest. But *suppléer*, without the preposition, signifies properly *to make up what is deficient*; and with *à*, *to be sufficient for repairing*, or *making amends for the defects of a thing*: as, *La valeur supplée au nombre*; Valour supplies the deficiency of the number.

LVI. TRAITER MAL (*to abuse*) implies only outrageous words. MALTRAITER (*to use ill*) implies ill usage with blows.

LVII. VALOIR is *to be good*, or *as good as*, when there is comparison: as,

Vous ne les valez pas; You are not so good as they are.

Il valoit mieux qu'elle; He was better than she.

It signifies *to be worth*, when one speaks of things bought and sold.

Cela ne vaut pas dix schellings; That is not worth ten shillings.

But *to be worth*, speaking of people's fortune and circumstances, is expressed in French by *avoir du bien*; and sometimes *avoir vaillant*: as,

Il a dix mille pièces de bien; He is worth ten thousand pounds.

Il n'a pas mille livres sterling vaillant; He is not worth a thousand pounds.

Il a du bien; He is worth money. *Il n'a rien*; He is worth nothing.

LVIII. VOILÀ (a word worth observing). It serves to show, and points at somebody, or something, and has the force of a verb, making a complete sentence with a noun after it; or a pro-

noun before; which is usually englished by *there is, that is, there he, there are, those are*, &c. as, *Voilà l'homme*; That is the man; Behold the man. *Le voilà, la voilà*; there he is, there she is, there it is.

Voici, is construed after the same manner, but it denotes, and points at, a very near object.—Sometimes *le voici*, and *le voilà*, are followed by a relative and a verb: as, *Le voici qui vient*; Here he is a coming. *La voilà qui gronde*; There she scolds, Now she is scolding.

But *Voilà*, followed by an adnoun, and preceded by a pronoun personal, denotes, and stands for, the verb *être*, in the present tense: as,

Voyez comme les voilà mouillés; See how wet they are.
Comme la voilà triste; How sorrowful she is.
Nous voilà quittes; We are quit, *or* even. *Les voilà fâchés*; They are angry, *or* vexed. *Voilà qu'on m'appelle*; Somebody calls me.

Ne nous voilà pas mal;	We are in a fine pickle.
Voilà bien du préambule;	What a deal of preamble.
Les sottes raisons que voilà;	Very foolish reasons those.

LIX. *To be just, to have just*, followed by a participle, is expressed in French by NE FAIRE QUE DE, or VENIR DE, and the English participle is made by the present of the infinitive: as To be just arrrived; *Ne faire que d'arriver*.

A child that is just born, *Un enfant qui vient de naître*, or *qui ne fait que de naître*: We have just finished, *Nous ne faisons que d'achever*, or *Nous venons d'achever*. The first way is more expressive.

LX. The impersonal IL Y A is construed with a negative, and *que*, in phrases worth observing: as, *Vous vous imaginez qu'*il n'y a qu'*à demander*; You fancy that you have nothing to do but ask.

*Elle croit qu'*il n'y a qu'*à dire*; She thinks that speaking will do.

LXI. The names of some parts of some animals are not the same in French as in English.

We say *pied* (foot) of such animals only as are hoofed; and *patte* of all others. Thus we say, *le pied d'un cheval, d'un bœuf, d'un cerf*, &c. the foot of a horse, ox, stag, *&c. la patte d'un chien, d'un chat, d'une souris, d'un lion, d'un oiseau*; &c. the paw of a dog, cat, mouse, lion, a bird, *&c.*

We say *les griffes d'un lion, d'un chat*, &c. a lion's, a cat's claws, *&c. les serres d'un aigle, & d'un épervier*; the talons of an eagle, of a hawk; *les bras d'une écrevisse, & d'un cancre*; the

claws

claws of a lobster, crawfish, and crab: *les gardes d'un sanglier*; the hinder claws of a wild boar.

La bouche d'un cheval; a horse's mouth: we also say *les naseaux d'un cheval*, not *les narines*; the nostrils of a horse: *la gueule d'un lion, d'un chien, d'un chat, d'un loup, d'un serpent, d'un dragon*, &c. the mouth of a lion, a dog, a cat, a wolf, a serpent, a dragon, &c.

Le groin d'un pourceau; the snout of a hog: *le muffle d'un cerf, d'un lion, d'un tigre, d'un taureau*; the muzzle of a stag, lion, tyger, bull: *le museau d'un chien, d'un renard, d'un poisson*; the muzzle, *or* snout of a dog, a fox, a fish: *le bec d'un oiseau*; the beak, *or* bill of a bird.

Les défenses d'un sanglier; the tusks of a wild boar: *la soie d'un sanglier, & d'un cochon*; the bristle of a wild boar, and a hog: *le poil d'un chien, d'un chat, d'un cheval, & des autres animaux*; the hair of a dog, a cat, a horse, and other creatures: *la crinière d'un cheval & d'un lion*; the mane of a horse and a lion: *du crin*; horse hair (of the tail): The hair of the human body, is *le poil*, but that of the head, is *les cheveux*.

We also say *la hure d'un sanglier, d'un saumon & d'un brochet*; the head of a wild boar, and of a large pike, and the jowl of a salmon.

Speaking of *Deer* we call *bois*, what the English call *horns*, or *head*; and we say, *un bois de cerf, de dâim, de chevreuil*; the horns *or* head of a stag, deer, roe-buck; but we call *corne* the same when it is wrought and manufactured, as, *le manche de mon couteau est de corne de cerf*, the handle of my knife is of a deer's horn.

XLII. The sounds of birds and of beasts.

Les oiseaux chantent & gazouillent	*Birds sing and chirp.
Le perroquet parle,	The parrot talks.
La pie caquette,	The magpye chatters.
Le merle siffle,	The blackbird whistles.
La colombe gémit,	The dove cooes.
Le coq chante †,	The cock crows †.
La poule glousse,	The hen clucks.
Le corbeau & la grenouille croassent,	The raven and the frog croak.
Le chien aboye & hurle,	The dog barks and howls.

* And the singing, chirping, or warbling of birds, is called by the French *ramage*.

† *Et cocha la poule*; and treads the hen.

Les petits chiens jappent,	The puppies yelp.
Le chat miaule, & file,	The cat mews, and purrs.
Le loup hurle,	The wolf howls.
Le renard glapit,	The fox yelps.
Le lièvre crie,	The hare squeaks.
La brebis bêle,	The sheep bleats, *or* bays.
Le serpent siffle,	The snake hisses.
Le pourceau grogne,	The hog grunts.
Le cheval hennit,	The horse neighs.
L'âne braît,	The ass brays.
Le bœuf & la vache beuglent & meuglent,	The ox and cow bellow.
Le taureau mugit,	The bull roars.
Le lion rugit,	The lion roars.

§ III. *A List of* Verbs, *attended by a noun without an article, which form both together but one particular idea.*

Ajouter foi,		*To give credit.*
Avoir	accès,	*To have free access to.*
	affaire, *or*	*To have to do,* or
	besoin,	*To want, be in need of.*
	appétit,	*To have a stomach,* or
	bon, appétit	*—an appetite.*
	grand, appétit	*To have a good stomach.*
	faim,	*To be hungry,*
	grand faim,	*—very hungry.*
	soif,	*To be dry,* or *thirsty.*
	grand' soif,	*—very dry.*
	froid,	*To be cold.*
	chaud,	*To be hot* or *warm.*
	cours,	*To take, to be in vogue.*
	envie,	*To have a mind.*
	dessein,	*To have a design, to design, to intend.*
	droit,	*To have a right.*
	égard,	*To have a regard.*
	coutume,	*To use, to be wont.*
	espérance,	*To hope.*
	compassion,	*To compassionate, commiserate.*
	pitié,	*To pity, to have a pity of.*
	honte,	*To be ashamed.*
	attention,	*To attend.*
	part,	*To have a share, to be concerned in.*
	patience,	To have patience.

Avoir

Avoir	confiance,	*To repose a confidence in.*	
	peur,	*To be afraid, to fear.*	
	connoissance, avis,	*To have notice.*	
	permission,	*To have*	*leave, or*
	carte blanche,		*power.*
	plein pouvoir,		*full power, and*
	tout pouvoir,		*liberty.*
	lieu,		*room,*
	sujet,		or
	raison,		*reason.*
	justice,		*justice.*
	soin,		*care,*
	grand soin,		*a great, or special care.*
	ordre,		*order.*
	occasion,		*an opportunity.*
	obligation,	*To be obligated.*	
	tort,	*To be in the wrong.*	
	grand tort,	*To be very much in the wrong.*	
	horreur,	*To quake with horror.*	
	vent & marée,	*To sail with wind and tide.*	
	querelle,	*To have a quarrel.*	
	rapport,	*To respect to.*	
	mal à la tête,	*To have*	*the head-ache.*
	mal aux dents,		*the tooth-ache.*
	mal aux yeux,		*sore eyes.*
	mal aux pieds,		*sore feet.*
	mal au ventre,		*the belly-ache.*
	mal au côté,		*a pain in one's side.*
	mal au bras,		*a pain in one's arm.*
	mal à l'épaule,		*a pain in one's shoulder.*
	mal au nez,		*a sore nose.*
	mal à l'oreille, &c.		*sore ears.*
Chanter	pouilles,	*To call names, to rail at one at a strange rate.*	
	goguettes,	*To rattle one bitterly.*	
	matines,	*To sing*	*matins.*
	vêpres,		*vespers.*
Chercher	chicane,	*To cavil.*	
	fortune,	*To seek one's fortune.*	
	querelle,	*To pick a quarrel.*	
	malheur,	*To hunt for misfortune.*	
Couper cours,		*To stop the course.*	
Couper court,		*To abridge.*	
Courir risque,		*To run the risk.*	

Crier vengeance,		*To call for revenge.*
Demander	audience,	*To ask audience.*
	avis,	*To ask advice.*
	caution,	*To ask a security.*
	compte,	*To ask an account.*
	conseil,	*To ask counsel.*
	grâce, pardon,	*To ask one's pardon.*
	quartier,	*To beg quarter.*
	justice,	*To demand justice.*
	raison,	*To demand a satisfaction.*
	satisfaction,	*To demand a satisfaction.*
Demeurer court,		*To be at a stand, mum, to stop.*
Dire	vrai,	*To speak truth.*
	faux,	*To say a falsehood.*
	matines,	*matins.*
	vêpres, &c.	*vespers, &c.*
Donner	atteinte,	*To strike at.*
	audience,	*To give an audience.*
	avis,	*To give advice, let one know.*
	beau jeu	*——fair play.*
	conseil,	*To give counsel.*
	caution,	*To give bail, a security.*
	carrière à son esprit,	*To give one's wit its full scope.*
	congé,	*To give leave, (also) a holiday.*
	courage,	*To encourage.*
	permission,	*To give permission.*
	envie,	*To put in mind, to set one agog.*
	exemple,	*To set an example.*
	parole,	*To give word.*
	pouvoir,	*To give power.*
	plein pouvoir,	*To give full power and liberty.*
	tout pouvoir,	*To give full power and liberty.*
	carte blanche,	*To give full power and liberty.*
	part,	*To impart a thing to one.*
	ordre,	*To give orders.*
	charge,	*To charge one.*
	vent,	*To give vent.*
	leçon,	*To give a lesson.*
	heure,	*To appoint an hour.*
	jour,	*To fix upon a day.*
	cours,	*To make a thing current.*
	prise,	*To give one an advantage, a hold upon one.*

Donner	quartier,	*To give quarters.*
	quittance,	*To give, write a receipt,* or *discharge.*
	rendez-vous,	*To give a* rendez-vous, *to make an affirmation, to appoint a place to meet.*
	lieu,	*To give room.*
	sujet,	*To give occasion.*
	raison,	*To give reason.*
	occasion,	*To give an opportunity.*
Entendre	raison,	*To understand reason and sense.*
	malice, finesse,	*To be acquainted with the jest.*
	raillerie,	*To take a joke well.*
	vêpres,	*To be at vespers.*
S'échapper belle,		*To escape it narrowly.*
aire	abjuration,	*To abjure, to recant.*
	abstinence,	*To fast.*
	alliance,	*To make an alliance.*
	alte,	*To halt.*
	aiguade,	*To take in fresh water.*
	amas,	*To heap up.*
	argent,	*To raise money.*
	amitié	*To show one's self kind to one.* *To make much of him.*
	arrêt,	*To make an arrest upon one, to arrest him.*
	affaire,	*To make an end of a business.*
	attention,	*To attend, to mind.*
	binet,	*To make use of a save-all.*
	cas de,	*To value.*
	compte,	*To assure one's self.*
	affront,	*To affront.*
	banqueroute,	*To break, to turn a bankrupt.*
	bonne *ou* mauvaise mine,	*To put a good* or *bad face on the matter.*
	brèche,	*To cut.*
	bombance, bonne chère, grand' chère,	*To feast, to live, feed luxuriously.*
	choix,	*To make choice, to choose.*
	dépit,	*To spite, to vex.*
	difficulté,	*To make a scruple.*

Crier vengeance,		*To call for revenge.*
Demander	audience,	*To ask audience.*
	avis,	*To ask advice.*
	caution,	*To ask a security.*
	compte,	*To ask an account.*
	conseil,	*To ask counsel.*
	grâce, pardon,	*To ask one's pardon.*
	quartier,	*To beg quarter.*
	justice,	*To demand justice.*
	raison,	*To demand a satisfaction.*
	satisfaction,	*To demand a satisfaction.*
Demeurer court,		*To be at a stand, mum, to stop.*
Dire	vrai,	*To speak truth.*
	faux,	*To say a falsehood.*
	matines,	*matins.*
	vêpres, &c.	*vespers, &c.*
Donner	atteinte,	*To strike at.*
	audience,	*To give an audience.*
	avis,	*To give advice, let one know.*
	beau jeu	*——fair play.*
	conseil,	*To give counsel.*
	caution,	*To give bail, a security.*
	carrière à son esprit,	*To give one's wit its full scope.*
	congé,	*To give leave, (also) a holiday.*
	courage,	*To encourage.*
	permission,	*To give permission.*
	envie,	*To put in mind, to set one agog.*
	exemple,	*To set an example.*
	parole,	*To give word.*
	pouvoir,	*To give power.*
	plein pouvoir,	*To give full power and liberty.*
	tout pouvoir,	*To give full power and liberty.*
	carte blanche,	*To give full power and liberty.*
	part,	*To impart a thing to one.*
	ordre,	*To give orders.*
	charge,	*To charge one.*
	vent,	*To give vent.*
	leçon,	*To give a lesson.*
	heure,	*To appoint an hour.*
	jour,	*To fix upon a day.*
	cours,	*To make a thing current.*
	prise,	*To give one an advantage, a hold upon one.*

Donner	quartier,	*To give quarters.*
	quittance,	*To give, write a receipt,* or *discharge.*
	rendez-vous,	*To give a* rendez-vous, *to make an affirmation, to appoint a place to meet.*
	lieu,	*To give room.*
	sujet,	*To give occasion.*
	raison,	*To give reason.*
	occasion,	*To give an opportunity.*
ntendre	raison,	*To understand reason and sense.*
	malice,	*To be acquainted with the jest.*
	finesse,	*To be acquainted with the jest.*
	raillerie,	*To take a joke well.*
	vêpres,	*To be at vespers.*
'échapper belle,		*To escape it narrowly.*
ire	abjuration,	*To abjure, to recant.*
	abstinence,	*To fast.*
	alliance,	*To make an alliance.*
	alte,	*To halt.*
	aiguade,	*To take in fresh water.*
	amas,	*To heap up.*
	argent,	*To raise money.*
	amitié	*To show one's self kind to one.*
		To make much of him.
	arrêt,	*To make an arrest upon one, to arrest him.*
	affaire,	*To make an end of a business.*
	attention,	*To attend, to mind.*
	binet,	*To make use of a save-all.*
	cas de,	*To value.*
	compte,	*To assure one's self.*
	affront,	*To affront.*
	banqueroute,	*To break, to turn a bankrupt.*
	bonne *ou* mauvaise mine,	*To put a good* or *bad face on the matter.*
	brèche,	*To cut.*
	bombance,	*To feast, to live, feed luxuriously.*
	bonne chère,	*To feast, to live, feed luxuriously.*
	grand' chère,	*To feast, to live, feed luxuriously.*
	choix,	*To make choice, to choose.*
	dépit,	*To spite, to vex.*
	difficulté,	*To make a scruple.*

Faire	conscience,	*to scruple.*
	compassion,	*to raise compassion.*
	confidence,	*to trust a secret with one.*
	corps neuf,	*to take a new lease.*
	éclat,	*to break out, come abroad.*
	envie,	*to raise envy.*
	emplette,	*to market, bargain, purchase.*
	épreuve,	*to experiment.*
	excuse,	*to beg pardon.*
	face,	*to face.*
	feu,	*to fire.*
	long feu,	*to flash in the pan, miss fire.*
	faute,	*to miss one thing, to want it.*
	fête,	*to give one a kind entertainment.*
	feinte,	*to pretend, to dissemble.*
	fond,	*to depend upon.*
	fortune,	*to make a fortune.*
	flèche,	*to make a shift.*
	front,	*to face.*
	foi,	*to prove.*
	grâce,	*to favour.*
	gloire d'une chose,	*to pride, take a pride in a thing, to value one's self upon it.*
	gras *ou* maigre,	*to eat flesh* or *abstain from it.*
	honneur,	*to do honour.*
	déshonneur,	*to disgrace.*
	honte,	*to shame, to disgrace one.*
	horreur,	*to strike with horror.*
	insulte,	*to abuse, to insult.*
	injure,	*to do an injury, to offend.*
	inventaire,	*to make an inventory.*
	impression,	*to make an impression.*
	justice,	*to do justice.*
	jour (se faire)	*to make way, to break through.*
	marché,	*to make a bargain, an agreement.*
	main basse,	*to put all to the sword.*
	mine de,	*to look as if, to seem.*
	montre, parade,	*to make a parade,* or *show.*
	naufrage,	*to suffer shipwreck, to be wrecked.*
	ombrage,	*to give an umbrage.*
	pacte,	*to make a pact.*
	part,	to impart, to communicate.

Faire	pari, gageure,	*to lay, to lay a wager.*
	pitié,	*to move,* or *raise pity, compassion.*
	peine,	*to make uneasy.*
	plaisir,	*to do a pleasure.*
	peur,	*to affright.*
	partie,	*to make a party.*
	pénitence,	*to do penance, to repent, atone for.*
	présent,	*to make a present, to present with.*
	place,	*to make room.*
	provision,	*to provide,* or *supply one's self with.*
	preuve,	*to prove.*
	quartier,	*to give quarter, to spare.*
	raison,	*to pledge one, to satisfy one.*
	réflexion,	*to reflect.*
	réparation,	*to make a satisfaction.*
	ressort,	*to fly back again.*
	ripaille,	*to feast to junket.*
	route,	*to sail, to be bound to* (a sea term.)
	satisfaction,	*to do a satisfaction.*
	semblant,	*to pretend, feign, make as if one were.*
	scrupule,	*to scruple.*
	sentinelle,	*to stand sentry.*
	serment,	*to make an oath.*
	signe,	*to make a sign, to beckon, nod, wink.*
	tapage,	*to make a clutter, to keep a racket.*
	tort,	*to wrong.*
	trafic, *ou* commerce,	*to traffic, deal, trade.*
	trève,	*to forbear.*
	trophée,	*to glory in a thing, to pride one's self in it.*
	usage,	*to use, make use of.*
	vie qui dure	*to live within compass.* *to spare one's self.*
	bonne vie, joyeuse vie,	*to lead a merry life.*
	voile,	*to set sail, to make sail.*

Il fait	jour,	*It is*	*day-light*, or
	clair,		*broad day.*
	nuit,		*night.*
	ſombre,		*cloudy.*
	obſcur,		*duſk.*
	chaud,		*hot.*
	froid,		*cold.*
	beau,		*fine.*
	beau, mauvais, vilain temps,		*fair, bad weather.*
	ſale, crotté,		*dirty.*
	du brouillard,		*foggy.*
	du vent,		*the wind blows, it is windy.*
	ſoleil,		*the ſun ſhines.*
	clair de lune,		*it is moon light, the moon ſhine*
Filer	doux,		*to give fair words.*
Gâgner	pays,		*to ſcamper away.*
Jeter	feu & flâmmes,		*to fret and fume.*
Lâcher	priſe,		*to let go one's hold.*
Laiſſer	parole,		*to leave word.*
Lier	amitié, commerce,		*to engage in a friendſhip, and respondence with one.*
Mettre	bas,		*to bring forth.*
	fin,		*to put an end.*
	pied à terre,		*to light*, or *alight.*
	ordre à ſes affaires,		*to ſettle one's affairs.*
Obtenir	permiſſion,		*to obtain leave.*
Parler	raiſon,	*to ſpeak*	*reaſon.*
	ſens commun,		*ſenſe.*
	juſte,		*right.*
	vrai,		*truth.*
	François,		*French*,
	Latin,		*Latin*,
	Anglois, &c.		*Engliſh*, &c. *or plain.*
Perdre	courage,		*to be diſheartened, to deſpond.*
	patience,		*to loſe patience.*
	terre,		*to go out of one's depth.*
	fond,		*to drive with the anchors.*

Plier	baggage,	*to pack away, pack up one's alls.* *to truss up bag and baggage.*
Porter	bonheur,	*to bear good luck.*
	malheur,	*to bear ill luck.*
	guignon,	*to bear bad luck.*
	compassion,	*to pity.*
	coup,	*to hit* or *strike home.*
	préjudice,	*to prejudice, to be prejudicial.*
	envie,	*to bear envy.*
	témoignage,	*to bear witness.*
	honneur,	*to honour.*
	respect,	*to respect.*
Prendre	avantage,	*to take advantage of.*
	chair,	*to gather flesh.*
	courage,	*to cheer up, to take courage.*
	conseil, avis,	*to take one's advice.*
	congé,	*to take one's leave of one.*
	garde,	*to take care,* or *notice.*
	feu,	*to take, catch fire.*
	confiance,	*to confide.*
	connoissance,	*to take notice,* or *inform one's self.*
	couleur,	*to begin to be brown.*
	cours,	*to take, to be in vogue.*
	heure,	*to fix upon a time, day and hour.*
	exemple sur quelqu'un,	*to take example by one. To square one's life,* or *conduct by his.*
	faveur,	*to get favour.*
	fin,	*to end.*
	goût,	*to like.*
	jour,	*to appoint a day, make an assignation.*
	haleine,	*to take one's breath.*
	langue,	*to get intelligence, to find out.*
	naissance,	*to be born.*
	médecine,	*to take physic.*
	pitié,	*to take pity, compassion, to commiserate.*
	part, intérêt,	*to take a part, to concern one's self in a thing.*
	plaisir,	*to take pleasure, to delight.*
	place,	*to take one's place.*

Prendre	patience,	*to take patience, to bear, wait patiently.*
	possession,	*to enter into possession.*
	pied,	*to take, to get footing.*
	racine,	*to take root, get a footing.*
	séance,	*to take one's place (in).*
	sel,	*to take salt.*
	soin,	*to take care of, to look to,* or *attend a thing.*
	suif,	*to be lightning.*
	terre,	*to land, to get ashore.*
	prétexte,	*to take a pretence.*
	parti,	*to enlist as a soldier.*
Prêter serment,		*to take an oath.*
Promettre merveilles,		*to promise wonders.*
Recevoir ordre,		*to receive orders.*
Rendre	compte,	*to account for,* or *give an account for.*
	gorge,	*to bring off the stomach, to disgorge, to refund.*
	gloire,	*to give glory.*
	grâce,	*to return thanks.*
	hommage,	*to pay homage.*
	justice,	*to do justice.*
	raison,	*to give an account of.*
	service,	*to do service.*
	témoignage,	*to witness.*
	visite,	*to pay a visit.*
Savoir	gré,	*to take a thing kindly.*
Tenir	bon,	*to stand firm, not to give over.*
	compte,	*to make account, to value.*
	lieu,	*to be as,* or *in the place of.*
	tête,	*to cope with one, oppose, resist.*
	parole,	*to be as good as one's word.*
	pied (à boule,)	*to stand fair.*
	table ouverte,	*to keep an open table.*
	boutique,	*to be a shop-keeper.*
	café,	*to keep a coffee-house.*
	cabaret, &c.	*to keep a tavern, &c.*
Tirer avantage, *or* parti de,		*to make an advantage of.*
Vivre content,		*to live contentedly.*
Vouloir mal à quelqu'un,		*to bear one a grudge.*

To which add the adnouns used with c'est: *as,* c'est fâcheux, dommage, honteux, *&c. It is sad, pity, a shame.*

§ IV. *Observations upon* VERBS, *considered with respect to the Idiom of the English tongue.*

WE have seen how verbs are conjugated in English by means of these signs, *do, did*; *shall, will*; *can, may*; *might, could, should, would*; *and let*; which being put before the verb, distinguish its moods and tenses, except the preterite, which is distinguished by a particular termination. But the same particles are also verbs, having particular significations of themselves, which must be carefully distinguished from their nature of signs. In order to which make the following observations:

1°. *Do* and *did*, are construed with any verb, to express its present or past action more fully, distinctly, and emphatically: as, *I do love* for *I love* (J'aime); *I did love*, for *I loved* (J'aimois, *or* J'aimai). But

Do and *did*, signify also action of themselves, and are expressed in French by *faire*, being conjugated like other verbs with their signs, except in the present and imperfect tenses:

Pres.	I do,	*Je fais.*
Imp.	I did,	*Je faisois.*
Pret.		*Je fis.*
Fut.	I shall, *or* will do;	*Je ferai.*
Cond.	I should, would, *&c.* do,	*Je ferois.*
Comp.	I have done, *&c.*	*J'ai fait*, &c. as in the sixth [Conjugation.

2°. *Will* and *would*, or *wou'd*, which denote the time to come when they are placed before verbs, are also used in the sense of *willing*; to wit, when they imply *order, command, will*, and *earnestness* of desire: as,

I *will* have you do so; *Je* veux *que vous fassiez cela.*
He *will* not have him study; *Il ne* veut *pas qu'il étudie.*
You *would* have us had done it; *Vous* vouliez *que nous le fissions.*

Pres. and *Fut.* I will, *Je veux. Je voudrai*, for *I am*, or *shall be willing.*

Imp.	I would	*Je voulois,*	for	*I was willing.*
Pret.		*Je voulus,*		*I was willing.*
Cond.		*Je voudrois,*		*I would*, &c. be willing.
Comp.		*J'ai, J'avois voulu*, &c.		*I have, had been willing.*

3°. Should,

3°. *Should*, or *shou'd*, is the sign of the conditional, but generally denotes the *necessity* and *duty* of doing a thing. It implies and stands for *must* or *ought*, and is made in French by the conditional tenses of *devoir*: as,

We *should* do that; *Nous* devrions *faire cela.*

They *should* not lose their time; *Ils ne* devroient *pas perdre leur temps.*

You *should have* learnt your lesson; *Vous* auriez du *apprendre votre leçon.*

4°. *Can* and *could*, *may* and *might*, import *power* and *possibility*, and are almost always taken in the sense of *being able*, and made in French by *pouvoir*, though *might* and *could* are oftener used as signs, than *can* and *may*, as,

They could not do it;	*Ils ne* pouvoient *pas le faire.*
You *could* or *might* work;	*Vous* pourriez *travailler.*
He *could* or *might have* done that;	*Il* auroit pu *faire cela.*
I *could* or *might have* gone thither;	*J'*aurois pu *y aller.*
I *can* or *may* do it;	*Je* puis *le faire.*
That we *may* see;	*Afin que nous voyions*, or *puissions voir.*
That I *might* read;	*Afin que le lusse*, or *que je pusse lire.*

N. B. *Though there be a difference between* could *and* might, *and they cannot be used in English promiscuously the one for the other, yet I have coupled them together in the aforesaid examples, because there is but one way to render them in French, to wit, the* conditional *tense of* pouvoir.

5°. I might, I could,	*Je pourrois,*	before an *infinitive*, being made in French by the *conditional* simple of	*pouvoir*, to be able;
I* would,	*Je voudrois,*		*vouloir*, to be willing;
I should, I* ought,	*Je devrois,*		*devoir*, ought *or* must;

when the same come before a *Compound* tense of the infinitive, they must be made in the French by the *Compound* of the *Conditional* of the aforesaid verbs, and the Compound of the English infinitive be made in French by the Present simple of the Infinitive, without any preposition before: as,

I might *have* / I could *have* } *done that*, *J'*aurois pu *faire cela.*

I would *have done* that, *J'*aurois voulu, *or* souhaité *faire cela.*

I should *have* / I ought to *have* } *done* that, *J'*aurois du *faire cela.*

* I could, is also *Je pouvois*, *Je pus*, and *J'ai pu*; I would, *Je voulois*, *Je voulus*, *J'ai voulu*; and I ought, Je devois, J'ai du.

In

In all other cases *do*, *did*, *shall*, *will*, *should*, &c. are only signs, which (with the verb to which they are joined) are expressed in French by one word only, to wit, the person of any tense simple or compound. Therefore do not say

Je fais *aimer*,	but	*J'aime*,	I do love.
Je faisois, *or* fis *travailler*,		*Je travaillai*,	I did work.
Nous voulons, *or* voudrons *aller*,		*Nous irons*, we shall *or* will go	
Vous vouliez, *or* voudriez *avoir*,		*Vous auriez*, you would have.	
Je voudrois *faire cela*,		*Je ferois cela*, I would do that.	

Though it is sometimes indifferent to say with the signs *could*, *may*, *might*.

Je pourrois *faire cela*, or *Je* ferois *cela*; I could do that.
Afin que je le fasse, or *que je* puisse *le faire*; That I may do it.
Afin qu'il apprît, or *qu'il* pût *apprendre*; That he might learn.

Again. Do not say

Je veux avoir vous faire cela, or *Je veux vous avoir faire cela*; but *Je veux* que *vous* fassiez *cela*; I will have you do that.
Nous ne voulions pas avoir eux venir, or *les avoir venir*; but *Nous ne voulions pas* qu'*ils* vinssent; We would not have them come.
Je devois avoir fait cela; but *Je devois* or *J'aurois du* faire *cela*, I should have done that, *or* ought to have done that.
Vouz pouviez, or *pourriez l'avoir fait*; but *Vous* auriez pu *le faire*; You might have done that, *or* You could have done it.
Il vouloit avoir nous avoir fait cela, or *Il nous auroit eu fait cela*; but *Il* vouloit *que nous* fissions *cela*, or *Il voudroit que nous l'eussions fait*; He would have had us done that, *&c.*

6°. *Will*, and *shall*, are sometimes left out in English after the conjunction *when*, denoting a future action; but the verb must always be expressed in the future in French: as,

When we have done that, for *When we* shall *have done that*, *Quand nous* aurons *fait cela*.
When he is come, *or* when he comes, *for* When he *shall* or *will* have come; *Quand il* sera *venu*.

It is to be noted here also, that we use the present tense, and never the future, after the conjunction *si*, if, in a great many cases, when it is construed in English with the future: as,

If he *shall* come, *s'il vient*; though we say
Je ne sais s'il viendra, I do not know whether he will come.

7°. The English use the signs *shall*, *will*, &c. without any verb expressed in the second part of the sentence, or in answer to a question; but we always repeat in French the future, or condi-

tional of the verb, expressed in the first part of the sentence, or the future of *faire*: as,

Will you do that? I *will*. *Voulez-vous faire cela*, or *ferez-vous cela? Je le ferai*, and not *Je veux*.

He will have me do that; but *I shall* not. *Il veut que je fasse cela; mais je ne le* ferai *pas*, or *mais je n'en* ferai *rien*.

Learn that this afternoon; I *will*. *Apprenez cela tantôt: Je l'*apprendrai.

It is the same with the word *do*, *have* or *did*, standing for a present or a preterite, expressed in the question to which we answer: which tense must be repeated in French in the answer: as,

Do you know him? Yes, I *do*

Le connoissez-vous? Oui, je le connois; and not, *oui je fais*.

Have you done that? Yes, I *have*.

Avez-vous fait cela?- Oui, je l'ai fait; and not, *oui, J'ai*.

Did you go to Court yesterday? Yes, I *did*.

Allates-vous hier à la Cour? Oui, j'y allai, or *J'y* fus.

Observe that in such cases the verb repeated is also attended by its relation.

Moreover observe, that the verb *vouloir* governs, as any active verb, a noun in the first state, for its direct *Regimen*; and will not take after it any such verb as *have*, *get*, or *take*, before its noun, as in English: as,

Voulez-vous un livre, and not *Voulez-vous* avoir *un livre?*

Will you have a book?

En voulez-vous un écu? Will you *take* a crown for it?

Voulez-vous du tabac dans votre tabatière? and not *Voulez-vous avoir du*, &c. Will you *have* any snuff in your box?

It is the same with *avoir*: as,

J'ai un beau tableau à vendre; I have *got* a fine picture to sell.

8°. To express the continuance of an action, or thing, in English, the verb is varied in all its tenses, by the gerund, with the verb substantive *to be*: as,

Pres.	I am writing,	instead of	I write.
Imp.	I was writing,		I wrote.
Pret.			I did write.
Com.	I have been writing,		I have written.
	I had been writing,		I had written.
Fut.	I shall be writing,		I shall write.

That continuance of an action is likewise expressed in French by the several tenses of *être*, but with the present tense simple of the infinitive, preceded by the preposition *à* instead of the gerund;

I am

I am writing; *Je suis à écrire.*
I was writing; *J'étois à écrire.*
What was you doing? *Qu'est-ce que vous étiez à faire?*
When I shall be finishing any work; *Pendant que je serai à finir mon ouvrage.*

Sometimes *a* is put before the English gerund.

Sometimes also that continuance of an action is expressed in French by turning the verb to *be*, and the gerund, into a reciprocal verb: as,

It is a doing; *Cela se fait*, or *On est à le faire.*

The work was then forwarding; *L'ouvrage s'avançoit alors.*

Observe, that those ways of speaking are sometimes necessarily expressed by *on*: as, The house is building; *On est à bâtir la maison*, or only *On bâtit la maison.*

While the house was building, *Pendant qu'on étoit à bâtir la maison*, or *Pendant qu'on bâtissoit la maison*, which is better than *Pendant que la maison se bâtit*, or *se bâtissoit.*

§ V. *Of the Construction of certain English Particles, with respect to French.*

THE English use their adverbs of place, *here, there, where*, compounded with these particles, *of, by, upon, about, in, with*, instead of the pronouns, *this, that, which*, and *what*, with the same particles: as,

hereof, *for*	of this,	*de ceci*, or *d'en.*
thereof,	of that,	*de cela*, or *d'en.*
whereof,	of what, of which,	*de quoi, duquel, desquels, dont.*
hereby,	by this,	*par ceci.*
thereby,	by that,	*par là, par cela.*
whereby,	by what, by which,	*par quoi, par lequel, par où.*
hereupon,	upon this,	*sur ceci.*
thereupon,	upon that,	*sur cela, là dessus.*
whereupon,	upon what, *or* which,	*sur quoi.*
hereabouts,	about this place,	*autour d'ici, ici autour.*
thereabouts,	about that place,	*autour de là, là autour.*
whereabouts,	about what place,	*en quel endroit, où, vers où.*
herein,	in this,	*en ceci.*
therein,	in that,	*en cela.*
wherein,	in what, in which,	*en quoi.*
herewith,	with this,	*avec ceci.*
therewith,	with that,	*avec cela,*
wherewith,	with what, *or* which,	*avec quoi, avec lequel.*

Whose and *its (dont)* are also used instead of, *of whom, of which, of it (duquel, desquels, de laquelle, desquelles).*

§ VI.

§ VI. *Of the various Significations and Constructions of the Particle* que.

IT ought to have been observed, all along this treatise on the French language, that there are many particles, which, tho' the same with respect to their form, yet are very different with respect to their nature, or considered grammatically. Thus *le*, *la*, *les*, articles, must be carefully distinguished from *le*, *la*, *les*, pronouns; *à* preposition from *a* verb; *leur* pronoun personal from *leur* pronoun possessive; *si* conjunction conditional from *si* conjunction dubitative, and *si* comparative: as likewise several other words which are sometimes adverbs, sometimes prepositions, and sometimes conjunctions, according to the relation in which they stand to the parts of speech. But of all these particles there is none more variously used, and that gives more perplexity to the learner, in the circumstance of French Authors, than the particle *que*. Therefore it will not be amiss to make a particular section of this particle, and collect together all its several constructions.

Que, is the fourth state of the pronoun relative *qui*, for both genders and numbers, and is said of all sorts of objects, rational, irrational, animate and inanimate: as, *L'homme*, *la femme* que *vous voyez*; The man *or* woman whom you see: *Les malheurs* que *vous appréhendez*; The misfortunes *which*, or *that* you fear.

Que, is the fourth state, and even the first (though seldom) of the pronoun interrogative *quoi* (what): as, Que *dites-vous*, Qu'*est-ce que vous dites? What* do you say? Qu'*est-ce que de nous? What* wretched creatures are we?

Que, is the second and third state of the pronoun relative and interrogative *que* and *quoi*, standing for *de qui*, *de quoi*, *dont*, *à qui*, *à quoi*, for both genders and numbers: as, *C'est de vous* qu'*on parle*; It is you they are speaking of: *C'est à vous* qu'*on s'addresse*; To you they make application. (See *pag.* 255, B.)

Que, is a particle of which most conjunctions are composed: as, *Afin* que, That; *De sorte* que, So that; *Puisque*, Since; *Quoique*, Although, &c.

Que, is a conjunction, used in the second part of a period, joined to the first by the enclitic *&*, instead of repeating the conjunction *si*, expressed at the head of the first sentence; and this *que* governs the conjunctive: as, *S'il le souhaite*, *&* que *vous le vouliez*; if he desires it, and you will have it so.

Que, is used in the middle of a sentence in lieu of the conjunctions *Comme*, *lorsque* (as, when), though they are not expressed before: as, *Ils arrivèrent*, que j'allois partir; They arrived as or *when*

I was

I was about to depart: *Nous partimes*, qu'*il pleuvoit à verse*; We set out *at a time when* it did rain as fast as it could pour.

Where *peut-être* occurs in the first member of a phrase, *Que* is its vice-gerent in the second: as, *Peut-être l'aime-t-il, mais* qu'*il ne veut pas l'épouser*; Perhaps he loves her, but perhaps he is unwilling to marry her.

Que, is used instead of *à moins que*, *avant que*, *sans que* (unless, before, without); and, like these conjunctions, governs the subjunctive, and requires the negative *ne* before the next verb: as, *Je ne serai point content* que *je* ne *le* sache; I shall never be contented *unless* I know it: *Je n'irai point*, qu'*elle* ne soit *venue*; I will not go thither *before* she come.

Que, is used for *jusqu'à ce que* (till, until) and, like this conjunction, governs the subjunctive: as, *attendez* qu'*il* vienne, stay *till* or *until* he come.

Que, is used for *cependant* (yet, as yet): *Il me verroit périr* qu'*il n'en seroit pas touché*; He would see me die, *yet* he would not be concerned at it: *Il auroit tout l'or du monde*, qu'*il en voudroit encore davantage*; Though he should enjoy all the gold in the world, *yet* he would wish for more.

Que, is used instead of *afin que* (that, to the end that), and, like this conjunction, governs the subjunctive: as, *Approchez* que *je vous baise*; Draw near that I may kiss you: *Je vous prie de venir ici*, que *je vous* dise *quelque chose*; Pray, come hither, *that* I may speak to you.

Que, is used in lieu of *de peur que* (lest, *or* for fear of) and, like this conjuction, governs the subjunctive, and requires the particle *ne* before the verb: as, *N'approchez pas de ce chien*, qu'*il* ne *vous* morde; Do not go near *that* dog, *lest* he should bite you: *Dépêchons nous*, que *quelqu'un* ne vienne; Let us make haste *for fear* somebody should happen to come.

Que, is used in the place of *si* or *dès que* (if, as soon *as*) in the beginning of a sentence, and governs the subjunctive: as, Qu'*il* boive *de la bière*, *il est malade à la mort*; *If* or *When*, or *As soon as* he drinks beer, he is sick to death.

Que, is used in the middle of a sentence for *depuis que* (since): as, *Il n'y a qu'une heure*, qu'*il est parti*; It is but an hour since he went away.

Que, is used for *de sorte que* (so that): as, *Si vous n'êtes sage*, *je vous étrillerai*, que *rien n'y manquera*; If you are not good, I will flog you soundly.

Que, is used before the second verb of a sentence beginning with the conjuction *à peine*, which it serves to compose (scarce, hardly than): as, *A* peine *eut-il achevé de* parler, qu'il expira; He had

had *hardly* done speaking, *but* he expired, *or* He had *no sooner* done speaking, *than* he expired

Que, (than) is used before the noun or adnoun following an adverb comparative: as, *Le mari est* plus *raisonnable* que *la femme*; The husband is *more* reasonable *than* the wife: *Plutôt* que *de le faire*; Rather *than* do it.

Que, coming after an adnoun, signifies *comme*; and *quoique*, if the adnoun is preceded by *tout*: as, *malade* qu'*il est*, *il ne sauroit vaquer à ses affaires*; Being ill, he cannot attend business: Tout *savant* qu'*il est*, *il a bien peu de judgment*; *As* learned *as* he is, he has but very little judgment.

Que, after a noun of time, signifies *quand* (when): as, *Le jour* qu'*il partit*; The day *when* he set out.

Que, after a noun of place, signifies *où* (where): as, *C'est à la cour*, qu'*on apprend les manières polies*; It is at court one learns, *or where* one learns politeness, *or* polite ways of behaving.

Que, (let) denotes the third persons of the imperative: as, Qu'*il parle*; *Let* him speak: Qu'*ils rient*; *Let* them laugh.

Que is left out in these following imperative phrases of the sing. numb. *Vienne qui voudra*; Come who will. *Sauve qui peut*; Save himself who can, *or* let every one make the best of his way, *or* take to his heels. *Qui m'aime me suive*; Let him that loves me follow me.

Que, (that) is used in the beginning of a sentence with the indicative; but such sentences as these are mostly titles to a chapter or section: as, Qu'*on ne* peut *prouver l'immortalité de l'âme, avant d'en connaître la nature, & que sa nature est incompréhensible*; *That* the immortality of the soul cannot be proved before its nature is known, and *that* the nature of the soul is incomprehensible.

Que, is used between two verbs, to determine and specify the sense of the first, and governs sometimes the indicative, and sometimes the subjunctive, according to the nature and signification of the first verb. This determinate conjunction is sometimes englished by *that*, but most times left out and understood: as, *Je vous assure* que *cela* est *ainsi*: I assure you *that* it is so. *Je doute* que *cela* soit *ainsi*; I doubt whether it be so or no.

Que, in the middle of a sentence beginning with the demonstrative *c'est*, is conductive, and has the force of *namely*: as, *C'est une passion dangereuse* que *le jeu*; Gaming is a dangerous passion: *C'est une sorte de honte* que *d'être malheureux*; It is a kind of shame to be miserable.

Que, being immediately preceded by *c'est*, signifies *parceque*; as, C'est que *je ne savois pas que*—It is, *or* It was, *because* I did not know that:—And when a word comes between

c'est

c'est and *que*, *c'est que* is a redundancy: as, C'est *alors* que *je vis*: It was then I saw, *or only* Then I saw.

Que, after the impersonal *il y a*, with a noun denoting time, is only an expletive: as, *Il y a dix ans* que *je l'aime*; I have loved her these ten years.

Que, being followed by *si* in the beginning of a sentence, is only an expletive: as, Que *si vous dites*; If you say, And if you say.

Que, after *tel*, or an adnoun preceded by the adverb *si*, is englished by *as*: as, *Soyez* tel que *vous voulez être estimé*; Be *such as* you would be taken for: *Je ne suis pas* si *fou* que *de le croire*; I am not *such* a fool *as* to believe it.

Que, after *autre* and *autrement*, signifies than: as *Il est tout autre* que *vous ne disiez*; He is *quite* another man *than* you said.

Que, being used in the beginning of a sentence with the subjunctive, denotes wishing or imprecation: as, Que *Dieu vous* bénisse; God bless you: Que *je* meure *si j'en sais quelque chose*; Let me die if I know any thing of it.

Sometimes also *que* is left out in this kind of sentences: as *Dieu vous bénisse*; God bless you: *Grand bien vous fasse*; Much good may it do you.

Que, is also used in the beginning of a sentence with the subjunctive, to denote, by an exclamation, one's surprise, aversion, and reluctancy of something; in which case there is a verb grammatically understood before *que*: as, *Qu'il se soit oublié jusqu'à ce point!* I wonder, *or* is it possible for him to have forgot himself so far? *Que j'agisse contre ma conscience!* Must I do a thing, *or* How can I do a thing against my conscience!

Que, is used adverbially in the beginning of a sentence of exclamation with the indicative, and is rendered into English several ways, according to the nature of the sentence; for if the verb coming after *que* is followed by another verb, *que* is englished by *how much*: as, Que *vous aimez à parler! How much* you like to talk!—If the verb coming after *que* is followed by an adnoun only, *que* is englished by how *only* before the adnoun: as, Qu'*il fait crotté! How* dirty it is! Qu'*elle est aimable! How* lovely she is!—Sometimes the exclamation, or admiration, is expressed without any verb: as, Que *de plaisir & de peine tout à la fois! How* much pleasure and trouble at once!—Sometimes also *que* comes after the noun, especially if indignation meets with admiration: as, *Le malheureux* qu'*il est!* What a wretch he is! *L'indigne action*

que *la sienne!* O the unworthy action of his! *Les beaux livres* que *vous avez!* What fine books you have!

Que, in the beginning of an interrogative sentence, signifies *comment* (how): as, Que *savez vous si l'âme de votre père n'étoit pas passée dans cette bête?* *How* do you know but that your father's soul had passed into that creature?

Que, beginning a sentence of interrogation, and followed by the negative *ne* only, stands for *pourquoi* (why): as, Que ne *parlez-vous?* Why do not you speak? Que ne *lui dites-vous cela?* Why did not you tell him that? And when *que* is followed by the double negative *ne* and *pas*, it stands for *quelle chose* (what *or* what thing): as, Que ne *fait il* pas *pour s'enrichir?* What thing does he not do to grow rich? Que ne *lui dites-vous* pas *pour l'en détourner?* Is there any thing but you told him, to deter him from it?

Que, in the beginning of a sentence of exclamation, and followed by *ne*, denotes only a wish and a great desire: as, *Que ne suis-je déjà aux portes de Valince!* Would I were already at the gates of Valencia!

Que, in the middle of a sentence, but preceded by *ne* with some words between, signifies *seulement* (only, but, nothing but, &c.): as, *Le Roi* n'*a en vûe* que *le bien public*; The King has *no other* view *but*, *or* only aims at the public good. And when *que* is preceded by the two negatives, and followed by a verb, it signifies *à moins que* (unless, but), and the verb must be put in the subjunctive with *ne*: as, *Je* ne *sors* point que *je* ne *m'enrhume*; I never go abroad, but I catch cold.

Que, preceded by *ne* and followed by the infinitive *faire*, without a preposition, signifies *nothing*; or *to need not*, if *faire* is followed by another infinitive with *de*: as, *Je* n'*ai* que *faire de cela*; I have *nothing* to do with that: *Je n'ai que faire d'y aller*; I need not go there. If *faire* is followed by the preposition *à*, it makes another idiom of a different signification: as, *Je n'ai que faire à cela*; I am not concerned with that.

Que, preceded by any tense of *faire* with the negative *ne*, and followed by an infinitive without any preposition at all, denotes only the continuance of the action signified by the second verb, and is englished by *to do nothing but*: as, *Il ne fait que boire & manger*; He does nothing but eat and drink.

Que, preceded by any tense of *faire* with the negative *ne*, and followed by an infinitive with the preposition *de*, denotes that the action signified by the second verb began some few minutes, a *very* little while, one moment before, that it does *or* did just *or*

just now begin, and is expressed by *just* or *just now*: as, *Nous ne faisons* que de *commencer*; We *do but* begin, We have *but just* begun; *Il ne faisoit* que *d'achever, quand*—He had *just* finished, when—

Que, besides these 38 significations, serves to form a great many idiomatical phrases, which must be learnt in my Dictionary, at this word.

§ VII. *Of inseparable Prepositions.*

Besides the prepositions that have been fully treated of, there are several particles in the beginning of words, which are mere prepositions, that have passed from the Latin Tongue into the French, wherein they signify nothing of themselves, without the words that are composed of them; and are therefore called *inseparable* prepositions. These particles are, *de*, *des*, *dis*, *é*, *ex*, *en*, *in*, *im*, *il*, *ir*, *ig*, *re*, *sur*, which may deserve the following observations.

1°. The particles *de*, *des*, and *dis* usually serve, in the beginning of words, to denote the contrary of what is signified by the words which they compose, and have the same signification as the English particle *un*, in the beginning of words: as, *défaire* to undo, *dédire* to unsay, *décamper* to decamp, march off, *déranger* to put out of order, *désarmer* to disarm, *déshabiller* to undress, *désunir* to disunite, *disgrâce* disgrace, *disproportion* disproportion, &c.—Sometimes also they only serve to extend more the signification of the simple: as, *découper* to cut (not in its common signification), *démontrer* to demonstrate, *disperser* to disperse, scatter about, *dissoudre* to dissolve.

2°. *é* and *ex*, in the beginning of words, sometimes denote privation and separation, or taking off: as, *écervelé* hair-brained, *écrémer* to take off the cream from the milk, *effilé* fringed (not in the common signification), *essoufler* to put out of breath, *excommunier* to excommunicate, *exterminer* to exterminate, destroy entirely, *extraire* to extract, draw *or* take out. Sometimes they denote production of an action, and add to, or extend more, the signification of the simple; as, *ébranler* to shake, *échanger* to exchange, *échauder* to scald, *éprouver* to try, *exalter* to exalt, extol, *exhausser* to raise higher, *expliquer* to explain, expound.

The particle *en* in words compound, keeps pretty near the same signification which it has with the simple, when it is a separable preposition; and usually denotes either the action whereby a thing

is in some manner put in another; as, *enclerre* to inclose, *enchainer* to chain, *embrasser* to embrace, *emporter* to take away, *enrôler* to inlist, *envelopper* to fold up, involve; or the impression by which a thing receives such or such a form, and becomes such or such; as, *encourager* to encourage, *enrichir* to enrich, *enivrer* to fuddle, *engrosser* to get with child.

in, in the beginning of words, has sometimes the same use and signification as *en*; as, in *investir* to invest, *insister* to insist; but it has commonly a privative power, and denotes quite the contrary of the signification of the simple; as, *inanimé* inanimate, *inconstant* inconstant, *incivil* uncivil, *infortuné* unfortunate, *injuste* unjust, *inhumain* inhuman, *innombrable* innumerable, *invincible* invincible, *inutile* useless, *&c.*

It is the same with the inseparable particles, *im*; as, in *immodeste* immodest, *imprimer* to print, *imparfait* imperfect; *il*, in *illégitime* illegitimate, *illicite* unlawful; *ir*, in *irrégulier* irregular, *irrésolu* irresolute; *ig*, in *ignoble* ignoble, base; all which particles are but the same particle *in*, which changes its *n* into the initial consonant of the word to which it is joined, according to the Genius of the language.

re, in the beginning of words, usually denotes either reiteration, and reduplication of the action denoted by the word; as, in *refaire* to make or do again, *redire* to say again, *revenir* to come back again; or restitution and re-establishment into a former state, as, in *redresser* to make straight again, *rallumer* to light again, *réunir* to reunite, *&c.* Sometimes also it only serves to extend further the signification of the simple: as, in *réveiller* to awake, *reluire* to shine, *repaître* to feed, *radoucir* to appease, to sweeten.

re, is found besides in the beginning of a great many words simple, without making a part of them, as, in *recommander* to recommend, *renoncer* to renounce, *redoutable* dreadful, *se repentir* to repent, *&c.*

The particle *sur*, denotes excess of the action signified by the simple; as, *surabundance* superabundance, *surcharge* to overcharge, *surnaturel* supernatural, *surfaire* to exact, *survivre* to outlive, *&c.*

§ VIII. *Observations upon Proper Names.*

Reason requires that proper names of places, as, Kingdoms, Counties, Cities, and Towns, should keep the same appellations all over the world, without varying according to the diversity of the languages spoken by the several nations; so that *England* and *London*, &c. should be called by the same name, by the French, *Spaniards*, Italians, Turks, Russians, &c. as well as by the Eng-

lish,

lish; yet custom has obtained among most, if not all, nations, to adapt foreign names to the genius of their own language. Thus *England* is called by the French *l'*ANGLETERRE; *London*, LONDRES; *Germany*, *l'*ALLEMAGNE; *Bohemia*, *la* BOHÈME; *Poland*, *la* POLOGNE; *Cracow*, CRACOVIE, *&c.* but it is only the most renowned places whose names are liable to variation. The others keep their national appellation; as, *Kent*, *Bristol*, *Breslau*, &c.

Neither are foreign proper names of men subject to any alteration. The following observations are only upon ancient Latin and Greek Proper Names, that occur in History, to which custom has given a French Termination.

1*st*, Latin names of men in *a* never change, *Agrippa*, *Dolabella*, *Nerva*, *Galba*, *Sylla*, &c. are the same in French as in Latin, except *Seneca* that is changed into *Sénèque*. But proper names of women in *a* take all a French termination; some *ie*, as, *Julia* JULIE, *Livia* LIVIE, *Octavia* OCTAVIE; and some *ine*, as, *Agrippina* AGRIPPINE; *Cleopatra* makes CLÉOPATRE, and *Poppea* POPPÉE.

2*dly*, Names of men terminating in *as*, change *as* into *e not sounded*: as, *Pythagoras* PYTHAGORE, *Anaxagoras* ANAXAGORE, *Mecenas* MÉCÈNE, *Æneas* ENÉE: Except *Léonidas*, *Pélopidas*, *Prussias*, *Phidias*, *Epaminondas*, *Josias*, *Ananias*, and all Hebrew names, that continue the same; as likewise names of women, as, *Olympias*, Alexander's mother, *&c.* where *s* final is sounded.

3*dly*, Names in *e*, take some the accent acute over it; as, *Daphné* *Phryné*, *Circé*, *Thisbé*, *Hébé*, *Cloé*, &c, others make that *e* mute; as, *Calliope*, *Climène*, *Melpomène*, *Mnémosine*, *Amphitrite*, *Ariadne*, *Cibèle*, *Euridice*, *Pénélope*, &c.

4*thly*, Names in *ander* make *andre*: *Alexander* ALEXANDRE, *Leander* LÉANDRE, *Scamander* SCAMANDRE, *&c.*

5*thly*, Names in *es* lose their final *s*, and the *e* is not sounded; as, *Demosthenes* DEMOSTHÈNE, *Mithridates* MITRIDATE, *Arsaces* ARSACE, *Isocrates* ISOCRATE, *Apelles* APELLE, *Aristides* ARISTIDE, *&c.* except *Cérès*, *Artaxerxès*, *Xerxès*, *Péritès*, *Chosroès*, *Verrès*, and all dissyllables, that continue the same; but their last syllable has the sound of *è grave*, and the second *x* in *Xerxès* the articulation of *s*.

6*thly*, Names in *is*, and in *al*, continue the same; as, *Adonis*, *Omphis*, *Memphis*, *Sisygambis*, *Thalestris*, &c. *Annibal*, *Asdrubal*, &c. Except *Martial*, *Juvenal*, and *Mathilde*, from *Martialis*, *Juvenalis*, *Mathildis*.

7*thly*, Latin names in *o*, and Greek in *ov*, have the termination of *o nasal*; as, *Cicero* CICERON, Corbulo CORBULON, Varro VARRON.

VARRON, *Strabo* STRABON, *Dido* DIDON, *Xenophon* XÉNOPHON, *&c.* Except *Labeo* and *Carbo*; *Clio*, *Calypso*, *Erato*, *Echo*, and *Sapho*.

8*thly*, As to names in *us*, this distinction is to be made. Proper names of two syllables only, as, *Brutus*, *Cyrus*, *Crœsus*, *Porus*, *Pyrrhus*, remain the same; except *Titus* that makes TITE, and *Plautus* PLAUTE, and such names of Saints as, *Petrus*, *Paulus*, &c. that have been entirely frenchified into PIERRE and PAUL. Those of three or four syllables, if they are much celebrated, take the termination of *e* not sounded; as, *Tacitus* TACITE, *Plutarchus* PLUTARQUE, *Homerus* HOMÈRE, *Virgilius* VIRGILE, *Ovidius* OVIDE, *Horatius* HORACE, *Petronius* PÉTRONE, *Pompeius* POMPÉE, *Quintus Curtius* QUINTE-CURCE, *Julius Cæsar* JULE CESAR, *Aulus Gellius* AULU-GELLE, *Paulus Æmilius* PAUL-EMILE; *Lucretius* LUCRECE. *Terentius* is changed into TÉRENCE, and *Antonius* into ANTOINE. The others, that do not occur so much, keep the Latin termination, *Fulvius*, *Proculus*, *Quintius*, *Virginius*, as likewise *Darius*, and *Marius*; and the names of Barbarians, *Alaric*, *Chilpéric*, *Thedoric*. We also say LES GRACQUES *Gracchi*.

9*thly*, Proper names in *ianus* take the French termination *ien*, *Quintilien*, *Tertulien*, *Cyprien*, &c. We also say *Chaldéen*, *Lernéen*, *Néméen*. But *anus*, preceded by a consonant, is changed into AN; as, *Coriolanus* CORIOLAN. We also say *Trajan*, *Séjan*, *Titan*.

Names of Sects terminate also most commonly in *ien*; as, *Presbytérien*, *Luthérien*, *Nestoriens*, *Eutichéens*, *Sociniens*, &c. Some few only are excepted; as, *Calviniste*, *Anabaptiste*, &c.

As to the other proper names, ending with one or more consonants, as, *Agar*, *Cæsar*, *Castor*, *Jacob*, *Joachim*, *Minos*, *Béatrix*, &c. they remain the same in French.

Mr. Ménage has made complete lists of all Hebrew, Greek, Latin, and Gothic proper names, which change their terminations in the French, as also those that do not. Those who are desirous to know more of this matter, must consult him.

§ IX. *Observations upon the Titles annexed by custom to the divers ranks and stations of civil Life.*

It is the custom in *France* to call any Gentleman *Monsieur*, any married Gentlewoman *Madame*, and any Miss, young Lady, as well as any unmarried Gentlewoman (though she is ever so old) *Mademoiselle*. We say in the plural *Messieurs*, *Mesdames*, *Mesdemoiselles*. If in a company of young Ladies, or unmarried Gentlewomen

tlewomen (*Demoiselles*), there is one married Gentlewoman only (*une Dame*) we say *Mesdames* in speaking of them, and not *Mesdemoiselles*. We say in speaking of a woman *la Dame*, or *la Demoiselle dont je vous ai parlé*; The Lady, or Miss, whom I told you of. But we do not say *le sieur* nor *les sieurs*. *Le Monsieur*, for the *Gentleman*, is very seldom used, and le *Gentilhomme* (in that sense) never. In public acts, and through contempt, or in a banter, we say *le sieur un tel*, instead of *Monsieur* (Master such a one); and although these words are composed of a pronoun, and we write in two words *nos Dames*, *nos Demoiselles*, yet we make but one word of *Monsieur*, *Messieurs*, *Madame*, *Mademoiselle*, *Monseigneur*; and even the pronoun possessive in *Monsieur* stands for nothing, when an adnoun comes before the word, so that the adnoun must be preceded by another pronoun thus, *Mon cher Monsieur*, Dear Sir. But we do not say *Ma chère Madame*, but *Ma chère Dame*, *ma chère Demoiselle*, Dear Madam, or Miss; *Mon cher Seigneur*, My dear Lord.

In speaking to the King, we say *Sire*, *Votre Majesté*, Sire, Your Majesty; to the Queen, *Madame*, *Votre Majesté*, Madam, Your Majesty. Then we use the personal and possessive pronouns of the 3d pers. relating to *Majesté*, instead of the personal pronoun of the second person; as,

Votre Majesté ne peut montrer pour son *peuple plus d'amour qu'*elle *ne fait*. Your Majesty cannot show more love to *your* people than *you* do.

Votre Majesté a enfin triomphé de ses *ennemis*; *et* elle *les convainc que*, &c. Your Majesty has at last triumphed over *your* enemies, and *you* convince them that, *&c.*

The King's children, and grand children, are called *Enfans de France*. His Brother's children, when he has any, are called *Petits fils de France*. The eldest Prince (*le fils aîné de France*) is called *Dauphin*. In speaking of him, we say *Monseigneur* only, and he is never called *Royal Highness*: as, *J'aurai l'honneur de dire à Monseigneur que j'ai exécuté ses ordres*. The other Princes, his brothers, have divers titles, according to their appendages: as, the Duke of Burgundy, the Duke of Anjou, *&c.* and they are called *Monseigneur*, with the title *Altesse Royale*.

The princesses of *France*, the King's daughters, are called *Mesdames de France*, as soon as they are born: *Madame de France l'aînée*, *Madame de France puisnée*, *Madame de France troisième*.

The King's Brother is called *Monsieur* only, when he is spoken of; but when we speak to him, we say *Monseigneur*, *Votre Altesse Royale*.

Les Petites-filles de France, have the title of *Mademoiselle*. If there is but one, she is called *Mademoiselle* only; if she has any sisters, they take besides the title of some *appendage*; as, *Mademoiselle de Clermont*, *Mademoiselle de Charolois*, &c. When we speak to them, we say *Mademoiselle*, *Votre Altesse Royale*.

The Princes of the Royal Blood, but who are not *Petits-fils de France*, are called, the first *Monsieur le Prince*, the second *Monsieur le Duc*: the others have the title of some appendage or other: and when we speak to them, we say *Monseigneur*, *Votre Altesse Sérénissime*. The late Regent of France, great-grand-father of the present Duke of Orléans (1790), was *Petit fils de France*, being son to Gaston, Lewis the XIVth's brother. The present Duke of Orleans is only the first Prince of the blood. The son of *Mr. le Duc*'s title is Prince of *Condé*, and that of the Prince of *Condé*'s son is Duke of Bourbon: The present Prince of Condé's son is Duke of Bourbon, as the late Duke of Bourbon was his father.

The *Dauphin*'s Consort is called *Madame la Dauphine*, and those of the children, grand children, and Princes of the blood, have the same title as the Princes their Consorts.

When the King dies, his Queen is called *la Reine-Mère*; and *Madame la Dauphine*, then Queen, is called *la Reine*. If there were more Queens, as we have seen lately in Spain, the next to the *Queen-Mother* is called *Reine-Douairière*. The Widows of the Princes of the blood are also called *Douairières* (Dowagers).

As to the Princes that are not of the Royal Blood, they are called *Mon Prince*, *Votre Altesse*.

The Chancellor of France, the Keeper of the Seals, the Members of the Council, and the four Secretaries of State, the Dukes and Peers, the *Contrôleur général*, and *les Intendans* (the Lieutenants of the Counties) are called *Monseigneur*, with the title of *Grandeur*, when we speak or write to them: in speaking of them, we say only *Monsieur le Chancelier*, *Monsieur de Maurepas*.

The Marshals of France, Lieutenants General, and Ambassadors titles are *Monseigneur*, *Votre Excellence*.

We say to the Parliaments, to the *Chambres des Parlemens* (the Houses of Parliaments) and other sovereign Companies *(collectively)*, *Nos Seigneurs du Parlement*, *Nos Seigneurs de la Grande Chambre*. To their Speakers *(les Presidens des Parlemens)* the Attorneys-General of Parliaments, and other sovereign Courts *(distributively)* we say *Monseigneur*, *Votre grandeur*. But *les Avocats-généraux*, *les Substituts*, *les Conseillers*, and other Magistrates, are called only *Monsieur*.

The

The Consorts to the Chancellor, Marshals, *les Présidens*, and Ambassadors, as likewise those of Dukes, Counts, Marquisses, and Barons, are called *Madame la Chancelière*, *Madame la Maréchale*, *la Présidente*, *l'Ambassadrice*, *Madame la Duchesse*, *la Marquise*, *la Comtesse*, &c. with the titles of *Grandeur* and *Excellence*, if their husbands have them: but we do not say *Madame la Chevalière*.

The Bishop of Rome is called *le Pape* (Pope), with the titles of *Très-Saint-Père*, *Votre Sainteté* (most holy Father, your Holiness). His Legates, and Apostolic Nuncios, have the title of *Excellence*; the Cardinals, that of *Eminence*; and the Archbishops and Bishops, that of *Grandeur*; and in speaking to them we say, *Monseigneur*, *votre Eminence*, *votre Grandeur*. The direction of a letter, or of a Dedication to them, is *A son Eminence Monseigneur le Cardinal*. *A Monseigneur l'Illustrissime & Révérendissime Archevêque*, or *Evêque*. We also write *Au Roi*, *A Monseigneur le Dauphin*.

Any other person, of what condition or rank soever they are, as *Marquis*, *Comte*, *Baron*, *Chevalier*, are also called *Monsieur*, the French having nothing to answer these petty English titles, *Worship*, *Honour*, *Reverence*, *Esquire*. But in speaking to them, we say *Monsieur le Comte*, *Mr. le Chevalier*.

When we speak to one below us in the world, as a Gentleman to a Tradesman, we add his name to *Mr.* as, *Monsieur Renaut*, *je suis content de votre ouvrage*, *mais je trouve que vous êtes bien cher*; Mr. *Renaut*, I like your work very well, but think that you are very dear. To a soldier we say *Camarade*; to a countryman, and others of the lowest class of people, we say *mon ami*, *bon homme*, *bonne femme*.

I had almost forgot to say, that Lawyers at the Bar call one another *Maître*, instead of *Monsieur*: as, *Maître Patru*, *Maître Chevalier*, &c.

The expressions of tenderness, used among the French, are *mon cher*, *ma chère*; *mon ami*, *mon cher ami*, *ma chère amie*; *mon cœur*, *mon cher cœur*; *mon petit*, *ma petite*. But we do not say, as the English, *mon âme*, *ma chère âme*, *ma précieuse*, *ma chère précieuse*, &c.

Children call their parents *mon cher père*, *ma chère mère*, *mon frère*, *ma sœur*, *mon oncle*, *ma cousine*: the pronoun possessive must not be left out, as in English, *Father*, *Sister*, *Cousin*, &c. They call their Nurses *mamie*, *ma bonne*, (a contraction for *mon amie*, *ma bonne amie*): and they are called by them *mon fils*, *ma fille*, *mon cher*, *mon poulet*, *ma poule*.

School boys call their Master *Monsieur*, and they are called by him by their proper names, and never by the Christian one. Sometimes he calls his boys *mon ami*, *petit garçon*.

To

To conclude, the French language does not suffer many things to be called by their true names, either in conversation or writing, which can be expressed so in Latin, and other languages, without any indecency; but requires that they be expressed with Circumlocutions and Periphrases.

§ X. *Observations upon the writing of Letters.*

1°. Mr. *Vaugelas* pretends that a letter must not begin with *Monsieur*, *Madame*, *Monseigneur*, on account of these words being already at the top of the page. Indeed it is better to avoid the repeating of them, if possible; but, upon the whole, it is not so shocking, as it seemed to our author.

2°. These same words must never be repeated in the same period, though it is ever so long; and the writer must endeavour to place them, either mediately or immediately, after the pronoun *vous*: as,

Il n'appartient qu' à vous, Monsieur, de, &c.
It becomes you alone, Sir, to, *&c.*
Pour vous dire, Madame, ce que je pense, &c.
To tell you, Madam, what I think, *&c.*

These honorary terms come also very properly after these conjunctions Copulative and Transitive, beginning sentences: as, *Après tout, Monsieur,*——*Au reste, Monseigneur,*——*C'est pourquoi, Madame,*——But

3°. A special care ought to be taken, lest those terms should come in some part of the sentence, where they might cause a ridiculous equivocation, after a verb active: as,

Je ne veux pas acheter, Madame, si peu de chose à si haut prix;
I will not buy, Madam, so small a matter at so dear a rate.
Je ne doute pas que vous n'ayez reçu, Monsieur, ce que je vous ai envoyé;
I doubt not but you have received, Sir, what I sent you.
We write
Je ne doute pas, Monsieur, que, &c. *Je ne veux pas, Madame,* &c.

4°. If the letter is written to a King, a Prince, or a person of a distinguished rank, and it is not a long one, the terms of *Votre Majesté*, *Votre Altesse*, *Votre Excellence*, *Votre Grandeur*, must be used with the pronoun *elle* instead of *vous*. If the letter is pretty long, *vous* may be used for variety (though not often); but it must always be attended by *Votre Majesté*, *Votre Grandeur*, &c.

5°. Never begin a letter thus: *J'ai reçu la vôtre du premier du courant ou du vingt-six du passé*; I have received yours of the 1st

1st instant, or the 26th past: or *Vous verrez par celle-ci*, &c. You will see by this, *&c. Celle-ci, la vôtre, le courant*, and *le passé*, supposing always an antecedent, expressed before, to which they relate. However, as merchants do not scruple to write in this manner, those expressions may be looked upon as appropriated to trade, and merchants business; but quite banished from polite correspondence.

6°. Lastly, never end a letter, as in English, with a noun governed by a preposition. Therefore the ending of letters in the following manner will not do in French, and is contrary to the genius of the language, inasmuch as the words are in a wrong order and false construction:

Permettez-moi de prendre le titre de, Monsieur, ou le titre, Monsieur, de votre très-humble Serviteur. Permit me to take the title of, Sir, your most humble Servant.

Vous connaîtrez dans peu que vous n' avez pas obligé un ingrat, en faisant un plaisir à, Monsieur, V. T. H. S. You will see in a short time that you have not obliged an ungrateful person, in doing a kindness to, Sir, Y. M. H. S.

Il n'y a point de service qui ne vous doive être rendu par Mons. V. T. H. S. There is no service but ought to be done to you by Sir, Y. H. S.

Sachant bien qu'il n'y a rien que vous ne voulussiez faire pour, Mr. V. T. H. S. Knowing very well that there is nothing but what you would do for, Sir, Y. H. S.

Therefore nothing but a noun, expressing the subject or object of a verb, can end a letter; thus,

J'ai l'honneur d'être, Mr. V. T. H. S.
I have the honour to be, Sir, Y. H. S.
Faites-moi l'honneur de me croire, Monsieur, V. T. H. S.
Do me the honour to believe me, Sir, Y. M. H. S.

§ XI. *Of some adnouns, whose signification is different, according to the different placing of them, before or after some nouns.*

These adnouns are fourteen or fifteen in number, which import, in the examples in the second column, quite different ideas than they do, considered as adnouns only, as in the first column.

honnête,	*Un honnête homme*; An honest man.	*Un homme honnête*; A civil man.
brave,	*Un brave homme*; An honest man, a gentleman.	*Un homme brave*; One that has courage.

gentil,

gentil,	*Un Gentilhomme;* A man nobly descended.	*Un homme gentil;* A genteel man.
pauvre,	*Un homme pauvre;* A poor man.	*Un pauvre homme;* A man without genius or parts.
sage,	*Une femme sage;* A sober discreet woman.	*Une sage-femme;* A midwife.
grosse,	*Une grosse femme;* A big fat woman.	*Une femme grosse;* A woman with child.
cruel,	*Une femme cruelle;* A cruel woman.	*Une cruelle femme;* A hard woman.
galant,	*Un galant homme;* A clever well-bred man, a complete gentleman.	*Un homme galant;* One who runs after ladies.
plaisant,	*Un homme plaisant;* A good, merry, facetious companion.	*Un plaisant homme;* A ridiculous and impertinent fellow.
vilain,	*Un vilain homme;* A disagreeable man.	*Un homme vilain;* A niggardly fellow.
furieux,	*Un furieux animal;* A huge creature.	*Un animal furieux;* A fierce creature.
certain,	*Une nouvelle certaine;* True or sure news (the certainty whereof cannot be questioned.)	*Une certaine nouvelle;* A certain piece of news (but which requires confirmation.)
grand,	*Avoir l'air grand;* To have a noble aspect, to look grand.	*Avoir le grand air;* To copy after great folks, To make a great figure, to live grand.
	Un grand homme; A great man.	*Un homme grand;* A tall man.

Again, *Grand*, speaking of a man, is said with respect to his merit, parts, and stature; whereas speaking of a woman, it is said with respect to her stature only. Thus *un grand homme* may equally well signify *a tall man*, and *one of great parts and merit*: but *une grande femme* signifies only a tall woman.

These five, used only in the following ways of speaking, are taken adverbially, and, as such, are indeclinable. (See also pag. 319.)

COURT,

court,	*Ils sont demeurés court;* They were mum, *or*	*Elles sont demeurées court;* They were at a stand.	
fort,	*Il se fait fort de,* &c. He takes upon him to, &c.	*Elle se fait fort de,* &c. She takes, &c.	*Ils se font,* &c. They, &c.
haut,	*Vous êtes assise trop haut,*	You sit too high,	said of a woman.
bas,	*Elle est assise trop bas,*	She sits too low.	
bon,	*Des deniers revenant bon,*	So much money good, the remainder of a sum of money	

Feu, feue (late) is an adjective without plural, and even without feminine when it is placed before the article, and we say

Feu la reine, / *La feue reine,* } the late queen.

§ XI. *A List of the Nouns which are masculine in one signification, and feminine in another.*

Masculine.		*Feminine.*	
Un aigle,	*an eagle.*	L'aigle Romaine, *or* Impériale,	*the Roman,* or *Imperial eagle.*
Un Ange,	*an Angel.*	Une ange,	*a sort of fish.*
Un aune,	*an alder-tree.*	Une aune,	*an ell.*
Un Barbe,	*a Barb (a horse).*	Une barbe,	*a beard.*
Un Capre,	*Corsair, a privateer.*	Une capre,	*a caper (fruit).*
Le carpe,	*(part of the wrist).*	Une carpe,	*a carp.*
Le carouge,	*the carob tree.*	La carouge,	*the carob-bean (its fruit).*
Un coche,	*a caravan.*	Une coche,	*a sow, (fig) a woman noisomely fat.*
Un cornette,	*a cornet (of a troop of horse).*	Une cornette,	*a woman's cornet, (a head-dress.)*
Un couple,	*a couple, (two people united together.)*	Une couple,	*a pair, a yoke, a brace (two things together.*
Un Cravate,	*a Croatian (soldier).*	Une cravate,	*a cravat (neck-cloth.*
Un Enseigne,	*an Ensign.*	Une enseigne,	*a sign (a post-sign).*
Le Saint Crême,	*Crism, (ointment used in popish worship).*	De la crême,	*cream.*
Un exemple,	*an example, a pattern.*	Une exemple,	*a copy for writing,* or *drawing.*
Le fin d'une affaire,	*the main,* or *chief point of a business.*	La fin d'une affaire,	*the end,* or *conclusion of a thing,* or business.

Le fin des choses, the nicest point, the quintessence of things.

Masculine.		*Feminine.*	
Un foret,	*a piercer.*	Une forêt,	*a forest.*
Le foudre de Jupiter,	*Jupiter's thunder-bolt.*	La foudre,	*the thunder (a poetical expression for* le tonnerre*).*
Un foudre de guerre,	*a warlike general, dreaded by his enemies, (a figurative expression).*		
Un garde,	*one of the guards.*	Une garde,	*many soldiers to guard, to wait on somebody.*
Un garde du corps,	*a life-guard.*	Une garde,	*a nurse (for sick persons).*
Le Greffe,	*the Rolls.*	La greffe,	*the graft.*
Le Gueule,	*the Gules (in Heraldry).*	La gueule,	*the mouth (of a dog, cat, &c.)*
Le hâle,	*drying weather.*	La halle,	*a market-hall.*
Un huitième,	*the eighth part of something.*	Une huitième,	*a sequence of 8 cards at piquet.*
Un livre,	*a book.*	Une livre,	*a pound.*
Un loutre,	*a sort of hat.*	Une loutre,	*an otter.*
Un manœuvre,	*a labourer.*	Une manœuvre,	*the working of a ship; also secret practices in an affair.*
Un manche,	*a handle.*	Une manche,	*a sleeve.*
		La manche,	*the channel.*
Un mémoire,	*a bill, also a writing wherein facts are set down.*	Une bonne mémoire,	*a good memory.*
Un Mestre de camp,	*a Colonel of horse.*	La Mestre de camp	*the first company of a regiment of horse.*
Un mode,	*a mood, modality.*	Une mode,	*a fashion.*
Un mole,	*a mole, a pier.*	Une mole,	*a tympany, or moon-calf.*
Un moule,	*a mould (to cast).*	Une moule,	*a muscle (a shell-fish).*
Un mousse,	*a cabbin boy.*	De la mousse,	*moss.*
Un bon office,	*a good turn.*	Une Office,	*a buttery.*
L'office divin,	*the divine service.*		
Le St. Office,	*the Inquisition.*		
L'hombre,	*ombre (a card-game.)*	Une ombre,	*a shade, shadow.*

Un

Masculine.		*Feminine.*	
Un page,	*a page.*	Une page,	*the page of a book.*
Un palme,	*a hand's breadth.*	Une palme,	*a branch of a palm-tree.*
Un parallèle,	*a comparison.*	Une parallèle,	*a parallel-line.*
Un pendule,	*a pendulum.*	Une pendule,	*a clock.*
Le période (*in figur. sense*)	*pitch, summit, end.*	Une période,	*a revolution, epocha; period (in a speech).*
Un pique,	*a spade (at cards).*	Une pique,	*a pike.*
Un pivoine,	*a gnat-snapper.*	La pivoine,	*piony.*
Un poêle,	*a stove.*	Une poêle,	*a frying pan.*
Un plane, *or* platane,	*a plane-tree.*	Une plane,	*a plane (instrument of steel).*
Un poste,	*a post, place, station, employment.*	La poste,	*The Post-boy,* or *the Post-office,* &c.
Le Ponte,	*Ponto.*	La ponte (des oiseaux)	*bird's egg.*
Le pourpre,	*purples (a sort of distemper with a violent fever).*	La pourpre,	*the purple colour,* also *the mark of cardinalship,* &c.
Le réclame,	*the sign* or *sound, to call back a hawk.*	La réclame,	*the catch-word (at the bottom of a page).*
Un Satyre,	*a sylvan god.*	Une satire,	*a lampoon, satire.*
Un somme,	*a nap.*	Une somme,	*a sum.*
Un souris,	*a smile.*	Une souris,	*a mouse.*
Le temple,	*the church.*	La tempe,	*(called by some people* la temple, *but very improperly), the temple of the head.*
Un triomphe,	*a triumph.*	Une triomphe,	*trump at cards.*
Un trompette,	*he who sounds the charge.*	Une trompette,	*a trumpet.*
Un voile,	*a veil.*	Une voile,	*a sail.*
Un tour,	*a turn, a trick, tour.*	Une tour,	*a tower.*
Un teneur de livres,	*a book-keeper.*	La teneur, d'un acte,	*the tenor,* or *contents of a writing.*
Un vase,	*a jar, a vessel.*	La vase,	*mud,* or *mire.*
Le grand œuvre,	*the philosopher's stone.*	Une bonne œuvre,	*a good deed.*

§ XIII.

§ XIII. *A List of Nouns that have also their Feminine Gender, because they are applied to both Sexes, and are nouns but improperly. They, for the most part, follow the rules of adnouns, adding only* e *to the final letter of their masculine, or doubling its last consonant before* e.

Masc. Gend.		*Fem. Gender.*	
Dieu,	*God,*	Déesse,	*Goddess.*
Roi,	*King,*	Reine,	*Queen.*
Empereur,	*Emperor,*	Impératrice,	*Empress.*
Sultan,	*Sultan,*	Sultane,	*Sultana.*
Prince,	*Prince,*	Princesse,	*Princess.*
Duc	*Duke,*	Duchesse,	*Dutchess.*
Comte,	*Count, Earl,*	Comtesse,	*Countess.*
Bâron,	*Baron,*	Bâronne,	*Baroness.*
Marquis,	*Marquis,*	Marquise,	*Marchioness.*
Ambassadeur,	*Ambassador,*	Ambassadrice,	*his Lady.*
Electeur,	*Elector,*	Electrice,	*Electress (his lady).*
Régent,	*Regent,*	Régente,	*Regent.*
Marié,	*the Bridegroom,*	Mariée,	*the Bride.*
Epoux,	*Spouse,*	Epouse,	*Spouse.*
Mari,	*Husband,*	Femme,	*Wife.*
Père,	*Father,*	Mère,	*Mother.*
Frère,	*Brother,*	Sœur,	*Sister.*
Fils,	*Son,*	Fille,	*Daughter.*
Aïeul,	*Grandfather,*	Aïeule,	*Grandmother.*
Cousin,	*He-Cousin,*	Cousine,	*She-Cousin.*
Cousin germain,	*He-first Cousin,*	Cousinegermaine,	*She first Cousin.*
Neveu,	*Nephew,*	Nièce,	*Niece.*
Parrain,	*God-father,*	Marraine,	*God-mother.*
Filleul,	*God-son.*	Filleule,	*God-daughter.*
Parent,	*Relation, Kinsman,*	Parente,	*Kinswoman.*
Allié,	*Kin,*	Alliée,	*Kin.*
Jumeau,	*a Twin,*	Jumelle,	*a Twin.*
Ami,	*a friend,*	Amie,	*a She-Friend.*
Compagnon,	*a He-Companion,*	Compagne,	*a She-Companion.*
Mignon,	*Darling,*	Mignonne,	*Darling.*
Compère,	*a He-Gossip,*	Commère,	*a She-Gossip.*
Voisin,	*a He-Neighbour,*	Voisine,	*a She-Neighbour.*
Hôte,	*Landlord,*	Hôtesse,	*Landlady.*
Héritier,	*an Heir,*	Héritière,	*an Heiress.*

Veuf.

Masc. Gender.		*Fem. Gender.*	
Veuf,	*a Widower,*	Veuve,	*a Widow.*
Orphelin,	*an Orphan,*	Orpheline,	*a She-Orphan.*
Maître,	*Master,*	Maîtresse,	*Mistress.*
Serviteur,	*Servant,*	Servante,	*Servant.*
Gouverneur,	*Governor,*	Gouvernante,	*Governess.*
Tuteur,	*He-Guardian,*	Tutrice,	*She-Guardian.*
Ecolier,	*a He-Scholar,*	Ecolière,	*a She-Scholar.*
un Pupille,	*a He-Pupil,*	une Pupille,	*a She-Pupil.*
un Apprenti,	*a Prentice,*	une Apprentie,	*a Prentice-Girl.*
Bâtard,	*a He-Bastard,*	Bâtarde,	*a She-Bastard.*
Curateur,	*a Trustee,*	Curatrice,	*a She-Trustee.*
Protecteur,	*Protector.*	Protectrice,	*Protectrix.*
Bienfaiteur,	*Benefactor,*	Bienfaitrice,	*Benefactress.*
Médiateur,	*Mediator,*	Médiatrice,	*Mediatrix.*
Testateur,	*Testator,*	Testatrice,	*Testatrix.*
Conservateur,	*Conservator,*	Conservatrice*,	*Conservatrix.*
Moteur,	*Mover,*	Motrice*,	*Motive.*
Débiteur,	*Debtor,*	Debitrice,	*a Woman Debtor.*
Demandeur,	*Plaintiff,*	Demanderesse,	*Law Terms.*
Défendeur,	*Defendant,*	Defenderesse,	*Law Terms.*
Abbé,	*Abbot,*	Abbèsse,	*Abbess.*
Prieur,	*Prior,*	Prieure,	*the Prior Nun.*
Prêtre,	*a Priest,*	Prêtresse,	*Priestess.*
Religieux,	*a Friar,*	Religieuse,	*a Nun.*
Un Profès,	*a profess'd Monk,*	Profèsse,	*a profess'd Nun.*
Lecteur,	*Reader,*	Lectrice,	*(said only of the Nun, who reads while the Nuns are at dinner, or supper.)*
Portier,	*Porter,*	Portière,	*a Nun who keeps the door.*
Chanoine,	*a Canon,*	Chanoinesse,	*a She-Canon.*
Pécheur,	*Sinner,*	Pécheresse,	*She-Sinner.*
Vengeur,	*Avenger,*	Vengeresse,	*She-Avenger.*
Flatteur,	*a Flatterer,*	Flatteuse,	*She-Flatterer.*
Enchanteur,	*Bewitcher,*	Enchanteresse,	*Inchantress.*
Acteur,	*an Actor,*	Actrice,	*Actress.*
Comédien,	*a Comedian,*	Comédienne,	*a She-Comedian.*
Berger,	*a Shepherd,*	Bergère,	*a Shepherdess.*
un Paysan,	*a Country-man,*	une Paysanne,	*a Country-Girl.*
Chien,	*a Dog,*	Chienne,	*a Bitch.*

* *Used only in these dogmatical expressions,* Faculté conservatrice, *The conservative faculty;* Vertu motrice, *The motive virtue.*

Masc. Gender.		*Fem. Gender.*	
Lion,	*a Lion,*	Lionne,	*a Lioness.*
Tigre,	*a Tyger,*	Tigresse,	*a Tygress.*
Lévrier,	*a Greyhound,*	Levrette,	*a Greyhound-Bitch,*
un Chat,	*a Cat,*	une Chatte,	*a She-Cat.*
Ivrogne,	*a Drunken Man,*	Ivrogneſſe,	*a drunken Woman.*
Courtaud,	*a ſhort thick-ſet Man,*	Courtaude,	*a ſhort thick-ſet Woman.*
Noiraud,	*one of a black complexion,*	Noiraude.	
Lourdaud,	*an awkward Fellow,*	Lourdaude,	*an awkward Wench.*
Menteur,	*a Liar,*	Menteuſe,	*a She-Liar.*
Traître,	*a Traitor,*	Traîtreſſe,	*a She-Traitor.*
Coquin,	*a Raſcal, a Rogue, a Knave.*	Coquine,	*Baggage, She-Rogue.*
Priſonnier,	*a Priſoner,*	Priſonnière,	*a She-Priſoner.*
Marchand,	*a Merchant,*	Marchande,	*a Shopkeeper woman.*
Cuiſinier,	*a Man-cook,*	Cuiſinière,	*a Maid-cook.*

Names of women, that ſell any thing in ſhops, take a feminine termination in this manner:

Boulanger,	*a Baker,*	Boulangère.
Meûnier,	*a Miller,*	Meûniere.
Fruitier,	*one that ſells Fruit,*	Fruitière.
Vendeur,	*any Seller,*	Vendeuſe.
Faiſeur,	*any Workman,*	Faiſeuſe.
Ouvrier,	or *Tradeſman.*	Ouvrière, &c.

Témoin, a Witneſs, *Auteur*, an Author, and *Poëte*, a Poet, are ſaid of both men and women. *Poſſeſſeur*, Poſſeſſor, and *Succeſſeur*, Succeſſor, are never ſaid of women; but we ſay: *Inventeur* or *Inventrice*, Inventor.

More, a Black-moor, makes alſo *Moresque*; and *Suiſſe*, a Swiſs, *Suiſſeſſe*; though we ſay alſo *Penſer à la Suiſſe*, To think on nothing.

§ XIV. *A Liſt of Adnouns uſed ſubſtantively, but which cannot ſtand by themſelves in Engliſh, without a noun, ſuch as* Man, Woman, Fellow, *or ſome ſuch word, or are engliſhed by Nouns, or a Periphraſe.*

Abandonné,	*a lewd profligate fellow.*	Une abandonnée,	*a lewd loose woman.*

L'ac-

L'accessoire, *what is accessary.*
L'accidentel, *what is accidental.*
Une accouchée, *a woman in the straw.*
Un avorton, *an abortive child.*
L'agréable, *agreeableness.*
L'essentiel, *the main thing.*
L'utile, *usefulness.*
L'honnête, *what is honest.*
L'accusé, -ée, *the party accused.*
Un affranchi, -ie, *one that of bond is made free.*
Un audacieux, -euse, *a daring rash man or woman.*
Un barbare, *a barbarous man.*
Le beau, *what is fairest, best in any thing, excellency, &c.*
Le beau & l'effroyable, *the fair and the foul.*
Une belle, *a fair one.*
Les belles, *the fair sex.*
Le bon, *what is good.*
Brailleur, -euse, *a noisy, obstreperous fellow; a bawling noisy woman.*
Le brillant, *the brilliancy.*
Le brûlé, *something burnt.*
Un convié, *a guest.*
Capricieux, -euse, *a whimsical man or woman.*
Délicat, -cate, *a nice person.*
Un désespéré, -ée, *a desperate man or woman.*
Un déterminé, *a resolute, desperate fellow.*
Un dévot, -ote, *a religious man or woman.*
Un élu, les élus, *an elect, the elect.*
Un entêté, -ée, *an obstinate person.*

Faire le fâché, -la fâchée, *to act the angry person, to pretend to be angry.*
Le faux, *what is false.*
Le fort, *the strongest part of a thing.*
Le foible, *the weak side of a thing.*
Les foibles, *the feeble minded.*
Le gras, *the fat.*
Le maigre, *the lean.*
Un galeux, -euse, *a scabby man, or woman.*
Un ignorant, *an ignorant fellow.*
Imprudent, -te, *a foolish fellow.*
Un impudent, -te, *an impudent fellow or slut.*
Impudique, *a lewd man or woman.*
Incommode, *a troublesome person.*
Impertinent, -te, Importun, -e, *an impertinent coxcomb or slut.*
Un inconnu, -ue, *an unknown person.*
Un incrédule, *an unbeliever.*
Un indiscret, -ette, *an indiscreet man or woman.*
Un, une infâme, *an infamous person.*
Un ingrat, -te, *an ungrateful wretch.*
Un innocent, -te, *an innocent, a silly person.*
Un insensé, -ée, *a mad person.*
Un insolent, -te, *a saucy person.*
L'intérieur, *the inward part of a thing.*
Un lénitif, *a lenitive.*
L'extérieur, *the outward part of a thing, the outside.*

Un malheureux,-euse,	*a wretch.*
La mariée,	*the bride.*
Un, une misérable,	*a pitiful, good for nothing wretch.*
Un méchant, -ante,	*a naughty person.*
Un malotru,	*a sad soul.*
Le merveilleux,	*what is wonderful in any thing.*
Le nécessaire,	*necessaries, a competency.*
Un obstiné-ée,	*an obstinate person.*
Le possible,	*what is possible.*
Le principal,	*the principal.*
Un préservatif,	*a preservative.*
Un purgatif,	*a purgative.*
Un orgueilleux,-euse,	*a proud, haughty person.*
L'impossible,	*impossibilities.*
Une prude,	*a prude.*
Les prédestinés,	*those that are predestinated.*
Le réel,	*the reality.*
Un refait,	*a draw game.*
Un réfractaire,	*a refractory person.*
Un, une ridicule,	*a ridiculous person.*
Le superflu,	*that which is superfluous; superfluity.*

Le sec,	*the dry.*
L'humide,	*the moist.*
Le froid,	*the cold.*
Le chaud,	*the hot.*
Un suffisant,	*a conceited coxcomb.*
Le comique,	*the comical part of a thing or story.*
Le tragique,	*the tragical part.*
Le temporel,	*a competency; the temporalities of the church.*
Un rusé,-ée,	*a cunning, sly man, or woman, a sharp blade.*
Sanguin,-ine,	*of a sanguine constitution.*
Un sensuel,	*a voluptuous person.*
Un sage,	*a wise man.*
Le sublime,	*the lofty style.*
Le solide,	*what is solid.*
Un superstitieux,-euse,	*a superstitious man or woman.*
Un extraordinaire,	*an extraordinary case.*
L'extrême,	*extreme.*
Un, une téméraire,	*a rash person.*
Le taillant, Le tranchant,	*the edge.*
Le vif,	*the quick.*
Un vide,	*an empty place.*
Le vrai,	*what is true.*

Besides adjectives of Nations, as, un Anglois, *an English man,* une Françoise, *a French woman,* &c.

Examples.

Le vrai *ou* le faux d'une chose;	*The truth* or *falsehood of something.*
Tenter l'impossible;	*To attempt impossibilities.*
Joindre l'agréable à l'utile;	*To join profit to pleasure.*
C'est une orgueilleuse;	She is a proud creature, &c.

Moreover,

Moreover, some words are both adnouns and nouns together, such as adultère, chagrin, colère, sacrilége, politique: *as,* Commettre un adultère, *to commit an adultery*; une femme adultère, *an adulteress*; le chagrin, *grief*; un homme chagrin, *a morose, peevish man*; un homme colère, *a passionate man*; la colère de Dieu, *the wrath of God.*

§ XV. *A List of nouns masculine ending in* e *not sounded.*

Abordage,	*the boarding of a Ship.*
Abyme,	*an Abyss.*
Accessoire,	*Accessary.*
Acrostiche,	*an Acrostick.*
Acte,	*Deed, an Act.*
Adminicule,	*an Aid.*
Adverbe,	*an Adverb.*
Adultère,	*Adultery.*
Afforage,	*the Assize,* or *Price of a commodity, set by a magistrate.*
Age,	*Age.*
Agapes,	*Love feasts.*
Aggrave,	*a threatening Monitory.*
Agiotage,	*Stock-jobbing.*
Aigle,	*an Eagle.*
Albâtre,	*Alabaster.*
Alliage,	*Mixture.*
Alvéole,	*a Hole in the honey-comb, a socket.*
Amble,	*Amble,* or *Pace.*
Ambre,	*Amber.*
Amphithéâtre,	*an Amphitheatre.*
Anglicisme,	*an Anglicism.*
Anachronisme,	*Anachronism.*
Anathème,	*Anathema.*
Ancêtres,	*Ancestors.*
Ancrage,	*Anchorage.*
Ange,	*an Angel.*
Archange,	*an Archangel.*
Angle,	*an Angle.*
Anniversaire,	*Anniversary.*
Anonyme,	*Anonymous.*
Antropophage,	*A Man-eater.*
Antidote,	*an Antidote.*
Antimoine,	*Antimony.*
Antipodes,	*Antipodes.*
Antre,	*a Den, a Cave.*
Aoriste,	*an Aorist.*
Aphte,	*an Aphthæ.*
Appanage,	*Appendage.*
Apogée,	*Apogeon.*
Apologue,	*Apologue.*
Apophthegme,	*Apophthegm.*
Aposème,	*an Apozem.*
Apostème,	*an Imposthume.*
Apôtre,	*an Apostle.*
Apothicaire,	*an Apothecary.*
Arbitrage,	*an Arbitration.*
Arbitre,	*Umpire,* or *Will.*
Arbre,	*a Tree.*
Arbuste,	*a Shrub.*
Archétype,	*Archetype.*
Argue,	*a Machine to wire-draw gold.*
Aromate,	*sweet-smelling Herb.*

Arpentage, *the Survey of Lands.*
Arriérages, *Arrears.*
Article, *an Article.*
Artifice, *Artifice. Trick.*
Arrhes, *Earnest penny.*
Âne, *an Ass.*
Asiérisme, *an Asterism.*
Astérisque, *an Asterisk.*
Asthme, *an Asthma.*
Astragale, *Astragal.*
Astre, *a Star.*
Astrolabe, *an Astrolabe.*
Asile, *Asylum, a Sanctuary.*
Attelage, *a Set of Coach-Horses.*
Attérage, *Landing.*
Âtre, *the Hearth in a Chimney.*
Avage, { *a duty which the hangman has in some places, every market-day.*
Avantage, *an Advantage.*
Auditoire, { *a Congregation, Audience.*
Augure, *an Augury, Omen.*
Aune, *an Elder-Tree.*
Aunage, *measuring by Ells.*
Auspice, *Auspice.*
Automate, *an Automaton.*
Axe, *an Axis, Axle-tree.*
Axiome, *an Axiom.*
Azymes, *Azymes.*
Badinage, *Wantonness.*
Bagage, *Baggage, Goods.*
Balustre, *Balluster, Rails.*
Bandage, *a Truss, Ligature.*
Barbouillage, *daubing.*
Barrage, *a Duty for passage-toll.*
Baptême, *a Christening.*
Baptistère, { *a Certificate out of a Church book.*
Baume, *Balsam.*
Bénéfice, *a Living, Benefit.*
Beurre, *Butter.*
Blâme, *a Blame.*
Blasphème, *a Blasphemy.*
Bièvre, *a Beaver.*
Billonage, *the debasing the Coin.*
Bitume, *Bitumen.*
Blocage, *Rubbish.*
Bocage, *a Grove.*
Bordage, *the Side-planks of a Ship.*
Bouge, *a Closet, a little Room.*
Boutillage, *Mud walling.*
Branchage, *Branches.*
Branle, *Motion*, or *Dance.*
Brassage, *the coining of Money.*
Bréviaire, *Breviary.*
Breuvage, *a Potion, a Draught.*
Bronze, *cast Copper.*
Buffle, *a Buffalo, a wild Ox.*
Busque, *a Busk.*
Buste, *a Bust.*
Câble, *a Cable.*
Cadâvre, *a Corpse.*
Câdre, *a Frame.*
Caducée, { *Caduceum, Mercury's Wand.*
Caïque, *Galley boat.*
Calibre, *Kind, Size.*
Calice, *Chalice.*
Calme, *Calm.*
Calvaire, *a Hill's name.*
Camphre, *Camphire.*
Cancre, *a Crab-fish.*
Cantique, *a spiritual Song.*
Capitole, *the Capitol.*
Caprice, *a Caprice, Whim.*
Capricorne, *the Capricorn.*
Capuce, *a Cowl.*
Caractère, *a Character.*
Carême, *Lent.*
Carénage, *a Careening-place.*
Carnage, *Slaughter.*

Carrelage,

Cartelage, *the paving of a Room.*
Carrosse, *a Coach.*
Cartilage, *a Cartilage.*
Cartouche, *a Cartridge.*
Capitulaire, { *a Register Book of a Monastery.*
Casque, *a Helmet.*
Catafalque, { *a Catafalk (used in obsequies).*
Catalogue, *a Catalogue, List.*
Cataplasme, { *a Cataplasm, a Poultice.*
Catarre, *a Catarrh.*
Catéchisme, *a Catechism.*
Cautère, *a Cautery.*
Cédre, *a Cedar-tree.*
Centre, *the Center.*
Cénacle, *the Cenacle.*
Cénotaphe, *a Cenotaph.*
Centaure, *a Centaur.*
Centuple, *a Hundred fold.*
Cercle, *a Circle.*
Cerne, { *a circle black and blue under the eye.*
Ceste, *Cestus.*
Chambranle, { *the Mantle-piece of a chimney.*
Chancre, *a Shanker.*
Change, *Exchange.*
Chanvre, *Hemp.*
Chapitre, *a Chapter.*
Chariage, *the Carriage.*
Charme, { *Charm; also a Hornbeam.*
Charnage, *Flesh-time.*
Chauffage, *Fuel.*
Chaume, *Stubble.*
Chêne, *an Oak.*
Chèvre-feuille, *Honey-suckle.*
Chef-d'œuvre, *a Master-piece.*
Chiffre, *a Cypher.*
Chrême, *Chrism.*
Chyle, *Chyle.*
Chômage, *Rest.*
Ciboire, *a Box, a Cup.*
Cidre, *Cyder.*
Cierge, *a Wax-taper.*
Cygne, *a Swan.*
Cilice, *Hair-cloth.*
Cylindre, *a Cylinder.*
Cimeterre, *a Cimeter.*
Cimetière, *a Church-yard.*
Cinabre, *Cinabar.*
Cinnamome, *Cinnamon-tree.*
Cinquième, *the fifth part.*
Cintre, *an Arch.*
Cippe, *(a Term of Architecture.)*
Cirage, *the waxing of a thing.*
Ciroène, *a Sear-cloth.*
Circonflexe, *Circumflex.*
Cirque, *Circus.*
Cistre, *a Sistrum.*
Clystère, *a Clyster.*
Cloäque, *a Common-sewer.*
Cloître, *a Cloister.*
Cloporte, *a Wood-louse.*
Coche, *a Caravan.*
Code, *the Code.*
Codicile, *a Codicil.*
Coffre, *a Trunk.*
Collyre, *a Collyrium.*
Collége, *a College.*
Collègue, *Copartner in an office.*
Colloque, *a Conference.*
Comble, *the Top of a thing.*
Colosse, *a Colossus.*
Colure, *Colure.*
Commerce, *Commerce, Trade.*
Conclave, *the Conclave.*
Concile, *a Council.*
Conciliabule, *a Conventicle.*
Concombre, *a Cucumber.*

Concubinage,	*Concubinage.*
Cône,	*a Cone.*
Congre,	*a Conger.*
Comte,	*a Count, Earl.*
Compte,	*an Account, Reckoning.*
Conte,	*a Story, Tale.*
Contraire,	*contrary.*
Contraste,	*Contrast, opposite.*
Contre-ordre,	*Counter-order.*
Controle,	*a Register-book, a Roll.*
Conventicule,	*Conventicle.*
Corpuscule,	*a Corpuscle.*
Cortége,	*a Train,* or *Retinue.*
Coryphée,	*Coripheus, the Chief.*
Corollaire,	*a Corollary.*
Cothurne,	*a Buskin.*
Courage,	*Courage.*
Coude,	*the Elbow.*
Couvercle,	*a Lid.*
Crépuscule,	*the Twilight.*
Crible,	*a Sieve.*
Cube,	*a Cube.*
Cuivre,	*Copper.*
Culte,	*Worship.*
Coutre,	*a Coulter.*
Crâne,	*a Skull.*
Crêpe,	*a Crape.*
Grime,	*a Crime.*
Crocodile,	*a Crocodile.*
Cycle,	*Cycle.*
Dactyle,	*a Dactil.*
Déboire,	*Grief, a Choak-pear.*
Décalogue,	*the Decalogue.*
Décagone,	*a Decagon.*
Dédale,	*a Maze.*
Décombres,	*Rubbish.*
Décompte,	*discounting.*
Définitoire,	*a Chapter in a congregation.*
Décuple,	*Tenfold.*
Délire,	*Delirium.*
Délivre,	*the Secundine.*
Déluge,	*a Flood.*
Démérite,	*Demerit.*
Denticule,	
Dentifrice,	*De*
Dépilatoire,	*De*
Derrière,	*the B*
Désastre,	*the*
Désavantage,	*a Disad*
Desordre,	*a*
Diâble,	
Diadème,	*a*
Diagnostique,	*Dia*
Dialecte,	
Dialogue,	*a*
Diamètre,	*the D*
Diaphragme,	*the Dia*
Dictame,	*Garden*
Dièse,	*a Sharp,*
Digeste,	
Diocèse,	*a*
Disque,	*Disk*
Distique,	*a*
Dictionnaire,	*a Di*
Dimanche,	
Dilème,	*a D*
Dimissoire,	*a D*
Dire, *and* oui-dire,	*a H*
Dividende,	*a D*
Divorce,	
Dogme,	*a*
Dogue,	*a Ma*
Domaine,	
Domicile,	*Abode, Dwelli*
Dommage,	*a*
Douaire,	*a*
Double,	*the*
Doute,	*a*
Dromadaire,	*a Dro*
Echange,	*E*
Ecoufle,	*a*
Edifice,	*an*
Ellébore,	*H*
Eloge,	*Eulogy, En*
Emétique,	*E*
Empire,	*an*

Empyrée, *the highest Heaven.*
Entrecolonne, *Intercolumniation.*
Enthousiasme, *Enthusiasm.*
Entracte, *an Interlude.*
Epiderme, *Epidermis.*
Epididyme, *Epididymis.*
Epigastre, *Epigastrium.*
Epilogue, *an Epilogue.*
Episode, *an Episode.*
Epithalame, *Epithalamium.*
Epithème, *Epithema.*
Epitôme, *an Epitome.*
Equilibre, *Equilibrium.*
Equipage, *an Equipage.*
Equinoxe, *Equinox.*
Esclandre, *a Bustle.*
Esclavage, *Slavery.*
Escompte, *Discount.*
Esophage, *Oesophage.*
Espâce, *Space.*
Etage, *a Story.*
Etalage, *Stallage, Sample.*
Être, *a Being.*
Evangile, *the Gospel.*
Exemple, *a Pattern.*
Exemplaire, *a Copy.*
Exergue, *the Exergue of a Medal.*
Exercice, *an Exercise.*
Exorde, *an Exordium.*
Exode, *Exodus.*
Exorcisme, *Exorcism.*
Extraordinaire, { *extraordinary Case.*
Extrême, *an Extreme.*
Faîte, *the Top, height of a thing.*
Fanage, *Hay-making.*
Fantôme, *a Phantom.*
Fare, { *Fare, light-house (a watch-tower).*
Fascinage, *Fascine-work.*
Faste, *Ostentation.*
Fastes, *the Roman Calendar.*

Fauchage, *Mowing.*
Fenêtrage, *the Windows.*
Fermage, *Farm-rent.*
Feurre, *Straw.*
Feûtre, *Felt, a scurvy Hat.*
Fiacre, *a Hackney-coach.*
Fifre, *a Fife (or Flute.*
Filage, *Spinning.*
Filigrane, *Filigree.*
Filtre, *Charm, Love-potion.*
Finage, { *the Extent* or *Liberties of a jurisdiction.*
Flegme, *Phlegm.*
Fleuve, *a great River.*
Foible, *a weak Side.*
Foie, *the Liver.*
Fossile, *Fossil.*
Follicule, *Follicle.*
Formulaire, *a Form.*
Fouage, *Hearth-money.*
Fourage, *Fodder, Forage.*
Frêne, *an Ash-tree.*
Fromage, *Cheese.*
Frontispice, *Frontispiece.*
Gage, *Pledge.*
Gages, { *(only in the plural) Salary, Wages.*
Gallicisme, *a Gallicism.*
Genièvre, *Juniper-berry.*
Génie, *Genius.*
Genre, *Kind, Gender.*
Germe, *Sperm, Germe.*
Geste, *Gesture, action.*
Gingembre, *Ginger.*
Girofle, *Clove.*
Gîte, *a Dwelling place.*
Glaire, *the white of an egg.*
Glaive, *a Sword.*
Globe, *a Globe.*
Globule, *a Globule.*
Glossaire, *a Glossary.*
Golfe, *a Gulph.*

Goufre,

Gouffre,	*Whirl pool, Swallow.*
Grade,	*a Degree.*
Grêffe,	*the Rolls.*
Grimoire,	*a conjuring-book.*
Groupe,	*a Group.*
Hâle,	*Drying-weather.*
Haut-de-chauffe,	*Breeches.*
Hâvre,	*Haven.*
Héliotrope,	*a Turnsol.*
Hémiſphère,	*an Hemiſphere.*
Hémiſtiche,	*Hemiſtick.*
Hermitage,	*an Hermitage.*
Hêtre,	*a Beech-tree.*
Hiérogliphe,	*Hieroglyphick.*
Hippogriffe,	*Hippogriff.*
Holocauſte,	*a Burnt-offering.*
Hombre,	*Hombre.*
Homicide,	*a Murder.*
Hommage,	*a Homage.*
Horoſcope,	*a Horoſcope.*
Homme,	*a Man.*
Hongre,	*a Gelding.*
Hoſpice,	*an Hoſpital.*
Hôte,	*a Landlord.*
Huitieme,	*the eighth part.*
Jade,	*a green ſort of precious Stone.*
Iambe,	*an Iambick verſe.*
Jambage,	*Jambs, ſtroke.*
Jaune,	*the Yolk of an egg.*
Jaſpe,	*Jaſper.*
Jeûne,	*a Faſt.*
Incendie,	*a Conflagration.*
Indice,	*a Sign.*
In-douze,	*in Twelve.*
In-ſeize,	*in Sixteen.*
Inceſte,	*an Inceſt.*
Incube,	*an Incubus.*
Inſecte,	*an Inſect.*
Interlope,	*Interloper.*
Intermède,	*an Interlude.*
Interrègne,	*an Interreign.*
Interſtice,	*an Interval of time.*
Intervalle,	*an Interval.*
Inventaire,	*an Inventory.*
Iſthme,	*Iſthmus.*
Itinéraire,	*an Itinerary.*
Jules,	*a Julio (an Italian five pence).*
Laboratoire,	*a Laboratory.*
Labourage,	*Tillage.*
Labyrinthe,	*a Labyrinth.*
Langage,	*a Language.*
Langes,	*Swaddling-cloaths.*
Lavage,	*a waſhing.*
Légiſte,	*a Civilian.*
Légume,	*Pulſe.*
Leurre,	*a Lure for a Hawk.*
Libelle,	*a Libel.*
Liége,	*Cork.*
Lierre,	*Ivy.*
Lièvre,	*a Hare.*
Limbe,	*Limb,* or *Border.*
Limbes,	*Limbs.*
Linge,	*Linen.*
Livre,	*a Book.*
Lobe,	*a Lobe.*
Louage,	*letting out, hiring.*
Logarithme,	*Logarithm.*
Logogriphe,	*Logogriph.*
Lombes,	*the Loins.*
Louvre,	*a Palace.*
Lucre,	*Gain, Profit.*
Luminaire,	*the light of a place.*
Luſtre,	*Luſtre, brightneſs,* alſo *a branched candleſtick.*
Luxe,	*Luxury.*
Mâle,	*a Male.*
Maléfice,	*Witchcraft.*
Manche,	*a Handle.*

Manége,

Manége, *a riding School.*
Mânes, *the Manes*, or *Ghost.*
Manifeste, *a Manifesto.*
Manipule, *Maniple.*
Manque, *Want, lack.*
Marbre, *Marble.*
Mariage, *Marriage.*
Martyre, *Martyrdom.*
Masque, *a Mask.*
Massacre, *a Slaughter.*
Mausolée, *a Mausoleum.*
Mécompte, *a Mistake in reckoning.*
Médianoche, *a Mid night meal.*
Membre, *a Member.*
Mélange, *a Mixture.*
Mémoire, *Bill, Memoirs.*
Ménage, *House-keeping.*
Mensonge, *a Lie.*
Mercure, *Mercury.*
Mérite, *Merit, Desert.*
Merle, *a Black-bird.*
Mésentère, *Mesentery.*
Mesurage, *Measuring.*
Météore, *a Meteor.*
Meuble, *Furniture of the house.*
Meurtre, *a Murder.*
Microscope, *a Microscope.*
Mille, *a Mile.*
Millésime, *(the date of a Medal).*
Millième, *the thousandth Part.*
Ministère, *Ministry.*
Miracle, *a Miracle.*
Mobile, *Motion.*
Modèle, *a Model, Sample.*
Module, *a Module.*
Môle, *a Mole.*
Monarque, *a Monarch.*
Monde, *the World.*
Monastère, *a Monastery.*
Monochorde, *a Monochord.*
Monitoire, *a Monitory.*
Monogramme, *a Monogram.*
Monologue, *a Monologue.*
Monopole, *a Monopoly.*
Monosyllabe, *a Monosyllable.*
Monstre, *a Monster.*
Moule, *a Mould.*
Muffle, *a Muzzle.*
Murmure, *Murmur.*
Muscle, *a Muscle.*
Myrte, *the Myrtle-tree.*
Mystère, *a Mystery.*
Narcisse, *a Daffodil.*
Naufrage, *a Ship-wreck.*
Navire, *a Ship.*
Nécessaire, *the Necessaries.*
Négoce, *Trade.*
Neuvième, *the ninth Part.*
Nitre, *Nitre.*
Nombre, *a Number.*
Nuage, *a Cloud.*
Obélisque, *an Obelisk.*
Observatoire, *an Observatory.*
Obstacle, *an Hinderance.*
Octogone, *Octagon.*
Office, *a good Turn.*
Ogre, *an Ogre.*
Olympe, *Olympus.*
Ombrage, *Shade, Umbrage.*
Oncle, *an Uncle.*
Ongle, *a Nail.*
Opprobre, *Reproach.*
Opuscule, *a little Book.*
Oracle, *an Oracle.*
Orage, *a Storm.*
Oratoire, *an Oratory.*
Orbe, *an Orb.*
Ordinaire, *Ordinary, the Mail.*
Ordre, *an Order.*
Organe, *an Organ.*
Orgasme,

Orgasme, (medic. term) *Orgasm.*
Orge, *Barley.*
Orgue, *a pair of Organs.*
Orifice, *Orifice, Opening.*
Orle (in heraldry), *an Orle.*
Orme, *an Elm tree.*
Otage, *an Hostage.*
Outrage, *Outrage, Affront.*
Ouvrage, *Work.*
Pacte, *a Pact.*
Paganisme, *Paganism.*
Pagne, *Cotton-cloth.*
Pampre, *Vine branch.*
Panache, *a Bunch of Feathers.*
Panégyrique, *Panegyrick.*
Papisme, *Popery.*
Paradoxe, *a Paradox.*
Paraphrase, *Paraphrast.*
Parage, *Latitude.*
Paragraphe, *a Paragraph.*
Parafe, { *a Flourish added to one's name in signing.*
Paranymphe, { *a public Act in the University of Paris.*
Parnasse, *Parnassus.*
Parricide, *a Parricide.*
Parterre, *a Flower-garden.*
Participe, *a Participle.*
Parjure, *a Perjury.*
Passage, *a Passage;*
Patrimoine, *Patrimony.*
Patronage, *Patronage, Advowson.*
Pentamètre, *a Pentameter.*
Péage, *Toll, Custom.*
Pécule, *Money got by saving.*
Pédicule, *Pedicle.*
Pégase, *Pegasus.*
Permesse, *Parnassus.*
Peigne, *a Comb.*
Pélerinage, *a Pilgrimage.*
Pêne, *a Bolt.*

Pénates, *Penates.*
Pentagone, *a Pentagon.*
Péricarde, *Pericardium.*
Péricrâne, *Pericranium.*
Périoste, *Periosteum.*
Périgée, *Perigee.*
Péristyle, *Peristyle.*
Perpendicule, *a Plummet.*
Péritoine, *Peritonæum.*
Pétale, *Petal.*
Pétalisme, *Petalism.*
Pétase, { *the winged hat of Mercury.*
Peuple, *People.*
Phare, *a Light house.*
Phénomène, *Phenomenon.*
Philtre, *a Philter.*
Phosphore, *Phosphorus.*
Piastre, *a piece of Eight.*
Piége, *a Snare, Trap.*
Pilastre, *Pilaster.*
Pillage, *Plunder.*
Pinde, *the Pindus.*
Pivoine, *a Gnat snapper.*
Plane, Platane, *a Plane-tree.*
Planisphère, *a Planisphere.*
Plâtre, *Plaister, Parget.*
Pléonasme, *Pleonasm.*
Plumage, *the Feather of a bird.*
Poëme, *a Poem.*
Poêle, *a Stove, a Pall.*
Poivre, *Pepper.*
Pôle, *the Pole.*
Polygone, *a Polygon.*
Polype, *a Polypus.*
Poncire, *a great Lemon.*
Porche, *a Porch.*
Pore, *a Pore.*
Porphyre, *Porphyry.*
Portage, *the Carriage.*
Porte-mouchettes, { *a Snuffers-pan.*

Portique, *a Portico, Piazza.*
Possible, *Might, Possibility.*
Potage, *Potage, Porridge.*
Pouce, *a Thumb, an Inch.*
Préambule, *Preamble.*
Précepte, *Precept.*
Prêche, *a religious Meeting.*
Précipice, *a Precipice.*
Préjudice, *Hurt, Detriment.*
Prélude, *the Prelude.*
Présage, *Presage. Omen.*
Presbytère, *the Parsonage.*
Prétexte, *a Pretence.*
Principe, *a Principle.*
Prisme, *a Prism.*
Privilége, *a Privilege.*
Problème, *a Problem.*
Prodige, *a Prodigy.*
Proches, *Kinsfolks, Relations.*
Programme, *a College-bill.*
Prolégomène, *a Proem.*
Prologue, *a Prologue.*
Promontoire, *a Promontory.*
Prône, *a Morning-sermon.*
Prognostique, *a Prognostick.*
Protocole, *a Precedent-book.*
Prototype, *the first Pattern.*
Proverbe, *a Proverb.*
Pseaume, *a Psalm.*
Pupitre, *a Desk.*
Purgatoire, *the Purgatory.*
Quadernes, *Two fours.*
Quadrangle, *a Quadrangle.*
Quâdre, Câdre, *a Frame.*
Quadruple, *Four fold.*
Quantième? { *What day of the month.*
Quatorze, *a Quatorze at Piquet.*
Quatre, *a Four,*
Quatrième, *a Fourth Part.*
Quines, *two Cinks* or *Fives.*
Quinzième, *a Fifteenth.*
Rable, *the back of a Hare.*
Raccommodage, *Mending.*
Raffinage, *the refining of Sugar.*
Râle, *a rattling in the Throat.*
Ramage, *the chirping of Birds.*
Rance, *Rusty.*
Rapiecetage, *patch'd Work.*
Ravage, *Havock.*
Réagrave, *the last Commination.*
Réceptacle, *Receptacle, Nest.*
Réciproque, *Return, Like.*
Rectangle, *a Rectangle.*
Réfectoire, { *a Dining-room. in a Monastery.*
Régime, *a Course of Diet.*
Règne, *Reign.*
Relâche, *Respite.*
Reliquaire, *a Shrine.*
Remède, *a Remedy.*
Repaire, *the Haunt.*
Repertoire, *a Repertory.*
Reptile, *a creeping thing.*
Requisitoire, *a Request.*
Rosaire, *great Beads.*
Rouge-gorge, *a Robin-red-breast.*
Rouge-queue, *a Red-tail.*
Reproche, *a Reproach.*
Reste, *Remainder, Rest.*
Rêve, *a Dream.*
Réverbère, *Reverberate fire.*
Rhume, *a Rheum.*
Risque, *a Risk.*
Rivage, *a Bank, or Shore.*
Rôle, *a Roll, List, Part.*
Royaume, *a Kingdom.*
Rhombe, *a Rhomb.*
Rhomboïde, *a Rhomboid.*
Sâble, *Sand.*

Sâble,

Sabre,	*a Broad-sword.*
Sacrifice,	*a Sacrifice.*
Sacrilége,	*a Sacrilege.*
Sagittaire,	*Sagittarius.*
Salaire,	*Salary.*
Sacerdoce,	*Priest-hood.*
Sacre,	*Coronation.*
Salpêtre,	*Salt-petre.*
Sanctuaire,	*a Sanctuary.*
Sandaraque,	*Sandarack.*
Saule,	*a Sallow,* or *Willow-tree.*
Savonnage,	*soaping the Linen.*
Scandale,	*Scandal.*
Scapulaire,	*a Scapulary.*
Sceptre,	*a Scepter.*
Schisme,	*a Schism.*
Sciage,	*Sawing.*
Scribe,	*a Scribe.*
Scrupule,	*a Scruple.*
Seigle,	*Rye.*
Semestre,	*the Space of six Months.*
Séminaire,	*a Seminary.*
Septième,	*the seventh Part.*
Sépulcre,	*a Grave.*
Séquestre,	*Sequestration.*
Service,	*Service; good turn.*
Sesterce,	*Sesterce.*
Sexe,	*a Sex.*
Siècle,	*an Age, a Century.*
Siége,	*a Seat, See, Siege.*
Signe,	*a Sign, Token.*
Silence,	*a Silence.*
Simples,	*the Simples.*
Sinople,	*Sinople.*
Sixième,	*a sixth Part.*
Soliloque,	*a Soliloquy.*
Solécisme,	*a Solecism.*
Solstice,	*Solstice.*
Sommaire,	*a Summary.*
Somme,	*Nap, Sleep, Repose.*
Songe,	*a Dream.*
Sophisme,	*Sophism.*
Sortilége,	*Witch-craft.*
Souffle,	*the Breath.*
Soufre,	*Sulphur.*
Spécifique,	*a Specific.*
Spectre,	*a Ghost.*
Sphéroïde,	*a Spheroid.*
Squelette,	*a Skeleton.*
Squirre,	*a Schirrus.*
Stade,	*a Furlong.*
Stalle,	*a Seat (in the Choir).*
Stigmates,	*Prints, Marks.*
Style,	*a Style.*
Stocfiche,	*Stockfish.*
Suaire,	*a Cloth to wrap up the face of dead people.*
Subside,	*Subsidy.*
Subterfuge,	*a Shift.*
Sucre,	*Sugar.*
Succube,	*a Succubus.*
Suffrage,	*a Vote.*
Supplice,	*a Torment.*
Suspensoire,	*a Trust.*
Sycomore,	*the Sycamore-tree.*
Syllogisme,	*a Syllogism.*
Symbole,	*Symbol, Badge.*
Symptôme,	*a Symptom.*
Synode,	*a Synod.*
Synonyme,	*a Synonyma.*
Système,	*a System.*
Store,	*an Umbrella.*
Tabernacle,	*Tabernacle.*
Tarse,	*Tarsis.*
Tartre,	*Tartar.*
Telescope,	*a Telescope.*
Témoignage,	*a Testimony.*
Temple,	*a Temple.*
Tendre,	*Tenderness.*
Terme,	*a Term, Bound.*
Ternes,	*Two trois, six.*
Territoire,	*a Territory.*
Tertre,	*Rising ground.*

Tête-

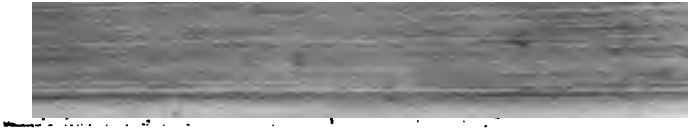
à-tête, { *a private conversation.*
:, *a Text.*
tre, *a Theatre, Stage.*
me, *a Theme.*
momètre, *a Weather-glass.*
se, *a Thyrse.*
:, *a Tyger*, and the *Tigris.*
re, *Stamp, a Clock-bell.*
marre, *a thundering Noise.*
, *a Title.*
:, *a Volume.*
erre, *the Thunder.*
que, *a Topick.*
ne-broche, *a Jack.*
èze, *a Trapezium.*
lage, *Arbour-work.*
:, *Trefoil.*
ble, *an Aspen-tree.*
e, *Choice.*
gle, *a Triangle.*
tage, *Knitting.*
yphe, *a Triglyph.*
nphe, *a Triumph.*
e, *the Triple.*
tage, *a Mish-mash.*
hisques, s. pl. *a Trochisk.*
ne, *a Privet.*
e, *a Throne.*
ée, *a Trophy.*
ique, *a Tropick.*
ble, *a Trouble.*
, *a Tube.*
rcule, *a Tumour.*
lte, *a Tumult.*
be, *a Theorbo.*
, *a Type, Figure.*
me, *an Uproar.*

Vase, *a Vase.*
Vaudeville, *a Ballad.*
Véhicule, *a Vehicle.*
Ventre, *the Belly.*
Ventricule, *the Ventricule.*
Verbe, *a Verb.*
Verbiage, *idle Words.*
Verre, *a Glass.*
Vertige, *a Dizziness.*
Vésicatoire, *a Blister.*
Vestibule, *an Entry to a House.*
Vestige, *Footstep.*
Viatique, *Viaticum.*
Vice, *Vice.*
Vidame, *a Vidame.*
Vignoble, *a Vine-yard.*
Vinaigre, *Vinegar.*
Vingtième, *the twentieth part.*
Visage, *the Face.*
Viscère, *a Bowel.*
Vitrage, *Glazing.*
Vivres, *Food, Provisions.*
Voile, *a Veil*; but not *a Sail.*
Voisinage, *the Neighbourhood.*
Vocabulaire, *a Vocabulary.*
Volume, *a Volume.*
Voyage, *a Journey.*
Usage, *Usage, Use, Custom.*
Ulcère, *an Ulcer.*
Ustensile, *an Utensil.*
Vide, *an empty Place.*
Vulgaire, *the Vulgar.*
Vulnéraire, *a Vulnerary.*
Zèle, *a Zeal.*
Zéphire, (a God) *Zephyrus.*
Zodiaque, *the Zodiak.*
Zoophyte, *Zoophytes.*

I have

I have made two more Lists: one of the English words that are derived from the French; or which, being derived from Latin, or Greek, are quite alike, or very near: the other of words the same or nearly alike in sound, but different in spelling and signification. But as this book is already too much swelled, I have placed them in my Elements.

F I N I S.



DEC 8 - 1942